Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Section 9
Power Generation

BY

EZRA S. KRENDEL *Emeritus Professor of Operations Research and Statistics, University of Pennsylvania*
R. RAMAKUMAR *Professor of Electrical Engineering, Oklahoma State University*
C. P. BUTTERFIELD *Chief Engineer, Wind Technology Division, National Renewable Energy Laboratory*
ERICH A. FARBER *Distinguished Service Professor Emeritus; Director Emeritus Solar Energy and Energy Conversion Laboratory, University of Florida*
KENNETH A. PHAIR *Senior Mechanical Engineer, Stone and Webster Engineering Corp.*
SHERWOOD B. MENKES *Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Emeritus, The City College, The City University of New York*
JOSEPH C. DELIBERT *Retired Executive, The Babcock & Wilcox Co.*
FREDERICK G. BAILY *Consulting Engineer; formerly Technical Coordinator, Thermodynamics and Applications Engineering, General Electric Co.*
WILLIAM J. BOW *Director (Retired), Heat Transfer Products Dept., Foster and Wheeler Energy Corp.*
DONALD E. BOLT *Engineering Manager, Heat Transfer Products Dept., Foster and Wheeler Energy Corp.*
DENNIS N. ASSANIS *Professor of Mechanical Engineering, University of Michigan*
CLAUS BORGNAKKE *Associate Professor of Mechanical Engineering, University of Michigan*
DAVID E. COLE *Director, Office for the Study of Automotive Transportation, Transportation Research Institute, University of Michigan*
D. J. PATTERSON *Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Emeritus, University of Michigan*
JOHN H. LEWIS *Technical Staff, Pratt & Whitney, Division of United Technologies Corp.; Adjunct Associate Professor, Hartford Graduate Center, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute*
ALBERT H. REINHARDT *Technical Staff, Pratt & Whitney, Division of United Technologies Corp.*
LOUIS H. RODDIS, JR. *Late Consulting Engineer, Charleston, SC*
DANIEL J. GARNER *Senior Program Manager, Institute of Nuclear Power Operations*
JOHN E. GRAY *ERCI, International*
EDWIN E. KINTNER *GPU Nuclear Corp.*
NUNZIO J. PALLADINO *Dean Emeritus, College of Engineering, Pennsylvania State University*
GEORGE SEGE *Technical Assistant to the Director, Office of Nuclear Regulatory Research, U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission*
PAUL E. NORIAN *Special Assistant, Regulatory Applications, Office of Nuclear Regulatory Research, U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission*
ROBERT D. STEELE *Manager, Turbine and Rehabilitation Design, Voith Hydro, Inc.*

Live Math

9.1 SOURCES OF ENERGY
Contributors are shown at the head of each category.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

9.2 STEAM BOILERS
by Joseph C. Delibert

9.3 STEAM ENGINES
Staff Contribution

9.4 STEAM TURBINES
by Frederick G. Baily

9.5 POWER PLANT HEAT EXCHANGERS
by William J. Bow, assisted by Donald E. Bolt

9.6 INTERNAL COMBUSTION ENGINES
by Dennis N. Assanis, Claus Borgnakke, David E. Cole, and D. J. Patterson

9.7 GAS TURBINES
by John H. Lewis and Albert H. Reinhardt

9.8 NUCLEAR POWER
by Louis H. Roddis, Jr., Daniel J. Garner, John E. Gray, Edwin E. Kintner, and Nunzio J. Palladino, supplemented by George Sege and Paul E. Norian of the NRC

9.9 HYDRAULIC TURBINES
by Robert D. Steele

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

9.1 SOURCES OF ENERGY

Contributors are shown at the head of each category.

REFERENCES: Latest available published data from the following: ''Reserves of Crude Oil, Natural Gas Liquids, and Natural Gas in the U.S. and Canada,'' American Petroleum Institute. ''Annual Statistical Review—Petroleum Industry Statistics,'' American Petroleum Institute. Worldwide Issue, *Oil & Gas Jour.* annually. ''Potential Supply of Natural Gas in the U.S.,'' Mineral Resources Institute. Colorado School of Mines. Coal resources in the United States, *U.S. Geol. Surv. Bull.* 1412. Geological Estimates of Undiscovered Recoverable Oil and Gas Resources in the U.S., *U.S. Geol. Surv. Circ.* 725, United Nations Statistical Office, ''Statistical Yearbook,'' New York, U.N. Department of Economic and Social Affairs. Bureau of Mines, Metals, Minerals, and Fuels, vol. I of ''Minerals Yearbook'' published annually. ''Coal Data,'' National Coal Association. ''International Coal,'' National Coal Association. Annual Technical Literature Data Base, *Power,* McGraw-Hill.

INTRODUCTION
Staff Contribution

Global energy requirements are supplied primarily by fossil fuels, nuclear fuels, and hydroelectric sources; about 1 to 2 percent of global requirements are supplied from other miscellaneous sources. In the United States in 1994, total domestic power requirements were supplied approximately as follows: 70 percent fossil fuel (of which coal accounted for 58 percent), 20 percent nuclear fuel, 10 percent from hydroelectric sources, and less than 1 percent from all other sources. In spite of the large increase in nuclear generated power, both in the United States and globally, coal continues to be the major fuel consumed.

In the United States, new power plants constructed at this time are designed to consume fossil fuels—primarily coal, many with gas, and a few with petroleum. The situation with regard to nuclear power is complicated by a number of circumstances; see Sec. 9.8. Energy statistics and accompanying data stay current for a short time. Bear in mind that when quantities of known reserves of fuel of all types are stated, there is implied the significant matter of whether they are, indeed, producible in a given economic climate. Estimates for additional reserves remaining to be discovered are available, by and large, only for the United States. At any given time, the situation with regard to estimates of recoverable fuel sources is subject to wide swings whose source is manifold: national and international politics, environmental concerns, significant progress in energy conservation, unsettled political and social conditions in locations within which reside much of the world reserves of fossil fuels, economic impact of financing, effects of inflation, and so on. The references cited, in their most current form, will provide the reader with realistic and authoritative compilations of data.

Fossil Fuels

Petroleum Proved reserves of crude oil and natural gas liquids in the United States, based upon estimated discovered quantities which geological and engineering data demonstrate with reasonable certainty to be recoverable in future years from presently known reservoirs under existing economic and operating conditions, are published annually by the American Petroleum Institute. Estimates of additional remaining producible reserves which will be discovered, proved, and produced in the future from the total original oil in place, are derived by *U.S. Geol. Surv. Circ.* 725 from present and projected conditions in the industry.

Estimates of proved crude oil reserves in all countries of the world are published by *Oil and Gas Journal.* New discoveries are continually adding to and changing proved reserves in many parts of the world, and these estimates are indicative of producible quantities.

Natural Gas Proved reserves of natural gas in the United States, based upon the same definition as for crude oil and natural gas liquids, are estimated annually by the American Gas Association. The estimated total additional potential supply remaining to be discovered is prepared by the Potential Gas Committee, sponsored by the Potential Gas Agency, Colorado School of Mines Foundation, Inc.

Estimates of proved reserves of natural gas in all countries of the world are published by *Oil and Gas Journal.* As with crude oil, large additional natural gas reserves are currently being discovered and developed in Alaska, the arctic regions, offshore areas, northern Africa, and other locations remote from consuming markets. Valid estimates of additional probable remaining reserves in the world are not available.

Coal (See also Secs. 7.1 and 7.2.) Authoritative information about reserves of coal is presented in *Geol. Surv. Bull.* 1412, Coal Resources of the United States. Remaining U.S. proved reserves (1974) of bituminous, subbituminous, lignite, and anthracite have been estimated by mapping and exploration of areas with 0 to 3,000-ft overburden. The U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) estimates probable additional resources in unmapped and unexplored areas with 0 to 3,000-ft overburden and in areas with 3,000- to 6,000-ft overburden. Slightly more than one-half of the proved reserves are considered producible (at this time) because of favorable depth of overburden and thickness of coal strata. Approximately 30 percent of all ranks of coal are commerically available in beds less than 1,000 ft deep. The USGS estimates that about 65 percent contains less than 1 percent sulfur; most of the low-sulfur coals are located west of the Mississippi. *USGS Bull.* 1412 also estimates global coal resources, but in view of the questionable validity of much of the global data, it can but offer gross approximations. (See Sec. 7.1.)

Shale Oil The portion of total U.S. reserves of oil from oil shale, measured or proved, considered minable and amenable to processing is estimated to be over 150 billion bbl (30 billion m^3), based upon grades averaging 30 gal/ton in beds at least 100 ft thick (*USGS Bull.* 1412). Most oil shale occurs in Colorado. No commercial production is expected for many years. World reserves occur largely in the United States and Brazil, with small quantities elsewhere.

Tar Sands Large deposits are in the Athabasca area of northern Alberta, Canada, estimated capable of producing 100 to 300 billion bbl (15.9 to 47.7 billion m^3) of oil. About 6.3 billion bbl (1.0 billion m^3) has been proved economically recoverable within the radius of the present large mining and recovery plant in Athabasca. Commercial quantities of oil have been produced there since the 1960s. Sizable deposits are lo-

Table 9.1.1 Major U.S. Coal-Producing Locations

Anthracite and semianthracite
Pennsylvania
Bituminous coal
Illinois
West Virginia
Kentucky
Colorado
Pennsylvania
Ohio
Indiana
Missouri
Subbituminous coal
Montana
Alaska
Wyoming
New Mexico
Lignite
North Dakota
Montana

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

cated elsewhere; they have not been exploited to date, meaningful data for them are not available, and there is no report of those other deposits having been worked. (See Sec. 7.1.)

Nuclear Fuels

Uranium Reserves of uranium in the United States are reported by the Department of Energy (DOE). The proved reserves, usually presented in terms of quantity of U_3O_8, refer to ore deposits (concentrations of 0.01 percent, or 0.0016 oz/lb ore, are viable) of grade, quantity, and geological configuration that can be mined and processed profitably with existing technology. *Estimated additional resources* refer to uranium surmised to occur in unexplored extensions of known deposits or in undiscovered deposits in known uranium districts, and which are expected to be discovered and economically exploitable in the given price range. The total of these uranium reserves would yield about 3,000 tons of U_3O_8. United States uranium resources are located mainly in New Mexico, Wyoming, and Colorado.

Thorium Total known resources of thorium, the availability of which is considered reasonably assured, are estimated in the millions of tons of thorium oxide. Additional actual reserves will increase in response to the demand and concomitant market price. Most of the larger known resources are in India and Brazil. There seems to be little prospect of significant requirements for thorium as a nuclear fuel in the near future.

Hydroelectric Power

Hydroelectric and Pumped Storage for Electric Generation Although most available sites for economical production of hydroelectric energy have been developed, some additional hydroelectric capacity will be provided at new sites or by additions at existing plants. Increased pumped storage capacity will be limited by the availability of suitable sites and a dependable supply of economical pumping energy. The flexibility of operation of a pumped storage plant in meeting sudden load changes and its ability to provide high inertia spinning reserve at low operating cost are additional benefits that can weigh heavily in favor of this type of installation, particularly in the future if (when) the proportion of nuclear capacity in service increases. At this time, hydro and pumped storage account for about 10 percent of electricity generated by all sources of energy in the United States.

World installed hydropower capacity presently is located about 40 percent in North America and 40 percent in Europe.

ALTERNATIVE ENERGY, RENEWABLE ENERGY, AND ENERGY CONVERSION: AN INTRODUCTION
Staff Contribution

REFERENCES: AAAS, *Science.* Hottell and Howard, ''New Energy Technology—Some Facts and Assessments,'' MIT Press. Fisher, ''Energy Crises in Perspective,'' Wiley-Interscience. Hammond, Metz, and Maugh, ''Energy and the Future,'' AAAS.

Many sources of raw energy have been proposed or used for the generation of power. Only a few sources—fossil fuels, nuclear fission, and elevated water—are dominant in practical applications today.

A more complete list of sources would include fossil fuels (coal, petroleum, natural gas); nuclear (fission and fusion); wood and vegetation; elevated water supply; solar; winds; tides; waves; geothermal; muscles (human, animal); industrial, agricultural, and domestic wastes; atmospheric electricity; oceanic thermal gradients; oceanic currents. There are others.

Historically, wood, muscles, elevated water, and wind were prominent. These sources were superseded in the industrial era by fossil fuels, with nuclear energy the most recent addition. This dominance rests in the suitability of the thermal sources for practical stationary and transportation power plants. Features of acceptability include reliability, flexibility, portability, maneuverability, size, bulk, weight, efficiency, economy, maintenance, and costs. The plant for transportation service must be self-contained. For stationary service there is wider latitude for choice.

The dominant end product, especially for stationary applications, is electricity, because of its favorable distribution and control features. However, there is no practical way of storing electric energy. Electricity must be generated at the instant of its use. Reliability and continuity of service consequently dictate the need for reserve, alternate, and interconnection supports. Pumped storage, coal piles, and tanks of liquid and gaseous fuels, e.g., offer the necessary continuity, flexibility, and reliability.

Raw energy sources, other than fuels (fossil and nuclear) and elevated water, are particularly deficient in this storage aspect. For example, wind power is best for jobs that can wait for the wind, e.g., pumping water or grinding grain. Solar power, to avoid foul weather and the darkness of night, could call for desert locations or extraterrestrial satellites.

Despite such limitations an energy-intensive society can expect to see increasing efforts to harness many of the raw energy sources cited. Several of these topics are treated in the following pages to show the factual and technical progress that has been made to adapt sources to practicality.

MUSCLE-GENERATED POWER
by Ezra S. Krendel, Amended by Staff

REFERENCES: Whitt and Wilson, ''Bicycling Science,'' 2d ed., MIT Press. Harrison, Maximizing Human Power Output by Suitable Selection of Motion Cycle and Load, *Human Factors,* **12**, 1970. Krendel, Design Requirements for Man-Generated Power, *Ergonomics,* **3**, 1960. Wilkie, Man as a Source of Mechanical Power, *Ergonomics,* **3**, 1960. Brody, ''Bioenergetics and Growth,'' Reinhold.

The use of human muscles to generate work will be examined from two points of view. The first is that of measuring the energy expended in gross, long duration physical activities such as marching, forestry work, freight handling, and factory work. The second is that of determining the useful mechanical work which can be performed by specified muscle groups for brief or extended periods of time in well defined work situations, such as pedaling or cranking.

Labor

Over an 8-h day for a 48-h week, a useful norm for a 35-year-old laborer for total power expenditure, including basal metabolism energy, is 0.49 hp (366 W). Of this total expenditure, approximately 0.1 hp (75 W) is available for useful work. A 20-year-old man can generate about 15 percent more power than this norm, and a 60-year-old man about 20 percent less. The total energy or power expenditure is needed for determining nutritional requirements for classes of labor. A rule of thumb for power developed by European males can be expressed as a function of age and duration of effort in minutes for work lasting from 4 to about 480 min, assuming that 20 percent of the total output is useful power.

Age, years	Useful horsepower (t in min)
20	$\text{hp} = 0.40 - 0.10 \log t$
35	$\text{hp} = 0.35 - 0.09 \log t$
60	$\text{hp} = 0.30 - 0.08 \log t$

For a well-trained man, useful power production by pedaling, hand cranking, or a combination of the two for working durations of from 20 to 120 s may be summarized as follows (t is in seconds):

Arms and legs	$\text{hp} = 4.4t^{-0.40}$
Legs only	$\text{hp} = 2.8t^{-0.40}$
Arms only	$\text{hp} = 1.5t^{-0.40}$

There are examples of well-trained athletes generating between 1.5 and 2 hp for efforts of 5 to 20 s, using both arms and legs to generate power.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

For pedaling efforts of from 1 to about 100 min, the useful power generated may be expressed as $hp = 0.53 - 0.13 \log t$ (t is in minutes).

Work scheduling, either as rhythmic work activity or with rest stops for recuperation, the temperature and humidity of the environment, and the detailed nature of the laborer's diet are factors which influence ability to generate and maintain the above nominal power values. These considerations should be factored in for specific work situations.

Steady State and Transient

When a human and a passive mechanism are working together to generate power, the following conditions obtain: Energy is available both from stores residing in the muscles [a total usefully available energy of about 0.6 hp · min (27 kJ), usually applied in transient bursts of activity] and from the oxidation of foods (for producing steady state power). For an aerobic transient activity, energy production depends on the mass of muscle which can be brought into effective contact with the power transmission mechanism. For example, bicycle pedaling is an effective use of a large muscle mass. For steady-state activity, assuming adequate food for fuel energy, power generated depends on the oxygen supply and the efficiency with which oxygenated blood can be transported to the muscles as well as on the muscle mass.

The **physiological limit,** determined by oxygen-respiration capacity, for steady-state useful mechanical power generation is between 0.4 and 0.54 hp (300 and 400 W), depending on the man's physical condition.

Useful power production may be achieved by such methods as rowing, cranking, or pedaling. The **highest values** of human-generated horsepower using robust subjects have been achieved using a rowing assembly which restrained nonuseful motions of the torso and major limbs. Under these conditions up to 2 hp (1,500 W) was generated over intervals of 0.6 s, and averages of about 1 hp (750 W) were generated over 2 min.

In order to approach an optimal **conversion efficiency** (mechanical work/food energy) of 25 percent, a mechanism would be required to store and to transmit energy from the body muscle masses when they were operating at optimal efficiency. This condition occurs when the force exerted by the muscle is about one-half of its maximum and the speed of muscle movement one-quarter of its maximum. Data on both force and speed for a given set of muscles are best measured in situ. Optimal conversion efficiency and maximum output power do not occur together.

Examples of High Output

Data for human-generated power come from measurements of subjects with different kinds of training, skill, body builds, diets, and motivation using a variety of mechanical devices such as bicycles, ergonometers, and variations on rowing machines. For strong, healthy young men, aggregations of such data for power produced in an interval t of 10 to 120 s can be approximated as follows:

$$hp = 2.5t^{-0.40}$$

For world-class athletes this becomes $hp = 0.25 + 2.5t^{-0.40}$. These values can be exceeded for bursts of power of less than 10 s. For long-term efforts of from 2 to about 200 min, the aggregated data for useful power generated by strong, healthy young men can be approximated as follows (t in minutes):

$$hp = 0.50 - 0.13 \log t$$

For world-class athletes this becomes $hp = 0.65 - 0.13 \log t$. The pilot of the Gossamer Albatross, who flew 22 mi from England to France in 2 h 55 min on August 12, 1979 entirely by pedal-generated power, sustained an output of about ⅓ hp (250 W) during the flight.

Maximum power output occurs at a load impedance of 5 to 10 times the size of the human being's source impedance.

Brody has developed detailed nomograms for determining the energetic cost of muscular work by farm animals; these nomograms are useful for precise cost-effectiveness comparisons between animal and mechanical power generation methods. A 1,500- to 1,900-lb horse can work continuously for up to 10 h/day at a rate of 1 hp, or equivalently pull 10 percent of its body weight for a total of 20 mi/day, and retain its vigor to an advanced age. Brody's work allows the following approximations for estimating the useful power output of work animals of varying sizes: The ratio of the power exerted in maximal energy production for a few seconds to the maximum steady-state power maintained for 5 to 30 min to the power produced in sustained heavy work over a 6- to 10-h day is approximately 25 : 4 : 1. For any one of these conditions, it has been found that, for healthy, mature specimens,

$$hp_{animal} = hp_{man}(\text{mass of animal/mass of man})^{0.73}$$

Thus, from the previously given horsepower magnitudes for men, one can compute the power generated by ponies, horses, bullocks, or elephants under the specified working conditions.

WIND POWER
by R. Ramakumar and C. P. Butterfield

REFERENCES: NREL technical information at Internet address: http://gopher.nrel.gov.70. AWEA information at Internet address: awea.wind-net@notes.igc.apc.org. Hansen and Butterfield, Aerodynamics of Horizontal-Axis Wind Turbines, *Ann. Rev. Fluid Mech.,* **25**, 1993, pp. 115–149. Touryan, Strickland, and Berg, ''Electric Power from Vertical-Axis Wind Turbines,'' *J. Propulsion,* **3**, no. 6, 1987. Betz, ''Introduction to the Theory of Flow Machines,'' Pergamon, New York. Eldridge, ''Wind Machines,'' 2d ed., Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York. Glauert, ''Aerodynamic Theory,'' Durand, ed., 6, div. L, p. 324, Springer, Berlin, 1935. Richardson and McNerney, Wind Energy Systems, *Proc. IEEE,* **81**, no. 3, Mar. 1993, pp. 378–389. Elliott et al., ''Wind Energy Resource Atlas,'' Wilson and Lissaman, Applied Aerodynamics of Wind Power Machines, Oregon State University Report, 1974. Eggleston and Stoddard, *Wind Turbine Engineering Design,* New York, Van Nostrand Reinhold. Spera, *Wind Turbine Technology,* ASME Press, New York. Gipe, ''Wind Power for Home and Business,'' Chelsea Green Publishing Company. Ramakumar et al., Economic Aspects of Advanced Energy Technologies, *Proc. IEEE,* **81**, no. 3, Mar. 1993, pp. 318–332.

Wind is one of the oldest widely used sources of energy. Although its use is many centuries old, it has not been a dominant factor in the energy picture of developed countries for the past 50 years because of the abundance of fossil fuels. Recently, the realization that fossil fuels are in limited supply has awakened the need to develop wind power with modern technology on a large scale. Consequently, there has been a tremendous resurgence of effort in wind power in just the past few years. The state of knowledge is rapidly increasing, and the reader is referred to the current literature and the NREL Internet address cited above for information on the latest technology. Wind energy is one of the lowest-cost forms of renewable energy. In 1995, more than 1,700 MW of wind energy capacity was operating in California, generating enough energy to supply a city the size of San Francisco with all its energy needs. European capacity was almost the same. For the latest status on worldwide use of wind energy, the reader is referred to the American Wind Energy Association (AWEA) at the Internet address cited above. The fundamental principles of wind power technology do not change and are discussed here.

Wind Turbines The essential ingredient in a **wind energy conversion system (WECS)** is the wind turbine, traditionally called the windmill. The predominant configurations are **horizontal-axis propeller turbines (HAWTs)** and **vertical-axis wind turbines (VAWTs),** the latter most often termed **Darrieus rotors.** In the performance analysis of wind turbines, the propeller devices were studied first, and their analysis set the current conventions for the evaluation of all turbines.

General Momentum Theory for Horizontal-Axis Turbines Conventional analysis of horizontal-axis turbines begins with an axial momentum balance originated by Rankine using the control volume depicted in Fig. 9.1.1. The turbine is represented by a porous disk of area A which extracts energy from the air passing through it by reducing its pressure: on the upstream side the pressure has been raised above atmospheric by the slowing airstream; on the downstream side pressure is lower, and atmospheric pressure will be recovered by further slowing of the stream. V is original wind speed, decelerated to $V(1 - a)$ at the turbine

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

disk, and to $V(1 - 2a)$ in the wake of the turbine (a is called the interference factor). Momentum analysis predicts the axial thrust on the turbine of radius R to be

$$T = 2\pi R^2 \rho V^2 a(1 - a) \tag{9.1.1}$$

where air density, ρ, equals 0.00237 lbf·s²/ft⁴ (or 1.221 kg/m³) at sea-level standard-atmosphere conditions.

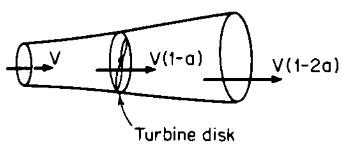


Fig. 9.1.1 Control volume.

Application of the mechanical energy equation to the control volume depicted in Fig. 9.1.1 yields the prediction of power to the turbine of

$$P = 2\pi R^2 \rho V^3 a(1 - a)^2 \tag{9.1.2}$$

This power can be nondimensionalized with the energy flux E in the upstream wind covering an area equal to the rotor disk, i.e.,

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho V^3 \pi R^2 \tag{9.1.3}$$

The resulting power coefficient is

$$C_p = \frac{P}{E} = 4a(1 - a)^2 \tag{9.1.4}$$

This power coefficient has a theoretical maximum at $a = \tfrac{1}{3}$ of $C_p = 0.593$. This result was first predicted by Betz and shows that the load placed on a windmill must be optimized to obtain the best power output: If the load is too small (small a), too much of the power is carried off with the wake; if the load is too large (large a), the flow is excessively obstructed and most of the approaching wind passes around the turbine.

This derivation includes some important assumptions which limit its accuracy and applicability. In particular, the portion of the kinetic energy in the swirl component of the wake is neglected. Partial accounting for the rotation in the wake has been included in the analysis of Glauert with the resulting prediction of ideal power coefficient as a function of turbine tip speed ratio $X = \Omega R/V$ (where Ω is the angular velocity of the turbine) shown in Fig. 9.1.2. Clearly, the swirl is made up of wasted kinetic energy and is largest for a high-torque, low-speed turbine. Actual farm, multiblade, and two- or three-bladed turbines show somewhat lower than ideal performance because of drag effects neglected in ideal flow analysis, but the high-speed two- or three-bladed turbines do tend to yield higher efficiency than low-speed multiblade windmills.

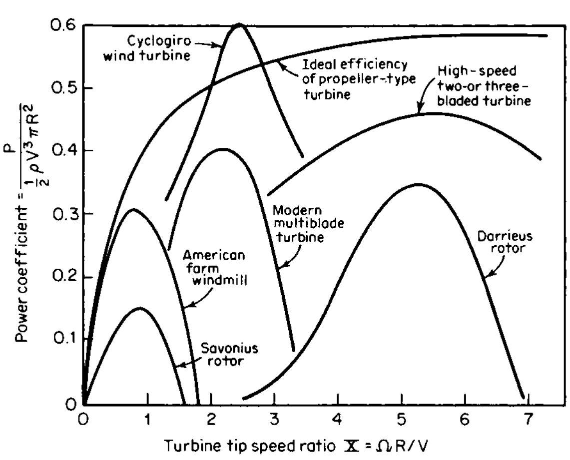


Fig. 9.1.2 Performance curves for wind turbines.

Blade Element Theory for Horizontal-Axis Turbines Wilson and Eggleston describe blade element theory as a mechanism for analyzing the relationship between the individual airfoil properties and the interference factor a, the power produced P, and the axial thrust T of the turbine. Rather than the stream tube of Fig. 9.1.1, the control volume consists of the annular ring bounded by streamlines depicted in Fig. 9.1.3. It is assumed that the flow in each annular ring is independent of the flow in all other rings.

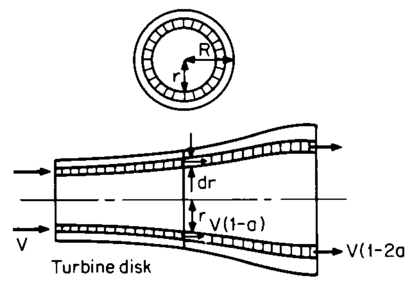


Fig. 9.1.3 Annular ring control volume.

A schematic of the velocity and force vector diagrams is given in Fig. 9.1.4. The turbine is defined by the number B of its blades, by the variation of chord c, by the variation in blade angle θ, and by the shape of blade sections $a' = \omega/(2\Omega)$, where ω is the angular velocity of the air just behind the turbine and Ω is the turbine angular velocity. Also W is the velocity of the wind relative to the airfoil. Note that the angle ϕ will be different for each blade element, since the velocity of the blade is a function of the radius. In order to keep the local flow angle of attack $\alpha = \theta - \phi$ at a suitable value, it will generally be necessary to construct twisted blades, varying θ with the radius. The sectional lift and drag coefficients C_L and C_D are obtained from empirical airfoil data and are unique functions of the local flow angle of attack $\alpha = \theta - \varphi$ and the local Reynolds number of the flow. The entire calculation requires trial-and-error procedures to obtain the axial interference factor a and the angular velocity fraction a'. It can, however, be reduced to programs for small computers.

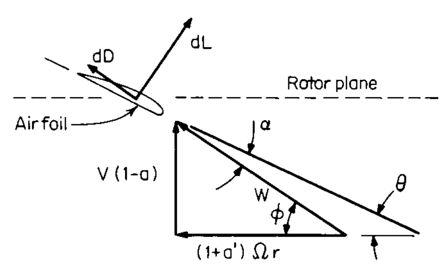


Fig. 9.1.4 Velocity and force vector diagrams.

A typical solution for steady-state operation of a two- or three-bladed wind axis turbine is shown in Fig. 9.1.2. When optimized, these turbines run at high tip speed ratios. The curve shown in Fig. 9.1.2 for the two- or three-bladed wind turbine is for constant blade pitch angle. These turbines typically have pitch change mechanisms which are used to feather the blades in extreme wind conditions. In some instances the blade pitch is continuously controlled to assist the turbine to maintain constant speed and appropriate output. Turbines with continuous pitch control typically have flatter, more desirable operating curves than the one depicted in Fig. 9.1.2.

The traditional U.S. farm **windmill** has a large number of blades with a high solidity ratio σ. (σ is the ratio of area of the blades to swept area of the turbine πR^2.) It operates at slower speed with a lower power coefficient than high-speed turbines and is primarily designed for good starting torque.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

The curves depicted in Fig. 9.1.2 representing the performance of high- and low-speed wind axis turbines are theoretically predicted performance curves which have been experimentally confirmed.

Vertical-Axis Turbines The Darrieus rotor looks somewhat like an eggbeater (Fig. 9.1.5). The blades are high-performance symmetric airfoils formed into a gentle curve to minimize the bending stresses in the blades. There are usually two or three blades in a turbine, and as shown in Fig. 9.1.2, the turbines operate efficiently at high speed. Wilson shows that VAWT performance analysis also takes advantage of the same momentum principles as the horizontal axis wind turbines. However, the blade element momentum analysis becomes much more complicated (see Touryan et al.).

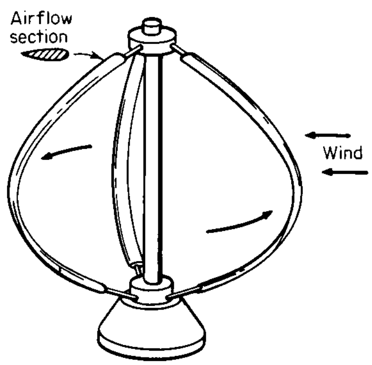


Fig. 9.1.5 Darrieus rotor.

Care must be taken not to overemphasize the aerodynamic efficiency of wind turbine configurations. The most important criterion in evaluating WECSs is the power produced on a per-unit-cost basis.

Drag Devices Rotors utilizing drag rather than lift have been constructed since antiquity, even though they are bulky and limited to low coefficients of performance. The Savonius rotor is a modern variation of these devices; in practice it is limited to small sizes. Eldridge describes the history and theory of this type of windmill.

Augmentation Occasionally, the use of structures designed to concentrate and equalize the wind at the turbine is proposed. For its size, the most effective of these has been a short diffuser (hollow cone) placed around and downwind of a wind turbine. The disadvantage of such augmentation devices is the cost of the bulky static structures required.

Rotor Configuration Trends Hansen and Butterfield describe some trends in turbine configurations which have developed from 1975 to 1995. Although no single configuration has emerged which is clearly superior, HAWTs have been more widely used than VAWTs. Only about 3 percent of turbines installed to date are VAWTs.

HAWT rotors are generally classified according to rotor orientation (upwind or downwind of the tower), blade articulation (rigid or teetering), and number of blades (generally two or three). **Downwind turbines** were favored initially in the United States, but the trend has been toward greater use of **upwind turbines** with a current split between upwind (55 percent) and downwind (45 percent) configurations.

Downwind orientation allows blades to deflect away from the tower when thrust loading increases. Coning can also be easily introduced to decrease mean blade loads by balancing aerodynamic loads with centrifugal loads. Figure 9.1.6 shows typical upwind and downwind configurations along with definitions for blade coning and yaw orientation.

Free yaw, or passive orientation with the wind direction, is also possible with downwind configurations, but yaw must be actively controlled with upwind configurations. Free-yaw systems rely on rotor thrust loads and blade moments to orient the turbine. Net yaw moments for rigid rotors are sensitive to inflow asymmetry caused by turbulence, wind shear, and vertical wind. These are in addition to the moments caused by changes in wind direction which are commonly, though often incorrectly, considered the dominant cause of yaw loads.

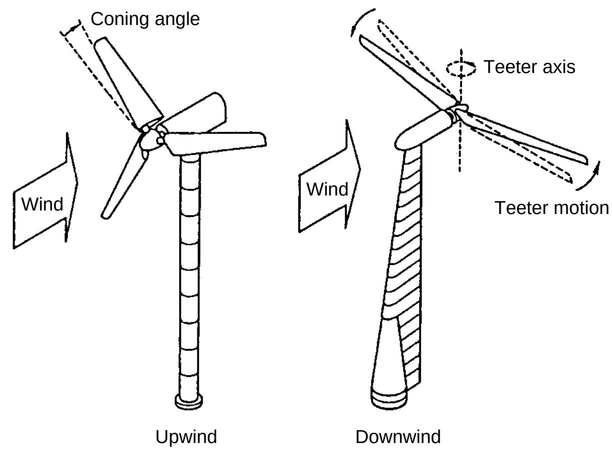


Fig. 9.1.6 HAWT configurations. *(Courtesy of Atlantic Orient Corp.)*

Some early downwind turbine designs developed a reputation for generating subaudible noise as the blades passed through the tower shadow (tower wake). Most downwind turbines operating today have greater tower clearances and lower tip speeds, which result in negligible infrasound emissions (Kelley and McKenna, 1985).

Blade Articulation Several different rotor blade articulations have been tested. Only two have survived—the three-blade, rigid rotor and the two-blade, teetered rotor. The rigid, three-blade rotor attaches the blade to a hub by using a stiff cantilevered joint. The first bending natural frequency of such a blade is typically greater than twice the rotor rotation speed 2*p*. Cyclic loads on rigid blades are generally higher than on teetering blades of the same diameter. Richardson and McNerney describe a 33-m, 300-kW turbine currently under development which reflects a mature version of this configuration.

Teetered, two-blade rotors use relatively stiff blades rigidly connected to a hub, but the hub is attached to the main drive shaft through a **teeter hinge.** This type rotor is commonly used in tail rotors and some main rotors on helicopters. Two-blade rotors usually require teeter hinges or flexible root connections to reduce dynamic loading resulting from nonaxisymmetric mass moments of inertia. In normal operation, the cyclic loads on the teetering rotor are low, but there is risk of teeter-stop bumping (''mast bumping'' in helicopter terminology) that can greatly increase dynamic loads in unusual situations.

Number of Blades Most two-blade rotors operating today use teetering hinges, but all three-blade rotors use rigid root connections. For small turbines (smaller than 50-ft diameter) rigid, three-blade rotors are inexpensive and simple and have the lowest system cost. As the turbines become larger, blade weight (and hence cost) increases in proportion to the third power of the rotor diameter, whereas power output increases only as the square of the diameter. This makes it cost-effective to reduce the number of blades to two and to add the complexity of a teeter hinge or flex beams to reduce blade loads. In the midscale rotor size (15 to 30 m), it is difficult to determine whether three rigidly mounted blades or two teetered blades are more cost-effective. In many cases, the choice between two- and three-blade rotors has been driven by designers' lack of experience and the potential risk of high development cost rather than by technical and economic merit. Currently 10 percent of the turbines installed are two-bladed, yet approximately 60 percent of all new designs being considered in the United States are two-blade, teetered rotors.

Design Problems A key design consideration is survival in severe storms. Various systems for furling the rotor, feathering the blades, or braking the shaft have been employed; failure of these systems in a high wind has been known to cause severe damage to the turbine.

A different, but related, consideration is the control of the turbine after a loss of electrical load, which also could cause severe overspeeding and catastrophic failure.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

The other major cause of mechanical failure is the high level of vibration and alternating stresses. Loosening of inappropriately chosen fasteners is common. Fatigue considerations must be taken into account, especially at the rotor blade root.

Resonant oscillations are also possible if exciting frequencies and structural frequencies coincide. The dominant exciting frequency tends to be the blade passage frequency, which is equal to the number of blades times the revolutions per second. An important structural frequency in HAWTs is the natural frequency of the tower. One design approach is to make the tower so stiff that the exciting frequency is always below the lowest natural frequency of the tower. Another is to permit the tower to be more flexible, but manage the speed of the turbine such that the exciting frequency is never at a structural frequency for any significant length of time.

Use of Wind Energy Conversion Systems Historically, wind energy conversion systems were first used for milling grain and for pumping water. These tasks were ideally suited for wind power sources, since the intermittent nature of the wind did not adversely affect the operation.

The largest impact of wind power on the energy picture in the developed countries of the world is expected to be in the generation of electric power. In most cases, this involves feeding power into the power grid, and requires induction or synchronous generators. These generators require that the rotor turn at a constant speed. Wind turbines operate more efficiently (aerodynamically speaking) if they turn at an optimum ratio of tip speed to wind speed. Thus the use of variable-speed operation, using power electronics to obtain constant-frequency utility-grade ac power, has become attractive. Richardson describes the modern use of variable speed in wind turbines.

Gipe explains that in remote locations, where the power grid is not accessible and the first few units of electric energy may be very valuable, dc generation with storage and/or wind and diesel ''village power systems'' have been used. These systems are now being optimized to supply stable, constant-frequency ac electric energy.

Power in the Wind Since wind is air in motion, the power in wind can be expressed as

$$P_w = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho V^3 A \tag{9.1.5}$$

where P_w = power, W; A = reference area, m^2; V = wind speed, m/s; ρ = air density, kg/m^3. Since V appears to the third power, the wind speed is clearly very important. Figure 9.1.7 is a map of the United States showing regions of annual average available wind power.

The wind speed at a location is random; thus it can be modeled as a continuous random variable in terms of a density function $f(v)$ or a distribution function $F(v)$. The Weibull distribution is commonly used to model wind:

$$F(v) = 1 - \exp\left[-(v/\alpha)^\beta\right] \tag{9.1.6}$$

$$f(v) = \beta(v^{\beta-1}/\alpha^\beta) \exp\left[-(v/\alpha)^\beta\right] \tag{9.1.7}$$

In Eqs. (9.1.6) and (9.1.7), α and β are two parameters which can be adjusted to fit available data over the study period, typically one month. They can be calculated from the sample mean m_v and the sample variance σ_v^2 using the following equations:

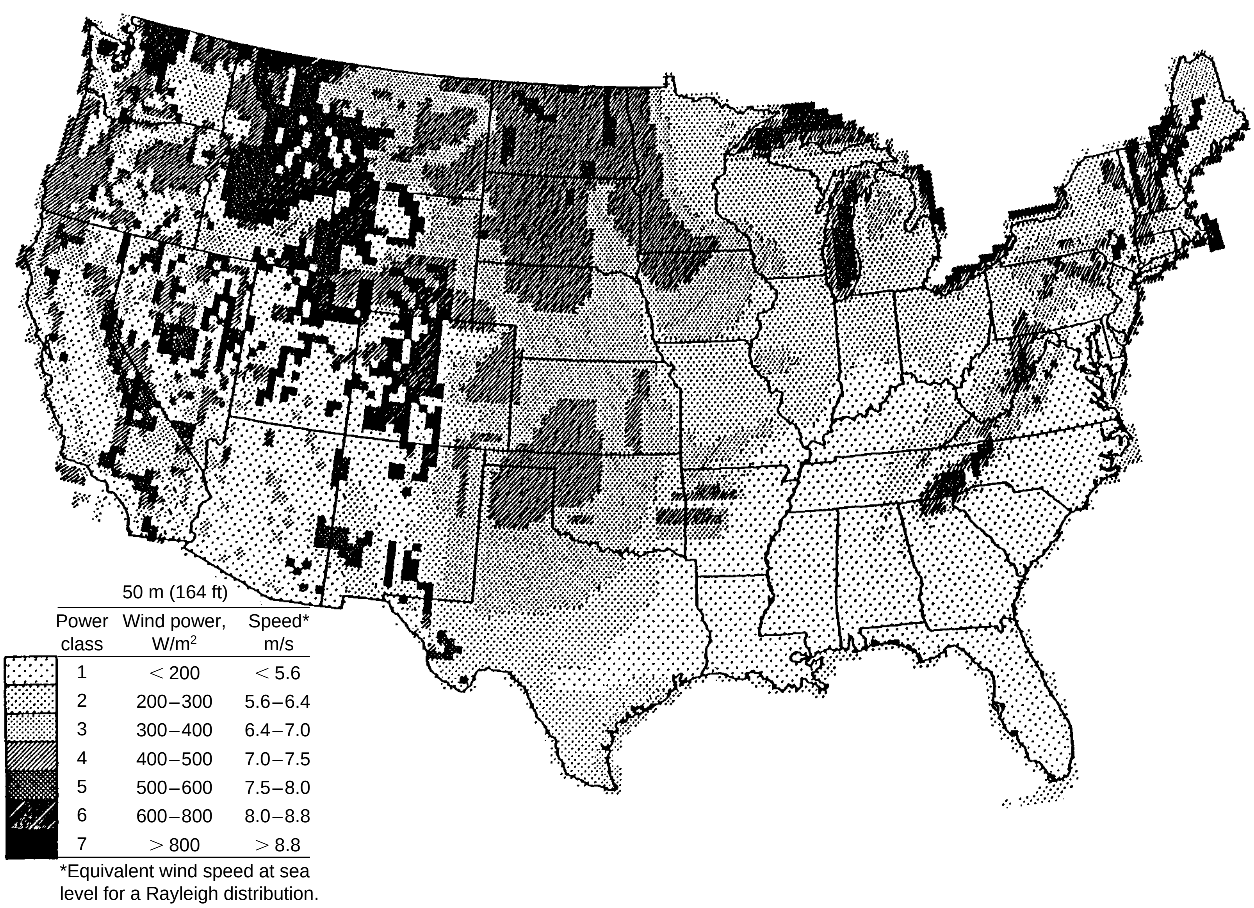


Fig. 9.1.7 Gridded map of annual average wind energy resource estimates in the contiguous United States. Grid cells are ¼° latitude by ⅓° longitude.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

$$m_v = \alpha\Gamma(1 + 1/\beta) \tag{9.1.8}$$

$$(\sigma_v/m_v)^2 = \Gamma(1 + 2/\beta)/\Gamma^2(1 + 1/\beta) - 1 \tag{9.1.9}$$

Typically, the sample mean is the only piece of information readily available for many potential sites. In such cases, a knowledge of the variability of the wind speed can be used to select an appropriate value for β, which can be used in (9.1.8) to obtain α. A good compromise value for β is about 4 for wind regimes with low variances.

In addition to α and β, several other parameters are used to characterize wind regimes. Some of the important ones are listed below.

$$\text{Mean cubed wind speed} = \langle v^3 \rangle = \int_0^\infty v^3 f(v)dv \tag{9.1.10}$$

$$\text{Cube factor } K_c = (\langle v^3 \rangle)^{1/3}/m_v \tag{9.1.11}$$

$$= \alpha^3\Gamma(1 + 3/\beta) \quad \text{for Weibull model}$$

$$\text{Average power density} = P_{av} = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho\langle v^3 \rangle \quad \text{W/m}^2 \tag{9.1.12}$$

$$\text{Energy pattern factor} = K_{ep} = \langle v^3 \rangle/m_v^3 = K_c^3 \tag{9.1.13}$$

Values of K_{ep} range from 1.5 to 3 for typical wind regimes.

The annual average available wind power for the contiguous United States is shown in Fig. 9.1.7. The values shown must be regarded as averages over large areas. The possibility of finding small pockets of sites with excellent wind regimes because of special terrain anywhere in the country should not be overlooked. The variability of the wind can also be shown in terms of a speed duration curve. Figure 9.1.8 shows the wind speed duration curve for Plum Brook, OH, for 1972.

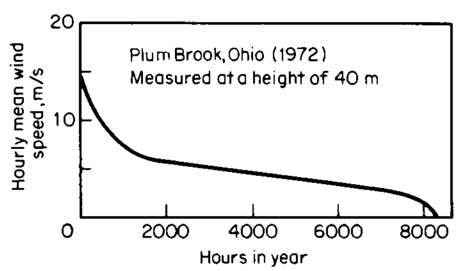


Fig. 9.1.8 Wind variability at Plum Brook, OH (1972).

Wind speed varies with the height above ground level (Fig. 9.1.9). Anemometers are usually located at a height of 10 m above ground level. The long-term average wind speed at height h above ground can be expressed in terms of the average wind speed at 10-m height using a one-seventh power law:

$$(v/v_{10\text{ m}}) = (h/10)^{1/7} \tag{9.1.14}$$

The power $1/7$ in the power law equation above depends on surface roughness and other terrain-related factors and can range from 0.1 to 0.3. The value of $1/7$ should be regarded as a compromise value in the absence of other information regarding the terrain. Clearly, it is advantageous to construct an adequately high support tower for a wind energy conversion system.

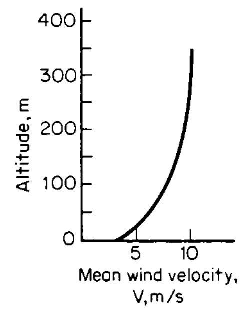


Fig. 9.1.9 Typical variation of mean wind velocity with height.

Table 9.1.2 shows average and peak wind velocities at locations within the continental United States.

Wind to Electric Power Conversion The ease with which wind energy can be converted to rotary mechanical energy and the maturity of electromechanical energy converters and solid-state power conditioning equipment clearly point to wind-to-electric conversion as the most promising approach to harnessing wind power in usable form.

The electric power output of a wind-to-electric conversion system can be expressed as

$$P_e = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho\eta_g\eta_m\eta_p A C_p V^3 \tag{9.1.15}$$

Table 9.1.2 Wind Velocities in the United States

Station	Avg velocity, mi/h	Prevailing direction	Fastest mile	Station	Avg velocity, mi/h	Prevailing direction	Fastest mile
Albany, N.Y.	9.0	S	71	Louisville, Ky.	8.7	S	68
Albuquerque, N.M.	8.8	SE	90	Memphis, Tenn.	9.9	S	57
Atlanta, Ga.	9.8	NW	70	Miami, Fla.	12.6	—	132
Boise, Idaho	9.6	SE	61	Minneapolis, Minn.	11.2	SE	92
Boston, Mass.	11.8	SW	87	Mt. Washington, N.H.	36.9	W	150
Bismarck, N. Dak.	10.8	NW	72	New Orleans, La.	7.7	—	98
Buffalo, N.Y.	14.6	SW	91	New York, N.Y.	14.6	NW	113
Burlington, Vt.	10.1	S	72	Oklahoma City, Okla.	14.6	SSE	87
Chattanooga, Tenn.	6.7	—	82	Omaha, Neb.	9.5	SSE	109
Cheyenne, Wyo.	11.5	W	75	Pensacola, Fla.	10.1	NE	114
Chicago, Ill.	10.7	SSW	87	Philadelphia, Pa.	10.1	NW	88
Cincinnati, Ohio	7.5	SW	49	Pittsburgh, Pa.	10.4	WSW	73
Cleveland, Ohio	12.7	S	78	Portland, Maine	8.4	N	76
Denver, Colo.	7.5	S	65	Portland, Ore.	6.8	NW	57
Des Moines, Iowa	10.1	NW	76	Rochester, N.Y.	9.1	SW	73
Detroit, Mich.	10.6	NW	95	St. Louis, Mo.	11.0	S	91
Duluth, Minn.	12.4	NW	75	Salt Lake City, Utah	8.8	SE	71
El Paso, Tex.	9.3	N	70	San Diego, Calif.	6.4	WNW	53
Galveston, Tex.	10.8	—	91	San Francisco, Calif.	10.5	WNW	62
Helena, Mont.	7.9	W	73	Savannah, Ga.	9.0	NNE	90
Kansas City, Mo.	10.0	SSW	72	Spokane, Wash.	6.7	SSW	56
Knoxville, Tenn.	6.7	NE	71	Washington, D.C.	7.1	NW	62

U.S. Weather Bureau records of the average wind velocity, and fastest mile, at selected stations. The period of record ranges from 6 to 84 years, ending 1954. No correction for height of station above ground.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

where P_e = electric power output, W; η_g and η_m = efficiencies of the electric generator and the mechanical interface, respectively; η_ρ = efficiency of the power conditioning equipment (if employed). The product of these efficiencies and the coefficient of performance (Fig. 9.1.2) usually will be in the range of 20 to 35 percent.

The electrical equipment needed for wind-to-electric conversion depends, above all, on whether the aeroturbine is operated in the constant-speed, nearly constant-speed, or variable-speed mode. With constant-speed and nearly constant-speed operation, the power coefficient C_p in Eq. (9.1.15) becomes a function of wind speed. If variable-speed mode is used, it is possible to operate the turbine at a constant optimum C_p over a range of wind speeds, thus extracting a larger fraction of the energy in the wind.

Synchronous and induction generators are ideally suited for constant-speed and nearly constant-speed operation, respectively. Variable-speed operation requires special and/or additional electrical hardware if constant-frequency utility-grade ac power output is desired. Most of the early prototypes employed constant-speed operation and synchronous generators. However, power oscillations due to tower interference and wind shear effects can be nearly eliminated by operating the turbine and the generator in variable-speed mode over at least some limited range of speeds. It appears likely that large (greater than 100-kW) wind-to-electric systems may employ some kind of a variable-speed constant-frequency power generation scheme in the future.

Several options are available for obtaining constant frequency utility-grade ac output from wind-to-electric systems operated in the variable-speed mode. Some of the schemes suggested are: permanent magnet alternator with output rectification and inversion, dc generator feeding a line commutated (synchronous) or force commutated inverter, ac commutator generator, ac-dc-ac link, field modulated generator system, and slip ring induction machines operated as generators with rotor power conditioning. The last type is also known as a double output induction generator or simply a doubly fed machine. In general, the simpler the electrical generation scheme, the poorer the quality of the constant-frequency ac output. For example, synchronous inverters are very simple, are economical, and have been popular in small (less than 50 kW) commercial units; however, they have power quality and harmonic injection problems, and they absorb (on the average) more reactive voltamperes from the utility line than the watts they deliver. The latter is also a problem with simple induction generators. Schemes such as the field modulated generator system and doubly fed machine deliver excellent power quality, but at a higher cost for the hardware.

Economics Costs of wind energy systems are often divided into two categories: annualized fixed costs and operation and maintenance (O&M) costs. Annualized fixed costs are comprised primarily of the cost of capital required to purchase and install the turbines. In addition, they include certain fixed costs such as taxes and insurance. O&M costs include scheduled and unscheduled maintenance and the levelized cost for major equipment overhauls.

The initial capital cost of a wind turbine system includes the cost of the turbine, installation, and balance of plant. Turbine costs are often expressed in terms of nameplate rating ($/kW). In 1995, utility-grade turbines cost on the order of $800 per kilowatt. Installation and balance of plant costs add approximately 20 percent. The cost of capital varies, but (in 1995) was often estimated as 8 percent per annum for wind energy projects. Other fixed costs were estimated at around 3 percent of the installed turbine cost. The **fixed charge rate (FCR),** combined capital and other fixed costs, was approximately 11 percent per annum. O&M costs in modern wind farms are around $0.01 per kilowatthour (1995).

In addition to capital and O&M costs, an economic assessment of wind energy systems must account for system performance. A commonly used parameter that describes the production of useful energy by wind and other energy systems is the **capacity factor *C*,** also called the **plant factor** or **load factor.** It is the ratio of the annual energy produced (AEP) to the energy that would be produced if the turbine operated at full-rated output throughout the year:

$$C_f = \frac{\text{AEP}}{8{,}760\, P_R} \qquad (9.1.16)$$

where AEP is in kWh, 8,760 is the number of hours in 1 year, and P_R is the unit's nameplate rating in kW.

In order of decreasing importance, C_f is affected by the average power available in the wind, speed vs. duration curve of the wind regime, efficiency of the turbine, and reliability of the turbine. Variable-speed turbines which tend to have low cut-in speeds and high efficiency in low winds exhibit better capacity factors than constant-speed turbines. Modern utility-grade turbines at good sites (class 4) can achieve capacity factors in the range of 25 to 30 percent.

The combination of cost and performance can be used to calculate the cost of energy (COE) as follows:

$$\text{COE} = \frac{\text{FCR} \times \text{ICC}}{8{,}760 C_f} + (\text{O\&M}) \qquad (9.1.17)$$

where FCR is the fixed charge rate for the cost of capital and for other fixed charges such as taxes and insurance, ICC is the installed capital cost of the turbine and balance of plant in dollars per kilowatt. This method is useful to estimate the cost of energy for different technologies or sites. However, for investment decisions, more detailed analyses that include the effects of various investment strategies, tax incentives, and environmental factors should be performed. Ramakumar et al. discuss the economic aspects of advanced energy technologies, including wind energy systems.

POWER FROM VEGETATION AND WOOD

Staff Contribution

Vegetation offers, by photosynthesis, a natural process for the storage of solar energy. The efficiency of the photosynthetic process for the conversion of the sun's rays into a usable fuel form is low (less than 2 percent is probably realistic). Wood, wood waste, sawdust, hogged fuel, bagasse, straw, and tanbark have heating values ranging to 10,000 ± Btu/lb (see Sec. 7.1). They may be incinerated for disposal as waste material or burned directly for the subsequent production of steam or hot water, most often used in the processing activities of the plant, e.g., hot water soak of logs for plywood peeling and steam for drying in paper mills. In food processing, fruit pits and nut shells have been used to generate a portion of the in-house requirements for steam.

The alternative to direct burning of the so-called biofuels lies in their possible conversion to gaseous fuel by gasification at high temperature in the presence of air. Pyrolitic treatment can render biofuels to fractions of liquids and gases that have thermal value. In both cases, the solid residue remaining also has some thermal value which can be utilized in normal combustion.

Tree farming, with controlled growth and cutting, proposes to balance harvesting plans to load demands; e.g., Szego and Kemp (*Chem. Tech.*, May 1973) project a 400-mi^2 ''energy plantation'' to serve a 400-MW steam electric plant. Such proposals would utilize proved steam power plant cycles and equipment for novel breeding, growing, harvesting, preparation, and combustion of vegetation. (See also Sec. 7.1.)

The **photosynthesis process** is basic to all agricultural practice. The human animal has long known how to convert grain to alcohol. It can be said that as long as we can grow green stuff we should be able to harness some of the sun's energy. The prohibition era in the United States saw many efforts to use the alcohol production capacity of the nation to offer alcohol as a substitute or supplementary fuel for internal combustion engines. Ethanol (C_2H_5OH) and methanol (CH_3OH) have properties that are basically attractive for internal combustion engines, to wit, smokeless combustion, high volatility, high octane ratings, high compression ratios ($R_v > 10$). Heating values are 9,600 Btu/lb for methanol and 12,800 Btu/lb for ethanol. On a volume basis these translate, respectively, to 63,000 and 85,000 Btu/gal for methanol and ethanol. Gasoline, by comparison, has 126,000 Btu/gal (20,700 Btu/lb). (See Sec. 7 for values.) The blending of ethanol and methanol with gasolines (9 ± gasoline to 1 ± alcohol) has been used particularly in Europe since the 1930s as a suitable internal combustion engine fuel. The miscibility of the lighter alcohols with water and gasoline introduces corrosion

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

problems for engine parts and lowers the octane number. Higher-carbon alcohols (e.g., butyl) which are immiscible with water are possible blending substitutes, but their availability and cost are not presently attractive. Such properties as flash point would introduce further problems. While these constitute some of the unsolved technical problems, the basic principle of harnessing the sun's energy through vegetation will continue as a provocative challenge not only in the field of power generation but also as a solution for the perennial farm problem of waste disposal.

SOLAR ENERGY

Erich A. Farber

REFERENCES: Daniels, ''Direct Use of the Sun's Energy,'' Yale. ASHRAE, ''Solar Energy Use for Heating and Cooling of Buildings.'' Duffie and Beckman, ''Solar Engineering of Therma Processes,'' Wiley. Lunde, ''Solar Thermal Engineering,'' McGraw-Hill. Kreider and Kreith, ''Solar Heating and Cooling,'' McGraw-Hill. ASHRAE, ''Handbook of Fundamentals, 1993,'' ''Handbook of Applications, 1982.'' Yellott, Selective Reflectance, *Trans. ASHRAE*, **69**, 1963. Hay, Natural Air Conditioning with Roof Ponds and Movable Insulation, *Trans. ASHRAE*, **75**, part I, p. 165, 1969. Backus, ''Solar Cells,'' IEEE. Bliss, Atmospheric Radiation near the Surface of the Ground, *Solar Energy*, **5**, no. 3, 1961. Yellott, Passive and Hybrid Cooling Research, ''Advances in Solar Energy—1982,'' American Solar Energy Soc., Boulder. Haddock, Solar Energy Collection, Concentration, and Thermal Conversion—A Review, *Energy Sources*, **13**, 1991, pp. 461–482. ''Proceedings of the Intersociety Energy Conversion Conferences,'' annual (with the 29th in 1994), The University of Florida, ''Erich A. Farber Archives.'' ''European Directory of Renewable Energy, Suppliers and Services 1994,'' James & James Ltd., London, England.

Notation

A, R, T = subscripts denoting absorbed, reflected, and transmitted solar radiation
C = concentration ratio
c = subscript denoting collector cover
c_p = specific heat of fluid, Btu/(lb · °F)
I_{DN} = direct normal solar intensity, Btu/(ft² · h)
I_d = diffuse radiation, Btu/(ft² · h)
I_o = radiation intensity beyond earth's atmosphere, Btu/(ft² · h)
I_r = reflected solar radiation, Btu/(ft² · h)
I_{SC} = solar constant; normal incidence intensity at average earth-sun distance, Btu/(ft² · h)
I_t = total solar radiation, Btu/(ft² · h)
L = latitude, deg
m = air mass
o, i = subscripts denoting outgoing and incoming fluid conditions
q = rate of heat flux, Btu/(ft² · h)
q_I = heat flow through insulation, Btu/(ft² · h)
T_p = temperature of absorbing surface, °R
U = overall coefficient of heat transfer, Btu/(ft² · h · °F)
w_f = flow rate of collecting fluid, lb/(h · ft²)
ϕ = solar azimuth, deg from south
α, ρ, τ = absorptance, reflectance, and transmittance for solar radiation
β = solar altitude, deg
δ = solar declination, deg
ε = emittance for long-wave radiation
γ = wall-solar azimuth, deg
λ = unit of wavelength, μm
Σ = angle of tilt from horizontal, deg
θ = incident angle, deg, from perpendicular to surface

Introduction and Scope

The sun exerts forces upon the earth and radiates solar energy produced within the sun by nuclear fusion. A small fraction of that energy is intercepted by the earth and is converted by nature to heat, winds, ocean currents, waves, tides; makes plants grow, some of which over millions of years produced fossil fuels (oil, coal, and gas); and creates biomass which can be burned to generate heat and/or power. Solar energy is implicit in many subject areas treated elsewhere in the Handbook; only the more direct uses such as water heating, space heating and cooling, swimming pool heating, solar distillation, solar drying and cooking, solar furnaces, solar engines, solar electricity generation, and solar assisted transportation will be treated here. The total field is widely termed *alternative or renewable sources of energy and their conversion.*

Solar Energy Utilization Solar energy reaches the earth's surface as shortwave electromagnetic radiation in the wavelength band between 0.3 and 3.0 μm; its peak spectral sensitivity occurs at 0.48 μm (Fig. 9.1.10). Total solar radiation intensity on a horizontal surface at sea level varies from zero at sunrise and sunset to a noon maximum which can reach 340 Btu/(ft² · h) (1,070 W/m²) on clear summer days. This inexhaustible source of energy, despite its variability in magnitude and direction, can be used in three major processes (Daniels, ''Direct Use of the Sun's Energy,'' Yale; Zarem and Erway, ''Introduction to the Utilization of Solar Energy,'' McGraw-Hill): (1) **Heliothermal,** in which the sun's radiation is absorbed and converted into heat which can then be used for many purposes, such as evaporating seawater to produce salt or distilling it into potable water; heating domestic hot water supplies; house heating by warm air or hot water; cooling by absorption refrigeration; cooking; generating electricity by vapor cycles and thermoelectric processes; attaining temperatures as high as 6,500°F (3,600°C) in solar furnaces. (2) **Heliochemical,** in which the shorter wavelengths can cause chemical reactions, can sustain growth of plants and animals, can convert carbon dioxide to oxygen by photosynthesis, can cause degradation and fading of fabrics, plastics, and paint, can be used to detoxify toxic waste, and can increase the rate of chemical reactions. (3) **Helioelectrical,** in which part of the energy between 0.33 and 1.3 μm can be converted directly to electricity by photovoltaic cells. Silicon solar batteries have become the standard power sources for communication satellites, orbiting laboratories, and space probes. Their use for terrestrial power generation is currently under intensive study, with primary emphasis upon cost reduction. Other methods include thermoelectric, thermionic, and photoelectromagnetic processes and the use of very small antennas in arrays for the conversion of solar energy to electricity (Antenna Solar Energy to Electricity Converter/ASETEC, Air Force Report, AF C FO 8635-83-C-0136, Task 85-6, Nov. 1988).

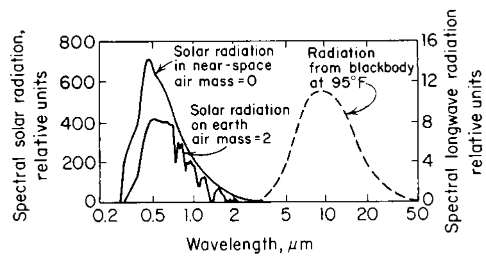


Fig. 9.1.10 Spectral distribution of solar radiation and radiation emitted by blackbody at 95°F (35°C).

Solar Radiation Intensity In space at the average earth-sun distance, 92.957 million mi (150 million km), solar radiation intensity on a surface normal to the sun's rays is 434.6 ± 1 Btu/(ft² · h) (1,370 ± 3 W/m²). This quantity, called the solar constant I_{SC}, undergoes small (±1 percent) periodic variations which affect primarily the shortwave portion of the spectrum (Abbott, in Moon, Standard Polar Radiation Curves, *Jour. Franklin Inst.*, Nov. 1940). Recent measurements using satellites give essentially the same results. Since the earth-sun distance varies throughout the year, the intensity beyond the earth's atmosphere I_o also varies by ± 3.3 percent (Table 9.1.3). The great seasonal variations in terrestrial solar radiation intensity are due to the earth's tilted axis, which causes the solar declination δ (the angle between the earth's equatorial plane and earth-sun line) to change from 0° on Mar. 21 and Sept. 21 to −23.5° on Dec. 21 and +23.5° on June 21.

In passing through the earth's atmosphere, the sun's radiation is partially and selectively absorbed, scattered, and reflected by water vapor

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.1.3 Annual Variation in Solar Declination and Solar Radiation Intensity beyond the Earth's Atmosphere

Date	Jan. 1	Feb. 1 Nov. 10	Mar. 1 Oct. 13	Apr. 1 Sept. 12	May 1 Aug. 12	June 1 July 12	July 1
Declination, deg	−23.0	−17.1	−7.7	+4.4	+15.0	+22.0	+23.1
Ratio, I_o/I_{sc}	1.033	1.029	1.017	1.000	0.983	0.971	0.967
Intensity I_o,	449	447	442	435	427	422	420
Btu/(ft² · h) (W/m²)	1,416	1,409	1,393	1,370	1,347	1,331	1,324

and ozone, air molecules, natural dust, clouds, and artificial pollutants. Some of the scattered and reflected energy reaches the earth as diffuse or sky radiation I_d.

The intensity of the direct normal radiation I_{DN} depends upon the clarity and the amount of precipitable moisture in the atmosphere and the length of the atmospheric path, which is determined by the solar altitude β and expressed in terms of the air mass m, which is the ratio of the existing path length to the path length when the sun is at the zenith. Except at very low solar altitudes, $m = 1.0/\sin\beta$.

Figure 9.1.10 shows relative values of the spectral intensity of solar radiation in space for $m = 0$ (Thekaekara, Solar Energy outside the Earth's Atmosphere, *Solar Energy,* 14, no. 2, 1973) and at sea level (Moon, Standard Solar Radiation Curves, *Jour. Franklin Inst.,* Nov. 1940) for a solar altitude of 30° ($m = 2.0$). Table 9.1.4 shows the variation at 40° north latitude throughout typical clear summer (June 21) and winter (Dec. 21) days of solar altitude and azimuth (measured from the south), direct normal radiation, total solar irradiation of horizontal and vertical south-facing surfaces.

The total solar irradiation reaching a terrestrial surface is the sum of the direct, diffuse, and reflected components: $I_t = I_{DN}\cos\theta + I_d + I_r$, where θ is the incident angle between the sun's rays and a line perpendicular to the receiving surface and, I_r is the shortwave radiation reflected from adjacent surfaces.

Direct beam solar radiation intensity is measured by **pyroheliometers** with collimating tubes to exclude all but the direct rays from their sensors, which may use calorimetric, thermoelectric, or photovoltaic means to produce a response proportional to the irradiation rate. Similar but uncollimated instruments called **pyranometers** are used to measure the total radiation from sun and sky; when their sensors are shaded from the sun's direct rays, they also can measure the diffuse component.

Incident Angle Determination The incident angle θ affects both the direct solar intensity and the solar optical properties of the irradiated surface. For a flat surface tilted at an angle Σ from the horizontal, $\cos\theta = \cos\beta\cos\gamma\sin\Sigma + \sin\beta\cos\Sigma$. For vertical surfaces, $\Sigma = 90°$; so $\cos\theta = \cos\beta\cos\gamma$; for horizontal surfaces, $\Sigma = 0°$ and $\theta = 90° - \beta$. (See ASHRAE, ''Handbook of Fundamentals,'' for values of solar altitude, azimuth, and direct normal radiation throughout the year for 0 to 56° north latitude.)

Solar Optical Properties of Transparent Materials When solar radiation with total intensity I_t falls on a transparent material, part of the energy is reflected, part is absorbed, and the remainder is transmitted. At any instant,

$$I_t = q_\tau + q_A + q_R = I_t(\tau + \alpha + \rho)$$

The sum of the solar optical properties τ, α, and ρ must equal unity, but the individual values depend upon the incident angle and wavelength of the radiation, the composition of the material, and the nature of any coatings which may be applied to the surfaces.

For uncoated single-strength (3⁄32-in or 2.4-mm) clear window glass (Fig. 9.1.11), solar transmittance at normal incidence ($\theta = 0°$) is approximately 0.90, but the transmittance for longwave thermal radiation (5 μm) is virtually zero. Thus glass acts as a ''heat trap'' by admitting solar radiation readily but retaining most of the heat produced by the absorbed sunshine. This ''greenhouse effect,'' which is also exhibited but to a lesser degree by some plastic films (see Whillier, Plastic Covers for Solar Collectors, *Solar Energy*, **7**, no. 3, 1964), is the basis for most heliothermal processes. Heat absorbing glass [¼ in (6.3 mm) thick (Fig. 9.1.11)], which absorbs more than 50 percent of the incident solar radiation, is widely used by architects to reduce the heat and glare admitted through unshaded windows. Reflective coatings (Yellott, Selective Reflectance, *Trans. ASHRAE*, **69**, 1963) have been developed to serve similar purposes.

For all types of glass, transmittance falls and reflectance rises as θ exceeds about 30°. Absorptance increases somewhat owing to the increased path length and then drops off sharply toward zero as θ exceeds 60°.

Absorptance and Emittance of Opaque Surfaces Opaque materials absorb or reflect all the incident sunshine. The absorptance α for solar radiation and the emittance ε for longwave radiation at the temperature of the receiving surface are particularly important in heliotechnology. For a true blackbody, the absorptance and emittance are equal and do not change with wavelength. Most real surfaces have reflectances and absorptances which vary with wavelength (Fig. 9.1.12). Aluminum foil has a consistently low absorptance and high reflectance over the entire spectrum from 0.25 to 25 μm, while black paint has a high absorptance and low reflectance. White paint, however, has low

Table 9.1.4 Solar Altitude and Azimuth, Direct Normal Radiation, and Total Solar Radiation on Horizontal and Vertical South-Facing Surfaces, June 21 and Dec. 21, for 40° North Latitude

	June 21, declination = +23.45°						
Time: A.M.: P.M.	6; 6	7; 5	8; 4	9; 3	10; 2	11; 1	12; 12
Solar altitude, deg	14.8	26.0	37.4	48.8	59.8	69.2	73.5
Solar azimuth, deg	108.4	99.7	90.7	80.2	65.8	41.9	0.0
Direct normal irradiation, Btu/(ft² · h)	154	215	246	262	272	276	278
Total irradiation, Btu/(ft² · h)							
On horizontal surface	60	123	182	233	273	296	304
On vertical south surface	10	14	16	47	74	92	98
	Dec. 21, declination = −23.45°						
Time: A.M.; P.M.	6; 6	7; 5	8; 4	9; 3	10; 2	11; 1	12; 12
Solar altitude, deg			5.5	14.0	20.7	25.0	26.6
Solar azimuth, deg			53.0	41.9	29.4	15.2	0.0
Direct normal irradiation, Btu/(ft² · h)			88	217	261	279	284
Total irradiation, Btu/(ft² · h)							
On horizontal surface			14	65	107	119	143
On vertical south surface			56	163	221	252	263

Values adapted from ASHRAE, ''Handbook of Applications,'' 1982.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

shortwave (solar) absorptance, but beyond 3 μm its absorptance and reflectance are virtually the same as for black paint.

Solar collectors require a high α/ε ratio, while surfaces which should remain cool, such as rooftops or space vehicles, should have low ratios since their objective usually is to absorb as little solar radiation and emit as much longwave radiation as possible. Special surface treatments have been developed (see ASHRAE, ''Solar Energy Use for Heating and Cooling of Buildings,'' 1977) for which the ratio α/ε is above 7.0, making them suitable for solar collectors; others with ratios as low as 0.15 are useful as heat rejectors for space applications (see Table 9.1.5). In addition, the absorptance can be changed and controlled by paint composition (grain material and size, binder, thickness etc.) and surface configuration, both large and small.

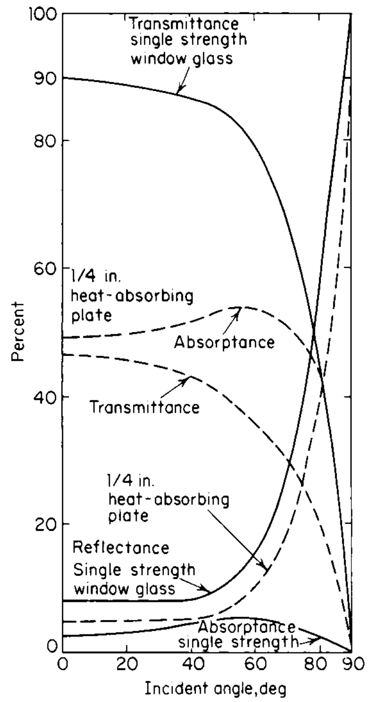


Fig. 9.1.11 Variation with incident angle of solar optical properties of 3⁄32-in (2.4-mm) clear glass and ¼-in (6.3-mm) heat-absorbing glass.

Table 9.1.5 Solar Absorptance, Longwave Emittance, and Radiation Ratio for Typical Surfaces

Surface or material	Shortwave (solar) absorptance α	Longwave emittance ε	Radiation ratio, α/ε
Flat, oil-based paints:			
Black	0.90	0.90	1.00
Red	0.74	0.90	0.82
Green	0.50	0.90	0.55
Aluminum	0.45	0.90	0.50
White	0.25	0.90	0.28
Whitewash on galvanized iron	0.22	0.90	0.25
Building materials:			
Asbestos slate	0.81	0.96	0.84
Tar paper, black	0.93	0.93	1.00
Brick, red	0.55	0.92	0.59
Concrete	0.60	0.88	0.68
Sand, dry	0.82	0.90	0.92
Glass	0.04–0.70	0.84	
Metals:			
Copper, polished	0.18	0.04	4.50
Copper, oxidized	0.64	0.60–0.90	1.03–0.71
Aluminum, polished	0.30	0.05	6.00
Selective surfaces:			
Tabor, electrolytic	0.90	0.12	7.50
Silicon cell, uncoated	0.94	0.30	3.13
Black cupric oxide on copper	0.91	0.16	5.67

Equilibrium Temperatures for Concentrating Collectors When a surface is irradiated, its temperature rises until the rate of solar radiation absorption equals the rate at which heat is removed from the surface. If no heat is intentionally removed, the maximum temperature which can be attained by a blackbody ($\alpha = \varepsilon$) is found from $I_{DN} C\alpha = 0.1713\varepsilon(T_p/100)^4$, where C is the concentration ratio. Figure 9.1.13 shows the variation of blackbody equilibrium temperatures for earth and near space where $I_{DN} = 320$ and $I_o = 435$ Btu/ft$^2 \cdot$h (1,000 and 1,370 W/m^2).

For flat plate collectors, $C = 1.0$; so their maximum attainable temperatures are below 212°F (100°C) unless a selective surface is used with $\alpha/\varepsilon > 1.0$, or both radiation and convection loss are suppressed by the use of multiple glass cover plates. Only the direct component of the total solar radiation can be concentrated, and concentrating collectors must follow the sun's apparent motion across the sky or use heliostats

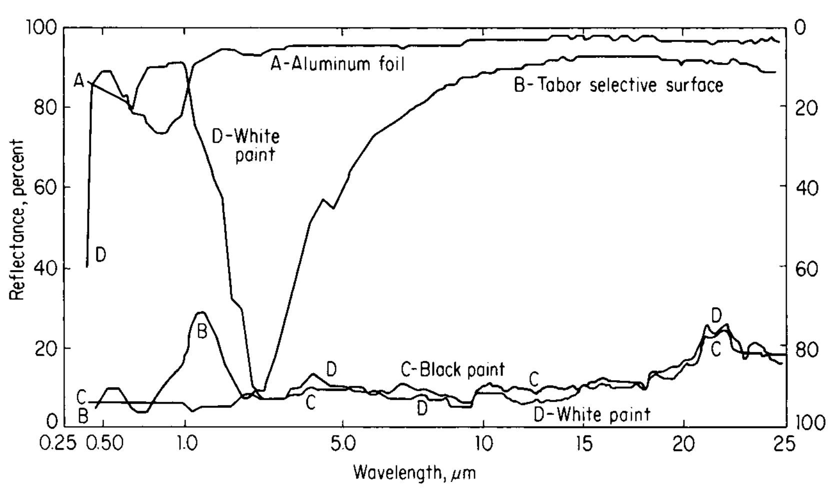


Fig. 9.1.12 Variation with wavelength of reflectance and absorptance for opaque surfaces.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

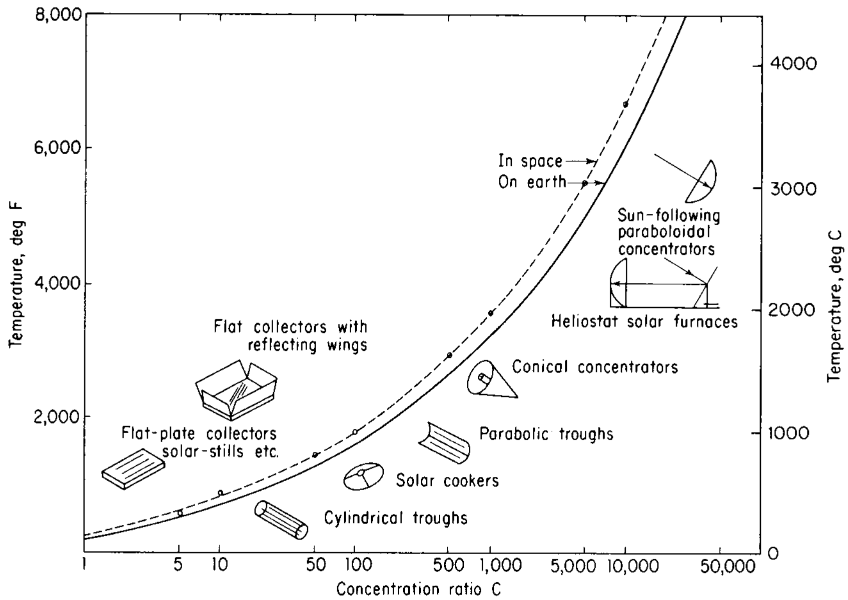


Fig. 9.1.13 Variation with concentration ratio of equilibrium temperatures for earth and space.

which serve the same function. Diffuse radiation cannot be concentrated effectively.

Flat-Plate Collectors Direct, diffuse, and reflected solar radiation can be collected and converted into heat by flat-plate collectors (Fig. 9.1.14). These generally use blackened metal plates which are finned, tubed, or otherwise provided with passages through which water, air, or

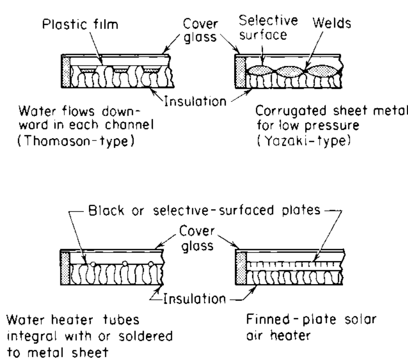


Fig. 9.1.14 Typical flat-plate solar radiation collectors.

other fluids may flow and be heated to temperatures as much as 100 to 150°F (55 to 86°C) above the ambient air. The actual temperature rise may be estimated from the heat balance for a unit area of collector surface:

$$q_A = I_t \tau_c \alpha_p = w_f c_p (t_o - T_i) \div q_l + U(t_p - t_a)$$

The loss from the back of the collector plate q_l can be minimized by the use of adequate insulation. The radiation component of the loss from the upper surface can be reduced (Zarem and Erway, ''Introduction to the Utilization of Solar Energy,'' McGraw-Hill; ASHRAE, ''Solar Energy Use for Heating and Cooling of Buildings'') by using selective reflectance coatings with high α/ε ratios and by using covers which are transparent to solar radiation but opaque to longwave emissions (see Table 9.1.6). Both convection and radiation can be reduced by the use of honeycomb structures in the airspace between the cover and the collector plate (see Hollands, Honeycomb Devices in Flat-Plate Solar Collectors, *Solar Energy*, **9**, no. 3, 1965). For the transparent covers, glass is best since it lets through the shortwave solar radiation but stops the longwave radiation given off by the collector plate. Plastics do not have this trapping characteristic, do have a shorter life, may lose their transparency, and outgas when heated. The fumes may condense on other surfaces, forming a film to reduce the collector performance.

Table 9.1.6 Transmittance and Overall Heat-Transfer Coefficients for Collectors with Glass and Plastic Covers

Type and number of covers	None	One glass	One plastic	Two glass	Two plastic
Solar transmittance	1.00	0.90	0.92	0.81	0.85
Overall coefficient U	3.90	1.12	1.30	0.71	0.87

Applications of Heliotechnology

Solar Drying Probably the largest use of solar energy over the centuries—the drying of agricultural crops, evaporation of ocean and salt lake ponds for salt production, etc.—has led more recently to more efficient dryers. The newer dryers prevent rain and dew from rewetting the materials. Simple inexpensive solar dryers—essentially transparent covers—sometimes are supplemented by air heaters providing hot air to dry crops, fish, etc., especially in tropical regions where daily rains prevent efficient natural drying. They are used for curing wood and to remove moisture from mining ores (especially if they have been washed) to reduce shipping costs. Some uneconomical mining operations have been made profitable by the use of solar drying.

Swimming Pool Heating Probably the widest U.S. commercial application of solar energy today is in swimming pool heating. To extend the swimming season, a transparent cover floating on the surface of the pool, with as few air bubbles underneath as possible, will raise the temperature of the water by up to 20°F (11°C). Flat-plate type of heaters on roofs, often made of rubber or plastics, can be used instead of or in addition to the pool cover. Approximately 1,000 Btu/ft$^2\cdot$day (3.1 kWh/m$^2\cdot$day) can be expected on average from a reasonably good collector. Since in many places a fence is required around a pool, the fence can incorporate collectors. They are not as efficient because of less favorable orientation, but they serve a dual purpose. The developing countries are interested in solar swimming pool heating since they lack fossil fuels and the currency to buy them, but want to attract tourists with modern conveniences.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Solar Ponds If water in ponds or reservoirs contains salts in solution, the warmer layers will have higher concentrations and, being heavier, will sink to the bottom. The hot water on the bottom is insulated against heat losses by the cooler layers above. Heat can be extracted from these ponds for power generation. Large solar ponds have been used in the Mideast along the Dead and Red seas, along the Salton Sea; a number of artificial ponds have been established elsewhere. The inexpensive extraction of heat at over 200°F (94°C) still requires improvement. Solar ponds are, effectively, large inexpensive solar collectors. Their heat can be used to power vapor engines and turbines; these, in turn, drive electric generators.

Solar Stills Covering swimming pools, ponds, or basins with airtight covers (glass or plastic) will condense the water vapors on the underside of the covers. The condensate produced by the solar energy can be collected in troughs as distilled water. Deep-basin stills have a water depth of several feet (between approximately 0.5 and 1.5 m) and require renewal only every few months. Shallow-basin stills have a water depth of about 0.5 to 2.0 in (approximately 1 to 5 cm) and have to be fed and flushed out frequently. Solar stills can be designed to also collect rainwater (in Florida this can double the freshwater production). If the supply water is not contaminated and only too high in solids content, it can be mixed with the distilled water to increase the actual output. This is often done for farm animal water and water used for irrigation.

The glass-covered roof-type solar still (Fig. 9.1.15*a*) is in wide use in arid areas for the production of drinking water from salty or brackish sources. The sun's rays enter through the cover glasses, warm the water, and thus produce vapor which condenses on the inner surface of the cover. The water droplets coalesce and flow downward into the discharge troughs, while the remaining brine is periodically replaced with a new supply of nonpotable water. Daily yield ranges from 0.4 lb/ft^2 (2 kg/m^2) of water surface in winter to 1.0 lb/ft^2 (5 kg/m^2) in summer (Daniels, ''Direct Use of the Sun's Energy,'' Yale, p. 174).

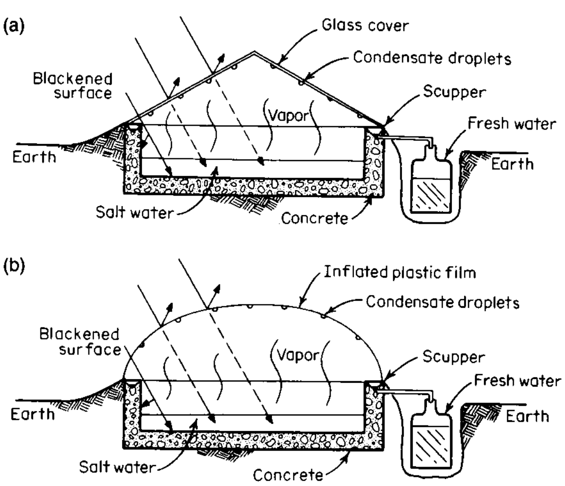


Fig. 9.1.15 Shallow-basin horizontal-surface solar stills. (*a*) Glass-covered roof type; (*b*) inflated plastic type.

Inflated plastic films (Fig. 9.1.15*b*) have also been used to cover solar stills, but their greatest success has been achieved in controlled-environment greenhouses where the vapor which transpires from plant leaves is condensed and reused at the plant roots. Stills made of inflatable plastic also are equipment in survival kits, on lifeboats, etc. Wicks in some of the solar stills can improve their performance. Most plastics have to be surface-treated for this application to produce film condensation (for good solar transmission) rather than dropwise condensation, which reflects a considerable fraction of the impinging solar radiation.

Solar Water Heaters These can be the pan (batch) type—a tank or basin with transparent cover—or tube collector type, described previously. The simple thermosiphon solar water heater (Fig. 9.1.16) with a glass-covered flat-plate collector is used in thousands of homes all over the world, but mainly in Australia, Japan, Israel, North Africa, and Central and South America. Under favorable climatic conditions (abundant sunshine and moderate winter temperatures) they can produce 30 to 50 gal (110 to 190 L) of water at temperatures up to 160°F (70°C) in summer and 120°F (50°C) in winter. Auxiliary electric heaters are often used to produce higher temperatures during unfavorable winter weather.

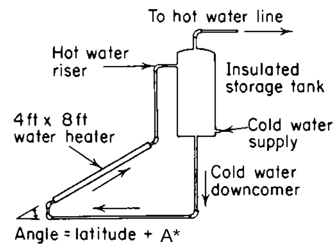


Fig. 9.1.16 Thermosiphon type of water heater. (*The collector angle *A* depends on the latitude. More favorable orientation toward the winter sun when days are shorter can produce the same amount of hot water all year round. In Florida, *A* is 10°.)

In the United States and Europe, solar collectors are usually placed on the roof, with the hot water storage tank lower. This requires a small circulating pump. The pump is controlled by a timer, a temperature sensor in the collector, or a differential temperature controller. Ideally, the pump runs when heat can be added to the water in the tank.

To protect the system from freezing, the collectors are drained, manually or automatically. The system can also be designed with a primary circuit containing antifreeze and effecting heat transfer with a heat exchanger in the tank, or by use of a double-walled tank. Another method for protection is a dual system, in which the water drains from the collectors when the pump stops. This is the preferred method for large systems.

Auxiliary heaters, usually electric, are used often in solar water heaters to handle overloads and unusually bad weather conditions.

Solar House Heating and Cooling House heating can be accomplished in temperate climates by collecting solar radiation with flat-plate devices (Fig. 9.1.14) mounted on south-facing roofs or walls (in the northern hemisphere). Water or air, warmed by solar radiation, can be used in conventional heating systems, with small auxiliary fuel-burning apparatus available for use during protracted cloudy periods. Excess heat collected during the day can be stored for use at night in insulated tanks of hot water or beds of heated gravel. Heat-of-fusion storage systems, which use salts that melt and freeze at moderate temperatures, may also be used to improve heat storage capacity per unit volume.

Solar air conditioning and refrigeration can be done with absorption systems supplied with moderately high-temperature (200°F or 93°C) working fluids from high-performance good flat-plate collectors. The economics of solar energy utilization for domestic purposes become much more favorable when the same collection and storage apparatus can be used for both summer cooling and winter heating. One such system (see Hay, Natural Air Conditioning with Roof Ponds and Movable Insulation, *Trans. ASHRAE*, **75**, part I, 1969, p. 165) uses a combination of shallow ponds of water on horizontal rooftops with panels of insulation which may be moved readily to cover or uncover the water surfaces. During the winter, the ponds are uncovered during the day to absorb solar radiation and covered at night to retain the absorbed heat. The house is warmed by radiation from metallic ceiling panels which are in thermal contact with the roof ponds. During the summer, the ponds are covered at sunrise to shield them from the daytime sun, and uncovered at sunset to enable them to dissipate heat by radiation, convection, and evaporation to the sky.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

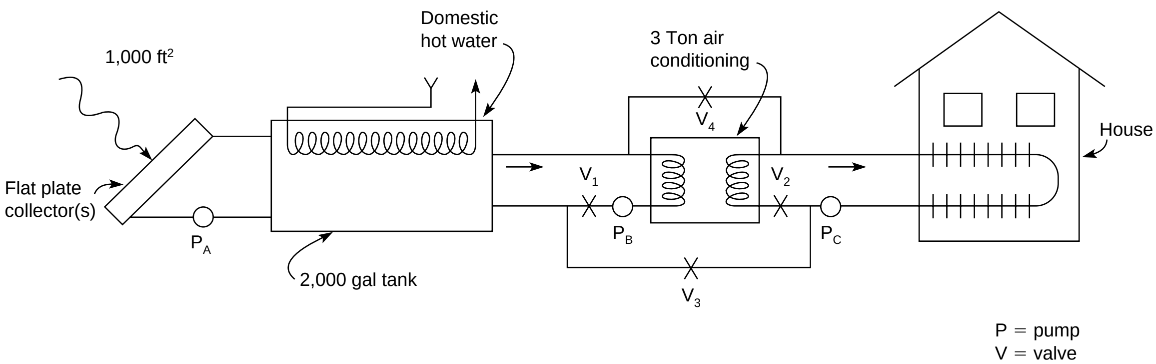


Fig. 9.1.17 Schematic of typical solar house heating, cooling, and hot water system.

Figure 9.1.17 is a schematic of a more typical active solar house heating, cooling, and hot water system. Flat-plate collectors, roughly 1,000 ft² (93 m²) to provide both 3 tons of air conditioning and hot water, properly oriented on the roof (they can actually be the roof), supply hot water to a storage tank (usually buried) of about 2,000 gal (about 7,570-L) capacity. A heat-exchanger coil, submerged in and near the top of the tank, provides domestic hot water. When heat is needed, the thermostat orders the following: Valves V_1 and V_2 close, V_3 and V_4 open, and pump P_C circulates hot water through the house as long as required. When cooling is required, the thermostat orders the following: Valves V_1 and V_2 open, V_3 and V_4 close, and pumps P_B and P_C feed hot water to the air conditioner, which, in turn, produces chilled water for circulation through the house as long as needed. This system can be used over a wide range of latitudes, and only the heating and cooling duty cycles will change (i.e., more heating in the north and more cooling in the south). The proper orientation of the collectors will depend upon the duty cycles. In the northern hemisphere, the collectors will face south. When used mostly for heating, they are inclined to the horizontal by latitude plus up to 20°. When they are used mostly for cooling, the inclination will be latitude minus up to 10°. The basic idea is to orient the collectors more favorably toward the winter sun when mostly heating and more favorably toward the summer sun when mostly cooling. The collectors can be made adjustable at extra cost. Air can be used instead of water with rock bin storage and blowers instead of pumps. Blowers require more energy to run.

The air conditioner can be a conventional type, driven by solar engines or solar electricity, or preferably an absorption system (e.g., low-temperature NH_3/H_2O), a jet air conditioning system, a liquid or solid dessicant system, or other direct energy conversion systems described later (in ''Direct Energy Conversion'').

Solar cooking utilizes (1) a sun-following broiler-type device with a metallized parabolic reflector and a grid in the focal area where cooking pots can be placed; (2) an oven-type cooker comprising an insulated box with glass covers over an open end which is pointed toward the sun. When reflecting wings are used to increase the solar input, temperatures as high as 400°F (204°C) are reached at midday. Large solar cookers for community cooking in third world country villages can be floated on water and thus easily adjusted to point at the sun. For cooking when the sun does not shine, oils or other fluids can be heated to a high temperature, 800°F (around 425°C), with a solar concentrator when the sun shines, and then stored. A range similar to an electric range but with the hot oil flowing through the coils, at adjustable rates, is then used to cook with solar energy 24 h/day.

Solar Furnaces Precise paraboloid concentrators can focus the sun's rays upon small areas, and if suitable receivers are used, temperatures up to 6,500°F (3,600°C) can be attained. The concentrator must be able to follow the sun, either through movement of the paraboloidal reflector itself (Fig. 9.1.13) or by the use of a heliostat which tracks the sun and reflects the rays along a horizontal or vertical axis into the concentrator. This pure, noncontaminating heat can be used to produce highly purified materials through zone refining, in a vacuum or controlled atmosphere. This allows us to grow crystals of high-temperature materials, crystals not existing in nature, or to do simple things such as determining the melting points of exotic materials. Other methods of heating contaminate these materials before they melt. With solar energy the materials can be sealed in a glass or plastic bulb, and the solar energy can be concentrated through the glass or plastic onto the target. The glass or plastic is not heated appreciably since the energy is not highly concentrated when it passes through it.

Solar furnaces are used in high-temperature research, can simulate the effects of nuclear blasts on materials, and at the largest solar furnace in the world (France) produce considerable quantities of highly purified materials for industry.

Power from Solar Energy During the past century (Zarem and Erway, ''Introduction to the Utilization of Solar Energy,'' McGraw-Hill) many attempts have been made to generate power from solar radiation through the use of both flat-plate and concentrating collectors. Hot air and steam engines have operated briefly, primarily for pumping irrigation water, but none of these attempts have succeeded commercially because of high cost, intermittent operation, and lack of a suitable means for storing energy in large quantities. With the rapid rise in the cost of conventional fuels and the increasing interest in finding pollution-free sources of power, attention has again turned to parabolic trough concentrators and selective surfaces (high α/ε ratios) for producing high-temperature working fluids for Rankine and Brayton cycles. Because of the cost of Rankine engines, often operating on other than water-based working fluids, Stirling engines (discussed later) and other small engines (phase shift), turbines, gravity machines, etc., have been developed, their application and use being directly related to the cost and availability of fossil fuels. The price of crude oil rose from \$2.50 to \$32.00 per barrel during the period from 1973 to the 1980s, and it stands at about \$18.00 per barrel now (1995). When fossil fuel costs are high, solar energy conversion methods become competitive and attractive.

Flat-plate collectors utilizing both direct and diffuse solar radiation can be used to drive small, low-temperature Stirling engines, which operate off the available hot water; in turn, the engines can circulate water from the buried storage tank through the collectors on the roof. These engines have low efficiency, but that is not quite so important since solar energy is free. Low efficiency generally implies larger, and thus more expensive, equipment. The application cited above is ideal for small circulating electric pumps powered by solar cells.

Concentrating collector systems, having higher conversion efficiencies, can only utilize the direct portion of the solar radiation and in most cases need tracking mechanisms, adding to the cost. A 10-MW plant was built and had been operating in Barstow, CA until recently. That plant was used both for feasibility studies and to gather valuable operating experience and data. Although intrinsically attractive by virtue of zero fuel cost, solar-powered central plants of this type are not quite yet state of the art. Proposed plants of this and competitive types require

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

abundant sunshine most of the time; obviously, they are not very effective on cloudy days, and their siting would appear to be circumscribed to desertlike areas.

Direct Conversion of Solar Radiation to Electricity Photovoltaic cells made from silicon, cadmium sulfide, gallium arsenide, and other semiconductors (see ''Solar Cells,'' National Academy of Science, Washington, 1972) can convert solar radiation directly to electricity without the intervention of thermal cycles. Of primary importance today are the silicon solar batteries which are used in large numbers to provide power for space probes, orbiting laboratories, and communication satellites. Their extremely high cost and relatively low efficiency have thus far made them noncompetitive with conventional power sources for large-scale terrestrial applications, but intensive research is currently underway to reduce their production cost and to improve their efficiency. Generation of power from solar radiation on the earth's surface encounters the inherent problems of intermittent availability and relatively low intensity. At the maximum noon intensity of 340 Btu/($ft^2 \cdot h$) (1,080 W/m^2) and 100 percent energy conversion, 10 ft^2 (1.1 m^2) of collection area would produce 1 thermal kilowatt, but with a conversion efficiency of 10 percent, the area required for an electrical kilowatt approaches 100 ft^2 (9.3 m^2). Thus very large collection areas are essential, regardless of what method of conversion may be employed. However, the total amount of solar radiation falling on the arid southwestern section of the United States is great enough to supply all the nation's electrical needs, provided that the necessary advances are made in collection, conversion, and storage of the unending supply of energy from the sun.

Solar Transportation Presently the best application of solar energy to transportation seems to be electric vehicles, although solar-produced hydrogen could be used in hydrogen-propelled cars. Since there is not enough surface area on these vehicles to collect the solar energy needed for effective propulsion, storage is needed. Vehicles have been designed and built so that batteries are charged by solar energy. Charging is by Rankine engine-, Stirling engine-, or other engine-driven generators or by photovoltaic panels. A number of utilities, government agencies, municipalities, and universities have electric vehicles, cars, trucks, or buses, the batteries in which are charged by solar energy. For general use a nationwide pollution-free system is proposed, with solar battery charging stations replacing filling stations. They would provide, for a fee, charged batteries in exchange for discharged ones. A design objective to help implement this concept would require that the change of batteries be effected quickly and safely. Electric cars with top speeds of over 65 mi/h (88 km/h) and a range of 200 mi (320 km) have been built. Regenerative braking (the motor becomes a generator when slowing down, charging the batteries), especially in urban driving, can increase the range by up to 25 percent.

Closure Our inherited energy savings, in the form of fossil fuels, cannot last forever; indeed, an energy income must be part of the overall picture. That income, in the form of solar energy, will have to assume a larger role in the future. Fossil fuels will definitely fade from the picture at some time; it behooves us to plan now for the benefit of future generations.

For the successful application of solar energy, as with any other source of energy, each potential use must be analyzed carefully and the following criteria must be met:

1. Use the minimum amount of energy to do the task (efficiency).
2. Use the best overall energy source available.
3. The end result must be feasible and workable.
4. Cost must be reasonable.
5. The end result must fit the lifestyle and habits of the user.

Schemes which have failed in the past have violated one or more of these criteria.

In utilizing conventional fossil fuels, the energy conversion equipment is a capital cost to which must be added the periodic cost of fuel. Solar energy conversion systems, likewise, represent a capital cost, but there is no periodic cost for fuel. To be competitive, solar capital costs must be less than the total cost of a conventional plant (capital cost plus fuel). There exist circumstances where this is, indeed, the case. Financing will continue to look favorably on such investments.

There are several reasons why solar energy conversion has not had a wider impact, especially in the fossil-fuel-rich countries: lack of awareness of the long-term problems associated with fossil fuel consumption; the fact that solar energy conversion equipment is not as available as would be desirable; the current continuing supply of fossil fuels at very competitive prices; and so forth. There will come a time, however, when the bank of fossil fuels will have been exhausted; solar energy conversion looms large in the future.

A significant consideration with regard to fossil fuels is the realization that they constitute an irreplaceable source of raw materials which ought really to be husbanded for their greater utility as feedstocks for medicines, fertilizers, petrochemicals, etc. Their utility in serving these purposes overrides their convenient use as cheap fossil fuels burned for their energy content alone.

GEOTHERMAL POWER
by Kenneth A. Phair

REFERENCES: Assessment of Geothermal Resources of the United States—1978, *U.S. Geol. Surv. Circ. 790*, 1979, ''Geothermal Resources Council Transactions,'' vol. 17, Geothermal Resources Council, Davis, CA. Getting the Most out of Geothermal Power, *Mech. Eng.*, publication of ASME, Sept. 1994. ''Geothermal Program Review XII,'' U.S. Department of Energy, DOE/GO 10094-005, 1994.

Geothermal energy is a naturally occurring, semirenewable source of thermal energy. Thermal energy within the earth approaches the surface in many different geologic formations. Volcanic eruptions, geysers, fumaroles, hot springs, and mud pots are visual indications of geothermal energy.

Significant **geothermal reserves** exist in many parts of the world. The U.S. Geological Survey, in *Circ. 790*, has estimated that in the United States alone there is the potential for 23,000 megawatts (MW) of electric power generation for 30 years from recoverable hydrothermal (liquid- or steam-dominated) geothermal energy. Undiscovered reserves may add significantly to this total. Many of the known resources can be developed using current technology to generate electric power and for various direct uses. For other reserves, technical breakthroughs are necessary before this energy source can be fully developed.

Power generation from geothermal energy is cost-competitive with most combustion-based power generation technologies. In a broader picture, geothermal power generation offers additional benefits to society by producing significantly less carbon dioxide and other pollutants per kilowatt-hour than combustion-based technologies.

Electric power was first generated from geothermal energy in 1904. Active worldwide development of geothermal resources began in earnest in 1960 and continues. In 1993, the capacity of geothermal power plants worldwide exceeded 6,000 MW. Table 9.1.7 lists the installed capacity by country.

Table 9.1.7 Worldwide Geothermal Capacity, 1993

Country	Capacity installed, MW
United States	2,913
Philippines	894
Mexico	700
Italy	545
New Zealand	295
Japan	270
Indonesia	142
El Salvador	95
Nicaragua	70
Iceland	45
Kenya	45
Others	65
Total	6,079

SOURCE: From ''Geothermal Resources Council Transactions,'' vol. 17, Geothermal Resources Council, Davis, CA, 1993.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Geothermal power plants are typically found in areas with ''recently'' active volcanoes and continuing seismic activity. In 1994 and 1995, significant additional geothermal power generation facilities were installed in Indonesia and the Philippines. Many countries not included in Table 9.1.7 also have significant geothermal resources that are not yet developed.

Although geothermal energy is a renewable resource, economic development of geothermal resources usually extracts energy from the reservoir at a much higher rate than natural recharge can replenish it. Therefore, facilities that use geothermal energy should be designed for high efficiency to obtain maximum benefit from the resource.

Geothermal Resources Geothermal resources may be described as hydrothermal, hot dry rock, geopressured, or magma.

Hydrothermal resources contain hot water, steam, or a mixture of water and steam. These fluids transport thermal energy from the reservoir to the surface. Reservoir pressures are usually sufficient to deliver the fluids to the surface at useful pressures, although some liquid-dominated resources require downhole pumps for fluid production. Hydrothermal resources may be geologically closed or open systems. In a closed system, the reservoir fluids are contained within an essentially impermeable boundary. Communication and fluid transport within the reservoir occur through fractures in the reservoir rock. There is little, if any, natural replenishment of fluids from outside the reservoir boundary. An open system allows influx of cold subsurface fluids into the reservoir as the reservoir pressure decreases. Hydrothermal reservoirs have been found at depths ranging from 400 ft (122 m) to over 10,000 ft (3,050 m).

Hot dry rock resources are geologic formations that have high heat content but do not contain meteoric or magmatic waters to transport thermal energy. Thus water must be injected to carry the energy to the surface. The difficulty in recovering a sufficient percentage of the injected water and the limited thermal conductivity of rock have hindered development of hot dry rock resources. Because of the vast amount of energy in these resources, additional research and development is justified to evaluate whether it is technically exploitable. In 1994 research and development of hot dry rock resources was proceeding in Australia, France, Japan, and the United States.

Geopressured resources are liquid-dominated resources at unusually high pressure. They occur between 5,000 and 20,000 ft (1,500 and 6,100 m), contain water that varies widely in salinity and dissolved minerals, and usually contain a significant amount of dissolved gas. Pressures in such reservoirs vary from about 3,000 to 14,000 lb/in^2 gage (21 to 96 MPa) with temperatures between 140°F (60°C) and 360°F (182°C). The largest geopressured zones in the United States exist beneath the continental shelf in the Gulf of Mexico, near the Texas, Louisiana, and Mississippi coasts. Other zones of lesser extent are scattered throughout the United States.

Magma resources occur as formations of molten rock that have temperatures as high as 1,300°F (700°C). In most regions in the continental United States, such resources occur at depths of 100,000 ft (30,500 m) or more. However, in the vicinity of current or recent volcanic activity, magma chambers are believed to be within 20,000 ft (6,100 m) of the surface. The Department of Energy initiated a magma energy research program in 1975, and an exploratory well was drilled in the Long Valley Caldera in California in 1989. The drilling program was planned in four phases to reach a final depth of 20,000 ft (6,100 m) or a temperature of 900°F (500°C), whichever is reached first. The first phases have been completed, but the deep, and most significant, drilling remains to be done.

Exploration Technology Geothermal sites historically have been identified from obvious surface manifestations such as hot springs, fumaroles, and geysers. Some discoveries have been made accidentally during exploring or drilling for other natural resources. This approach has been replaced by more scientific prospecting methods that appraise the extent, as well as the physical and thermodynamic properties, of the reservoir. Modern methods include geological studies involving aerial, surface, and subsurface investigations (including remote infrared sensing) and geochemical analyses which provide a guide for selecting specific drilling sites. Geophysical methods include drilling, measuring the temperature gradient in the drill hole, and measuring the thermal conductivity of rock samples taken at various depths.

Resource Development Extraction of fluids from a geothermal resource entails drilling large-diameter production wells into the reservoir formation. Bottom hole temperatures in hydrothermal wells and hot dry rock formations can exceed 450°F (232°C). Geopressured resources have lower temperatures but offer energy in the form of fluids at unusually high pressures that frequently contain significant amounts of dissolved combustible gases. Although research and development projects continue to seek ways to efficiently extract and use the energy contained in hot dry rock, geopressured, and magma resources, virtually all current geothermal power plants operate on hydrothermal resources.

Production Facilities For most projects, a number of wells drilled into different regions of the reservoir are connected to an aboveground piping system. This system delivers the geothermal fluid to the power plant. As with any fluid flow system, the geothermal reservoir, wells, and production facilities operate with a specific flow vs. pressure relationship. Fig. 9.1.18 shows a typical steam deliverability curve for a 110-MW geothermal power plant.

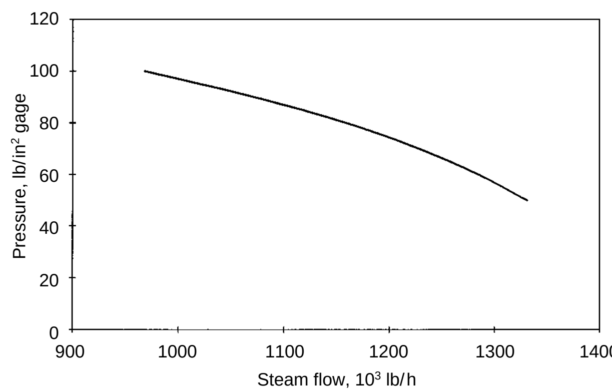


Fig. 9.1.18 Typical deliverability curve; steam flow to power plant [1,000 lb/h = (453 kg/h)] vs. turbine inlet pressure [100 lb/in^2 gage (689 kPa gage)].

Resource permeability; the number, depth, and size of the wells; and the surface equipment and piping arrangement all contribute to make the deliverability curve different for each power plant. Production of geothermal fluids over time results in declining deliverability. For one-half or more of the operating life of a reservoir, the deliverability can usually be held constant by drilling additional production wells into other regions of the resource. As the resource matures, this technique ceases to provide additional production. The deliverability curve begins to change shape and slope as deliverability declines. The power plant design must be matched to the deliverability curve if maximum generation from the resource is to be achieved.

Geothermal Power Plants A steam-cycle geothermal power plant is very much like a conventional fossil-fueled power plant, but without a boiler. There are, however, significant differences. The turbines, condensers, noncondensable gas removal systems, and materials used to fabricate the equipment are designed for the specific geothermal application. With geothermal steam delivered to the power plant at approximately 100 lb/in^2 gage (689 kPa), only the low-pressure sections of a conventional turbine generator are used. Additionally, the geothermal turbine must operate with steam that is far from pure. Chemicals and compounds in solid, liquid, and gaseous phases are transported with the steam to the power plant. At the power plant, the steam passes through a separator that removes water droplets and particulates before it is delivered to the turbine. Geothermal turbines are of conventional design with special materials and design enhancements to improve reliability in geothermal service. Turbine rotors, blades, and diaphragms operate in a wet, corrosive, and erosive environment. High-alloy steels, stainless

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

steels, and titanium provide improved durability and reliability. Still, frequent overhauls are necessary to maintain reliability and performance. The high moisture content and the corrosive nature of the condensed steam require effective moisture removal techniques in the later (low-pressure) stages of the turbine. Scale formation on rotating and stationary parts of the turbine occurs frequently. Water washing of the turbine at low-load operation is sometimes used between major overhauls to remove scale.

Most geothermal power plants use direct-contact condensers. Only when control of hydrogen sulfide emissions has been required or anticipated have surface condensers been used. Surface condensers in geothermal service are subject to fouling on both sides of the tubes. Power plants in The Geysers in northern California use conservative cleanliness factors to account for the expected tube-side and shell-side fouling. Some plants have installed on-line tube-cleaning systems to combat tube-side fouling on a continuous basis, whereas other plants mechanically clean the condenser tubes to restore lost performance.

Noncondensable gas is transported with the steam from the geothermal resource. The gas is primarily carbon dioxide but contains lesser amounts of hydrogen sulfide, ammonia, methane, nitrogen, and other gases. Noncondensable gas content can range from 0.1 percent to more than 5 percent of the steam. The makeup and quantity of noncondensable gas vary not only from resource to resource but also from well to well within a resource. The noncondensable gas removal system for a geothermal power plant is substantially larger than the same system for a conventional power plant. The equipment that removes and compresses the noncondensable gas from the condenser is one of the largest consumers of auxiliary power in the facility, requiring up to 15 percent of the thermal energy delivered to the power plant. A typical system uses two stages of compression. The first stage is a steam jet ejector. The second stage may be another steam jet ejector, a liquid ring vacuum pump, or a centrifugal compressor. The choice of equipment selected for the second stage is influenced by project economics and the amount of gas to be compressed.

The chemicals and compounds in geothermal fluids are highly corrosive to the materials normally used for power plant equipment and facilities. The chemical content of geothermal fluids is unique to each resource; therefore, each resource must be evaluated separately to determine suitable materials for system components. Carbon steel usually will degrade at alarmingly high rates when exposed to geothermal fluids. Corrosion-resistant materials such as stainless steel may perform satisfactorily, but may experience rapid, unpredictable local failures depending upon the composition of the geothermal fluid. Based on experience with a number of geothermal resources:

Carbon steel with a corrosion allowance is usually suitable for transporting dry geothermal steam.

Geothermal condensate and cooling water usually require corrosion-resistant piping and equipment.

Because noncondensable gas is also corrosive, special materials are usually required.

Copper is extremely vulnerable to attack from the atmosphere surrounding a geothermal power plant. Therefore, copper wire and electrical components should be protected with tin plating and isolated from the corrosive atmosphere.

Within the context of these generalities, the fluids at each resource must be evaluated before construction materials are chosen.

The steam Rankine cycle used in fossil-fueled power plants is also used in geothermal power plants. In addition, a number of plants operate with binary cycles. Combined cycles also find application in geothermal power plants. The basic cycles are shown in Fig. 9.1.19.

The direct steam cycle shown in Fig. 9.1.19*a* is typical of power plants at The Geysers in northern California, the world's largest geothermal field. Steam from geothermal production wells is delivered to power plants through steam-gathering pipelines. The wells are up to 1 mi or more from the power plant. The number of wells required to supply steam to the power plant varies with the geothermal resource as well as the size of the power plant. The 55-MW power plants in The Geysers receive steam from between 8 and 23 production wells.

A flash steam cycle for a liquid-dominated resource is shown in

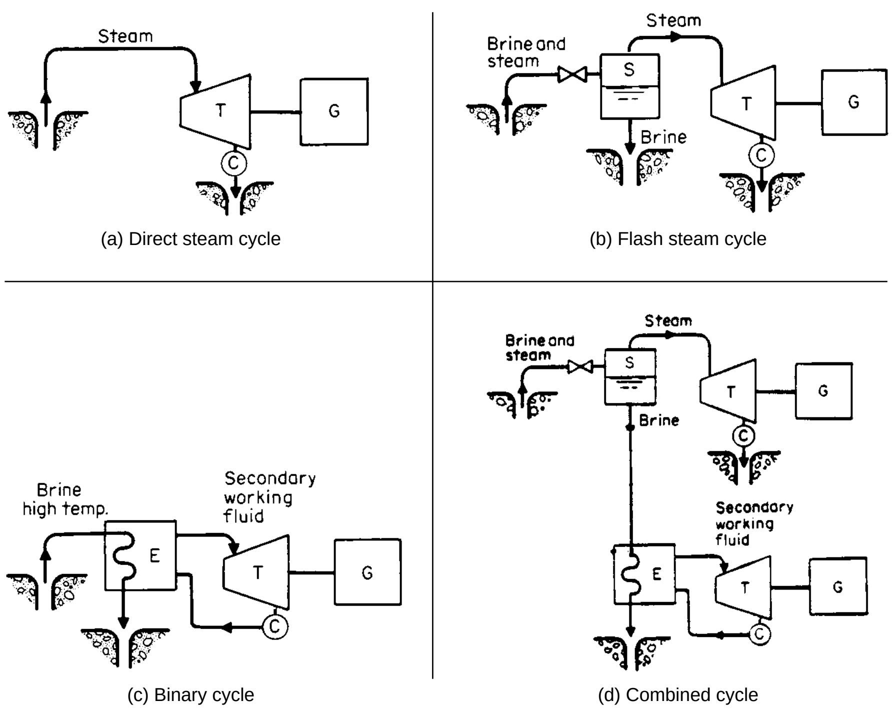


Fig. 9.1.19 Geothermal power cycles. T = turbine, G = generator, C = condenser, S = separator, E = heat exchanger.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Fig. 9.1.19*b*. Geothermal brine or a mixture of brine and steam is delivered to a flash vessel at the power plant by either natural circulation or pumps in the production wells. At the entrance to the flash vessel, the pressure is reduced to produce flash steam, which then is delivered to the turbine. This cycle has been used at power plants in California, Nevada, Utah, and many other locations around the world. Increased thermal efficiency is available from the use of a second, lower-pressure flash to extract more energy from the geothermal fluid. However, this technique must be approached carefully as dissolved solids in the geothermal fluids will concentrate and may precipitate as more steam is flashed from the fluid. The solids also tend to form scale at lower temperatures, resulting in clogged turbine nozzles and rapid buildup in equipment and piping to unacceptable levels.

A binary cycle is the economic choice for hydrothermal resources with temperatures below approximately 330°F (166°C). A binary cycle uses a secondary heat-transfer fluid instead of steam in the power generation equipment. A typical binary cycle is shown in Fig. 9.1.19*c*. Binary cycles can be used to generate electric power from resources with temperatures as low as 250°F (121°C). The binary cycle shown in Fig. 9.1.19*c* uses isobutane as the heat-transfer fluid. It is representative of units of about 10-MW capacity. Many small modular units of 1- or 2-MW capacity use pentane as the binary fluid. Heat from geothermal brine vaporizes the binary fluid in the brine heat exchanger. The binary fluid vapor drives a turbine generator. The turbine exhaust vapor is delivered to an air-cooled condenser where the vapor is condensed. Liquid binary fluid drains to an accumulator vessel before being pumped back to the brine heat exchangers to repeat the cycle. Binary-cycle geothermal plants are in operation in several countries. In the United States, they are located in California, Nevada, Utah, and Hawaii.

A geothermal combined cycle is shown in Fig. 9.1.19*d*. Just as combustion-based power plants have achieved improved efficiencies by using combined cycles, geothermal combined cycles also show improved efficiencies. Some new power plants in the Philippines use a combination of steam and binary cycles to extract more useful energy from the geothermal resource. Existing steam-cycle plants can be modified with a binary bottoming cycle to improve efficiency.

Cycle optimization is critically important to maximize the power generation potential of a geothermal resource. Selecting optimum cycle design parameters for a geothermal power plant does not follow the practices used for fossil-fueled power plants. While a higher turbine inlet pressure will improve the efficiency of the power plant, a lower turbine inlet pressure may result in increased generation over the life of the resource. The resource deliverability curve (Fig. 9.1.18) is used with turbine and cycle performance predictions to determine the flow and turbine inlet pressure that will yield maximum generation. The technical optimum must then be subjected to an economic analysis to identify the best parameters for the power plant design. Because the shape and slope of the deliverability curve vary from resource to resource, the optimum turbine inlet conditions will likewise vary.

Direct Use There are substantial geothermal resources with temperatures less than 250°F (121°C). While these resources cannot currently be used to generate electric power economically, they can be used for various low-temperature direct uses. Services such as district heating, industrial process heating, greenhouse heating, food processing, and aquaculture farming have been provided by geothermal fluids. For these applications, corrosion and fouling of surface equipment must be addressed in the system design.

The **geothermal heat pump (GHP)** is another direct use of the earth's thermal energy. The GHP, however, does not require a high-temperature geothermal reservoir. The GHP uses essentially constant-temperature groundwater as a heat source or heat sink in a conventional, reversible, water-to-air heat pump cycle for building heating or cooling. The ground, groundwater, and local climatic conditions must be included in the design of a GHP for a specific location. Systems are currently available for residential (single- and multifamily) dwellings, offices, and small industrial buildings.

Environmental Considerations Geothermal fluids contain many chemicals and compounds in solid, liquid, and gaseous phases. For both environmental protection and resource conservation, spent geothermal liquids are returned to the reservoir in injection wells. This limits the release of compounds to the environment to a small amount of liquid lost as drift from the cooling tower and noncondensable gases. Problems with arsenic and boron contamination have been encountered in the immediate vicinity of cooling towers at geothermal power plants. The noncondensable gases, composed primarily of carbon dioxide, usually also contain hydrogen sulfide. Along with its noxious odor, hydrogen sulfide is hazardous to human and animal life. Although many geothermal power plants do not currently control the release of hydrogen sulfide, others use process systems to oxidize the hydrogen sulfide to less toxic compounds. A number of the process systems produce 99.9 percent pure sulfur that can be sold as a by-product. Using geothermal energy for power generation and other direct applications provides environmental benefits. Carbon dioxide released from a geothermal power plant is approximately 90 percent less than the amount released from a combustion-based power plant of equal size, and they create little, if any, liquid or solid waste.

STIRLING (HOT AIR) ENGINES
by Erich A. Farber

Hot air engines, frequently referred to as Stirling engines, are heat engines with regenerative features in which air; other gases such as H_2, He, N_2; or even vapors are used as working fluids, operating, theoretically at least, on the Stirling or Ericsson cycle (see Sec. 4.1) or modifications of them. While the earlier engines of this type were bulky, slow, and low in efficiency, a number of new developments have addressed these deficiencies. Stirling engines are multifuel engines and have been driven by solid, liquid, or gaseous fuels, and in some cases with solar energy. They can be reciprocating or rotary, include special features, run quietly, are relatively simple in construction (no valves, no electrical systems), and if used with solar energy, produce no waste products. (See Walker, ''Stirling Engines,'' Clarendon Press, Oxford; *Proceedings*, 19th Intersociety Energy Conversion Engineering Conference, Aug. 1984, San Francisco.)

The Philips Stirling Engines The Philips Laboratory (in Holland) seems to have developed the first efficient, compact hot air or Stirling engine. It operates at 3,000 r/min, with a hot chamber temperature of 1,200°F (650°C), maximum pressure of 50 atm, and mep of 14 atm (14.1 bar). The regenerator consists of a porous coil of thin wires having 95 percent efficiency, saving about three-fourths of the heat required by the working fluid. The exhaust gases preheat the air, saving about 70 percent of this loss.

Single-cylinder engines, up to 90 hp (67 kW), and multicylinder engines of several hundred horsepower have been constructed with mechanical efficiencies of 90 percent and thermal efficiencies of 40 percent. Heat pipes incorporated in the designs improve the heat transfer characteristics. Philips Stirling engines have been installed in clean-air buses on an experimental basis. Exhaust estimates for an 1,800-kg car are C_xH_y, 0.02 g/mi (0.012 g/km); CO, 1.00 g/mi (0.62 g/km); NO (25 percent recirculated), 0.16 g/mi (0.099 g/km).

Much of the efforts at Philips in recent years have gone into Stirling engine component development, special design features, and even special fuel sources. Engines with rhombic drive were replaced by double-acting machines with ''wobble-plate'' or, as later referred to, as ''swash plate'' drive, reducing the weight and complexity of the design. Work with high temperature, efficient hydrogen storage in metallic hydrides offers the possibility of using hydrogen as fuel for transportation applications.

GMR Stirling Thermal Engines A cooperative program between the Philips Research Laboratory and General Motors Corporation resulted in the development of several engines. One, weighing 450 lb (200 kg) and operating at mean pressure of 1,500 lb/in^2 (103.4 bar), produces 30 hp (22 kW) at 1,500 r/min with a 39 percent efficiency and 40 hp (30 kW) at 2,500 r/min with a 33.3 percent efficiency. Another weighing 127 lb (57 kg) and operating at a mean pressure of 1,000 lb/in^2

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

(6.9 MN/m²), produces 6 hp (4.5 kW) at 2,400 r/min with a 29.6 percent efficiency and 8.63 hp (6.4 kW) at 3,600 r/min with a 26.4 percent efficiency.

One such engine was used for a portable Stirling engine electric generator set; another was installed in a Stirling engine electric hybrid car. A 360 hp (265 kW) marine engine was delivered to the U.S. Navy. Another 400-hp (295-kW) engine with special control features was built and tested, and could reverse its direction of rotation almost instantaneously.

Ford-Philips Stirling Engine Development In 1972, Ford Motor Company and Philips entered into a joint development program and developed Stirling engines which were installed experimentally in then-current automobile models.

MAN/MWM Stirling Engines The German company Entwicklungsgruppe Stirlingmotor MAN/MWM, in cooperation with Philips, developed a single acting engine with rhombic drive which developed 30 hp (22 kW) at 1500 r/min and formed the basic test unit for a four-cylinder 120-hp (88-kW) engine. Some double acting engines have been developed. In cooperation with the Battelle Institut, Frankfurt, a 15-kVA Stirling engine hydroelectric generator was developed. It operated at 3,000 r/min, pressurized with helium, with an efficiency of 25 percent.

United Stirling Engines United Stirling AB (Sweden) in cooperation with Philips developed Stirling engines for boats, including those of the Swedish Royal Navy, and engines for buses. One generated 200 hp (145 kW) at 3,000 r/min and a mean helium pressure of 220 atm (22.3 MN/m²).

Internally Focusing Regenerative Gas Engines These engines, conceived at the Solar Energy Laboratory of the University of Wisconsin, use solar energy, concentrated by a parabolic reflector and directed through a quartz dome upon an internal absorber. This reduces the heat losses, since the engine has no external high-temperature heat transfer surfaces. A small working model of this engine has been built at Battelle Memorial Institute and was demonstrated driving a small fan.

Fractional-Horsepower Solar Hot Air Engines The Solar Energy and Energy Conversion Laboratory of the University of Florida has developed small (¼ to ⅓ hp; 0.186 to 0.25 kW) solar hot air engines (some of them converted lawnmower engines). The actual power output of the engines is determined by the size of the solar concentrator rather than by the engine. Some of these engines are self-supercharging to increase power. Water injection, self-acting, increased power by 19 percent. The average speed of the closed-cycle engines is about 500 r/min; average conversion efficiency is about 9 percent. Open-cycle engines separate the heating process from the working cycle, allowing the design of high-speed or low-speed engines as desired. Any heat source can be used with these engines, such as solar, wood, farm wastes, etc. They are simple, rugged, and designed for possible use in developing countries.

The Stirling Engine for Space Power General Motors Corporation, under contract to the U.S. Air Force Aeronautical Systems Command, adapted the GMR Stirling engine to possible space applications. A 3-kW engine was built utilizing NaK heated to 1,250°F (677°C) as a heat source and water at 150°F (66°C) as the cooling medium. The engine is pressurized to a mean pressure of 1,500 lb/in² (103.4 bar), giving an efficiency of 27 percent at 2,500 r/min. The weight of this solar energy conversion system is 550 lb (249 kg). Chemical, nuclear, or other energy sources can also be used.

Free-Piston Stirling Engines The free-piston Stirling engines, pioneered principally by William Beale, consist of displacer and power pistons, coupled by springs, inside one cylinder. They are relatively simple, self-starting, and if pressurized, can be hermetically sealed. The power piston can be coupled to a pump piston since the motion is reciprocating. Single- and double-acting engines have been designed, built, and demonstrated for water pumping and electricity generation. Some of the engines are presently under evaluation by the U.S. Agency for International Development for possible use in developing countries. They can use alternative energy sources, principally solar energy.

Closed-Environment Stirling Engines A number of Stirling engines have been developed to utilize energy sources which do not require coupling to the external environment. Such engines can be powered by specially prepared fuel sources or by stored energy.

Artificial-Heart Stirling Engines Considerable interest has been shown in the possible use of Stirling engines either to assist weakened hearts or to replace them if they have been damaged beyond repair. The program is supported by the National Heart Institute and has involved many organizations (e.g., Philips, Westinghouse, Aerojet-General, McDonnell-Douglas, University of California, Washington State University). Most of the engines are powered by nuclear fuel sources.

Low-Temperature Stirling Engines In many applications, low-temperature sources such as exhaust gases from combustion, waste steam, and hot water from solar collectors are available. Several groups (University of Florida, University of Wisconsin, Zagreb University in former Yugoslavia, etc.) are working on the development of low-temperature Stirling engines. Models for demonstration have been built and their performance has been evaluated.

Heat Pump and Cryocooler Stirling Engines A Stirling engine can be driven by any mechanical source or by another Stirling engine, and when so motored becomes a heat pump or cooler, depending upon the effects desired and utilized. Special duplex designs for Stirling engines lend themselves especially well for these applications. A number of private companies and public laboratories are involved in this development. Philips manufactured small cryocoolers in the past and sold them throughout the world.

Liquid Piston Stirling Engines Liquid piston engines are extremely simple. The basic liquid piston Stirling engine consists of two U tubes. A pipe connects the two ends of one of the U tubes with one end of the other. The unconnected end of the second U tube is left open. Both U tubes are filled with liquid, thus forming the liquid pistons. The closed U tube liquid acts as the displacer and the other as the power unit. The section of the connecting pipe between the displacer U tube ends contains the regenerator. This engine is referred to as the basic **Fluidyne**. Even though these engines have been around for a long time much development work is still needed. Their efficiencies are still extremely low.

Closure During their history, Stirling engines have experienced periods of high interest and rapid development. Stirling Engines for Energy Conversion in Solar Energy Units (Trukhov and Tursunbaev, *Geliotekhnika*, **29,** no. 2, 1993, pp. 27–31) summarizes the performance of 15 Stirling engines. With supply temperatures of about 600°C, their output varies from 0.55 to 43.2 kW, their speed varies from 833 to 4,000 r/min, and their conversion efficiencies vary from 12.5 to 30.3 percent. Development work continues on some problem areas (seals, hydrogen embrittlement, weight, etc.). Interest in the potential of these engines remains high, as indicated by an average of about 50 Stirling engine papers presented and published yearly in each of the 1991 (26th) through 1994 (29th) ''Proceedings of the Intersociety Energy Conversion Conferences.''

POWER FROM THE TIDES

Staff Contribution

REFERENCES: The Rance Estuary Tidal Power Project, *Pub. Util. Ftly.*, Dec. 3, 1964. *Mech. Eng.*, Ap. 1984. ASCE Symposium, 1987: Tidal Power. Gray and Gashus, ''Tidal Power,'' Department of Commerce, NOAA, Water for Energy, *Proc. 3d Intl. Symp.*, 1986.

The tides are a renewable source of energy originating in the gravitational pull of the moon and sun, coupled with the rotation of the earth. The consequent portion of the earth's rotation is a mean ocean tide of 2 ± ft (0.6 m). The seashore periodic variation of the tides averages 12 h 25 min.

Tidal power is derivable from the large periodic variations in tidal flows and water levels in certain oceanic coastal basins. Suitable configurations of the continental shelves and of the coastal profiles result in reflection and resonance that amplify normally small bulges to ranges as high as 50 ± ft (15 ± m).

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Principal tidal-power sites include the North Sea [12 ft (3.6 m) average tidal range]; the Irish Sea [22 ft (6.7 m)]; the west coast of India [23 ft (7 m)]; the Kimberly coast of western Australia [40 ft (12 m)]; San Jose Bay on the east coast of the Argentine [23 ft (7 m)]; the Kislaya Guba (Kisgalobskaia Bay) near the White Sea (no data); St. Michel (including the Rance estuary) on the Brittany coast of France [26 ft (8 m)]; the Bristol Channel (Severn) in England [32 ft (9.8 m)]; the Bay of Fundy (including the Chignecto Bay between New Brunswick and Nova Scotia and the Minas Basin in Nova Scotia) [40 ft (12 m)]; Passamaquoddy Bay between Maine and New Brunswick [18 ft (5.5 m)].

The harnessing of the tides reaches back into ancient history. Tidal mills, typically with undershot water wheels, were used in New England raceway estuaries, with reversible features for ebb and flood conditions. These power applications were suitable for purposes such as grinding grain, but their number and size were small. In recent times the unique tidal ranges to 50 ± ft (15 ± m) have prompted many studies, proposals, and projects for most of the regions cited above. The attraction for the utilization of tides to generate electric power lies in the facts that there results no air or thermal pollution, the source is effectively inexhaustible, and the construction work related to the tidal power plant is relatively benign in its environmental impact. Despite these efforts for the generation of electricity, there are only four tidal power developments in actual service (1995)—the Rance estuary in France (240,000 kW), the Kislaya Guba in Russia (400 kW), the Bay of Fundy in Canada (20,000 kW), and a small pilot plant in Kiangshia, China.

Developments take one of two general forms: **single-basin** or **multiple-basin**. A single-basin project, such as the Rance, has a dam, sluices, locks, and generating units in a structure separating a tidal basin from the sea. Water is trapped in the basin after a high tide. As the water level outside the basin falls with the tide, flow from the basin through turbines generates power. Power also may be generated when a basin emptied during a low tide is refilled on a rising tide. Numerous variations in operation are possible, depending on tide conditions and the relationship between the tide cycles and the load cycles. Pumping into or out of the basin increases the availability of the installed capacity for peak load service. A multiple-basin development, such as projected for Chignecto or Passamaquoddy, generally has the power house between two basins. Sluices between the sea and the basins are so arranged that one basin is filled twice a day on high tide and the other emptied twice a day on low tide. Power output can be made continuous.

The amount of **energy available** from a tidal development is proportional to the basin area and to the square of the tidal range. Head variations are large in tidal projects during generating cycles and on a daily, monthly, and annual basis owing to various cosmic factors. Intermittent power, as from all single-basin plans and from two-basin plans with low-capacity factor, implies that the output can best be utilized as peaking capacity. Because of low heads, particularly toward the end of any generating cycle when pools have been drawn down, the cost of adding generating units only to tidal projects is well over the total installation cost of alternative peaking capacity. To be economically competitive with alternative capacity, the tidal projects must produce enough energy to pay the power-plant costs and also to pay for the dams and other costs, such as general site development, transmission, operation, and replacements.

The **risks and uncertainties** involved in designing, pricing, building, and operating capital-intensive tidal works, and the technological developments in alternative types of generating capacity, have tended to defeat tidal developments. Civil works are too extensive; transmission distances to load centers are too great; the required scale of development is too large for existing loads; the coordination of system demands and tidal generation requires interconnections for economic loading; the ultimate capacity of all the world's tidal potential is practically insignificant to meet the world's demands for electricity. In addition, the matter of interrupting tidal action and storage of tidewaters in large basins for extended periods of time raises the possibility of saltwater infiltration of adjacent underground fresh water supplies which, in many cases, are the source of drinking water for the contiguous areas.

UTILIZATION OF ENERGY OF THE WAVES

Staff Contribution

According to Albert W. Stahl, USN (*Trans, ASME,* **13,** p. 438), the total energy of a series of **trochoidal deep-sea waves** may be expressed as follows: hp per ft of breadth of wave $= 0.0329 \times H^2\sqrt{L}(1 - 4.935H^2/L^2)$, where H = height of wave, ft, and L = length of wave between successive crests, ft. For example, with $L = 25$ ft and $L/H = 50$, hp = 0.04; with $L = 100$ ft and $L/H = 10$, hp = 31.3. Not much more than a quarter of the total energy of such waves would probably be available after reaching shallow water, and apparatus rugged enough for this purpose would doubtless be unable to utilize more than a third of this amount. **Wave motors** brought out from time to time have depended for their operation largely on the lifting power of the waves.

Gravity waves may be only a few feet high yet develop as much as 50 kW/ft of wavefront. Historical wave motors utilize (1) the kinetic energy of the waves by a device such as a paddle wheel or turbine or (2) the potential energy from devices such as a series of floats or by impoundment of water above sea level. Few devices proposed utilize both forms of energy. Jacobs (*Power Eng.,* Sept. 1956) has analyzed the periodic fluctuation of **''seiching''** of the water level of harbors or basins where, with a resonant port, a 1,000-ft wavefront might be used to achieve a liquid piston effect for the compression of air, the air to be subsequently used in an air turbine.

The principle of using an oscillating column of displaced air has been employed for many years in buoys and at lighthouses, where the wave-actuated rise and fall of the column of air actuated sound horns. A wave-actuated air turbine and electric generator have been operating on the Norwegian coast to study feasibility and to gather operating data. Another similar unit has been emplaced recently off the Scottish coast, and while serving to provide operational data, it also feeds about 2 MW of power into the local grid. If the results are favorable, this particular type of unit may be expanded at this site or emplaced at other similar sites.

A variation of capture of sea wave energy is to cause waves to spill over a low dam into a reservoir, whence water is conducted through water turbines as it flows back to sea level. Any attempt to channel significant quantities of water by this method would require either a natural location or one in which large concrete structures (much of them under water) are emplaced in the form of guides and dams. The capital expenses implicit in this scheme would be enormous.

The extraction of sea wave energy is attractive because not only is the source of energy free, but also it is nonpolluting. Most probably, the capture of wave energy for beneficial transformation to electric power may be economically effected in isolated parts of the world where there are no viable alternatives. Remote island locations are candidates for such installations.

UTILIZATION OF HEAT ENERGY OF THE SEA

Staff Contribution

REFERENCES: Claude and Boucherot, *Compt. rend.,* 183, 1926, pp. 929–933. *The Engineer,* 1926, p. 584. Anderson and Anderson, *Mech. Eng.,* Apr. 1966. Othmer and Roels, Power, Fresh Water, and Food from Cold, Deep Sea Water, *Science,* Oct. 12, 1973. Roe and Othmer, *Mech. Eng.,* May 1971. Veziroglu, ''Alternate Energy Sources: An International Compendium.'' Department of Commerce, NOAA, Water for Energy, *Proc. 3d Intl. Symp.,* 1986.

Deep seawater, e.g., at 1-mi (1.6-km) depth in some tropical regions, may be as much as 50°F (28°C) colder than the surface water. This difference in temperature is a fundamental challenge to the power engineer, as it offers a potential for the conversion of heat into work. The Carnot cycle (see Sec. 4.1) specifies the limits of conversion efficiency. Typically, with a heat source surface temperature T_1 = 85°F (545°R, 29.4°C, 303 K), and a heat sink temperature T_2 50° lower, or T_2 = 35°F

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

(495°R, 1.7°C, 275 K), the ideal Carnot cycle thermal efficiency = $(T_1 - T_2)/T_1 = [(545 - 495)/545]100 = 9.2$ percent.

Some units in experimental or pilot operation have demonstrated actual thermal efficiency in the range of 2 to 3 percent. These efficiencies, both ideal and actual, are far lower than those obtained with fossil or nuclear fuel-burning plants. The fundamental attraction of **ocean thermal energy conversion (OTEC)** is the vast quantity of seawater exhibiting sufficient difference in temperature between shallow and deep layers. In reality, the sea essentially represents a limitless store of solar energy which manifests itself in the warmth of seawater, especially in the top, shallow layers. Water temperatures fluctuate very little over time; thus the thermodynamic properties are relatively constant. In addition, the thermal energy is available on a 24-h basis, can be harnessed to serve a plant on land or offshore, provides ''free'' fuel, and results in a nonpolluting recycled effluent.

Consider the extent of the ocean between latitudes of 30°S and 30°N, and ascribe a temperature difference between shallow and very deep waters of 20°F. The theoretical energy content comes to about 8×10^{21} Btu. Of this enormous amount of raw energy, the actual amount posited for eventual recovery in the best of circumstances via an OTEC system is a miniscule percentage of that total. The challenge is to develop practical machinery to harness thermal energy of the sea in a competitive way.

The concept was put forward first in the nineteenth century, and it has been reduced to practice in several experimental or pilot plants in the past decades. There are three basic conversion schemes: closed Rankine cycle, open Rankine cycle, and mist cycle. In the closed cycle, warm surface water is pumped through a heat exchanger (boiler) which transfers heat to a low-temperature, high-vapor-pressure working fluid (e.g., ammonia). The working fluid vaporizes and expands, drives a turbine, and is subsequently cooled by cold deep water in another heat exchanger (condenser). The heat exchangers are large; the turbine, likewise, is large, by virtue of the low pressure of the working fluid flowing through; enormous quantities of water are pumped through the system. In the open cycle, seawater itself is the working fluid. Steam is generated by flash evaporation of warm surface water in an evacuated chamber (boiler), flows through a turbine, and is cooled by pumped cold deep water in a direct-contact condenser. The reduction of heat-transfer barriers between working fluid and seawater increases the overall system efficiency and requires smaller volumes of seawater than are used in the closed cycle. Introduction of a closed-cycle heat exchanger into the open-cycle scheme results in a slightly reduced thermal efficiency, but provides a valuable by-product in the form of freshwater, which is suitable for human and animal consumption and may be used to irrigate vegetation. A plant of this last type operates in Hawaii and generates 210 kW of electric power, with a 50-kW net surplus power available after supplying all pumping and other house power. This plant continues to provide operational and feasibility data for further development.

The mist cycle mimics the natural cycle which converts evaporated seawater to rain which is collected and impounded and ultimately flows through a hydraulic turbine to generate power.

Problems encountered in the implementation of any OTEC system revolve on material selection, corrosion, maintenance, and significant fouling of equipment and heat-transfer surfaces by marine flora and fauna. Although development of OTEC systems will continue, with a view to their application in fairly restricted locales, there is no prospect that the systems will make any significant impact on power generation in the foreseeable future.

POWER FROM HYDROGEN
Staff Contribution

REFERENCES: Stewart and Edeskuty, Alternate Fuels for Transportation, *Mech. Eng.*, June 1974. Winshe et al., Hydrogen: Its Future Role in the Nation's Energy Economy, *Science*, **180,** 1973.

Hydrogen offers many attractive properties for use as fuel in a power plant. Fundamentally it is a ''clean'' fuel, smokeless in combustion with no particulate products, and if burned with oxygen, water vapor is the sole end product. If, however, it is burned with air, some of the nitrogen may combine at elevated temperature to form NO_x, a troublesome contaminant. If carbon is present as a fuel constituent, or if it can be picked up from a source such as a lubricant, the carbon introduces further contaminant potentials, e.g., carbon monoxide and cyanogens.

Basically the potential cleanliness of combustion is supported by other properties that make hydrogen a significant fuel, to wit, prevalence as a chemical element, calorific value, ignition temperature, explosibility limits, diffusivity, flame emissivity, flame velocity, ignition energy, and quenching distance.

Hydrogen offers a unique calorific value of 61,000 Btu/lb (140,000 kJ/kg). With a specific volume of 190 ft^3/lb (12 m^3/kg) this translates to 319 Btu/ft^3 (12,000 kJ/m^3) at normal pressure and temperature, 14.7 lb/in^2 absolute and 32°F (1 bar at 0°C). These figures, particularly on the volume basis, introduce many practical problems because hydrogen, with a critical point of -400°F (33 K) at 12.8 atm, is a gas at all normal, reasonable temperatures. When compared with alternative fuels, results are as shown in Table 9.1.8.

These figures demonstrate the volumetric deficiency of gaseous hydrogen. High-pressure storage (50 to 100 atm) is a dubious substitute for the gasoline tank of an automobile. Liquefaction calls for cryogenic elements (Secs. 11 and 19). Chemical compounds, metallic hydrides, hydrazene, and alcohols are potential alternates, but practicality and cost are presently disadvantageous.

Hydrogen has been used to power a number of different vehicles. Its use as a rocket fuel is well documented; in that application, cost is no concern. Experimental use in automotive and other commercial vehicles with slightly altered internal combustion engines has not advanced beyond very early stages. Aircraft jet engines have been powered successfully for short flight times on an experimental basis, and it is conjectured that the first successful commercial application of hydrogen as a source of power will be as fuel for jet aircraft early in the twenty-first century.

In spite of the demonstrated thermodynamic advantages inherent in

Table 9.1.8 Bulk and Calorific Power of Selected Fuels (Approximate and Comparative)

Fuel	State	Sp. wt., lb/ft^3	Sp. gr.	Btu/lb	Btu/ft^3	Btu/gal
Hydrogen	Gas (NTP)	0.0052	0.07	61,000	320	(40)
Natural gas	Gas (NTP)	0.042	0.67	24,000	1,000	(130)
Gasoline (reg., 90 oct.)	Liquid	46	0.72	20,500	950,000	125,000
Ethanol (99 oct.)	Liquid	49	0.79	12,800	620,000	82,000
Methanol (98 oct.)	Liquid	49	0.79	9,600	480,000	64,000
Hydrogen	Liquid (36°R, 14.7 lb/in^2 abs)	4.4	0.07	56,000	240,000	32,000
Coal	Piled	50	0.8	12,000	600,000	80,000

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

hydrogen as a source of power, in the current competitive economic market for fuels, hydrogen still faces daunting problems because of its high cost and difficulties related to its efficient storage and transportation.

DIRECT ENERGY CONVERSION
by Erich A. Farber

REFERENCES: Kaye and Welsh, ''Direct Conversion of Heat to Electricity,'' Wiley. Chang, ''Energy Conversion,'' Prentice-Hall. Shive, ''Properties, Physics and Design of Semiconductor Devices,'' Van Nostrand. Bredt, Thermoelectric Power Generation, *Power Eng.,* Feb.–Apr. 1963. Wilson, Conversion of Heat to Electricity by Thermionic Conversion, *Jour. Appl. Phys.,* Apr. 1959. Angrist, ''Direct Energy Conversion,'' Allyn & Bacon, Harris and Moore, Combustion—MHD Power Generation for Central Stations, *IEEE Trans. Power Apparatus and Systems,* **90,** 1971. Roberts, Energy Sources and Conversion Techniques, *Am. Scientist,* Jan.–Feb. 1973. Poule, Fuel Cells: Today and Tomorrow, *Heating, Piping, and Air Conditioning,* Sept. 1970. Fraas, ''Engineering Evaluation of Energy Systems,'' McGraw-Hill. Kattani, ''Direct Energy Conversion, Addison-Wesley. Commercialization of Fuel Cell Technology, *Mech. Eng.,* Sept. 1992, p. 82. The Power of Thermionic Energy Conversion, *Mech. Eng.,* Sept. 1993, p. 78. Fuel Cells Turn Up the Heat, *Mech. Eng.,* Dec. 1994, p. 62. ''Proceedings of the Intersociety Energy Conversion Conferences,'' published yearly with the 29th in 1994.

In contrast to the conventional thermal cycle for the conversion of heat into electricity are several more direct methods of converting thermal and chemical energy into electric power. The methods which seem to have the greatest potential possibilities are thermoelectric, thermionic, magnetohydrodynamic (MHD), fuel cell, and photovoltaic. The principles of operation of these processes have long been known, but technological and economic obstacles have limited their use. New applications, materials, and technology now provide increased impetus to the development of these processes.

Thermoelectric Generation

Thermoelectric generation is based on the phenomenon, discovered by **Seebeck** in 1821, that current is produced in a closed circuit of two dissimilar metals if the two junctions are maintained at different temperatures, as in thermocouples for measuring temperature. A thermoelectric generator is a low-voltage, dc device. To obtain higher voltages, the elements must be stacked. Typical thermocouples produce potentials on the order of 50 to 70 μV/°C and power at efficiencies on the order of 1 percent.

Certain semiconductors have thermoelectric properties superior to conductor materials, with resultant improved efficiency. The criterion for evaluating material characteristics for thermoelectric generation is the **figure of merit *Z*,** measured in $(°C)^{-1}$ and defined as $Z = S^2/(\rho K)$, where S = Seebeck coefficient, V/°C; ρ = electrical resistivity, $\Omega \cdot$ cm; K = thermal conductivity, W/(°C $\cdot$ cm).

An ideal thermoelectric material would have a high Seebeck coefficient, low electrical resistivity, and low thermal conductivity. Unfortunately, materials with low electrical resistivity have a high thermal conductivity since both properties are dependent, to some extent, on the number of free electrons in the material. The maximum conversion efficiency of a thermoelectric generator is a function of the figure of merit, the hot junction temperature, and the temperature difference between the hot and cold junctions.

In some types of thermoelectric materials, the voltage difference between the hot and cold junctions results from the flow of negatively charged electrons (*n* type, hot junction positive), whereas in other types, the voltage difference between the cold and hot junctions results from the flow of positively charged voids vacated by electrons (*p* type, cold junction positive). Since the voltage output of a typical semiconductor thermoelectric couple is low (about 100 to 300 μV/°C temperature difference between the hot and cold junctions), it is advantageous to use both *p*- and *n*-type materials in constructing a thermoelectric generator. The two types of materials make it possible to connect the thermojunctions in series electrically and in parallel thermally (Fig. 9.1.20).

Typical semiconductor thermoelectric materials are compounds and alloys of lead, selenium, tellurium, antimony, bismuth, germanium, tin, manganese, cobalt, and silicon. To these materials, minute quantities of

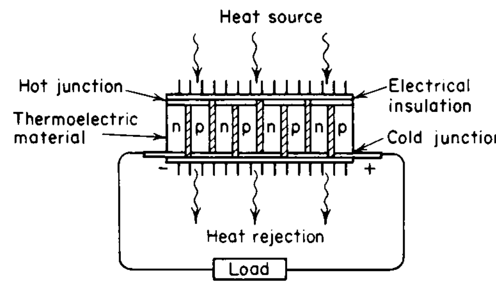


Fig. 9.1.20

''dopants'' such as boron, phosphorus, sodium, and iodine are sometimes added to improve properties. Typical *Z* values for the more commonly used thermoelectric materials are in the range of 0.5×10^{-3} to 3.0×10^{-3} $(°C)^{-1}$. The onset of deleterious thermochemical effects at elevated temperatures, such as sublimation or reaction, limit the materials' application. Bismuth telluride alloys, which have the highest *Z* values, cannot be used beyond a hot-side temperature of about 300°C without encountering undue degradation. Silicon-germanium alloys have high-temperature capability up to 1,000°C that can take advantage of higher Carnot efficiencies. However, these alloys possess low *Z* values. Optimized designs of thermoelectric junctions using semiconductor materials have resulted in experimental conversion efficiencies as high as 13 percent; however, the efficiency of practical thermoelectric generators is lower, e.g., 4 to 9 percent. Materials which have higher figures of merit (2 or 3×10^{-3}) and which are capable of operating at higher temperatures (800 to 1,000°C) are required for an appreciable improvement in efficiency.

Thermoelectric-generation technology has matured considerably through its application to nuclear power systems for space vehicles where modules as large as 500 W have been used. It is also used in terrestrial applications such as gas pipeline cathodic protection and power for microwave repeater stations. Development work continues, but the use of this technology is expected to be limited to special cases where power source selection criteria other than efficiency and first cost will dominate.

Thermoelectric Cooling

The **Peltier effect,** discovered in 1834, is the inverse of the Seebeck effect. It involves the heating or cooling of the junction of two thermoelectric materials by passing current through the junction. The effectiveness of the thermojunction as a cooling device has been greatly increased by the application of semiconductor thermoelectric materials. Typical applications of thermoelectric coolers include electronic circuit cooling, small-capacity ice makers, and dew-point hygrometers, small refrigerators, freezers, portable coolers or heaters, etc. These devices make it possible to preserve vaccines, medicines, etc., in remote areas and in third world countries during disasters or military conflicts.

Thermionic Generation

Thermionic generation, proposed by **Schlicter** in 1915, uses a thermionic converter (Fig. 9.1.21), which is a vacuum or gas-filled device with a hot electron ''emitter'' (cathode) and a cold electron ''collector'' (anode) in or as part of a suitable gastight enclosure, with electrical connections to the anode and cathode, and with means for heating the cathode and cooling the anode. A thermionic generator is a low-voltage dc device.

Figure 9.1.22 is a plot of the electron energy at various places in the converter. The abscissa is cathode-anode spacing, and the ordinate is electron energy. The base line corresponds to the energy of the electrons

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

in the cathode before heating. Heating the cathode imparts sufficient energy to some of the electrons to lift them over the **work function barrier** (retaining force) at the surface of the cathode into the interelectrode space. (The lower the work function, the easier it is for an electron

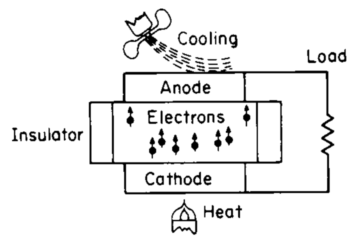


Fig. 9.1.21

to escape from the surface of the cathode.) If it is assumed that the electrons can follow path *a* to the anode with only a small loss of energy, they will ''drop down'' the work function barrier as they join the electrons in the anode still retaining some of their potential energy (**Fermi level**), which is available to cause an electric current to flow in the external circuit. The work function of the anode should be as small as possible. The anode should be maintained at a lower temperature to prevent anode emission or back current. This pattern presumes that the electrons could follow path *a* from the cathode to the anode with little interference. Since, however, electrons are charged particles, those in the space between the cathode and anode form a space charge barrier, as shown by *b*. This space charge barrier limits the electrons emitted from the cathode. Space charge formation can be reduced by close spacing of the cathode and anode surfaces or by the introduction of a suitable gas atmosphere that can be ionized by heating and thus neutralize the space charge. In vacuum-type thermionic converters, the spacing between cathode and anode must be less than 0.02 mm to get as many as 10 percent of the electrons over to the cathode and to achieve an efficiency of 4 to 5 percent. In gas-filled converters, the negative electron space charge is neutralized by positive ions. Cesium vapor is used for this purpose. At low pressure, it will also lower the work function of the

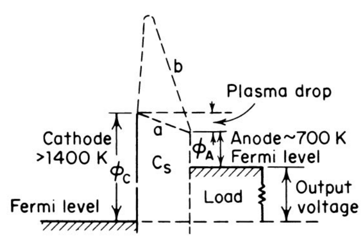


Fig. 9.1.22

anode, and at high pressure, it can, in addition, be used to adjust the work function of the cathode. Efficiencies as high as 17 percent have been obtained with gas-filled converters operating at a cathode temperature of 1,900°C (2,173 K). The output voltage is 1 to 2 V, so the units must be connected in series for reasonable utilization voltages.

Thermionic development results have been encouraging, but major technical challenges remain to be resolved before reliable, long-life converters become available. Effort has been focused on problem areas such as the limited life of emitter materials, leaktightness of the converter, and dimensional stability of the converter gap. Studies of thermionic converters incorporated into nuclear reactors and as a topping cycle for fossil fuel fired steam generators as well as for space and solar applications have received the greatest attention.

Fuel Cells

The **fuel cell** is an electrochemical device in which electric energy is generated by chemical reaction without altering the basic components (electrodes and electrolyte) of the cell itself. It is a low-voltage, dc device. To obtain higher voltages, the elements must be stacked. The fact that electrode and electrolyte are invariant distinguishes the fuel cell from the primary cell and storage battery. The fuel cell dates back to 1839, when **Grove** demonstrated that the electrolysis of water could be reversed using platinum electrodes. The fuel cell is unique in that it converts chemical energy to electric energy without an intermediate conversion to heat energy; its efficiency is therefore independent of the thermodynamic limitation of the Carnot cycle. In practical units, however, its efficiency is comparable with the efficiency of Carnot limited engines.

Figure 9.1.23 is a simplified version of a hydrogen or hydrocarbon fuel cell with air or oxygen as the other reactant. The fuel is supplied to the anode, where it is ionized, freeing electrons, which flow in the external circuit, and hydrogen ions, which pass through the electrolyte to the cathode, which is supplied with oxygen. The oxygen is ionized by

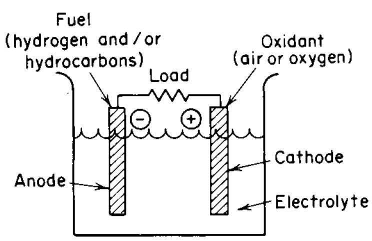


Fig. 9.1.23

electrons flowing into the cathode from the external circuit. The ionized oxygen and hydrogen ions react to form water. Electrodes for this type of cell are usually porous and impregnated with a catalyst. In a simple cell of this type, chemical and catalytic action take place only at the line (**notable surface of action**) where the electrolyte, gas, and electrode meet. One of the objectives in designing a practical fuel cell is to increase the notable surface of action. This has been accomplished in a number of ways, but usually by the creation of porous electrodes within which, in the case of gas diffusion electrodes, the fuel and oxidant in gaseous state can come in contact with the electrolyte at many sites. If the electrolyte is a liquid, a delicate balance must be achieved in which surface tension and density of the liquid must be considered and gas pressure and electrode pore size must be chosen to hold their interface inside the electrode. If the gas pressure is too high, the electrolyte is excluded from the electrode, gas leaks into the electrolyte, and ion flow stops; if the gas pressure is too low, drowning of the electrode occurs and electron flow stops.

Fuel cells may be classified broadly by operating temperature level, type of electrolyte, and type of fuel. Low-temperature (less than 150°C) fuel cells are characterized by the need for good and expensive catalysts, such as platinum and relatively simple fuel, such as hydrogen. High temperatures (500 to 1,000°C) offer the potential for use of hydrocarbon fuels and lower-cost catalysts. Electrolytes may be either acidic or alkaline in liquid, solid, or solid-liquid composite form. In one type of fuel cell, the electrolyte is a solid polymer.

Low-temperature fuel cells of the hydrogen-oxygen type, one a solid-polymer electrolyte type, and the other using free KOH as an electrolyte, have been successfully applied in generating systems for U.S. space vehicles. High-temperature fuel cell development has been primarily in molten carbonate cells (500 to 700°C) and solid-electrolyte (zirconia) cells (1,100°C), but no significant practical applications have resulted.

Considerable study and development work has been done toward the application of fuel cell generating systems to bulk utility power systems. Low-temperature cells of the phosphoric acid matrix and solid-polymer electrolyte types using petroleum fuels and air have been considered. Cell efficiencies of about 50 percent have been achieved; but with losses in the fuel reformers and electrical inverters, the overall system efficiency becomes of the order of 37 percent. In this application

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

fuel cells have environmental advantages, such as low noise, low atmospheric emissions, and low heat rejection requirements. Additional development work is necessary to overcome the disadvantage of high catalyst costs and requirements for expensive fuels. More than 50 phosphoric acid fuel cell units, having a capacity of 200 kW, are in use. Companies in Canada, Germany, and the United States have demonstrated fuel cells in passenger bus propulsion systems. They are cooperating now on the development of proton exchange fuel cells. Other U.S. and Japanese companies are developing power plants for transportation.

Magnetohydrodynamic Generation

Magnetohydrodynamic generation utilizes the movement of electrically conducting gas through a magnetic field. Normally, it results in a high-voltage, dc output, but it can be designed to provide alternating current. In the simple open-cycle MHD generator (Fig. 9.1.24), hot, partially ionized, compressed gas, which is the product of combustion, is expanded in a duct and forced through a strong magnetic field. Electrodes in the sides of the duct pick up the potential generated in the gas, so that current flows through the gas, electrodes, and external load. Temperature in excess of 3,000 K is necessary for the required ionization of gas, but this can be reduced by the addition of a seeding material such as potassium or cesium. With seeding, the gas temperature may be reduced to the order of 2,750 K. The temperature of the gas leaving the generator is about 2,250 K. Although the efficiency of the basic MHD channel is

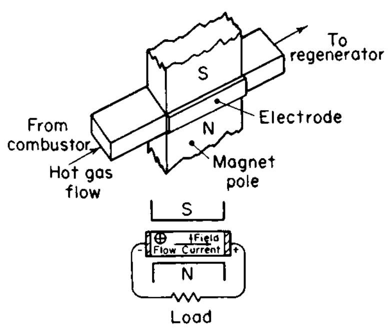


Fig. 9.1.24

on the order of 70 percent, only a portion of the available thermal energy can be removed in the channel. The remainder of the energy contained in the hot exhaust gas must be removed by a more conventional steam cycle. In this combined-cycle plant, the exhaust gas from the MHD generator is passed sequentially through an air preheater, the steam superheater and boiler, and an economizer and stack gas cooler. The air preheater is necessary to raise the temperature of incoming combustion air to some 1,900 K in order to obtain the initial gas temperature of 2,750 K.

The potential improvement in efficiency from the use of MHD generator in a combined-cycle plant is in the order of 15 to 30 percent. An overall steam plant efficiency of 38 percent could be raised to some 45 to 54 percent. Contrasted to other methods for direct conversion, MHD generation appears best suited to large blocks of power. For example, an MHD generator 75 m long with an average magnetic field of 5 T (attained by means of a superconductive magnet) would have a net output of about 1,000 MW dc at 5 to 10 kV. Typically, this would provide topping energy for a steam plant of about 500 MW.

Although the MHD topping cycle offers the highest peak cycle temperature and thermodynamic cycle efficiency of any system that has been studied, none of the generators tested have yielded enough efficiency to account for even half of the power required to supply oxidant to the combustor. Serious materials problems have also been experienced, with severe erosion, corrosion, and thermal stresses in the electrodes and insulators. Slow progress in the solution of these and other difficulties diminishes the prospect for a viable MHD system in the foreseeable future.

Closed-cycle MHD generators are also under study for bulk power generation. They are of two types: first, one in which the working fluid is an inert gas such as argon seeded with cesium; and second, the liquid-metal type in which the working fluid is a helium-sodium mixture. Closed-cycle MHD generation offers the potential for high efficiency with considerably lower peak cycle temperatures, lower pressure ratios, and lower average magnetic-flux density.

Photovoltaic Generation

Photovoltaic generation utilizes the direct conversion of light energy to electric energy and stems from the discovery by **Becquerel** in 1839 that a voltage is generated when light is directed on one of the electrodes in an electrolyte solution. Subsequent work using selenium led to the development of the photoelectric cell and the exposure meter. It results in low-voltage direct current. To obtain higher voltages, the elements must be stacked.

Photovoltaic effect is the generation of electric potential by the ionization by light energy (photons) of the area at or near the *p*-*n* junction of a semiconductor. The *p*-*n* junction constitutes a one-way potential barrier which permits the passage of photon-generated (−) electrons from the *p* to the *n* material and (+) ''holes'' from the *n* to the *p* material. The resulting excess of (−) electrons in the *n* material and (+) holes in the *p* material produces a voltage at the terminals comparable to the junction potential.

Solar cells have been a useful source of electricity since about 1960 and have enjoyed widespread use for small amounts of electric energy in remote locations. They have proved particularly well suited for use in spacecraft; in fact, much of the effort in photovoltaic R&D has been funded by the space program. Solar cells have been applied also to remote weather monitoring and recording stations (some of them equipped with transmitters to send the data to collecting stations), traffic control devices, buoys, channel markers, navigational beacons, etc. They can also be used for applications such as battery chargers for cars, boats, flashlights, tools, watches, calculators, and emergency radios. Cost reduction through the use of polycrystalline or thin-film techniques constitutes a major development effort.

A commercially available solar cell is constructed of a 0.3-mm-thick silicon wafer (2×2 cm or 2×6 cm) that is doped with boron to give it a *p*-type characteristic. It is then diffused with phosphorus to a depth of about 10^{-4} cm (*n*-type layer), and subsequently electrically contacted with titanium-silver or gold-nickel. Contacting on the light exposure side is limited to maximize transmission of light into the cell. The cell is coated with antireflection material to reduce losses due to light reflection. The cell is then electrically coupled to the intercell circuit by soldering. The method of fabricating solar cells is complex and expensive.

The efficiency of a photovoltaic cell varies with the spectrum of the light. The maximum theoretical efficiency of a single-junction, single-transition silicon cell with solar illumination is about 22 percent. Actual cell performance has been realized at 12 to 15 percent efficiency at 0.6 V open circuit and 0.02 W/cm^2. Advanced cells using materials such as gallium arsenide and cadmium telluride offer maximum theoretical efficiencies above 25 percent. Further cell efficiency improvement is being investigated by concentrating the sunlight with a Fresnel lens or parabolic mirror and by selecting the light spectrum.

Factors reducing the efficiency of conversion of light energy into electricity using solar cells include: (1) the fact that only a certain bandwidth of the solar spectrum can be effective, (2) structural defects and chemical impurities within the materials, (3) reflection of incident light, and (4) cell internal resistance. These factors lower the overall efficiency of solar arrays to about 6 to 8 percent. Another drawback is the intermittent nature of the solar source, which necessitates the use of an energy storage facility.

It is commonly agreed that substantial investments will be necessary to make solar cell energy conversion economically competitive with terrestrial fossil fuel fired or nuclear power plants. Space applications remain a practical use of this technology, since long life and reliability override cost considerations.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Other Energy Converters

Each of the converters described in the following section has characteristics which makes it suitable for specific tasks. Some produce low-voltage direct current and must be stacked for higher voltage output. Other converters produce high-voltage direct or alternating current depending upon their design. High voltages can be used to drive Klystron or X-ray tubes, or similar equipment, and can be transmitted without step-up transformers. Some medium- or low-temperature converters can be used in low-grade energy (heat) applications; in medical practice, e.g., body heat can drive heart pacemakers, artificial heart pumps, internal medicine dispensing devices, and organ monitoring equipment.

Electrohydrodynamic Converters When positive ions are transported by neutral hot gases against an electric field, high potential differences result. The charges produced by the ions do work when allowed to flow through a load. These devices are also called **electrogas-dynamic (EGD)** converters. If the gases are allowed to condense, producing small liquid droplets, the devices are often referred to as **aerosol EGD** converters. A number of different basic designs exist.

Van der Graaff Converter This device operates on the same principle as the EHD converter, except that a belt is used instead of hot gases to transport the ions against an electric field. Very high potential differences are produced, which may be utilized in high-energy particle accelerators, atom smashers, artificial lightning generators, and the like.

Ferroelectric Converters Certain materials exhibit a rapid change in their dielectric constant k around their Curie temperature. The voltage produced by a charge is the charge divided by the capacitance, or $V = Q/C$. The variation between capacitance and dielectric constant is expressed by $C_h = (k_h/k_c)C_c$, where c = cold and h = hot.

A capacitor containing ferroelectric material is charged when the capacitance is high. When the temperature is changed to lower the dielectric constant, the capacitance is lowered, with an accompanying increase in voltage. The charge is dissipated through a load when the voltage is high, resulting in the performance of work. Barium titenate, e.g., can produce a fivefold voltage swing between temperatures of 100 and 120°C. Thermocycling could be produced by the sun on a spinning satellite.

Ferromagnetic Converters Ferromagnetic material is used to complete the magnetic circuit of a permanent magnet. The ferromagnetic material is heat-cycled through its Curie point, producing flux changes in a coil wrapped around the magnet. The operating conditions can be selected by the Curie temperature of the ferromagnetic material. Gadolinium, e.g., has a Curie point near room temperature.

Piezoelectric Converters When axisymmetric crystals are compressed parallel to their polar axes, they become polarized; i.e., positive charges are generated on one side, and negative charges are generated on the other side of the crystal. The induced compressive stresses can be produced mechanically or by heating the crystal. The resulting potential difference will do work when allowed to flow through a load. In a reverse process, imposing a potential difference between the ends of the crystal will result in a compressive stress within the crystal. The imposition of alternating current will result in controlled oscillations useful in sonar, ultrasound equipment, and the like.

Pyroelectric Converters Some materials become electrically polarized when heated, and the conversion of heat to electricity can be utilized as it is in piezoelectric converters.

Bioenergetic Converters Energy requirements for medical devices used to monitor or control the performance of human organs (heart, brain, etc.) range from a few microwatts to a few watts. In many cases, body heat is sufficient to operate an energy converter which, in turn, will power the device.

Nernst Effect Converters When heat flows through certain semiconductors exposed to a magnetic field perpendicular to the direction of heat flow, an electric potential difference will be induced along a third orthogonal axis. This conversion of heat to electricity can be utilized to do work. In a reverse fashion, crossing a magnetic and an electric field will produce a temperature difference (Ettinghausen effect, the reverse of the Nernst effect). This reverse conversion is useful in electric heating, cooling, and refrigeration.

Thermophotovoltaic Converters A radiant heat source surrounded by photovoltaic cells will result in the radiant energy being converted to electricity. Source radiation and photovoltaic cell characteristics can be controlled to operate anywhere in the spectrum.

Photoelectromagnetic Converters When certain semiconductors (Cu_2O, for example) are placed in a tangential magnetic field and illuminated by visible light, there will result an electric potential difference along an axis orthogonal to the other two axes. The resulting flow of electric current can be used to do work.

Magnetothermoelectric Converters A magnetic field applied to certain thermoelectric semiconductors produces electric potential differences, useful in power generation.

Superconducting Converters The phase transition in a superconductor can be utilized similarly to a ferroelectric converter. Thermal cycling of the superconductor material will produce alternating current in the coil surrounding it. An idealized analysis for niobium at 8 K yields a conversion efficiency of about 44 percent.

Magnetostrictive Converters Changes in dimensions of materials in a magnetic field produce electric potential differences, thus converting mechanical energy to electricity. The effects can be reversed by combining an electric field with a magnetic field to produce dimensional changes.

Electron Convection Converters When a liquid is heated (sometimes to the boiling point), electrons and neutral atoms are emitted from the liquid surface. The flow of vapor transports the electrons upward, where they are collected on screens. The vapor condenses and recycles into the liquid pool. High electric potential differences can be produced in this manner between the screens and the liquid pool, allowing the subsequent flow of current to do work. The process is similar to that for EGD converters.

Electrokinetic Converters Certain fluids flowing through capillary tubes due to pressure gradients produce an electric potential difference between the ends of the capillaries, converting flow (kinetic) energy to electricity.

Particle-Collecting Converters When an alpha, beta, or gamma particle emitter is surrounded by a collector surface, an electric potential difference is produced between the emitter and the collector. Biased screen grids can improve the performance.

EHD Water Drop Converter Two separate streams of water coming from the same reservoir, in falling, are allowed to break up into droplets. At the breakup points, each stream is surrounded by a short metal cylinder. Each cylinder is connected electrically to a screen at the bottom of the opposite stream. High potential differences are produced between the two metal cylinders.

Photogalvanic Converters Photochemical reactions often produced by solar radiation (especially at the shorter wavelengths) can be used to generate electricity. Concentration of solar energy can increase the power of the converters considerably. The actual processes are similar to those in fuel cells.

The field of instrumentation provides other techniques which could become useful as energy conversion devices. While many of the methods cited and described above are not economically competitive with conventional conversion methods in current use, some are adapted to unique situations where the matter of cost becomes inconsequential. Certainly, it is expected that as progress is made in the field of energy conversion, certain techniques will be refined to greater practicality, and others will be developed.

FLYWHEEL ENERGY STORAGE
by Sherwood B. Menkes

REFERENCES: The Oerlikon Electrogyro: Its Development and Application for Omnibus Service, *Auto Eng.,* Dec. 1955. Beams, Magnetic Bearings, *SAE Automotive Congress Proc.,* Jan. 1964. Beachley and Frank, Electric and Electric-Hybrid Cars, SAE paper 730619, Mar. 1973. Clerk, The Utilization of Flywheel Energy, SAE Paper 711A, June 1963. Lawson and Hellman, Design and Testing of High Energy Density Flywheels for Application to Flywheel/Heat Engine Hybrid Drives, SAE Paper 719150, Aug. 1971. Post and Post, Flywheels, *Sci. Am.,*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Dec. 1973. Rabenhorst, Primary Energy Storage and the Super Flywheel, Johns Hopkins University, TG 1081, Oct. 1970. Weber and Menkes, Flywheel Energy Propulsion and the Electric Vehicle, Paper 7458, Electric Vehicle Symposium, Feb. 1974. Ashley, UT and BMW Collaborate on Flywheel Systems, *Mech. Eng.*, Aug. 1994. Olszewski, Eisenhaure, Beachley, and Kirk, On the Fly or under Pressure, *Mech. Eng.*, June 1988. Ashley, Flywheels Put a New Spin on Electric Vehicles, *Mech. Eng.*, Oct. 1993. Flywheels Are Back, *Compressed Air Mag.*, June 1993.

For many years a **flywheel** has been defined as a heavy wheel which is used to oppose and moderate by its inertia any fluctuation of speed in the machinery with which it revolves. Shafts in many different kinds of machinery are subjected to torque loading that is not uniform throughout a work cycle. By utilizing a flywheel, the designer can incorporate a smaller driving motor, and achieve a smoother operation.

Until recently, design of flywheels has not posed any serious difficulties, for work cycles have been relatively short, and the flywheel functioned solely to regulate speed. The kinetic energy has been relatively small. Concentration of material in a massive rim provides the maximum moment of inertia for a given amount of material.

Within the last few years, as a result of concern about fuel shortages and environmental pollution, suggestions have been made to utilize unconventional energy sources. Accordingly, there is much interest in the use of flywheels to store large amounts of kinetic energy. *Thus the flywheel is proposed as a major storage device, rather than as a means to effect speed regulation.*

As Post and Post observed, old concepts often reappear in technology as our needs change. Flywheels were probably first used as energy storage devices in the potter's wheel, perhaps 5,000 years ago. The spindle was vertical; there was a head, on which clay was placed, and a separate flywheel below. The flywheel was used to store enough energy to turn rapidly and for a long time.

A power plant is designed to operate most efficiently under a set of stated conditions. When it is necessary to operate the plant at off-design conditions, efficiency decreases, often quite severely. If the plant is operated only at high efficiency, and the excess energy is stored until it is needed, fuel is conserved. In addition, certain sources of energy (solar radiation, wind, etc.) become attractive provided that we can deal effectively with the question of storing energy thus *freely available* until such time as it can be used.

The flywheel is an attractive energy storage concept for several reasons: (1) it is simple; (2) it is possible to store and abstract energy readily, either by mechanical means or by using electric motors and generators; (3) high power rates are practicable; (4) there is no stringent limitation on the number of charge and discharge cycles that can be used; (5) reliability promises to be high; and (6) maintenance costs should be low.

Modern flywheel technology is in its **infancy**. The first symposium on the state of the art was held in November 1975. Any specific application will require consideration of technical alternatives and a cost analysis. The following must be evaluated in each case: (1) how much energy can be stored per unit weight or volume of flywheel material, which in turn controls (2) the size flywheel required, (3) relative importance of friction losses and associated inefficiency, (4) system safety, and (5) nature of controls and systems needed to provide the proper interface between source of energy and the demand for it.

A uniform flat disk with a central hole was suggested to replace the massive rim flywheel, but the resultant dynamic stress distribution limits its use.

Improved stress distribution (for an **isotropic material**) can be effected by thickening the flywheel toward the center and making it possible to achieve a constant tangential stress distribution. The energy density capability of a flywheel in which constraints other than those due to stress considerations are removed can be calculated from

$$T = K_s\sigma/\rho$$

in which T is the specific energy, K_s a flywheel shape factor, σ the material working stress, and ρ the material density. For a solid metal wheel, the ideal shape is one in which K_s is unity. Lawson reports that Lockheed has achieved a shape factor of 0.832; such a wheel constructed of *maraging steel* results in a T value of 52 Wh/kg.

The parameter T is useful to compare candidate energy storage concepts. Table 9.1.9, prepared by Weber and Menkes as part of a feasibility study of a flywheel powered local-duty automobile, indicates the range of possible values. Note the inclusion of the *Oerlikon gyrobus*, the first vehicular application of flywheel energy storage. Advanced anisotropic materials offer great promise as flywheel materials, and many organizations are now engaged in the design and development of fiber composite flywheels. These high-strength fibers, which include E glass, PRD − 49 (Kevlar), S glass, fused silica, and others, dictate radical changes in design concepts.

The size range for suggested flywheels is considerable, as are the recommended speed and energy capacity. Some applications are discussed below.

Central Stations Long-range energy storage in central stations is accomplished by storing fuel (coal, oil, or gas), using a hydro reservoir and, more recently, cryogenic tanks. The basic problem is brought about by **highly fluctuating power demand**. A typical electric utility load cycle has a peak on weekdays nearly double the demand at night, while there are no comparable peak demands on weekends.

Considerations of economy and efficiency make it attractive to increase the base capacity of the central station, to generate and store excess energy when it is available, and to draw on the stored energy when it is needed. One technique, in limited use, employs a pumped hydrostorage installation. The principal advantage there is that while the potential energy of fluid is stored at a higher elevation, there is no continuous loss of energy; this cannot be said for flywheel energy storage. Furthermore, pumped hydrostorage systems are completely safe and make use of existing technology both to store and to abstract the energy.

Unfortunately, *severe geographical constraints* limit the use of pumped hydrostorage as a *universal solution.*

Flywheels offer a good alternative to *pumped hydrostorage*, on the grounds of (1) compactness, (2) high power density, (3) reliability and low maintenance, (4) unlimited cycle life, and (5) good thermal compatibility with the environment. Several technological advances must be achieved, however, before flywheel energy storage becomes cost-effective. These *necessary* improvements are: (1) development of low-cost, high-energy-density composite rotors, (2) development of very low-friction bearing systems, and (3) development of improved motor generator systems and controls.

The first two factors are self-evident; the last is not. A generator must extract energy from a constantly decelerating flywheel, and then feed it into a power network at constant voltage and frequency. The generator must either invert the variable-frequency input to the desired frequency

Table 9.1.9 Energy Density *T* for Various Storage Elements

Storage element	Wh/kg
Internal combustion engine system	550*
Electrochemical storage:	
Lead-acid	18–33
Nickel-cadmium	26–40
Silver-zinc	66–132
Zinc-air (experimental)	110–176
Sodium-sulfur (experimental)	154–220
Lithium-halide (experimental)	220
Flywheels:	
Gyreacta transmission	0.7†
Oerlikon gyrobus	7.0†
4340 steel	26
Maraging steel	55
Advanced anisotropic materials	190–870
Hydraulic accumulator	7–15
Natural elastic band	9

* Based on specific fuel consumption of 0.5 lb/(bhp · h) and engine weight equal to that of gasoline carried.
† Systems actually operated.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

or use some other scheme to accomplish the same result. Several systems are being developed which will do this.

Transportation Applications Ground transport vehicles are powered, by and large, exclusively by internal combustion engines. In passenger vehicles in particular, the thermal efficiency of the cycle is of the order of 10 to 15 percent. The waste of fossil fuel distillates and the concomitant problem of air pollution are well documented. Accordingly, it is attractive to consider the possibility of generating electricity at a remote site, and *providing on-board energy storage.* Under certain circumstances, an auxiliary supply can be maintained external to the vehicle (as in a third rail), but for reasonable route flexibility, a self-contained store of energy is required.

A number of suggestions have been made which are in various stages of development. At one extreme is an *all-electric local-duty vehicle;* at the other is a *hybrid heat engine and flywheel energy storage* without electric energy utilization at all. An intermediate arrangement would use a *heat engine, a flywheel, and an electric traction motor* drive system.

In the **all-electric vehicle,** major design problems include (1) development of a passive bearing system with an ultra-low-energy drain, (2) an increase in energy density capability of flywheels to provide reasonable *range* and *speed*, (3) a design safe enough to withstand collisions, and (4) development of a compact and efficient motor generator unit.

In the **heat engine flywheel hybrid** with entirely mechanical means of using flywheel energy, no new technology is needed. Such a vehicle can make fairly impressive gains in fuel economy, especially by means of *regenerative dynamic braking.* The major difference between this and conventional vehicles lies in the need for a *continuously variable transmission unit* coupled to the flywheel.

A **modification of the all-electric** vehicle would require the addition of a small heat engine, perhaps 25 percent the size of those now in use. This heat engine can be operated at maximum efficiency, with the storage element being used to supply energy for acceleration. The driver could switch to all-electric mode for urban driving or short trips.

Greater attention is being paid to hybrid vehicles utilizing flywheels in conjunction with either an all-electric vehicle or a combined internal combustion/electric battery drive vehicle. Together with continuing attention given to flywheel material and construction, efforts are being made to introduce electric drive vehicles for passenger automobiles within the next several years in several states. Those efforts are accompanied by continued advances in high-strength composite materials for flywheels, frictionless magnetic bearings, high-efficiency motor generators, and continued miniaturization of power components and control electronics. The reference to Olszewski et al. is particularly instructive as to recent data and design details which have met with some success in the continuing development work in this generic area.

Regenerative dynamic braking is in use in the New York subway system; a **flywheel trolley coach** was developed for the city of San Francisco.

The output from an **exotic source**—sun or wind—is cyclical in nature. Exploitation of this type of energy source, especially for generating electric power, must be accompanied by suitable ''flywheel'' energy storage devices. Toward that end, rotating flywheels may hold promise for small units adaptable to residential use, especially in remote areas.

9.2 STEAM BOILERS

by Joseph C. Delibert

REFERENCES: The Babcock & Wilcox Co., ''Steam—Its Generation and Use.'' Combustion Engineering, Inc., ''Combustion—Fossil Power Systems.'' Staniar, ''Plant Engineering Handbook,'' McGraw-Hill. Powell, ''Water Conditioning for Industry,'' McGraw-Hill. ''Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code,'' ''Power Test Code for Steam Generating Units,'' American Society of Mechanical Engineers. Also, *Proceedings* of the ASME, the Joint Power Generation Conference, and the American Power Conference.

FUELS AVAILABLE FOR STEAM GENERATION

(See also Secs. 7, 9.1, and 9.8.)

A large variety of materials and heat sources can be used for steam generation. In the absence of other considerations, boilers are designed to use the most economical fuel or combinations of fuels available. These include natural gas, residual oil, and coal. Some typical solid fuels are: anthracite coal, bituminous and subbituminous coal, coke breeze, fluid petroleum coke (4 to 5 percent volatile), lignite, low-temperature fluid coal char (with auxiliary fuel), petroleum coke (9 to 14 percent volatile; with auxiliary fuel), pipeline slurry, wood and bark, and bagasse and other agricultural wastes. Other less common energy sources, many suitable for steam generation, are described in Sec. 9.1.

Sources of fuel nearest the plant are generally favored, but the spread of oil and gas pipelines throughout the United States and improved efficiency of coal transportation (unit trains, pipeline slurry) have greatly altered regional use patterns. Restrictions by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) on air and water pollution (Sec. 18) and the potential for interruption of oil supplies must also be considered. Many industries use their by-products for steam generation. Paper mills burn the black liquor from the cooking of wood pulp. Steel mill boilers may be fired with blast furnace and coke oven gases. Oil refineries burn lean CO gas, a waste product, in combination with a richer gas. The increased cost of basic fuels has caused many other industries to consider the use of their own combustible or heat-bearing by-products. The use of municipal wastes for steam generation is also accelerating (Sec. 7.4).

EFFECT OF FUEL ON BOILER DESIGN

Fuel is the governing factor in boiler design. Clean natural gas leads to the simplest design. If it is the only fuel, the boiler can be relatively small and compact. When solid or liquid fuels are to be used, the boilers will be larger because of the need to provide the required furnace volume for combustion and to accommodate ash and slag. Also, unless the fuel is low in sulfur content, the resultant combustion products will contribute to air pollution and must be reduced to approved levels before release. Equipment for this purpose can be large and expensive (Secs. 17.5 and 18). Some manufacturers offer **fluidized-bed firing** which uses a mixture of fine coal and limestone to trap most of the sulfur compounds in the ash. The equipment is not yet in general use.

Depending on the type of firing, considerable amounts of fly ash may be carried to the stack. Fly ash collectors and electrostatic precipitators are usually required to meet governmental requirements (Sec. 18). Oxides of nitrogen can also contribute to air pollution. These are formed from both fuel-bound nitrogen and the nitrogen contained in the combustion air. Nitric oxide omission can be controlled primarily by equipment design and operating techniques without appreciable impact on costs (Secs. 4, 7, and 18).

SLAG AND ASH

Boilers fired with pulverized coal can be designed for either dry-ash or slag-tap operation. The dry-ash type is particularly suited for coals with high ash-fusion temperatures. The ash impinging on the water-cooled furnace walls can be readily removed. The slag-tap furnace uses coals

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

having low ash-fusion temperatures and is designed to have high temperatures near the furnace floor, thus keeping the ash molten for tapping.

When sintered or fused, ash forms deposits on furnace walls, boiler surfaces, and superheater tubes, thus reducing heat absorption, increasing draft loss and possibly causing overheating of tubes. Two general types of slag deposition can occur on furnace walls and convection surfaces. **Slagging** takes place when molten or partially fused ash particles entrained in the gas strike a wall or tube surface, become chilled, and solidify. Coals with low ash-fusion temperatures [i.e., those that are plastic or semimolten at temperatures less than 2,000°F (1,093°C)] have a high potential for slagging. Although normally confined to the furnace area, slagging can occur in the convection sections if proper design and operating parameters are not observed.

Fouling occurs when the volatile constituents in the ash condense on fly-ash particles, convection tubes, and existing ash deposits, at temperatures which keep the volatile constituents liquid and allow them to react chemically to form bonded deposits.

Slagging and fouling characteristics can be evaluated from the chemical composition of the ash by empirically determined relationships. The amount and the chemical and physical characteristics of coal ash vary over a wide range, not only from mine to mine, but also from different parts of the same mine. Thus, in design of boilers or selection of new coal sources for existing units, it is essential to have a thorough knowledge of the coal ash characteristics. Considerable data have been accumulated over the years, much of it based on eastern coals. Western coals are being used more extensively, and new criteria, often at variance with eastern experience, are being developed (Heil and Durrant, *Proc. JPGC,* 1978).

Coal ash may be classified as **eastern** or **lignitic**. By definition, if MgO + CaO is greater than Fe_2O_3, the ash is lignitic. If it is smaller, the ash is bituminous. This is important because subbituminous coal can have a lignitic type ash. Ash from eastern coals generally falls in the bituminous category while that from the west tends to be lignitic. Some of the parameters used to evaluate the effect of an ash on furnace slagging and deposition on both furnace walls and convection surfaces include:

Ash fusion temperatures

Iron content and ferritic percentage

$$\frac{(Fe_2O_3) \times 100}{Fe_2O_3 + 1.11FeO + 1.43Fe}$$

Silica ratio

$$\frac{(SiO_2) \times 100}{SiO_2 + Fe_2O_3 + CaO + MgO}$$

Base/acid ratio *B*/*A*

$$\frac{Fe_2O_3 + CaO + MgO + Na_2O + K_2O}{SiO_2 + Al_2O_3 + TiO_2}$$

Dolomite percentage

$$\frac{(CaO + MgO) \times 100}{Fe_2O_3 + CaO + MgO + Na_2O + K_2O}$$

Viscosity

Sintered strength

The preferred procedure for determining ash fusion temperatures is outlined in ASTM Standard D-1857, which defines and provides procedures to determine **initial deformation temperature (IDT), softening temperature (ST), hemispherical temperature (HT),** and **fluid temperature (FT)**.

Iron has a significant effect on the behavior of coal ash. In the completely oxidized form it tends to raise fusion temperatures; in the lesser oxidized form it tends to lower them (Fig. 9.2.1). The iron content and its degree of oxidation also have a great influence on the viscosity, which increases with ferritic percentage. Liquid slag is not troublesome as long as it remains a true liquid with a viscosity below 250 poise. The most troublesome form is plastic slag which is arbitrarily defined to exist in the region where the viscosity is 250 to 10,000 poise.

Slagging Indices The most accurate indicator of potential slagging for eastern or western coals is the viscosity-temperature relationship of

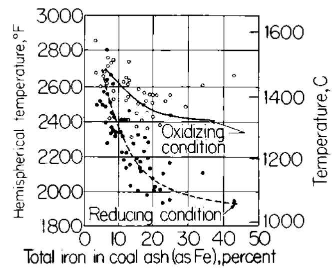


Fig. 9.2.1 Influence of iron on hemispherical temperature of ash.

the ash (Moore and Ehrler, *Proc. ASME,* WAM, 1973). Since viscosity measurements are costly and time-consuming, means have been developed to calculate furnace slagging potential from chemical analyses. For *eastern bituminous coals* the index is (*B*/*A*)*S*, where *S* is the percent sulfur, as S, on the dry-coal basis. The potential of ash with an index less than 0.6 is low; 0.6 to 2.0, medium; 2.0 to 2.6, high; above 2.6, severe.

For *lignitic-type ash,* slagging indices are based on fusion temperatures: [max HT + 4(min IDT)]/*S*, where the temperatures are the highest and the lowest reducing or oxidizing temperatures. Indices less than 2,100°F (1,149°C) are classed as severe slagging; 2,100 to 2,250°F (1,149 to 1,232°C), high; 2,250 to 2,450°F (1,232 to 1,343°C), medium.

Fouling Indices The volatile constituents of the ash (i.e., Na_2SO_4 or $CaSO_4 \cdot Na_2SO_4$) cause fouling and can be used as an indication of the fouling potential of a given coal. Two factors that affect fouling are deposit hardness and rate of deposition. Ash fusion temperatures bear little relation to the tendency to form bonded deposits (Fig. 9.2.2). Deposit hardness is affected by the chemical composition, temperature,

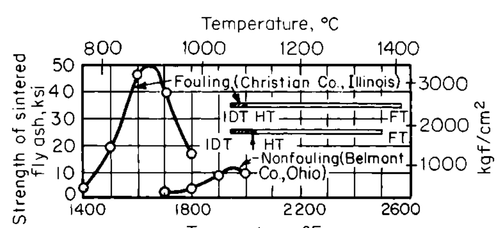


Fig. 9.2.2 Comparative sintered strengths and ash fusion temperatures for a fouling and a nonfouling coal.

and, to some extent, time. The rate of deposition is dependent on the volatile constituents and the amount of ash in the coal. Sintering strength of the ash, as determined in the laboratory, is an indication of how hard a deposit might become at different temperatures and has been used to predict fouling potential. Since these tests are expensive, the sintering strength has been related to the chemical composition (Fig. 9.2.3). (See Attig and Duzy, *Proc. Amer. Pwr. Conf.,* 1969). For *eastern coals* the **chemical index** is $(B/A) \times Na_2O_2$ where Na_2O is the weight percent in the ash prepared in accordance with ASTM D-271. For an index less than 0.2, fouling potential is low; 0.2 to 0.5, medium; 0.5 to 1.0 high; above 1.0, severe.

For **lignitic ash,** Na_2O is the determinant. Fouling tendency is low to medium for less than 3 percent, high for 3 to 6 percent, and severe for over 6 percent.

Additives such as dolomite, lime and magnesia are effective in reducing the sintered strength of ash (Fig. 9.2.4). Dolomite is also effective in

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

neutralizing the acid in the flue gas and eliminating condensation and subsequent plugging in the cold end of air heaters.

The ash content of residual **fuel oil** seldom exceeds 0.2 percent but this relatively small amount is capable of causing severe problems of deposits on tubes and corrosion. To predict the effect of oil ash on slagging

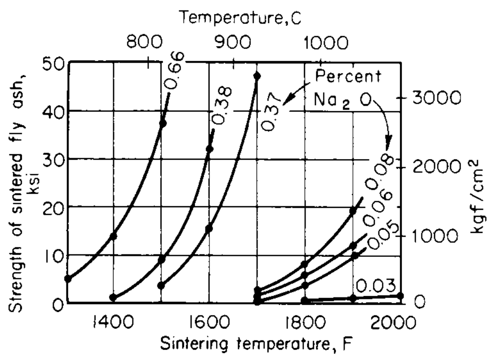


Fig. 9.2.3 Effect of sodium oxide content of coal on the sintered strength of fly ash.

and tube bank fouling, several variables are considered, including (1) ash content, (2) ash analysis, (3) melting and freezing temperatures of the ash, and (4) the total sulfur content. When oil is burned, complex chemical reactions occur, resulting in the formation of various oxides,

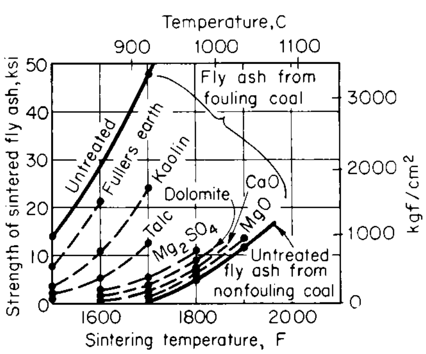


Fig. 9.2.4 Effect of additives on the sintered strength of fly ash (1 part additive to 4 parts fly ash).

Table 9.2.1 Analyses of Ash from Heavy Fuel Oil

	Analysis, %		
	Troublefree fuel oil	Troublesome fuel oils	
Ferric oxide, Fe_2O_3	56	8	6
Silica, SiO_2	25	9	5
Alumina, Al_2O_3	6	4	1
Lime, CaO	3	10	1
Magnesia, MgO	9	3	2
Vandium pentoxide, V_2O_5		1	39
Alkali sulfates	1	65	46

	Melting point in air	
Constituent	°F	°C
V_2O_5	1,274	690
$NaSO_4$	1,625	885
$MgSO_4$	2,165	1,185
$CaSO_4$	2,640	1,449
Fe_2O_3	2,850	1,566

vanadates, and sulfates. Many of these have melting points between 480 and 1,250°F (249 and 677°C), falling within the range of tube metal temperatures in the furnaces and superheaters of oil-fired boilers. As indicated in the analyses of Table 9.2.1, some oil ashes with high alkali sulfates can be troublesome. Dolomite added in quantities equal to the weight of the ash can be used to produce a softer slag which can be removed easily by soot blowing. In some installations air heater corrosion and pluggage and acid stack discharge are also minimized by dolomite additives.

SOOT BLOWER SYSTEMS

While slagging and fouling of coal- and oil-fired boilers can be minimized by proper design and operation, auxiliary equipment for cleaning furnace walls and removing deposits from convection surfaces must be supplied to maintain capacity and efficiency. Steam or air jets from the soot blower nozzles dislodge the dry or sintered ash and slag, which then fall into hoppers or travel along with the gaseous products of combustion to the removal equipment.

Types of soot blowers vary with their location in the boiler unit, the severity of ash or slag conditions, and the arrangement of the heat-absorbing surfaces.

Furnace walls are generally cleaned with **wall blowers** (Fig. 9.2.5) which project a nozzle assembly into the furnace for blowing and then retract it behind the wall tubes for protection after operation.

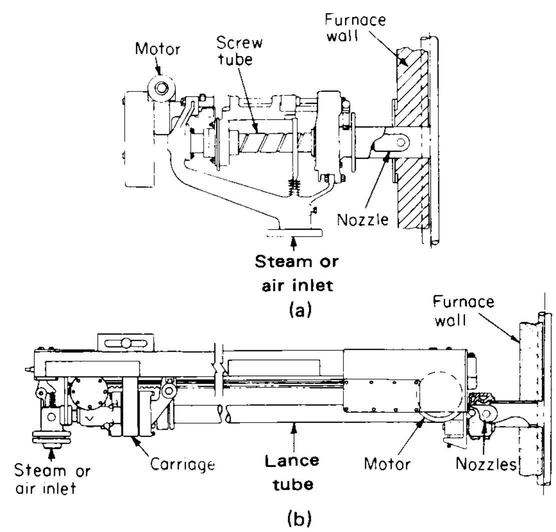


Fig. 9.2.5 Retracting soot blowers. (*a*) Furnace wall blower; (*b*) long-lance blower.

Tube banks in high-gas-temperature zones, such as slag screens, superheaters, and reheaters, where slag or sintered ash may accumulate, are generally cleaned by **long-lance retracting-type blowers** (Fig. 9.2.5). The lance, which rotates or oscillates as it advances into the boiler, is fitted with large nozzles to supply a powerful cleaning action and is retracted from the boiler for protection when it is not operating.

Tube banks located in low-gas temperature zones, including the economizer and boiler sections, where uncooled metals have satisfactory life and ash removal is easier, usually can be cleaned by **multiple-nozzle rotating-type soot blowers** (Fig. 9.2.6). However, long-lance retracting-type blowers may be necessary for very wide boilers, for extended cleaning ranges, or where the ash tends to pack or cake.

Soot blowers for air heaters generally are arranged to blow through the plate or tube assemblies with single- or multiple-nozzle elements moving in an arc or straight-line motion. These blowers may also supply water for washing the air-heater surface.

Additives to soften oil slag for easier removal by soot blowers may be

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

introduced as a slurry spray through long-lance retractable blowers or through separate spraying equipment.

Automatic controls for soot blower systems often are used and can be arranged to operate the blowers in a prescribed sequence at time intervals adjusted to blower-cleaning requirements or to receive signals from the blower unit's instruments and controls so as to operate the soot blowers selectively in the various heat-absorbing sections in order to maintain the required cleanliness and heat absorption.

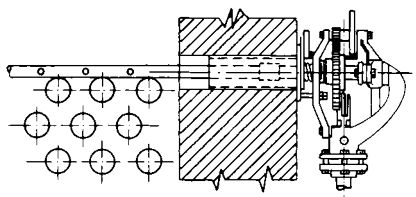


Fig. 9.2.6 Rotating soot blower with multiple nozzles.

ASH AND SLAG REMOVAL

Dust collectors (see also Sec. 18) are required for all large coal-burning blower units in order to reduce atmospheric pollution. The amount of ash entrained in the flue gas varies from about 80 percent of the ash in the coal for dry-ash pulverized-coal firing to approximately 50 percent for slag-tap pulverized-coal firing, and from 20 to 30 percent for cyclone-furnace firing. **Mechanical separators** and **electrostatic dust collectors** (Fig. 9.2.7) may be used in series, but most pulverized-coal-fired units use only electrostatic collectors. The fly ash from spreader-stoker-fired units is coarse, and consequently, mechanical separators generally are used. Although the gas-dust loading is low in cyclone-furnace boilers, electrostatic dust collectors are usually required to meet the restrictions on air pollution.

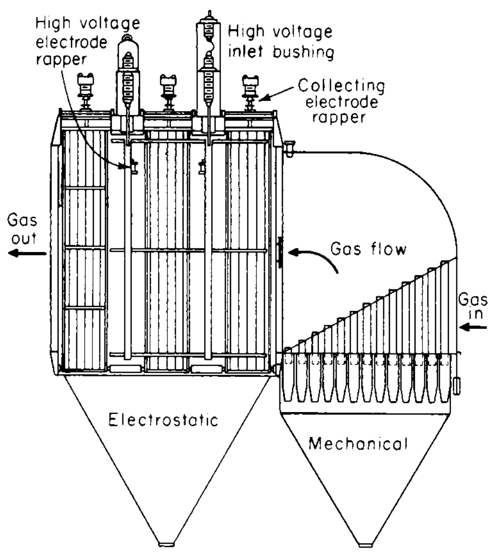


Fig. 9.2.7 Mechanical and electrostatic dust collectors in series.

The **bottom ash** recovered from the ashpits of chain-grate and spreader-type stokers is usually sold for cement-block aggregate. **Slag** from slag-tap furnaces can be used as a black granular coating for asbestos roofing shingles, as a mixture containing slag, fly ash, lime, and water for Poz-o-pac roads, or as an antiskid material for icy roads.

Fly ash presents disposal problems because of its low density and the consequent large volume which must be handled. It is not suitable for fill materials unless quickly covered. However, it can be utilized as an admixture, replacing 20 to 30 percent of portland cement, and as a lightweight aggregate after sintering.

STOKERS

Almost any coal can be burned successfully on some type of stoker. In addition, waste materials and by-products such as coke breeze, wood waste, bark, agricultural residues such as bagasse, and municipal wastes can be burned either as a base or auxiliary fuel.

The grate area required for a given stoker type and capacity is determined by the maximum allowable burning rate per square foot, established by experience. The practical limit to steam output for stoker-fired boilers is about 400,000 lb (181,600 kg) per hour.

Chain- and **traveling-grate stokers** have been extensively used to burn noncoking coals, but only a few installations have been made in recent years because of their slow response to load changes, possible loss of ignition on swinging loads, high ashpit heat losses, high excess-air requirements, and limitations on size.

Spreader stokers with continuous-ash-discharge traveling grates (Fig. 9.2.8), intermittent-cleaning dump grates, or reciprocating continuous-cleaning grates are capable of burning all types of bituminous and lignitic coals. The fines are burned in suspension, and the larger fuel particles are burned on the grate. The use of a thin, fast-burning fuel bed provides rapid response to variations in load. Rotating mechanical feeding and distributing devices are generally used with spreader stokers. These stokers operate with low excess air and high efficiencies when the carbon in the fly ash is reinjected above the grate. However, relatively low gas velocities through the boiler are necessary to prevent fly-ash erosion, and fly-ash collectors should be used to reduce air pollution.

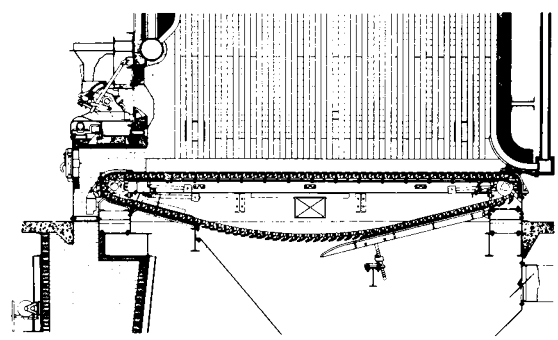


Fig. 9.2.8 Spreader stoker with traveling grate.

Single- or double-retort **underfeed stokers** with side ash dump and multiple-retort underfeed stokers with rear ash discharge are well suited for the burning of coking coals. These stokers operate best at steady loads. Both the ashpit heat loss and the maintenance are high.

PULVERIZERS

Pulverized coal firing is rarely used for boilers of less than 100,000 lb (45 t*) per hour steaming capacity since the use of stokers is more economical for those capacities. Most installations use the direct-fired system in which the coal and air pass directly from the pulverizers to the burners, and the desired firing rate is regulated by the rate of pulverization. Some types of direct-fired pulverizers are capable of grinding as much as 100 tons (91 t) per hour (Fig. 9.2.9). **Primary air** enters the pulverizer at temperatures that may run 650°F (343°C) or higher, depending on the amount of moisture in the coal and the type of pulverizer. The pulverizer provides the active mixing necessary for drying. The percentage of volatile matter in the fuel has a direct bearing on the

* 1 metric ton (t) = 1,000 kg = 2,205 lb.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

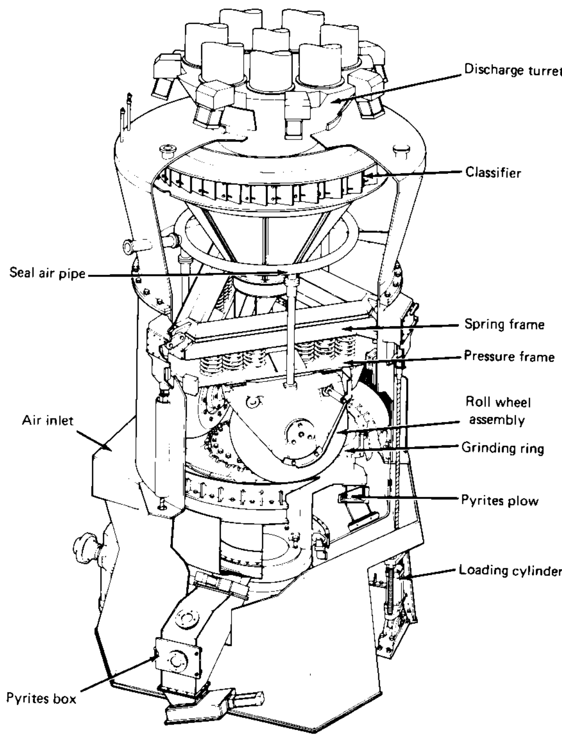


Fig. 9.2.9 Slow-speed pulverizer, roll-and-race type.

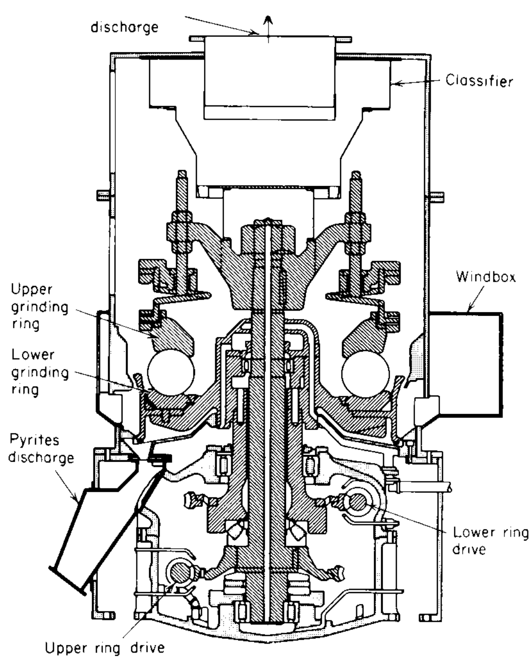


Fig. 9.2.10 Medium-speed pulverizer, contrarotation ball-and-race type.

recommended primary-air-fuel temperature for combustion. The generally accepted safe values for pulverizer exit fuel-air temperatures are:

Fuel	Exit temperature °F	Exit temperature °C
Lignite	120–140	49–60
High-volatile bituminous	150	66
Low-volatile bituminous	150–175	66–79
Anthracite	175–212	79–100

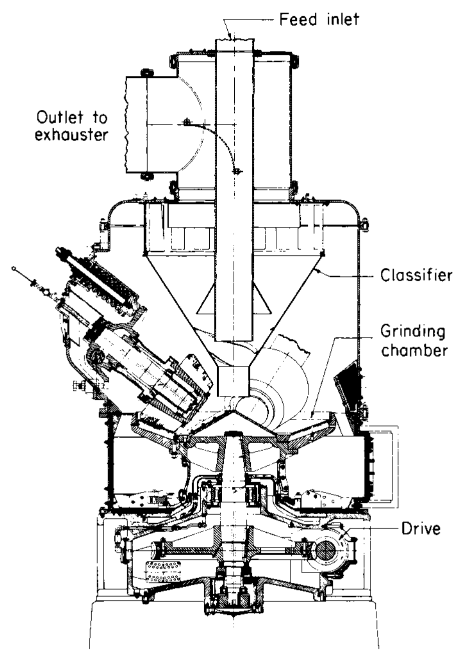


Fig. 9.2.11 Medium-speed pulverizer, roller type.

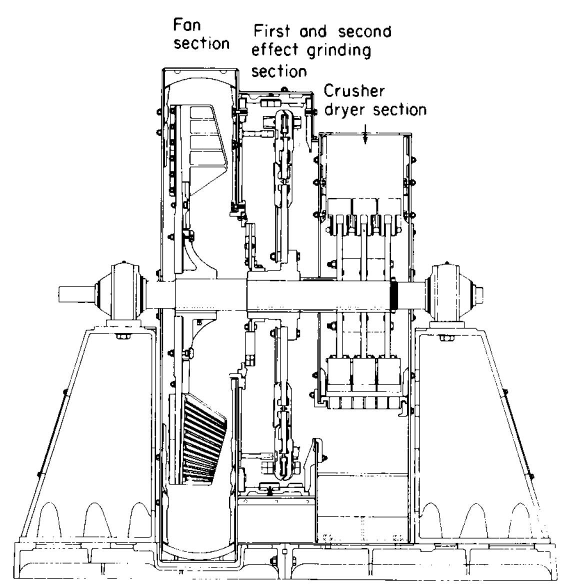


Fig. 9.2.12 High-speed pulverizer, attrition type.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

The three principal types of pulverizers may be classified as *slow speed* (below 75 r/min), *medium speed* (75–225 r/min), and *high speed* (above 225 r/min). Figure 9.2.9 shows a slow-speed pulverizer using the roll-and-race principle. Medium-speed pulverizers are generally of either the ball-and-race type (Fig. 9.2.10) or the bowl-and-roller type (Fig. 9.2.11). High-speed pulverizers are usually of the attrition type (Fig. 9.2.12).

When a variety of coal is to be used, the pulverizer should be sized for the coal that gives the highest **base capacity,** which is the desired capacity divided by the *capacity factor*, a function of the *grindability* of the coal and the *fineness* required (Fig. 9.2.13). Capacities are established by testing with coals of different grindability. The required fineness of pulverization varies with the type of coal and with the size and kind of furnace. It usually ranges from 65 to 80 percent through a 200-mesh screen. [The U.S. Standard sieve 200-mesh screen has 200 openings per linear inch, resulting in a nominal aperture of 0.0029 in (0.074 mm).] The ASTM equivalent is 74 μm.

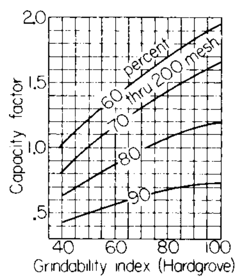


Fig. 9.2.13 Pulverizer capacity factors for varying fineness and grindability; medium-speed, ball-and-race type of pulverizers.

BURNERS

The primary purpose of a fuel burner is to mix and direct the flow of fuel and air so as to ensure rapid ignition and complete combustion. In pulverized-coal burners, a part (15 to 25 percent) of the air, called **primary air,** is initially mixed with the fuel to obtain rapid ignition and to act as a conveyor for the fuel. The remaining portion, or **secondary air,** is introduced through registers in the windbox (Fig. 9.2.14). This circular-type burner is designed to fire coal and can be equipped to fire any combination of the three principal fuels if proper precautions are taken to prevent coke formation on the coal element when oil and coal are being burned. This design has a capacity up to 165 million Btu/h (41,600 kcal/h) for coal and higher for oil or gas.

Oil, when fired, can be atomized by the fuel pressure or by a compressed gas, usually steam or air. Atomizers utilizing fuel pressure generally are of the **uniflow or return-flow mechanical types.** The uniflow type uses an oil pressure of 300 to 600 lb/in² (21 to 42 kgf/cm²) at the maximum flow rate and is limited to an operating range of about 2 to 1. If a load range greater than 2 to 1 is required, the return-flow type of atomizer is used. This type of atomizer uses oil pressures up to 1,000 lb/in² (70 kgf/cm²) and provides an operating range of as much as 10 to 1 under favorable conditions. Steam- and air-type atomizers also provide an operating range of approximately 10 to 1, but with a relatively low oil pressure (300 lb/in²; 21 kgf/cm²). The steam consumption required for good atomization usually is less than 1 percent of the boiler's steam output.

Natural gas and some process gases [provided they are sufficiently clean and have a calorific heating value of more than 500 Btu/ft³ (4.45 kcal/m³)] can be burned by admission through a perforated ring, through radial spuds or through a centrally located center-fire-type fuel element. The center-fire fuel element can be removed for cleaning; consequently, restrictions on gas cleanliness are less severe for this type burner.

The circular pulverized-coal burner (Fig. 9.2.14) uses two or three

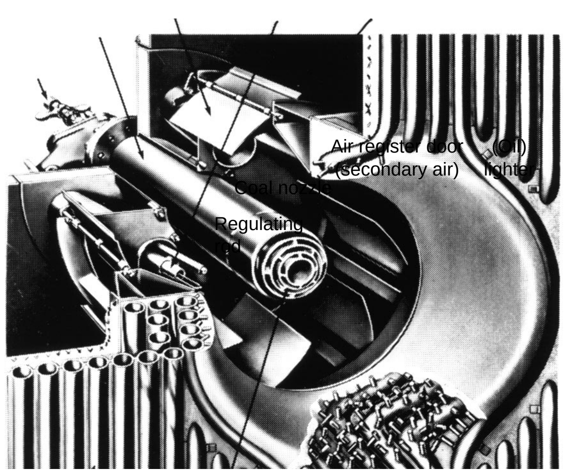


Fig. 9.2.14 Circular burner for pulverized coal, oil, or gas.

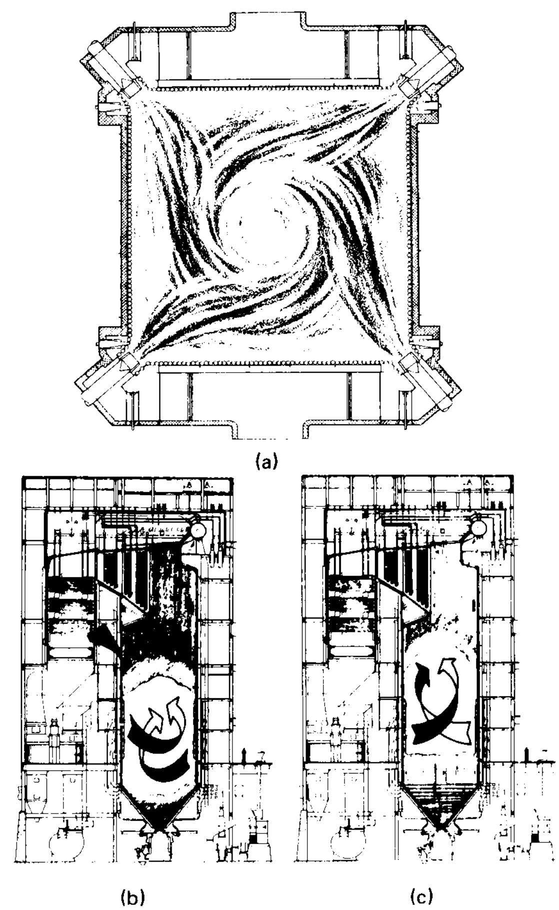


Fig. 9.2.15 Corner fired tangential tilting burners for pulverized coal, oil, or gas. (*a*) Plan section; (*b*) burners tilted down; (*c*) burners tilted up.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

fuel nozzles and provides the excellent ignition characteristics of the circular burner. Gas, when fired in these burners, is introduced through fixed-spud-type elements located in the burner throat, and return-flow or steam- or compressed-air-type atomizers are used for firing oil.

When corner-fired burners (Fig. 9.2.15) are used, the mixing of fuel and combustion air takes place in the furnace (Fig. 9.2.15*a*). Oil and gas also can be fired in these burners by inserting fuel elements in the corner ports adjacent to the pulverized-coal nozzles. The burner tips can be tilted, as shown in Fig. 9.2.15*b* and *c*, to control the steam temperature.

A properly designed pulverized-coal installation should operate satisfactorily over a range of 2 or 3 to 1 without the need of auxiliary fuel to maintain ignition and without increasing or decreasing the number of burners in service. If some of the pulverizers and burners on large units are taken out of service as the load decreases, it is possible to operate at ratings down to one-sixth of full-load steam flow without the use of auxiliary fuel.

Blast-furnace and coke-oven gas burners are usually of the circular type, in which the gas is introduced either through a centrally positioned nozzle or through an annular port surrounding the coal nozzle, or of the intertube type, where the fuel and air ports are alternated across the width of the burner.

CYCLONE FURNACES

The cyclone furnace is designed to burn low-ash fusion coals and to retain most of the coal ash in the slag, which is then tapped from the furnace, thus preventing the passage of the ash through the heat-absorbing surfaces. The coal, crushed to 4-mesh size, is admitted with primary air in a tangential manner to the primary burner (Fig. 9.2.16). The finer particles burn in suspension while the coarser particles are thrown by centrifugal force to the outer wall of the cyclone furnace. The wall surface with its sticky coating of molten slag retains most of the particles of coal until they burn and leave their molten ash on the wall. The molten ash drains into the boiler furnace and then, through an opening in the boiler furnace floor, into the slag-collecting tank.

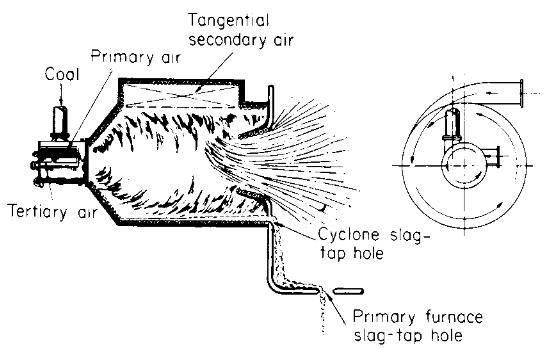


Fig. 9.2.16 Cyclone furnace.

The secondary air, which is admitted tangentially at the top of the cyclone, vigorously scrubs the coal particles on the wall, and combustion is completed at a firing rate of about ½ million Btu/(ft^3 · h) [4,450 kcal/(m^3 · h)]. The primary-furnace walls (consisting of fully studded tubes) also are wetted with molten ash and help to catch ash particles that are not retained in the cyclone furnaces. Gas, when available, can be burned by injection through openings at the bottom of the secondary-air ports. Oil is burned by spraying it axially into the cyclone through the primary burner or by firing it tangentially through an oil element located in the secondary-air port.

Figure 9.2.24 shows a boiler fired with twenty-three 10-ft-diam cyclone furnaces.

UNBURNED COMBUSTIBLE LOSS

The unburned combustible loss in the fly ash from pulverized-coal firing varies with the furnace-heat liberation, type of furnace cooling, use of slag-tap or dry-ash removal, volatility and fineness of the coal, excess air, and type of burner (see Fig. 9.2.17). There is practically no combustible in the fluid slag from slag-tap furnaces. Although the hopper refuse from dry-ash furnaces usually is low in combustible, the combustible may be appreciable in some cases. The fly ash from cyclone-furnace boilers has a very low combustible content, varying from an equivalent 0.03 percent efficiency loss when burning Illinois coal to 0.15 percent for Ohio coal.

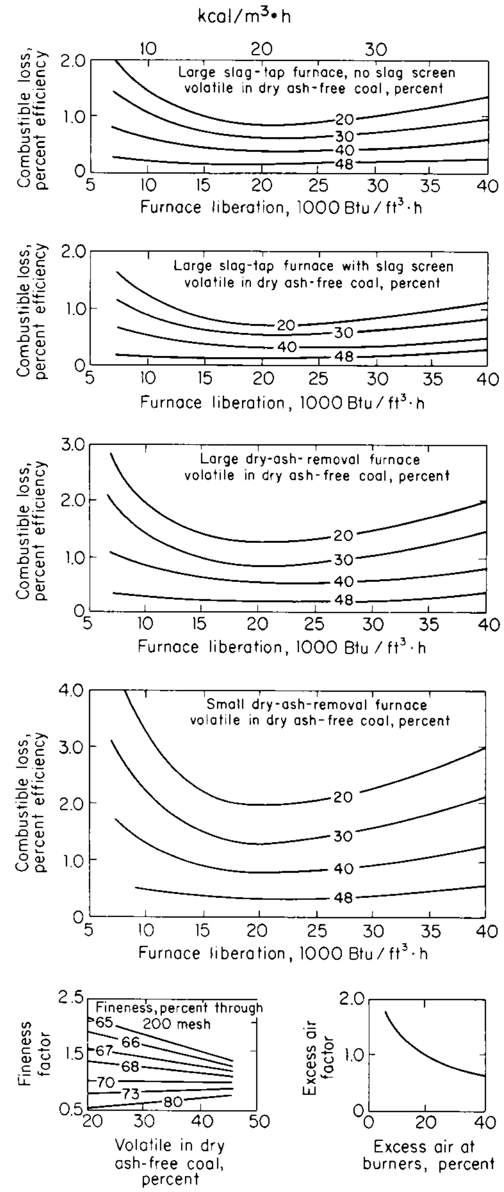


Fig. 9.2.17 Principal factors affecting combustible loss for pulverized coal firing in various types of furnaces.

Fly-ash combustible from spreader stokers varies widely with the rating, size, and type of coal burned. The combustible carryover at high rates of firing is relatively large, but reinjection of the fly ash is common and the loss in efficiency can be reduced as shown in Fig. 9.2.18.

The combustible loss in the fly ash from solid fuels is determined by

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

withdrawing a representative sample of fly ash and flue gas from the boiler outlet flue, or stack, at the same velocity in the sampling tip as the gas velocity in the flue (see ASME Test Code). The rates of flue-gas flow and fly-ash collection are measured, and the dust loading in pounds per 1,000 lb of flue gas is then calculated. The combustible in fly ash also can be measured. The data in Fig. 9.2.19 can be used for rapid determination of efficiency loss when the dust loading and amount of combustible are known.

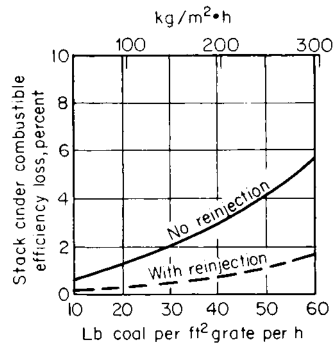


Fig. 9.2.18 Combustible efficiency loss, spreader stoker.

BOILER TYPES

The greater safety of **water-tube boilers** was recognized more than 100 years ago, and water-tube boilers have generally superseded the fire-tube type except in special cases such as small package-boiler designs and waste-heat boiler designs for medium- and low-pressure applications.

Water-tube boilers are available in a wide range of capacities—from as low as 5,000 lb (2.3 t) to as high as 9,000,000 lb (4,082 t) of steam per hour. By coordinating the various components—boilers, furnaces, fuel burners, fans, and controls—boiler manufacturers have produced a broad series of standardized and economical steam generating units, with capacities up to 550,000 lb (249 t) of steam per hour, burning oil or natural gas. For capacities up to 200,000 lb (90.7 t) per hour most units can be shipped by rail or truck as a completely shop-assembled package (Fig. 9.2.20). For larger units, barges or selected ocean vessels may be used if the site is suitably located. Beyond the limits for shop assembly, greatest economy is obtained by using modularized sections and shipping large assembled components. The two-drum-type boiler shown in Fig. 9.2.21, which comes in capacities up to 1,200,000 lb (544 t) per hour, is one example of modularized design.

Boilers utilizing banks of tubes directly connected to the steam and water drums are, in general, limited to a maximum steam pressure of 1,650 lb/in^2 (116 kgf/cm^2), since the wide tube spacing required to maintain high drum-ligament efficiency reduces the effectiveness of heat absorption.

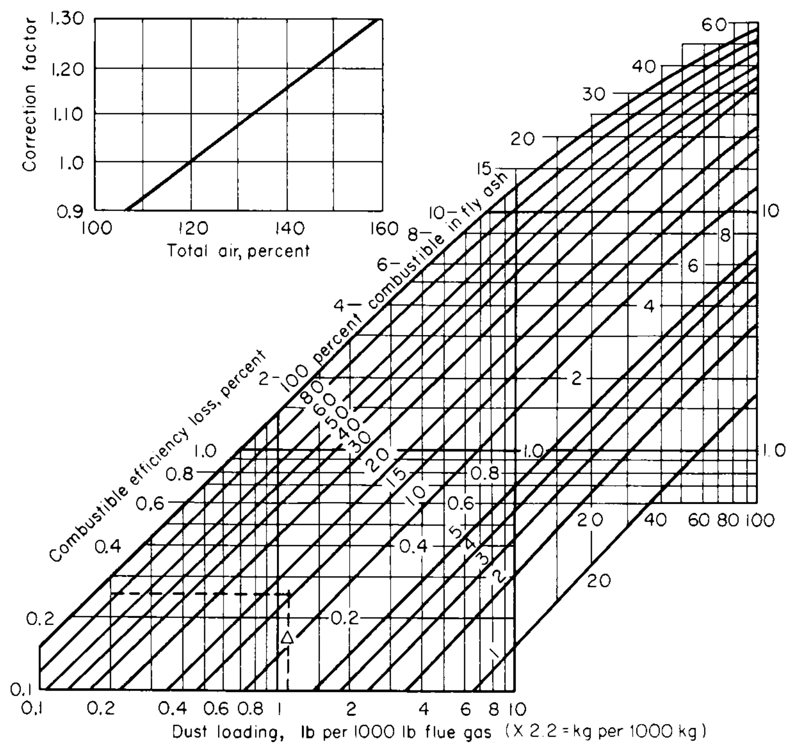


Fig. 9.2.19 Chart for determining combustible efficiency loss in fly ash. Heat loss in percent from combustible in fly ash is

$$\left[\frac{\mathrm{DL}(C/100)(14{,}600)}{10{,}000{,}000/[7.6(\mathrm{TA}/100)+0.9]+[\mathrm{DL}(C/100)(14{,}600)]}\right]\times 100$$

where DL = dust loading, lb/1,000 lb flue gas (× 2.2 = kg/1,000 kg); C = combustible in fly ash, percent; TA = total air, percent.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

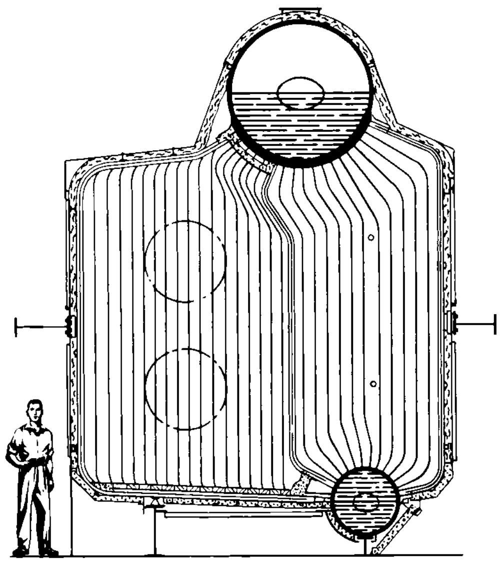


Fig. 9.2.20 Water-tube package boiler, single-pass gas.

Many designs of high-pressure, high-temperature, utility-type boilers, ranging from capacities of 500,000 to 9,000,000 lb (230 to 4,100 t) of steam per hour, are used, but they can generally be classed as radiant-type boilers. In radiant boilers, little or no steam is generated by convection-heat-absorbing surfaces since virtually all the steam is generated in the tubes forming the furnace enclosure walls from heat radiated to these tubes from the hot combustion gases. Figure 9.2.22 illustrates a large oil- and/or gas-fired natural-circulation type radiant-boiler unit, and Fig. 9.2.23 shows a tangentially pulverized coal-fired, supercritical-pressure, combined-circulation type of boiler. The cyclone furnace forced-flow, once-through unit shown in Fig. 9.2.24 is known as a universal pressure boiler, since it can be designed for operation at pressures either above or below the critical pressure (3,206 lb/in^2; 225 kgf/cm^2).

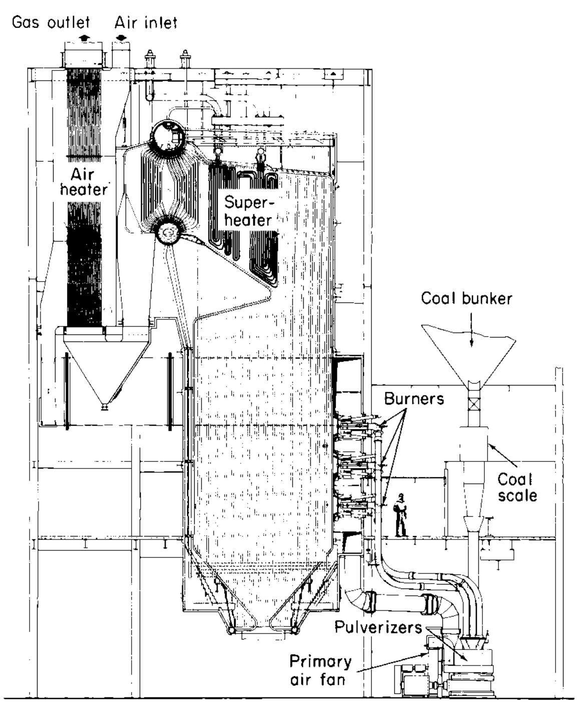


Fig. 9.2.21 Two-drum type of boiler designed for pulverized-coal firing.

Drum-type natural or assisted-circulation boilers are restricted to a maximum pressure of about 2,600 lb/in^2 (183 kgf/cm^2) at the superheater outlet because of circulation and steam separation characteristics. However, once-through forced-flow-type boilers are not restricted to any pressure plateau by circulation limits.

In once-through forced-flow boilers, the water generally flows from the economizer to the furnace-wall tubes, then to the gas-convection-pass enclosure tubes and the primary superheater. Usually, the transition to the vapor phase (if operation is below the critical pressure) begins in the furnace circuits and, depending upon the operating conditions and the design, is completed either in the gas-convection-pass enclosure or in the primary superheater. The steam from the primary superheater passes to the secondary (and possibly to a tertiary) superheater. One or more reheaters are provided to reheat the low-pressure steam.

In addition to boilers for the conversion of energy in conventional fuels (coal, oil, and gas) to steam for power, heating or process use, many boilers have been developed for special requirements.

Waste-heat and exhaust-gas boilers utilize the sensible heat in the gas to generate steam. In the recovery of heat from the gas, water-tube boilers, often in conjunction with superheaters and economizers, are generally used; but fire-tube boilers may be used for cooling process or other gases when the containment of pressurized gas is a factor and the steam requirements are small.

High-temperature-water boilers provide hot water, under pressure, for space heating of large areas. Water is circulated at pressures up to 450 lb/in^2 (31.6 kgf/cm^2) through the generator and the heating system. The water leaves the generator at subsaturated temperatures ranging up to 400°F (200°C). The boilers usually incorporate a water-cooled furnace and convection-gas-pass enclosure, with the convection-heat-absorbing surface arranged in sections similar to those of an economizer. Sizes generally range up to 60 million Btu/h (15,120 kcal/h) for package units, and field-erected units can be designed for much higher capacities.

The exhaust CO gas from oil refinery fluid catalytic-cracking units is used as the fuel for carbon monoxide boilers. Generally, a cylindrical furnace is used to contain the pressurized gas and the CO burners are arranged tangentially to increase the residence time of the gas in the furnace. The furnace walls are water cooled and tubes are refractory covered to promote ignition. Conventional-type gas and/or burners are provided for startup, for continuous pilots, and for the generation of steam when the cracker is out of service.

Recovery-type boilers are designed specifically for the recovery of chemicals in the spent cooking liquors from kraft, sulfite, soda, and other papermaking processes. The liquor is fired in a water-cooled furnace, either in suspension or in a smelt bed on the furnace floor. The chemicals, depending upon the process, are recovered from the smelt or the flue gas in a form which permits economical conversion for reuse.

FURNACES

A furnace is an enclosure provided for the combustion of fuel. The enclosure confines the products of combustion and is capable of withstanding the high temperatures developed and the pressures used. Its dimension and geometry are adapted to the rate of heat release, the type of fuel, and the method of firing so as to promote complete burning of combustible and provide suitable disposal of the ash.

Water-cooled furnaces are used with most boiler units and for all types of fuel and methods of firing. Water cooling of the furnace walls reduces the transfer of heat to the structural members and, consequently, their temperature can be limited to that which will meet the requirements of strength and resistance to oxidation. Water-cooled tube con-

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

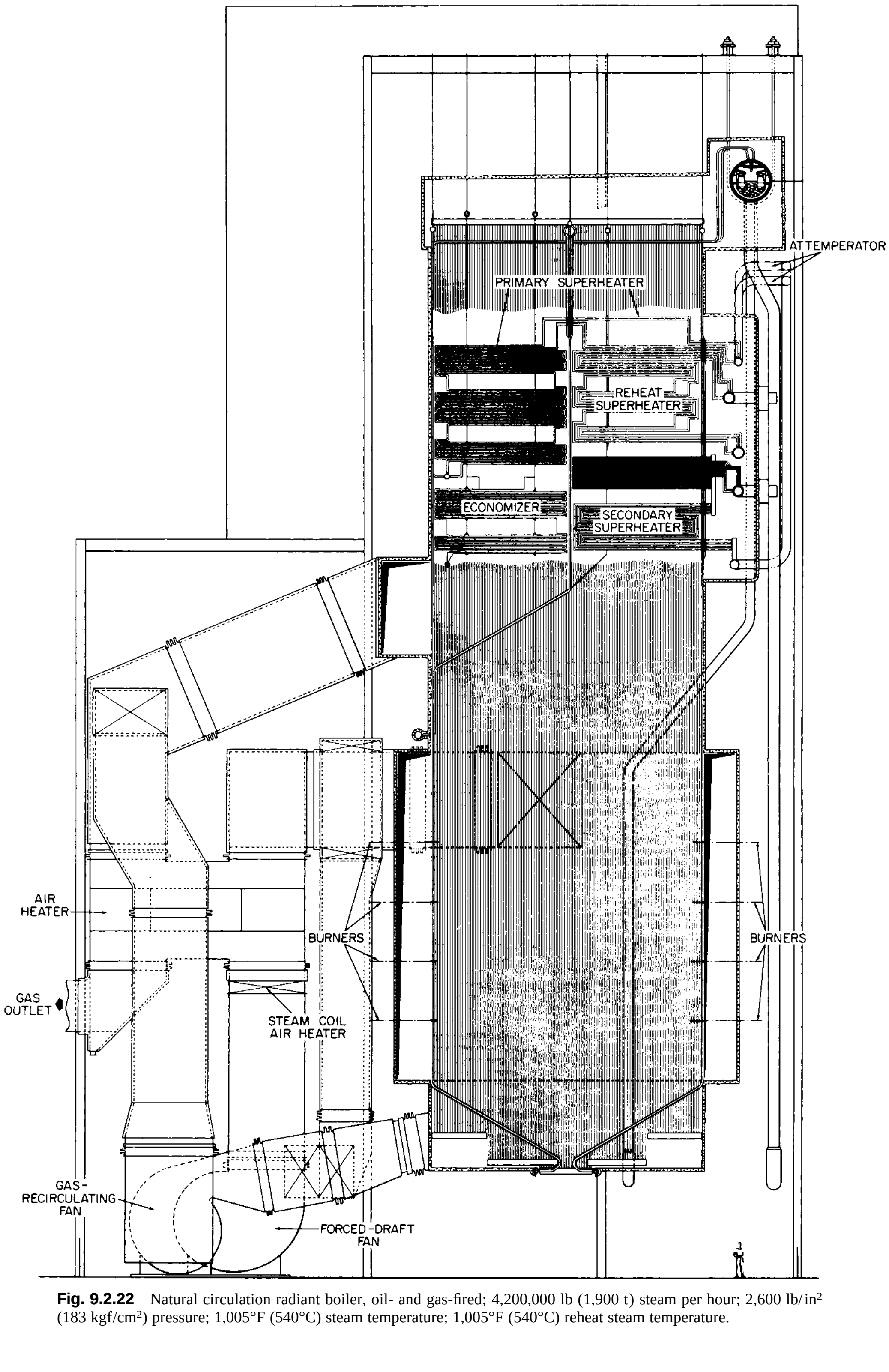


Fig. 9.2.22 Natural circulation radiant boiler, oil- and gas-fired; 4,200,000 lb (1,900 t) steam per hour; 2,600 lb/in^2 (183 kgf/cm^2) pressure; 1,005°F (540°C) steam temperature; 1,005°F (540°C) reheat steam temperature.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

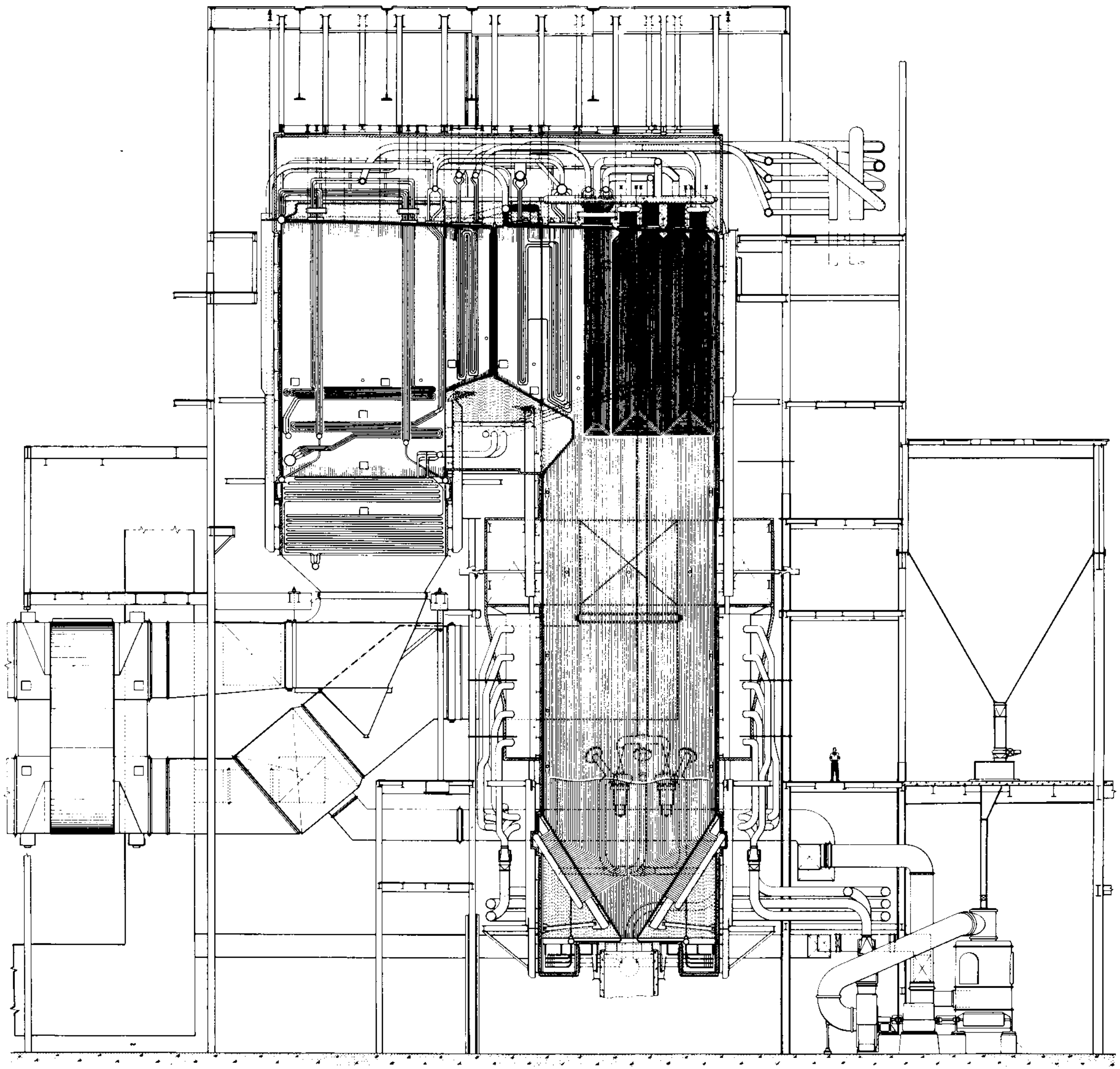


Fig. 9.2.23 Once-through boiler with combined circulation; twin pressurized furnaces; pulverized coal tangentially fired; 6,400,000 lb (2,900 t) steam per hour; 3,650 lb/in² (257 kgf/cm²) pressure; 1,003°F (539°C) steam temperature; 1,003°F (539°C) reheat steam temperature.

structions facilitate large furnace dimensions and optimum arrangements of roofs, hoppers, arches, and mountings for burners; and the use of tubular screens, platens, or division walls to increase the amount of heat-absorbing surface in the combustion zone. The use of water-cooled furnaces reduces the external heat losses; these losses for conventional-type furnaces are shown in Fig.9.2.37.

Heat-absorbing surfaces in the furnace receive heat from the products of combustion and, consequently, contribute directly to steam generation while lowering the furnace exit-gas temperature. The principal mechanisms of heat transfer take place simultaneously. These include intersolid radiation from the fuel bed or fuel particles, nonluminous radiation from the products of combustion, convection heat transfer from the furnace gases, and heat conduction through deposits and tube metals. (See also Sec. 4.) The absorption effectiveness of the furnace surfaces is influenced by the deposits of ash or slag.

Furnaces vary in shape and size, in the location and spacing of burners, in the disposition of heat-absorbing surface, and in the arrangement of arches and hoppers. Flame shape and length affect the geometry of radiation and the rate and distribution of heat absorption by the water-cooled surfaces.

Analytical solutions of the transfer of heat in the furnaces of steam-generating units are extremely complex, and it is most difficult to calculate furnace outlet-gas temperature by theoretical methods. Nevertheless, the furnace outlet-gas temperature must be accurately predicted, since this temperature determines the design of the remainder of the boiler unit, particularly that of the superheater and reheater. The calculations must therefore be based upon test results supplemented by data accumulated from operating experience and by judgments predicated upon knowledge of the principles of heat transfer and the characteristics of fuels and slags.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

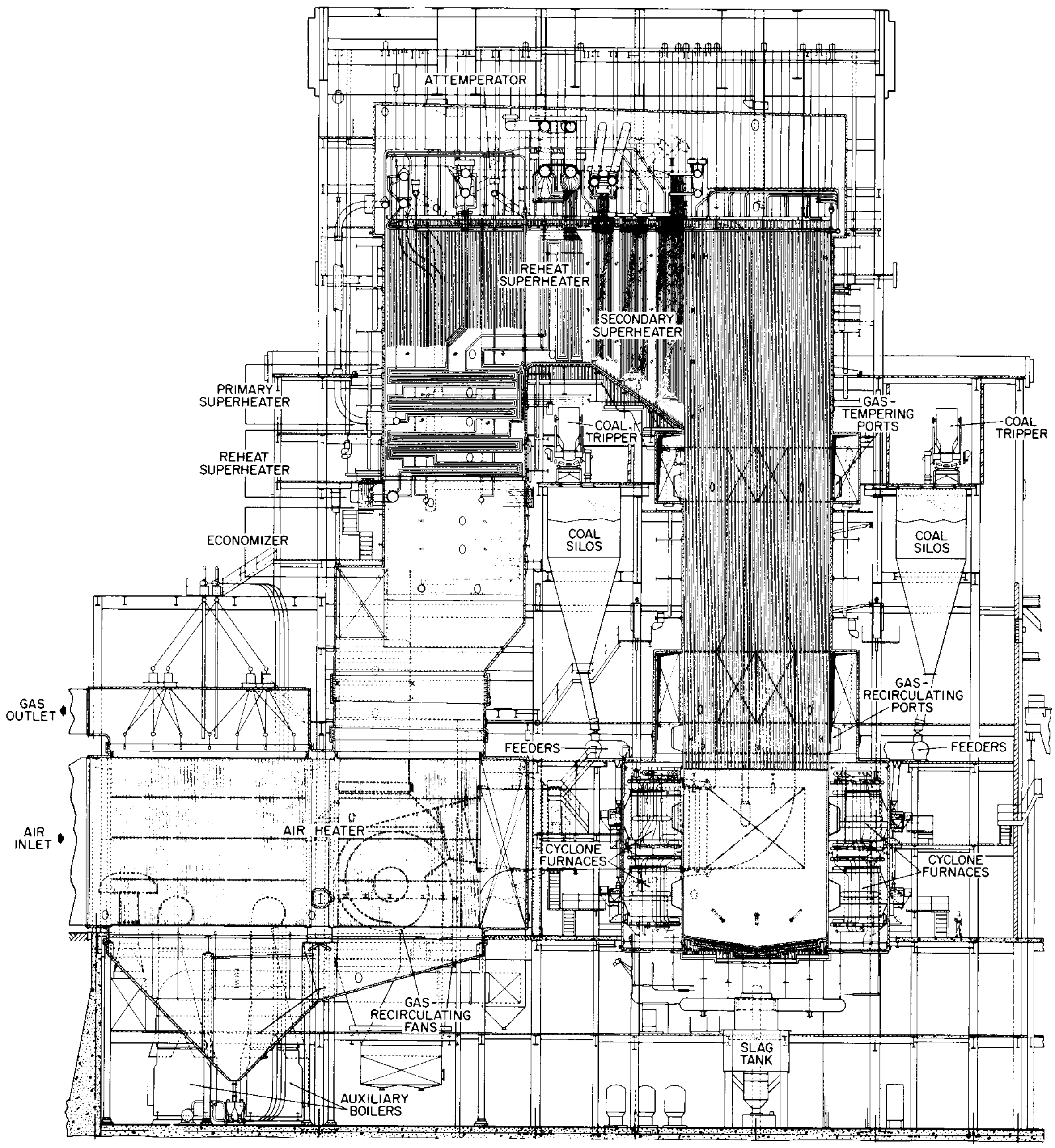


Fig. 9.2.24 Universal Pressure boiler; pressurized cyclone furnace, coal-fired; 8,000,000 lb (3,640 t) steam per hour; 3,650 lb/in^2 (257 kgf/cm^2) pressure; 1,003°F (539°C) steam temperature; 1,003°F (539°C) reheat steam temperature.

The curves in Figs. 9.2.25 and 9.2.26 show the gas temperatures at the furnace outlet of typical boiler units when firing coal, oil, and gas. The furnace exit-gas temperatures vary considerably with coal firing because of the insulating effect of ash and slag deposits on the heat-absorbing surfaces. The amount of surface is the major factor in overall furnace heat absorption, and the heat released and available for absorption per hour per square foot of effective heat-absorbing surface is therefore a satisfactory basis for correlation. The heat released and available for absorption is the sum of the calorific heat content of the fuel fired and the sensible heat of the combustion air, less the sum of the heat unavailable owing to the unburned portion of the fuel and latent heat of the water vapor formed from moisture in the fuel and the combustion of hydrogen.

Furnace-wall tubes often are pitched on close centers to obtain maxi-

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

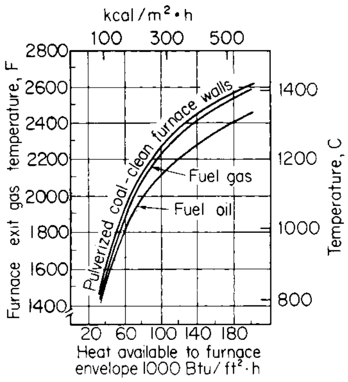


Fig. 9.2.25 Approximate gas temperatures at water-cooled furnace outlet with different fuels.

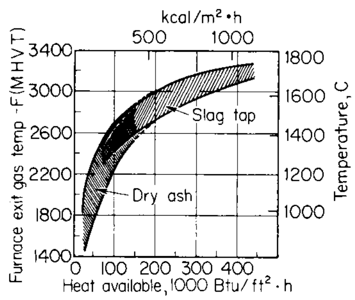


Fig. 9.2.26 General range of furnace exit gas temperatures, pulverized-coal firing. (MHVT = multiple-shield, high-velocity thermocouple.)

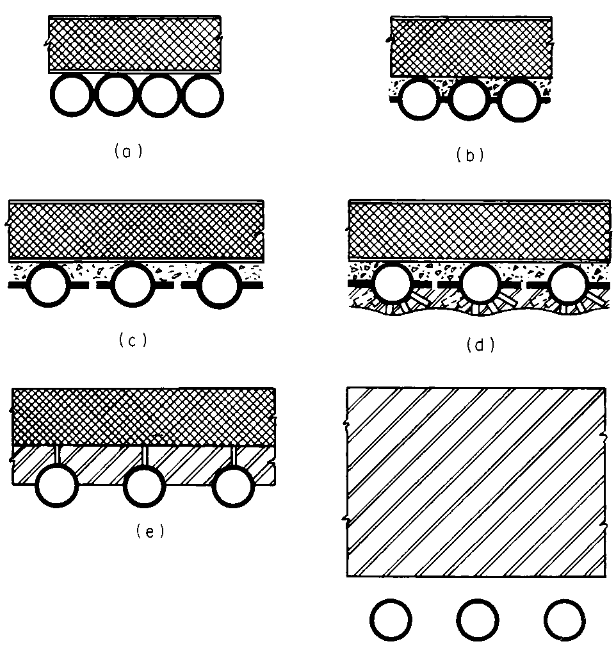


Fig. 9.2.27 Water-cooled furnace wall construction types. (*a*) Tangent tube wall; (*b*) welded membrane tube wall; (*c*) flat studs welded to sides of tubes; (*d*) full stud tube wall, refractory-covered; (*e*) tube and tile wall; (*f*) tubes spaced from refractory wall.

mum heat absorption and to facilitate ash removal. The arrangement takes the form of the so-called tangent tube construction (Fig. 9.2.27) wherein the adjacent tubes are almost touching with only a small clearance provided for erection purposes. However, most boilers now use **membrane tube walls** in which a steel bar, or membrane, is welded between adjacent tubes. This construction facilitates the fabrication of water-cooled walls in large shop-assembled tube panels. Less effective cooling is obtained, at a lower cost, by placing the tubes on wider spacing and using extended metal surface in the form of flat studs welded to the tubes. If even less cooling is desired, the tube spacing can be increased and refractory installed between or behind the tubes to form the wall enclosure.

Additional furnace cooling in the form of tubular platens, division walls, or wide-spaced tubular screens may be used. In high heat input zones, the tubes can be protected by refractory coverings anchored to the tubes by studs. Peak heat-absorption rates of furnace-wall tubes in the combustion zone may, in some designs, approximate 200,000 Btu/h · ft^2 [542 kcal/(h · m^2)] of projected surface, but the average heat absorption rate for the furnace is considerably lower (Fig. 9.2.28).

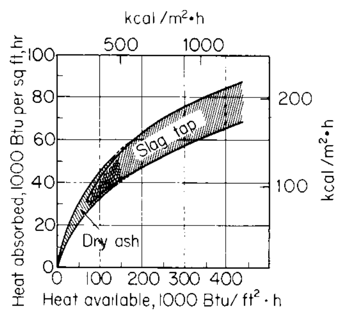


Fig. 9.2.28 General range of average heat absorption rate in water-cooled pulverized-coal-fired furnaces.

Furnace walls must be adequately supported with provision for thermal expansion and with reinforcing buckstays to withstand the lateral forces caused by the difference between the furnace pressure and the surrounding atmosphere. The furnace enclosure must prevent air infiltration when the furnace is operated under suction and gas leakage when the furnace is operated at pressures above atmospheric.

SUPERHEATERS AND REHEATERS

The addition of heat to steam after evaporation, or change of state, is accompanied by an increase in the temperature and the enthalpy of the fluid. The heat is added to the steam in boiler components called superheaters and reheaters, which are comprised of tubular elements exposed to the high-temperature gaseous products of combustion.

The advantages of superheat and reheat in power generation result from thermodynamic gain in the Rankine cycle (see Sec. 4) and from the reduction of heat losses due to moisture in the low-pressure stages of the turbine. With high steam pressures and temperatures, more useful energy is available, but the advances to high steam temperature often are restricted by the strength and the oxidation resistance of the steel and the ferrous alloys currently available and economically practical for use in boiler pressure-part and turbine-blade constructions.

The term superheating is applied to the higher-pressure steam and the term reheating to the lower-pressure steam which has given up some of its energy during expansion in the high-pressure turbine. With high initial steam pressure, one or more stages of reheating may be employed to improve the thermal efficiency.

Separately fired superheaters may be used, but superheaters usually are installed as an integral part of the steam-generating unit and broadly classified as **radiant** or **convection** types, depending upon the predominant method of heat transfer to the heat-absorbing surfaces.

The quantity of heat absorbed and the amount of superheat attained

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

are dependent upon the size, location, and arrangement of the heat-absorbing surfaces; the temperature differentials between the gas, the tube metal, and the steam; and the heat-transfer coefficients. Steam-temperature characteristics of radiant- and convection-type superheaters are shown in Fig. 9.2.29, as well as the effect of using a combination of these types to produce a more uniform steam temperature over a wide operating range.

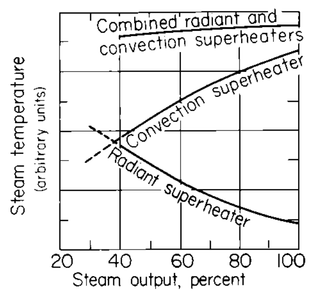


Fig. 9.2.29 Comparative radiant and convection superheater characteristics.

Superheaters of the predominantly **radiant type** usually are arranged for direct exposure to the furnace gases and, in some designs, form a part of the furnace enclosure. In other designs, the surface is arranged in the form of tubular loops or platens, on wide lateral spacing, extending into the furnace. Such surface is exposed to high-temperature furnace gases traveling at relatively low velocities, and the transfer of heat is principally by radiation.

Convection-type superheaters are installed beyond the furnace exit where the gas temperatures are lower than those in the zones where radiant-type superheaters are used. The tubes are usually arranged in the form of parallel elements on close lateral spacing and in tube banks extending partially or completely across the width of the gas stream, with the gas flowing through the relatively narrow spaces between the tubes. High rates of gas flow and, thus, high convection heat-transfer rates are obtained at the expense of gas-pressure drop through the tube bank.

Superheaters, shielded from the furnace combustion zone by arches or wide-spaced screens of steam-generating tubes, which receive heat by radiation from the high-temperature gases in cavities or intertube spaces and also by convection due to the relatively high rate of gas flow through the tube banks, have both radiant and convection characteristics.

Superheaters may utilize tubes arranged in the form of hairpin loops connected in parallel to inlet and outlet headers; or they may be of the continuous-tube type, where each element consists of a number of tube loops in series between the inlet and outlet headers. The latter arrangement permits the use of large tube banks, thus increasing the amount of heat-absorbing surface that can be installed and providing economy of space and reduction of cost. Either type may be designed for the drainage of the condensate which forms within the tubes during outages of the unit, or they may be used in pendent arrangements which are not drainable but, usually, have simpler and better supports. Nondrainable superheaters require additional care during start-up to remove the condensate by evaporation. Both types require that every tube have sufficient steam flow to prevent overheating during operation. In start-up, when flow is insufficient, gas temperatures entering the superheater must be controlled to limit tube metal temperatures to safe values for the material used.

The heat transferred from high-temperature gases by radiation and convection is conducted through the metal tube wall and imparted by convection to the high-velocity steam in the tubes. The removal of heat by the steam is necessary to keep the tube metals within a safe temperature range consistent with the temperature limits of oxidation and the creep or rupture strength of the materials (see Sec. 5). Allowable design stresses for various steels and alloys, as established by the ASME Code, are listed in Table 9.2.2 (see also Sec. 6). The practical use limit for each material also is indicated. Current editions of the code should be checked for latest revisions. For economic reasons, it is customary to use low-carbon steel in the steam inlet sections of the superheater and, progressively, more costly alloys as the metal temperatures increase.

The rate of steam flow through superheater tubes must be sufficiently high to keep the metal temperatures within a safe operating range and to ensure good distribution of flow through all the elements connected in parallel circuits. This can be accomplished by arrangements which provide for multiple passes of the steam flow through the superheater tube banks. Excessive steam-flow rates, while providing lower tube-metal temperatures, should be avoided, since they result in high pressure drop with consequent loss of thermodynamic efficiency. As a general guide, the range of the steam-flow rates required for various steam and gas temperature conditions is shown in Table 9.2.3.

Table 9.2.2 Superheater and Reheater Tubes—Maximum Allowable Design Stress, lb/in² (× 0.070307 = kgf/cm²)

		Temp, °F (°C)							
Material	ASME spec. no. and type	900 (482)	950 (510)	1,000 (538)	1,050 (566)	1,100 (593)	1,150 (621)	1,200 (649)	1,300 (704)
Carbon steel	SA210, grade C	5,000	3,000						
Carbon moly	SA209, T1a	13,600	8,200						
Croloy ½	SA213, T2	12,800	9,200	5,900					
Croloy 1¼	SA213, T11	13,100	11,000	6,600	4,100				
Croloy 2¼	SA213, T22		11,000	7,800	5,800	4,200			
Croloy 5	SA213, T5				4,200	2,900	2,000		
Croloy 9	SA213, T9				5,500	3,300	2,200	1,500	
Croloy 304H	SA213, TP 304H				9,500	8,900	7,700	6,100	3,700
Croloy 32H	SA213, TP 321H				10,100	8,800	6,900	5,400	3,200

SOURCE: ASME Code, 1983.

Table 9.2.3 Range of Steam Mass Flow Values of Convection Superheaters

Temp, °F (°C)		Steam mass flow	
Steam	Gas	lb/(h · ft² flow area)	kg/(m² · s)
Less than 750 (399)	1200 (649)	75,000–150,000	102–204
700–800 (371–426)	1600 (871)	250,000–350,000	340–475
800–900 (426–482)	2400 (1316)	400,000–500,000	545–680
900–1,000 (482–538)	2400 (1316)	500,000–600,000	680–816
1,000–1,100 (538–593)	2400 (1316)	700,000 and higher	950

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

The spacing of the tubular elements in the tube bank and, consequently, the rate of gas flow and convection heat transfer are governed primarily by the types of fuel fired, draft-loss considerations, and the fouling and erosive characteristics of fuel ash carried in the gas stream. With clean gases, or in the low-gas-temperature zones of coal-fired units, a gas flow rate of about 6,000 lb/(h · ft^2) [8.2 kg/(m^2 · s)] of free-flow area is generally within economic limits. In the higher-gas-temperature zones, 1,600 to 2,300°F (871 to 1,260°C), the adherence and the accumulation of ash deposits can reduce the gas-flow area and, in some cases, may completely bridge the space between tubes. Thus, as gas temperatures increase, it is customary to increase the tube spacings in the tube banks to avoid excessive draft loss and to facilitate ash removal.

ECONOMIZERS

Economizers remove heat from the moderately low-temperature combustion gases after the gases leave the steam-generating and superheating/reheating sections of the boiler unit. Economizers are, in effect, feedwater heaters which receive water from the boiler feed pumps and deliver it at a higher temperature to the steam generator. Economizers are used instead of additional steam-generating surface, since the feedwater and, consequently, the heat-receiving surface are at temperatures below the saturated-steam temperature. Thus, the gases can be cooled to lower temperature levels for greater heat recovery and economy.

Economizers are forced-flow, once-through, convection heat-transfer devices, usually consisting of steel tubes, to which feedwater is supplied at a pressure above that in the steam-generating section and at a rate corresponding to the steam output of the boiler unit. They are classed as horizontal- or vertical-tube types, according to geometrical arrangement; as longitudinal or crossflow, depending upon the direction of gas flow with respect to the tubes; as parallel or counterflow, with respect to the relative direction of gas and water flow; as steaming or nonsteaming, depending on the thermal performance; as return-bend or continuous-tube, depending upon the details of design; and as bare-tube or extended-surface, according to the type of heat-absorbing surface. Staggered or in-line tube arrangements may be used. The arrangement of tubes affects the gas flow through the tube bank, the draft loss, the heat-transfer characteristics, and the ease of cleaning.

The size of an economizer is governed by economic considerations involving the cost of fuel, the comparative cost and thermal performance of alternate steam-generating or air-heater surface, the feedwater temperature, and the desired exit-gas temperature. In many cases, it is more economical to use both an economizer and an air heater.

The temperatures of the economizer tube metals generally approximate those of the water flowing within the tubes, and thus with low feedwater temperatures, condensation and external corrosion are encountered in those locations where the tube-metal temperature is below that of the acid or water dew point of the gas (see Fig. 9.2.30). Internal

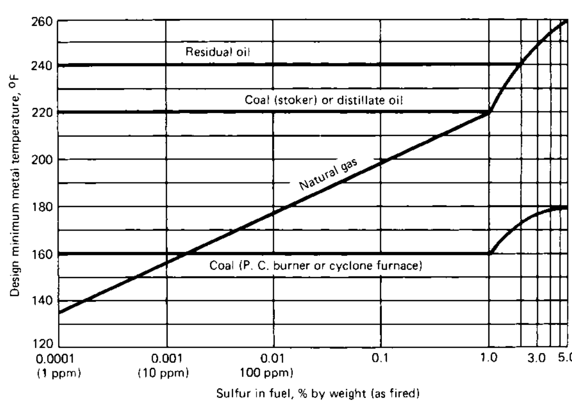


Fig. 9.2.30 Limiting metal temperatures to avoid external corrosion in economizers or air heaters when fuel containing sulfur is burned.

corrosion and pitting also may be experienced if the feedwater contains more than 0.007 ppm of dissolved oxygen. Therefore, it is imperative to maintain feedwater temperatures above the dew-point temperature of the gas and to provide suitable deaeration of the feedwater for the removal of oxygen.

AIR HEATERS

Air heaters, like economizers, remove heat from the relatively low-temperature combustion gases. The temperature of the inlet air is less than that of the water to the economizer, and thus it is possible to reduce the temperature of the gaseous products of combustion further before they are discharged to the stack.

The heat recovered from the combustion gases is recycled to the furnace with the combustion air and, when added to the thermal energy released from the fuel, is available for absorption by the steam-generating unit, with a resultant gain in overall thermal efficiency. The use of preheated combustion air accelerates ignition and promotes rapid and complete burning of the fuel.

Air heaters are usually classed as **recuperative** or **regenerative.** Both types utilize the convection transfer of heat from the gas stream to a metal or other solid surface and the convection transfer of heat from this surface to the air. In recuperative air heaters, exemplified by the tubular or plate types (Fig. 9.2.31), the stationary metal parts form a separating boundary between the heating and cooling fluids, and the heat passes by

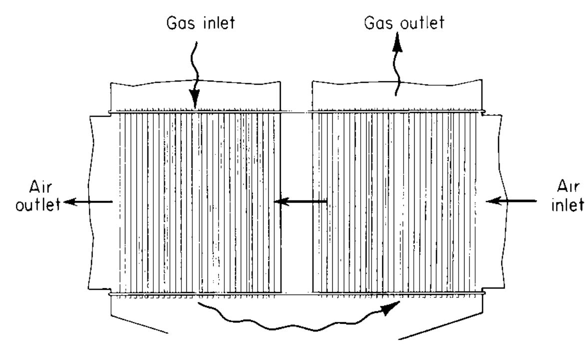


Fig. 9.2.31 Recuperative-type tubular air heaters, two gas passes, single air pass.

conduction through the metal wall. There are two commonly used types of regenerative air heaters (Fig. 9.2.32). In Fig. 9.2.32*a*, the heat transfer members are moved alternately through the gas and air streams undergoing successive heating and cooling cycles and transferring heat by the thermal-storage capacity of the members. The other type of regenerative air heater (Fig. 9.2.32*b*) has stationary elements, and the alternate flow of gas and air is controlled by rotating the inlet and outlet connections.

Recuperative and regenerative air heaters may be arranged either vertically or horizontally and for either parallel or counterflow of the gas and air. The gases are usually passed through the tubes of tubular air heaters to facilitate cleaning, although in some designs, particularly for marine installations, the air flows through the tubes.

Improved heat transfer and better utilization of the heat-absorbing surfaces are obtained with a counterflow of the gases and the use of small flow channels. Regenerative type air heaters readily lend themselves to these two principles and thus offer high capability in minimum space. However, regenerative air heaters have the disadvantages of air leakage into the gas stream and the transport of fly ash into the combustion air system. Tubular-type recuperative air heaters do not encounter these problems.

The products of combustion from most fuels contain a high percentage of water vapor, and thus condensation will be experienced in air heaters if the exposed metal surfaces are cooled below the dew point of

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

the gas. Minute concentrations of sulfur trioxide in the gases, originating from the combustion of sulfur and varying with the sulfur content of the fuel and the method of firing, combine with the water vapor in the combustion gases to form sulfuric acid, which may condense on the metal surfaces at acid-dew-point temperatures as high as 250 to 300°F (121 to 149°C), well above the water dew point (Huge and Piotter, *Trans. ASME,* 1955). Such condensation leads to corrosion and/or the fouling of the gas-flow area. It is most likely to occur during the winter when the entering-air temperature is low, and at low operating loads or in localized sections at the cold-air inlet if there is poor distribution of the air or the gas flowing through the air heater. Corrosion and fouling can be prevented by the use of auxiliary steam-heated air heaters located ahead of the air inlet, by recirculating heated air from the outlet duct, or by bypassing a portion of the cold air to reduce the airflow through the air heater. Both recuperative and regenerative air heaters often are designed with separate corrosion sections arranged to facilitate the replacement of the vulnerable cold-end portions.

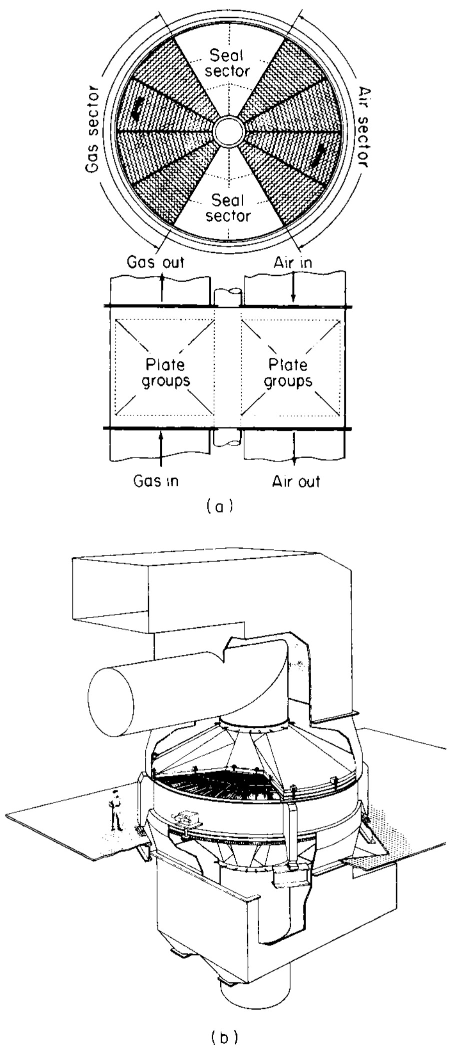


Fig. 9.2.32 Two designs of rotary regenerative air heaters.

STEAM TEMPERATURE, ADJUSTMENT AND CONTROL

The control of steam temperatures is vital to the life of high-temperature equipment and to the economy of power generation. Actual, or operating, steam temperatures below the design temperature reduce the thermodynamic efficiency and increase fuel cost, and temperatures above the design temperature reduce the margins of reserve in the strength of tubes, headers, piping, valves, and turbine elements. Further, sudden or extreme temperature variations may cause destructive stresses, particularly in rotating equipment.

It is sometimes necessary, because of the complexities involved in the design evaluation of heat-transfer rates and fuel characteristics, to modify installed equipment to obtain the required steam temperatures. Such changes might involve the installation of baffles for the distribution of gas through the superheater and the removal, or addition, of tubular elements in the superheater or in those components preceding the superheater which affect the temperature of the gas to the superheater. Therefore, it is desirable, and usually essential, to provide some means of controlling steam temperature to compensate for the variations in fuel, heat transfer, and surface cleanliness conditions encountered during operation. These may include (1) damper control of the gases to the superheater and/or reheater; (2) recirculation of the low-temperature gaseous products of combustion to the furnace to change the relative amounts of heat absorbed in the furnace, in the superheater, and/or in the reheater; (3) selective use of burners at different elevations in the furnace or the use of tilting burners to change the location of the combustion zone with respect to the furnace heat-absorbing surface; (4) attemperation or controlled cooling of the steam at superheater inlet, at superheater outlet, or between the primary and secondary stages of the superheater; (5) control of the firing rate in divided furnaces; and (6) control of the firing rate relative to the pumping rate of water in forced-flow once-through boilers.

The speed of response differs for the various methods, and the control of steam temperature by gas bypass or flame position is slower than that by spray-water attemperation. The operating controls for these methods can be arranged for manual, automatic, or combination adjustment, and the use of more than one method often facilitates the maintaining of constant steam temperature over a wider range of boiler load (Fig. 9.2.33).

The attemperation of superheated steam by direct-contact water spray (Fig. 9.2.34) results in an equivalent increase in high-pressure steam generation without thermal loss. Spray attemperation requires the use of

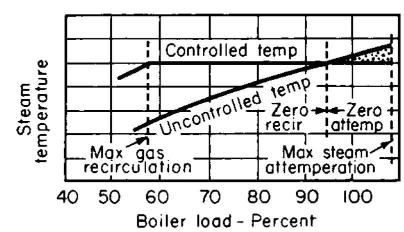


Fig. 9.2.33 Steam temperature control by flue gas recirculation and attemperation.

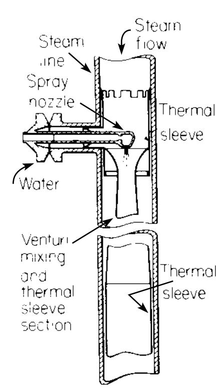


Fig. 9.2.34 Spray-type direct-contact attemperator.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

essentially pure water, such as condensate, to avoid impurities in the steam. Submerged-type attemperators, when used, are generally restricted to relatively low-pressure boilers operating with steam temperatures of 850°F (454°C) or less. Usually, spray attemperators are not used for the control of reheat-steam temperature since their use reduces the overall thermal-cycle efficiency. They are, however, often installed for the emergency control of reheat-steam temperatures.

Ash and slag deposits on superheater and reheater surfaces reduce heat transfer and lower steam temperatures. Similar deposits on the furnace walls and steam-generating surface ahead of the superheater and/or reheater also reduce heat transfer to those surfaces, resulting in higher-temperature gas to the superheater and reheater and, consequently, increased steam temperatures. Thus the control of surface cleanliness is an important factor in the control of steam temperature.

Increased excess air results in higher steam temperatures because of reduction in furnace radiant-heat absorption, the greater amount of gas, and the increased convection heat transfer in the superheater and/or reheater. Operation with feedwater temperatures below that anticipated also results in increased steam temperatures because of the greater firing rate required to maintain steam generation.

OPERATING CONTROLS

(See also Sec. 16.)

The need for operating instruments and manual or automatic controls varies with the size and type of equipment, method of firing, and proficiency of operating personnel.

Safe operation and efficient performance require information relative to the (1) water level in the boiler drum; (2) burner performance; (3) steam and feedwater pressures; (4) superheated and reheated steam temperatures; (5) pressures of the gas and air entering and leaving principal components; (6) feedwater and boiler-water chemical conditions and particle carryover; (7) operation of feed pumps, fans, and fuel-burning and fuel-preparation equipment; (8) relationship of the actual combustion air passing through the furnace to that theoretically required for the fuel fired; (9) temperatures of the fuel, water, gas, and air entering and leaving the principal components of the boiler unit; and (10) fuel, feedwater, steam, and air flows so as to monitor operating conditions continuously and to make such adjustments as might be necessary.

Control of the various functions to maintain the desired operating conditions may be accomplished on small-capacity boilers by the manual adjustment of valves, dampers, and motor speeds. Most oil- and gas-fired package boilers are equipped with automatic controls to purge the furnace, to start and stop the burners, and to maintain the required steam pressure and water level. The operating requirements of utility and large industrial boilers dictate the use of automatic controls for the major variables, such as feedwater flow, firing rate, and steam temperature. The type of boiler and its components generally establishes the basic mode of control. Analog controls of either the pneumatic or the electric type are available. Digital control is being used more extensively.

Sequence controls often are applied in the start-up of utility boilers to program the furnace purge, burner light-off, and burner control. Interlocks are essential to ensure the proper starting and firing sequence and to alarm or automatically shut down the unit in the event of the failure of essential auxiliaries.

BOILER CIRCULATION

Adequate circulation in the steam-generating section of a boiler is required to prevent overheating of the heat-absorbing surfaces, and it may be provided naturally by gravitational forces, mechanically by pumps, or by a combination of both methods.

Natural circulation is produced by the difference in the densities of the water in the unheated downcomers and the steam water mixture in the heated steam generating tubes. This density differential provides a large circulating force (curve *A*, Fig. 9.2.35). The downcomers and the heated circuits are so designed that the friction, or resistance to flow, through the system balances the circulating force at the desired total circulating flow.

The forced-recirculation or assisted-circulation type boiler uses a steam drum similar to that used with natural-circulation boilers. The

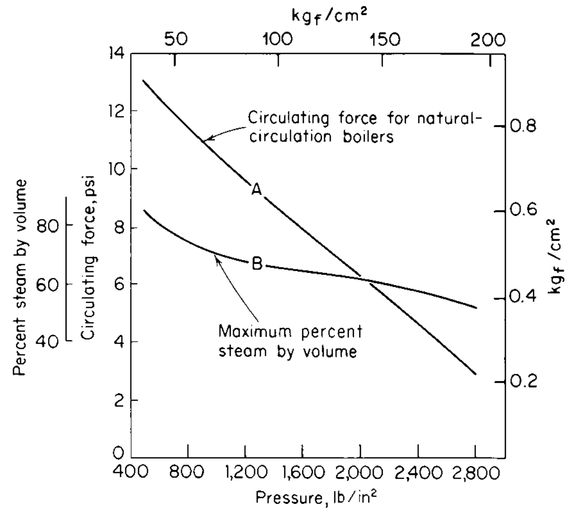


Fig. 9.2.35 Maximum percent steam by volume and circulating force for natural-circulation boilers.

supply of water to the furnace walls and the boiler surfaces flows from this drum to a circulating pump, which supplies the pressure necessary to force the water through the water-steam mixture circuits and then back to the drum, where the steam and water are separated. The total quantity of water pumped usually is 4 to 6 times the amount of steam evaporated, as shown in Fig. 9.2.36. The recirculating pump produces a differential pressure of 30 to 40 lb/in^2 (2.1 to 2.8 kgf/cm^2), and the power required is equivalent to about 0.5 percent of the heat input to the boiler. Resistor orifices are required at the entrance to each tube, or circuit, to control flow distribution.

In assisted-circulation designs, the velocities or flows are independent of boiler rating, thus facilitating the use of smaller connecting piping and, sometimes, smaller-diameter furnace-wall tubing than that used with natural-circulation units. Both drum-type natural- and assisted-circulation boilers operate with essentially saturated steam temperatures in all parts of the steam-evaporating sections, and they can be used for drum operating pressures ranging up to approximately 2,800 lb/in^2 (197 kgf/cm^2).

In natural- and assisted-circulation boilers, it is essential to wet the inside surfaces continually with water of the two-phase water-steam mixture to prevent overheating these heat-absorbing surfaces.

Satisfactory cooling of the heat-absorbing steam-generating surfaces is dependent upon the pressure, heat flux, water-steam mass velocity, percent steam by weight (quality), tube diameter, and the tube's internal geometry. The heat flux is one of the most predominant of these parameters, and the rate of furnace heat absorption at the maximum firing rate generally dictates design considerations.

In forced-flow once-through boilers, the water from the feed supply is pumped to the inlet of the heat-absorbing circuits. Evaporation, or change of state, takes place along the length of the circuit, and when evaporation is completed the steam is superheated. These units do not require steam or water drums and, in most cases, use relatively small-diameter tubes. The boilers can be started rapidly owing to the elimination of the drums and the reduced amount of metal. The water flow to the unit is the same as the steam output (Fig. 9.2.36), and fluid velocities greater than those needed for natural- or assisted-circulation units must be used at full load so as to maintain adequate velocities at the low loads and, thus, satisfactory tube-metal temperatures at all loads.

The transition from a liquid to a vapor at, or above, the critical steam

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

pressure of 3,206 lb/in^2 (225 kgf/cm^2) is dependent upon temperature and takes place without a change in density. Thus, separation of steam and water is impossible and forced-flow once-through boilers must be used.

Forced-flow once-through boilers must be operated above a specified minimum flow—usually one-quarter to one-third of full-load flow—in order to maintain adequate water velocities in the furnace-wall tubes. However, the turbogenerator can be operated at any load by the use of a bypass system that diverts the excess flow to a flash tank for heat recovery. The bypass system also can be used as a pressure relieving system, as the source of low-pressure steam to the turbine during start-up, and as a means of controlling steam temperature to the turbine during hot restarts.

Combined circulation units utilize forced once-through flow with flow recirculation in the furnace walls to provide satisfactory water velocities during start-up and low-load operations. In this design, some of the water at the exit of the furnace circuits is mixed with the incoming feedwater, flows to and through a circulating pump, and then passes to the furnace-wall inlet headers. The use of combined circulation increases the water velocities in the furnace tubes at low loads, and since recirculation is not used at the higher loads, there is no increase in velocity or in the resistance to flow at the higher loads.

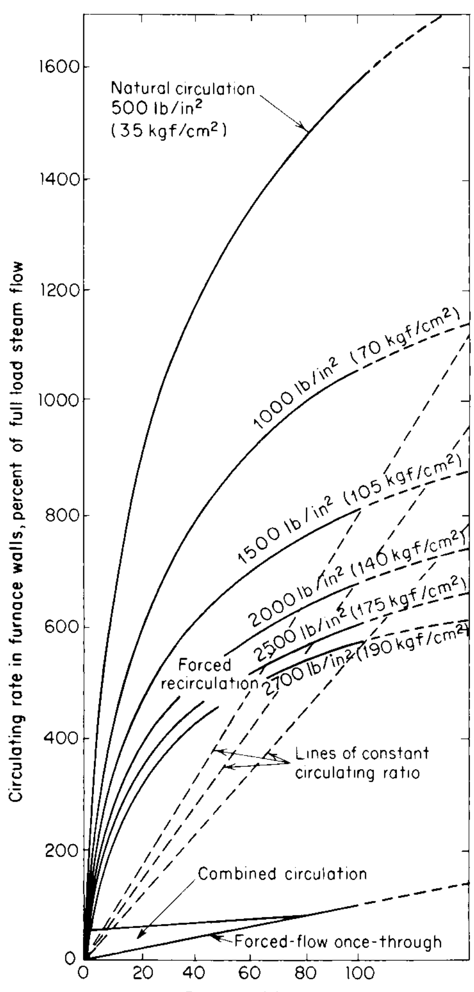


Fig. 9.2.36 Circulating flow for natural- and forced-circulation systems.

FLOW OF GAS THROUGH BOILER UNIT

During the combustion of fuel and the transfer of heat to the heat-absorbing surfaces, it is necessary to maintain sufficient pressure to overcome the resistance to flow imposed by the burning equipment, tube banks, directional turns, and the flues and dampers in the system. The resistance to air and gas flows depends upon the arrangement of the equipment and varies with the rates of flow and the temperatures of the air and gas.

The term draft denotes the difference between atmospheric pressure and some lower pressure existing in the furnace or gas passages of a steam-generating unit. Draft loss is defined as the difference in static pressure of a gas between two points in a system, both of which are below atmospheric pressure, and is the result of the resistance to flow. These terms originated with the use of the so-called natural-draft units in which the pressure differentials are obtained from a chimney or stack which produces static pressures throughout the boiler setting that are below that of the atmosphere. The terms are rather loosely applied to modern boilers using induced draft and/or forced draft, mechanically produced by fans, in which the pressures throughout the boiler unit may be well above atmospheric pressure.

Forced-draft fans, handling cold, clean air, provide the most economical source of energy to produce flow through high-capacity units (see Sec. 14.5). Induced-draft fans, handling hot flue gases, require more power and are subject to fly-ash erosion. However, they facilitate operation by providing a draft in the boiler setting and thus prevent the outward leakage of gas through joints or crevices in the boiler enclosure. As a result of advances in furnace and boiler-setting designs to eliminate gas leakage, modern units often are built for positive-pressure operation, thus eliminating the need for induced-draft fans. Such units are generally referred to as pressure-fired units, while those using induced-draft fans are classed as suction units. When both forced- and induced-draft fans are used, the boilers are designated as balanced-draft units.

The pressure drop throughout the unit is caused by the fluid friction in the gas stream and the shock losses at the turns or the contractions and enlargements of sections. It can be calculated as a function of the fluid mass flow and fluid properties in accordance with the principles of fluid flow (see Sec. 3). It is essential in the design of a boiler to determine the sum of all component resistances in the flow system at the maximum load in order to establish the fan requirements. It is customary to specify test-block static head, temperature, and capacity requirements of the fan in excess of those calculated so as to allow for departure from ideal flow conditions and to provide a satisfactory margin of reserve.

Stack effect is caused by the difference in densities resulting from the difference in the temperatures of two vertical columns of gas. In a chimney, or stack, the stack effect is due to the difference between the confined hot gas and the cooler surrounding air and the equal static pressure at the top or free outlet of the stack. The stack effect, which varies with the height and the mean temperature of the columns, can be calculated from the data in Table 9.2.4. The effect is the static draft produced by a stack, at sea level, with no gas flow. When flow occurs, a portion of the stack effect is used to establish gas velocity and the remainder is used to overcome the resistance of the connected system, including the dampers and the stack. The limit of natural-draft capacity is reached when these forces are in balance with the dampers in a wide-open position. Stack performance may be favorably or adversely affected by external factors such as the wind and the atmospheric conditions. The available draft varies directly with the barometric pressure for altitudes above sea level.

Stack effects also exist within the boiler setting and are most pronounced in tall units with vertical gas passes. The individual gas columns within the setting may aid the head produced by the fan or chimney if the flow is upward or may reduce it if the flow is downward. The net stack effect, and its overall influence on the performance of the fan, may be calculated from the data in Table 9.2.4, taking into account the positive or negative effects. The relationship between local static pressures and the atmospheric pressure is most important, since gas may

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.2.4 Stack Effect of Pressure Difference, in of Water for 1 ft of Vertical Height (mm of Water for Each 1 m of Vertical Height)
Barometer = 29.92 inHg (759.97 mmHg)

Avg temp in flue, °F (°C)	Air temp outside flue, °F (°C)			
	40°F (5°C)	60°F (15°C)	80°F (25°C)	100°F (35°C)
250 (125)	0.0041 inH_2O/ft (0.346 mmH_2O/m)	0.0035 (0.303)	0.0030 (0.262)	0.0025 (0.224)
500 (250)	0.0070 (0.563)	0.0064 (0.520)	0.0058 (0.480)	0.0053 (0.442)
1,000 (500)	0.0098 (0.788)	0.0092 (0.774)	0.0086 (0.708)	0.0081 (0.665)
1,500 (750)	0.0111 (0.902)	0.0106 (0.858)	0.0100 (0.818)	0.0095 (0.780)
2,000 (1,000)	0.0120 (0.972)	0.0114 (0.925)	0.0108 (0.887)	0.0103 (0.850)
2,500 (1,250)	0.0125 (1.018)	0.0119 (0.975)	0.0114 (0.934)	0.0109 (0.896)

blow into the room through an open inspection door at the top of a furnace, even though a strong draft, or negative pressure, exists at some lower elevation.

PERFORMANCE

Steam-generating units are designed for specific operating conditions and are generally sold with a guarantee of performance. The boiler rating is usually specified and guaranteed in terms of steam output (lb/h) at a given pressure and temperature at full load or maximum continuous operation. When the steam is reheated, the rating includes this requirement in terms of the quantity of reheat steam at stated inlet and outlet steam pressures and temperatures.

Generally, either the efficiency or the gas temperature leaving the unit is guaranteed at a specified rate of operation, and the draft loss and the quality or purity of the steam also may be guaranteed at this rate. When component equipment such as stokers, pulverizers, burners, and air heaters are supplied by different manufacturers, the performance of the individual components is usually guaranteed by the various manufacturers and then, in turn, guaranteed by the prime contractor.

Anticipated-performance data for several rates of operation may be given to the purchaser in addition to the guaranteed-performance data. Guarantees may be demonstrated by acceptance tests, conducted in accordance with established codes, as agreed upon by the parties to the contract. However, acceptance tests are more difficult to perform as unit size and capacity increase, and overall performance usually is determined from the operating data. Guarantees of materials and the quality of manufacture and erection are usually considered separately from those pertaining to operating performance.

Heat balances account for the thermal energy entering the system in terms of its ultimate useful heat absorption or thermal loss. Methods of measuring and calculating the quantities involved in heat balances are presented in the ASME Power Test Code for Stationary Steam Generating Units.

The heat input is predicated upon the hourly firing rate, the calorific heating value of the fuel, and any additional heat supplied from an outside source. Heat in the preheated combustion air obtained from an air heater integral with the boiler unit is not considered in the determination of heat input, since this heat is recycled within the system.

The heat absorption in a boiler is calculated from the rate of steam output and the increase in fluid enthalpy from feedwater conditions to that at the superheater outlet. The amount of heat absorbed by the steam passing through the reheater, if used, is added to the heat absorbed in the boiler, economizer, and superheater. The total heat absorption also must take into account any steam generated which bypasses the superheater. Usually, the heat absorption is determined on an hourly basis.

In its simplest form,

$$\text{Efficiency (percent)} = [(\text{heat absorbed, Btu/h (cal/h)}/(\text{heat input, Btu/h (cal/h)})] \times 100$$

Both the heat input and the heat absorption may be very large quantities. Therefore, unless elaborate precautions are taken in the sampling and the measurement of fuel and steam quantities, it is difficult to obtain test data having the degree of accuracy required to determine the actual efficiency of the boiler unit. For this reason, boiler efficiency usually is established from the heat losses, since each of the thermal losses is a relatively small percentage of the heat entering the system and reasonable errors in measurement will not appreciably affect the final result.

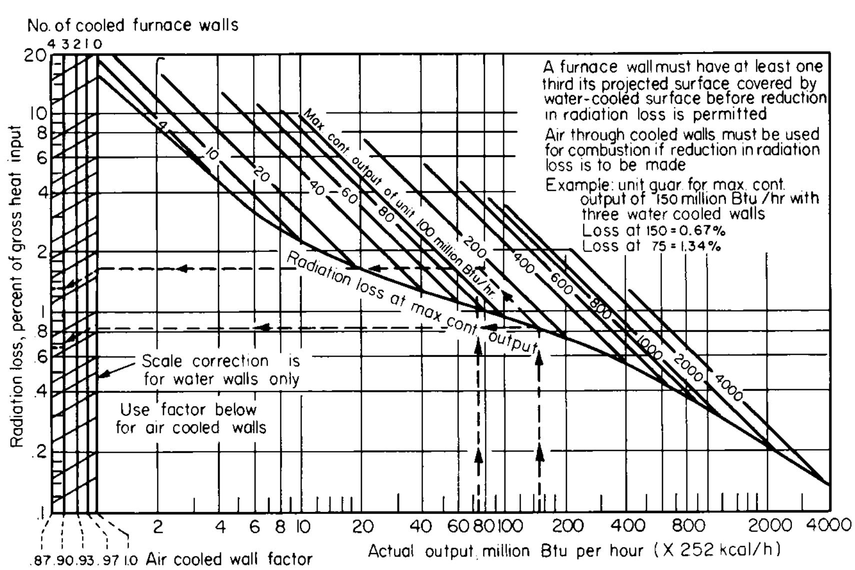


Fig. 9.2.37 External heat loss from boiler setting (ABMA).

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

The principal thermal losses are those due to the sensible heat in the gases leaving the unit, latent-heat losses associated with the evaporation of fuel moisture and formation of water vapor resulting from burning of hydrogen in the fuel, unburned-combustible loss, loss from the boiler setting or enclosure due to external convection and radiation, and ashpit loss. The first two losses can be derived from the fuel analysis, the exit-gas temperature, and the analysis of the flue gas (see Sec. 4). The unburned-combustible loss can be established by a qualitative and quantitative sampling of refuse and fly ash. The radiation from the boiler setting can be estimated in detail, but it also can be approximated from Fig. 9.2.37. The heat loss to the ashpit of large units can be determined by measuring the quantity of quenching water evaporated from the furnace ash hopper or the slag tank; and for small units the ashpit loss is included in the heat loss from the boiler setting. The sum of these heat losses, expressed as a percentage of the total heat input, is the total measurable loss. The anticipated or guaranteed performance data include a tolerance for the so-called manufacturer's margin (unaccountable losses) in the order of 0.5 to 0.75 percent, depending upon the type of fuel fired. The thermal efficiency of the unit is established by subtracting the sum of all these losses from 100 percent.

Tests of the individual components of the boiler unit, such as the furnace, superheater, economizer, or air heater, may be conducted for the determination of heat-transfer and gas-flow characteristics, for comparisons with other units, or to facilitate changes in operating procedures or equipment. Available ASME codes delineate such tests.

WATER TREATMENT AND STEAM PURIFICATION

(Also see Secs. 6.5 and 6.10.)

Purity of the water used in steam generation and of the steam leaving the unit is of paramount importance. The following discusses the general problem and then reviews the four areas of concern: raw water, feedwater, boiler water, and steam purification.

General

With few exceptions, the waters found in nature are not suitable for use as boiler feedwater; but they can be used after proper treatment. In essence, this entails the removal from the raw water of those constituents which are known to be harmful; supplementary treatment, within the boiler or connected system, of residual impurities to convert them into harmless forms; and systematic removal, by blowdown of boiler-water concentrates, to prevent excessive accumulation of solids within the boiler unit.

The ultimate purpose of water treatment is to prevent deposits of scale or sludge on and corrosion of the internal boiler surfaces. Hard-scale formations, formed by certain constituents in the zones of high-heat input, retard the flow of heat and raise the metal temperatures. This can lead to overheating and the failure of pressure parts. Sludge or solid particles normally carried in suspension may settle locally and restrict the flow of cooling water or, in some cases, deposit in the form of insulating layers with a resultant effect similar to that of hard scale. Oil and grease prevent adequate wetting of internal boiler surfaces and, in areas of high heat input, may cause overheating. Further, oil and grease may carbonize and form a tightly adherent insulating coating. Corrosion (see also Sec. 6.5), due to acidic conditions or to dissolved gases, can weaken a boiler because of the loss of metal. Corrosion usually occurs as cavities and pits in localized areas which, as they deepen, may penetrate the metal. Frequently, corrosion occurs under internal deposits because of elevated temperatures and solids concentrations. Therefore, corrosion and solids deposits are closely related. Certain chemical reactions produce an intergranular attack of the metal that may lead to embrittlement and ultimate fracture.

The treatment best suited, or economically justified, for any given plant depends upon the characteristics of the water supply, the amount of makeup water, and the design of the steam-generating and related equipment. Usually, the feedwater and boiler-water treatment is supervised by a chemist, and often it is desirable to engage a reputable feedwater specialist to prescribe specific procedures. However, the results obtained depend upon the diligence and integrity of routine sampling and the control carried out by plant personnel.

Raw Water

All natural waters contain impurities, many of which may be harmful in boiler operation. These impurities originate from the earth and the atmosphere (or from municipal and industrial wastes) and are broadly classed as suspended or dissolved organic and inorganic matter and as dissolved gases.

The concentration of the impurities is customarily expressed in terms of the parts by weight of the constituent per million parts of water (ppm). This is equivalent to the percentage of concentration multiplied by 10^4 and has the advantage of using positive whole numbers for small concentrations. However, for exceedingly small concentrations, especially those involving gases, the quantities are sometimes expressed as parts per billion (ppb). Concentrations also may be expressed in terms of the number of grains per gallon, but in boiler practice this has generally been superseded by the gravimetric relation, ppm. One grain per gallon is equal to 17.1 ppm.

The treatment of raw water for makeup and boiler feedwater involves one or more of the following:

1. *The removal of suspended solids.* Large particles in the water are removed by settling and decantation or by filtering through screens, fabrics, or beds of granular material. Small particles which settle slowly or colloidal particles which do not settle can be removed by coagulation using floc-forming chemicals, such as alum or ferrous sulfate, to trap the particles in the floc. The floc is then removed by settling or filtration. The solids can be removed intermittently or on a continuous basis.

2. *Chemical treatment for removal of hardness.* Calcium, magnesium, and silica are the principal scale-forming impurities in water and, if present in the boiler water, may form compounds whose solubility decreases with an increase in temperature.

In the lime-soda process for softening water, lime (calcium hydroxide) reacts with the soluble calcium and magnesium bicarbonates to form precipitates of calcium carbonate and magnesium hydroxide which can be removed as sludge. The soda ash (sodium carbonate) reacts with the scale-forming calcium sulfate and magnesium sulfate, and precipitates the calcium and magnesium as insoluble carbonates. Both reactions produce sodium sulfate, a soluble and non-scale-forming compound. When the hot-lime-soda process is carried out at temperatures of 200 to 250°F (93 to 121°C), the reactions are accelerated and some of the silica may be removed.

The reactions, as in all chemical processes, tend to approach equilibrium but they are affected by time, completeness of mixing, and removal of the products. Therefore, in either the intermittent batch or the continuous process some residual hardness is left in the treated water.

3. *Cation exchange for removal of hardness.* Certain naturally occurring minerals, such as sodium aluminum silicate, or synthetic resins, such as the polystyrenes or phenolic materials, have the ability to exchange sodium ions for calcium and magnesium ions if present in a water solution. Thus softening can be accomplished by passing raw or filtered water through beds of granulated zeolite particles. The calcium and magnesium ions are retained by the zeolite material, while their equivalents of non-scale-forming sodium ions are released to the water solution. Before complete exhaustion of the sodium is reached, the softening equipment must be isolated from the system and regenerated by the passage of a strong brine of sodium chloride through the softener. Sodium ions are thus restored to the zeolite, and calcium, or magnesium, is removed as a soluble chloride and drained to waste. After the regenerating cycle, the equipment is purged of the brine by flushing with filtered water and then returned to softening service.

The most popular system today combines chemical treatment and cation exchange, and utilizes hot lime (with or without magnesium for silicate removal) followed by hot sodium-cation exchange.

4. *Demineralization for complete removal of dissolved solids.* Several types of synthetic organic resins are capable of selectively removing undesirable cations or anions from water solutions by their ex-

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

change for hydrogen or hydroxyl ions. When used in combination, as separate or mixed beds of small-sized beads or particles through which the water flows, they can produce an effluent that is virtually free of mineral solutes and satisfactory for boiler feedwater. The cation exchanger is regenerated by acid which restores hydrogen ions to the resin in exchange for the calcium, sodium, or other metallic cations removed from the water. The anion exchanger is regenerated by the use of caustic soda, or another appropriate base, which restores the hydroxyl ions in exchange for the chloride, sulfate, or other negative chemical radicals previously removed from the water. The hydrogen and hydroxyl ions released from the resins during the heating process combine to form pure water. The greatest effectiveness is attained by a mixed-bed arrangement of resins, since the interchange of cation and anion components proceeds in minute increments and with less probability of the escape of unexchanged ions. With individual regeneration, the mixed resins are separated hydraulically because of differences in specific gravity. The resins can then be sluiced to external regeneration facilities or regenerated in place. The resins must be remixed before the demineralizer is returned to service.

5. *Evaporation.* Essentially pure water can be obtained by the evaporation of raw water and the collection of the distillate. Evaporation leaves the soluble constituents as concentrates in the residual water which can be removed by blowdown, or as scale on the heat-absorbing surfaces which can be mechanically removed. There may be some contamination in the distillate because of the carryover of water particles with the vapor and the reabsorption of noncondensable gases.

Feedwater

Boiler feedwater may consist of condensate, treated water, or a mixture of both. Usually, there is only a small amount of dissolved and suspended solids as a result of the treatment and, generally, the removal of additional solids is not required. However, any dissolved gases present must be removed to prevent corrosion in the boiler and the preboiler system.

When condensate is used as the feedwater to a boiler, water treatment is minimized, since it is required only for the small amounts of raw water that may leak into the system and the makeup water needed (usually ½ to 3 percent) to replace the loss of steam and condensate from the system. However, in industrial plants using a large portion of the steam generated for process work, the makeup-water requirements may be 90 to 100 percent of the total feedwater flow. Such plants require a considerable amount of water treatment.

Dissolved oxygen is, perhaps, the greatest factor in the corrosion of steel surfaces in contact with water. It may be present in the makeup water or the feedwater because of previous contacts with atmospheric air, or it may be added to the water by the leakage of air into the system through low-pressure-pump seals, storage tanks, etc.

Oxygen may be partially removed (to a residual of 0.2 to 0.3 ppm) by heating the water to boiling temperature in open type feedwater heaters. Tray or spray-type deaerating heaters are more effective in removing oxygen (to residuals of 0.02 to 0.04 ppm), and the amount of oxygen in the water can be reduced to 0.007 ppm or less by the use of multistage deaerators arranged for the countercurrent scavenging of noncondensable gases. (See Sec. 9.5.)

It is customary to supplement feedwater deaeration by adding a scavenging agent, such as sodium sulfite or hydrazine, to effect the complete removal of residual oxygen. Sodium sulfite combines with oxygen to form sodium sulfate, but it should not be used at operating pressures in excess of 1,800 lb/in^2 (127 kgf/cm^2), since it decomposes to corrosive products at high temperatures. Thus hydrazine should be used at high pressures.

In boiler plants using high-purity feedwater, corrosion may be experienced in the condensate piping and the preboiler system because of dissolved gases such as carbon dioxide, sulfur dioxide, or hydrogen sulfide in the water. These gases may originate from the atmosphere or from constituents in the boiler water. They are released in the steam generators, intimately mixed with the outgoing steam, and with the exception of those partially removed by the vacuum pumps, returned to solution in the condenser. These gases in the condenser produce an acidic reaction leading to corrosion, even in the absence of dissolved oxygen. The corrosion products in the preboiler cycle often are carried into the boiler and may deposit on the heat-absorbing surfaces, with resultant overheating of these surfaces.

A small amount of alkaline boiler water is sometimes recirculated to the feedwater heaters to raise the pH of the feedwater and thus prevent corrosion in the preboiler system. However, this procedure may precipitate sludge in the feedwater piping if appreciable hardness is present in the boiler water.

The pH of the feedwater can be increased by the addition of ammonia or volatile amines, such as morpholine or cyclohexylamine. Generally, these compounds are added as early as possible in the preboiler system. This procedure prevents corrosion in the early stages of moisture formation in the turbine and the condenser, as well as in the entire condensate-return system.

Filming amines also can be used and are generally introduced to the system through chemical pumps in the feedwater or steam lines. These materials do not change the pH of the fluid but protect against corrosion by forming a monomolecular coating on the metal surfaces. However, caution must be exercised since excessive use of filming amines has been known to agglomerate boiler sludge and produce strongly adherent internal deposits.

Boiler Water

In boilers, water is converted into steam and the steam leaves the boiler drum in a relatively pure state. Impurities, other than the gases which enter with the feedwater, are thus retained and concentrated in the boiler water. High concentrations of foam-producing solids in the boiler water contribute to particle and water carryover and contamination of the steam. Chemical and solubility changes also take place in the boiler, particularly as temperature is increased.

Boiler water is treated internally to prevent corrosion, the fouling of heat-absorbing surfaces, and the contamination of steam. Internal treatment also aids in maintaining water conditions within satisfactory limits. The internal treatment requires the introduction of chemicals in suitable amounts to react with the residual impurities in the feedwater.

Corrosion in boilers is prevented or minimized by maintaining alkaline boiler water. This condition may be expressed in terms of pH or as total alkalinity.

Acid or alkaline reactions of aqueous solutions are due to the presence of free or excess hydrogen (H^+) or hydroxyl (OH^-) ions, and the strength of the reaction varies with the concentration or activity of the excess ions. Some compounds enter into solution without dissociation while others dissociate partially or completely into ions carrying positive or negative electrical charges. If such ionizable compounds contribute hydrogen (H^+) ions to the solution (e.g., HCl), they add to the strength of its acid reaction; if they contribute hydroxyl (OH^-) ions (e.g., NaOH), they add to its alkaline or base reaction. When the ions of many different compounds are present, as is the usual case with boiler waters, their interaction or buffering affects the resulting concentration of the specific ions, and the solution tends to approach a balance or equilibrium in accordance with the principles of chemical mass action. It is therefore possible by the addition of some compounds which in themselves contain neither hydrogen nor hydroxyl components to suppress or release these ions from other constituent solutes and thereby change the acidity of alkalinity of the solution.

The pH value of a solution, which designates its acidity or alkalinity, refers to a logarithmic scale proposed by Sorenson in 1909. The symbol p is derived from the German word *Potenz,* meaning power or exponent; and the symbol H represents the hydrogen-ion concentrations. Thus, by definition, the pH value is equal to the logarithm of the reciprocal of the hydrogen-ion concentration measured in gram-moles per litre.

Pure water, which may be considered as composed primarily of molecular H_2O, exhibits a slight degree of dissociation to hydrogen (+) and hydroxyl (−) ions in the equilibrium amounts, at room temperature, of 0.0000001 gmol each per litre of water. It thus has the somewhat unusual capability of reacting, under proper conditions, as a weak acid

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

or as a weak base and is said to be amphoteric. The H^+ and OH^- ions are in exact balance, and the water is electrically neutral.

The equation which expresses the equilibrium dissociation of water and also applies to water solutions is

$$H^+OH^- = K^{H_2O} = 10^{-14} \qquad \text{at } 25°C$$

H^+ and OH^- represent the respective concentrations of the ionized hydrogen and hydroxyl groups, and the dissociation product K^{H_2O} is found by experimental methods to be $1/10^{14}$ at 25°C.

Since the product of the two concentrations is a constant, some OH^- ions are present even in a highly acidic solution and some H^+ ions are present in a basic solution, and the relationship of these factors can be determined from the measurement of either term. Thus, in the case of neutral water, the value of each is 10^{-7}, or 0.0000001, gmol/L.

In a solution having a hydrogen-ion concentration of 10^{-3} gmol/L, the corresponding hydroxyl-ion concentration is 10^{-11}, as a result of the dominating influence of the solvent, which is present in great excess and maintains the product equilibrium. Although either factor in the equation can be used, the conventional scale is based upon the measurement of the hydrogen ion.

Numerical values of this relationship extend over an extremely wide range and can best be expressed in terms of logarithms or exponents; thus:

$$\log H^+ + \log OH^- = -14$$
$$-\log H^+ - \log OH^- = 14$$
$$\log (1/H^+) \log = 14 - (1/OH^-) = \text{pH}$$

The term pH is used to represent $\log(1/H^+)$ and is therefore the logarithm of the reciprocal of the hydrogen-ion concentration (more properly, the hydrogen-ion activity which is equal to the concentration multiplied by an activity factor that approaches unity in dilute solutions).

For neutral water, the pH $= \log (1/H^+) = \log (1/0.0000001) = \log (1/10^{-7}) = 7.0$.

For an acid solution in which H^+ exceeds OH^-, say $H^+ = 10^{-3}$, the pH $= \log (1/10^{-3}) = 3.0$.

For an alkaline solution in which OH^- exceeds H^+, say $OH^- = 10^{-3}$, the pH $= \log (1/10^{-11}) = 11.0$.

In practical terms, the pH scale extends from 0 to 14, as shown in Table 9.2.5. The value 7.0, corresponding to pure water, is considered the neutral point; values below 7.0 are increasingly acidic, and values above 7.0 are increasingly alkaline. Since the pH scale is logarithmic, a change from one number to the next in series is equivalent to a change of ten times the activity. Beyond the range of the scale, the strength of acid or alkaline solutions is expressed in terms of normality or percentage of concentration.

The pH of a water sample can be determined accurately by the measurement of its electrical potential. It also can be approximated by indicators that change color in certain pH ranges as the result of their reaction with the solution. The pH of boiler water usually is maintained within the range of 10.2 to 11.5 for boilers operating at pressures compatible with an 1,800 lb/in² (127 kgf/cm²) turbine throttle pressure. Above these pressures, mixed-bed demineralizers are generally used to treat the makeup water, the boiler-water treatment is low in solids, and the pH ranges from 9.0 to 10.0.

In forced-flow once-through units the recommended pH range is 8.8 to 9.2 for preboiler systems using copper alloys. If the preboiler system does not incorporate the use of copper alloys, the recommended pH is 9.2 to 9.5.

Total alkalinity (expressed in ppm) is a measure of all reactives that have the ability to neutralize acids. It is determined by titrating a water sample with a standard acid, and it is frequently expressed as equivalent calcium carbonate, which has a molecular weight of 100. Total alkalinity, as determined in this manner, is not exactly the same as the pH measurement of alkalinity because of the buffering action which occurs in complex solutions. However, it is widely used as a reference and in the case of low-pressure boilers where higher concentrations of greater diversity of solids can be tolerated, it often is more satisfactory than the measurement of pH as an index of boiler-water conditions.

The elimination of hardness in boiler water is necessary to prevent scale. Hardness can be removed by introducing one of the forms of sodium or potassium phosphate and thoroughly mixing it with the boiler water. The residual calcium ions entering with the feedwater are precipitated as an insoluble phosphate sludge and the magnesium is precipitated as a nonadherent magnesium hydroxide, if the alkalinity is maintained at a pH of 10 or higher. A lower pH may result in the formation of magnesium phosphate, an adherent type of sludge. Routine control facilitates the adjustment of the pH by the addition of sodium hydroxide, or its equivalent, and the maintenance of a moderate excess of phosphate ions in the boiler water.

Early methods of internal treatment employed the use of soda ash for hardness removal. However, the hydrolysis of soda ash at the temperatures encountered with high operating pressures releases carbon dioxide into the steam, making it difficult to maintain an excess of carbonate and promoting corrosion in the condensate system. In some services, sodium carbonate in combination with the hydroxides and phosphates of sodium is used for hardness removal. A phosphate sludge is preferred since it is less adherent and more easily kept in suspension.

Silica may enter the system in the form of soluble compounds or as finely divided particles which are not removed by filtration. It dissolves in alkaline boiler waters and will, with unreacted calcium or magnesium hardness in the water, form an adherent scale. Under some conditions, it may produce complex scale-forming silicates with soluble or colloidal iron oxide (acmite) or alumina (analcite). The crystalline matrix of these deposits tends to trap sludge particles and contributes to the accumulation of scale on heated surfaces.

Silica also is soluble in steam, and its solubility increases rapidly at temperatures above 500°F (260°C). Thus it can be transported in a vapor phase into the turbine and deposited on the turbine blading. This characteristic necessitates the limiting of the silica concentration in the boiler water in order to avoid turbine deposits, and the limits, varying with operating pressure, range from about 10 ppm at 1,000 lb/in² (70 kgf/cm²) to 0.3 ppm at 2,500 lb/in² (176 kgf/cm²).

Silica is partially removed from raw water by the hot lime-soda softening process and can be completely removed by the evaporation of the makeup water. Soluble silica can be removed by demineralization, but in colloidal forms it may pass through the treating beds. The silica concentration in the boiler water can be controlled by blowdown.

Many operators of industrial boilers use the Chelant methods of water treatment. Chelants react with the residual divalent metal ions (calcium, magnesium, and iron) in the boiler water to form soluble complexes. The resultant soluble complexes are removed by use of continuous blowdown. One of the most popular methods uses the sodium salt of ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (Na_4 EDTA). Chelant methods of treatment have been used in boilers operating at pressures as high as 1,500 lb/in² (105 kgf/cm²).

Table 9.2.5 Relationship of pH and Hydrogen-Ion Concentration

	pH	Hydrogen-ion concentration, gmol/L	
Acid range	0	1.0	10^0
	1	0.1	10^{-1}
	2	0.01	10^{-2}
	3	0.001	10^{-3}
	4	0.000,1	10^{-4}
	5	0.000,01	10^{-5}
	6	0.000,001	10^{-6}
Neutral	7	0.000,000,1	10^{-7}
Alkaline range	8	0.000,000,01	10^{-8}
	9	0.000,000,001	10^{-9}
	10	0.000,000,000,1	10^{-10}
	11	0.000,000,000,01	10^{-11}
	12	0.000,000,000,001	10^{-12}
	13	0.000,000,000,000,1	10^{-13}
	14	0.000,000,000,000,01	10^{-14}

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.2.6 Recommended Limits of Boiler-Water Concentration (ABMA)

Pressure at outlet of steam-generating unit, lb/in^2 gage ($\times$ 0.07037 = kgf/cm^2)	Total solids, ppm	Total alkalinity, ppm	Suspended solids, ppm
0–300	3,500	700	300
301–450	3,000	600	250
451–600	2,500	500	150
601–750	2,000	400	100
751–900	1,500	300	60
901–1,000	1,250	250	40
1,001–1,500	1,000	200	20
1,501–2,000	750	150	10
2,001 and higher	500	100	5

The recommended limits of boiler-water concentration, as defined in the ABMA manual, are listed in Table 9.2.6. These data are not applicable to forced-flow once-through boilers. The total solids content can be determined by weighing the residue of a water sample which has been evaporated by dryness. The dissolved-solids content can be determined in a similar manner from a filtered sample, but for immediate determinations and control purposes, it can be quickly approximated by an electrical-conductivity measurement and the use of conversion factors previously established by comparisons with gravimetric determinations.

Solids concentration also can be controlled by intermittent or continuous blowdown. The amount of blowdown and the time interval between blows should be coordinated with operation and should consider or anticipate load changes, water conditioning, and chemical treatment.

In forced-flow once-through boilers, the impurities entering with the feedwater must leave with the steam or be deposited within the unit. Thus, such units require high-purity feedwater and the control of corrosion by volatile bases, such as ammonia, which will prevent or minimize deposits in the boiler unit or the turbine. Raw-water leakage into the system must be prevented, and the makeup must be evaporated or demineralized water.

When sampling water from high-pressure, high-temperature sources, cooling is required to prevent the flashing or selective loss of water vapor at atmospheric pressure. The approved methods for water sampling and analysis are discussed in the Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Part 23.

STEAM PURIFICATION

In drum-type boilers, using either natural or assisted circulation, a mixture of steam and water is delivered to the upper or steam drum where separation of the steam and water takes place and a water level is maintained. The water is recycled through downcomers to the heat-absorbing circuits, and the steam is discharged from the top of the drum for use as saturated steam or the supply to the superheater.

Separation of the steam and water by buoyant or gravitational force requires a relatively large cross-sectional area and, consequently, a low fluid velocity within the drum as well as an effective difference in the fluid densities, which decreases as pressure is increased. Steam entrainment in the recycled water impedes circulation; and water entrainment in the outlet steam transports dissolved or suspended particulate matter into the superheater, steam piping, and turbine, where particle deposition can cause overheating of the tubes or flow obstructions in the turbine blading with subsequent loss of capacity, efficiency, and dynamic balance.

Gravity separation of steam and water may be satisfactory in low-pressure, low-duty boilers. This type of separation can be augmented by the use of baffles which utilize a change in direction to throw out the water droplets, or by dry pipes which impose a pressure drop that promotes evaporation of the moisture and reduces the tendency of solids to deposit in the superheater.

In high-pressure boiler units, particularly those employing high evaporative ratings, a part of the circulating head can be utilized to provide a separating force, many times greater than that of gravity, in centrifugal separating devices such as the cyclone steam separators shown in Fig. 9.2.38. These separators deliver steam-free water to the drum and downcomers, and discharge steam with a minimum of water entrainment. Secondary steam-and-water separation is accomplished by passing the steam at a low velocity through sinuously shaped passages between closely spaced corrugated plates, which provide a large surface area for intercepting entrained boiler-water particles. In modern high-capacity boilers, the steam leaving the steam drum contains less than 0.1 ppm of total solids.

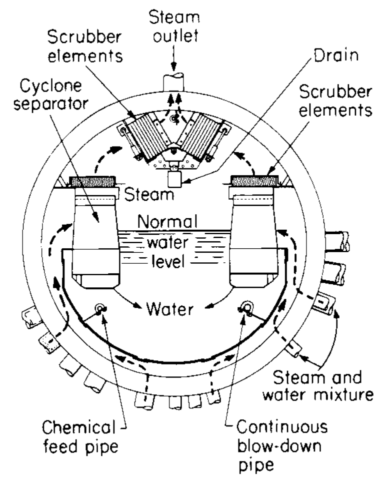


Fig. 9.2.38 Drum internal arrangement with cyclone steam separators and scrubber elements.

Mechanical steam separators do not prevent the transport of silica in a vapor solution. The amount of silica dissolved in the steam is dependent upon its concentration in the boiler water, and for a given concentration, the ratio of silica in the steam to the silica in the water increases rapidly with an increase in the operating pressure (see Fig. 9.2.39). Silica can be removed by steam washers which provide a large surface area for contact with the relatively pure feedwater and which reabsorb the silica and return it to the boiler-water system. Turbine deposits can be practically eliminated and the requirements of boiler blowdown materially reduced by the use of steam washers for steam purification. Steam washers are used to best advantage in medium-pressure boilers operating with large amounts of makeup water, particularly if the makeup water contains silica in an insoluble form.

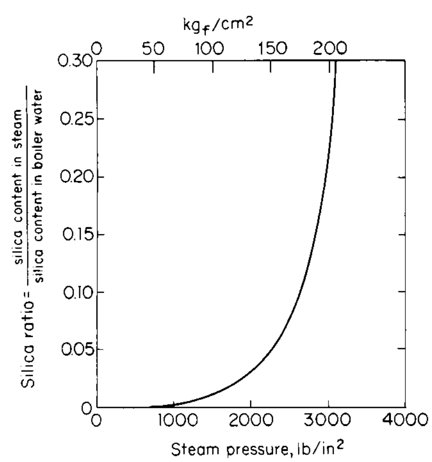


Fig. 9.2.39 Equilibrium relationship of silica ratio and operating pressure for a given concentration of silica in boiler water.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Impurities in the water entering a forced-flow once-through boiler leave with the steam unless they are deposited in the boiler unit. Therefore, the equivalent of steam purification must be accomplished by treatment of the feedwater before the water enters the boiler so as to prevent the accumulation of deposits in the boiler unit and the turbine. In the treatment, most of the feedwater, including the steam condensate, is passed through a mixed-bed demineralizer that removes suspended as well as dissolved impurities.

CARE OF BOILERS

The care of boilers is delineated in Section VII of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Principal considerations include the initial preparation of new equipment for service; normal operation, including routine start-up and shutdown; emergency operations; inspection and maintenance; and idle storage. In all these phases, the handling of equipment is the responsibility of the operator, but recommendations and operating instructions supplied by the manufacturer should be thoroughly understood and followed.

The initial preparation of new boiler units for service, or of old equipment after completing major alterations or repairs, involves the removal of construction or foreign material from the setting and from the interior of pressure parts, hydrostatic testing and inspection for leaks, and the boiling out of the unit with a caustic solution for the removal of grease and other deposits in the steam-generating pressure parts. The boiler unit is fired at a low rate during boil-out. This procedure facilitates the desired slow drying of any refractories used in the setting. Boil-out pressure should be approximately 50 percent of normal operating pressure but should not exceed 600 lb/in^2 (42 kgf/cm^2). During the boil-out period, ranging from 12 to 36 h, the unit is blown down periodically through all the blowdown connections so as to eject any sediment removed from the surfaces. The boil-out often is supplemented, particularly in high-pressure boilers, by inhibited-acid cleaning for the removal of mill scale.

It is general practice, following the boil-out, to reduce the concentration of boil-out chemicals to a satisfactory level for operation by blowing down and replenishing the amount of water blown down with fresh water. The pressure is then raised to test and set the safety valves to code requirements; the superheater and the steam piping are blown out to remove any foreign material; and the boiler is placed on the line for a period of low-load operation, during which the auxiliary equipment, controls, and interlocks are test-operated. After these operations, it is advisable to shut down, cool, and drain the boiler unit prior to a thorough internal and external inspection and any adjustments or modifications required to the equipment.

Normal operation involves the orderly start-up and shut-down of equipment and operation, under controlled conditions, to meet plant requirements. Statistics show that about 80 percent of the recorded furnace explosions occur during start-up and low-load operation, and particular care must be taken during such operations to prevent such explosions. The National Fire Protection Association's Committee on Boiler Furnace Explosions has prepared standards for the prevention of furnace explosions. These standards delineate the preferred sequence of starting fuel-burning equipment, the recommended minimum flame-monitoring equipment and safety interlocks, the recommended fuel-transport piping systems, the recommended purging procedures, and the procedures to be taken in the event of burner or furnace flame-out.

Normal operation also entails the maintenance of specified feedwater and boiler water conditioning, designed steam and metal temperatures, clean gas passages and heat-absorbing surfaces, and ash removal.

The rate of firing during start-up is limited by the allowable metal temperatures in the superheater and reheater until steam flow through the turbine is established. Then, after the steam flow is established, the temperatures and the temperature differentials in the various parts of the boiler and turbine control the permissible rate of firing.

Emergency operations are usually the direct result of abnormal conditions such as the failure of the feedwater supply, the rupture of a pressure part, the interruption of the fuel supply, the loss of air, or a burner flame-out. Automatic safety interlocks usually are installed which trip the fuel supply and shut down the unit if these or other hazardous conditions are experienced. Abnormal operating conditions, which might become hazardous if allowed to persist, such as low (fuel-rich) or high (air-rich) air-fuel ratios or the failure of essential auxiliaries, require appropriate action to correct operating conditions. An operator who cannot correct an abnormal condition must determine whether operation can continue and, if not, must shut down the unit in the proper manner or activate the emergency trip through the automatic interlock system.

Inspection and maintenance should be performed during regularly scheduled outages. A list of the known items requiring repair or maintenance should be prepared before the outage and should be supplemented by any additional items noted in thorough inspection of the boiler and auxiliary equipment during the outage. A major item on the work list should be the maintenance of internal and external cleanliness. External cleaning is usually accomplished by water washing or air lancing. The internal surfaces of small boiler units are usually mechanically cleaned, but the large-capacity units are generally chemically cleaned. Under competent supervision, which can be obtained from several firms specializing in chemical cleaning, this method can be used with complete confidence for boilers of all sizes. The chemical-cleaning solution normally is composed of a 3 to 5 percent solution of hydrochloric acid, wetting and complexing agents for the removal of silica or other hard-to-remove deposits (such as iron and copper oxides), and a suitable inhibitor to prevent excessive chemical attack on the pressure parts of the boiler unit. Hydrochloric acid, however, should not be used for cleaning stainless-steel surfaces, since it can cause stress-corrosion cracking. Thus other organic or inorganic acids are used depending upon the type of material to be cleaned and the composition of the deposit to be removed.

The chemical cleaning of drum-type boilers involves filling the boiler [which has previously been uniformly heated to a temperature of about 175°F (79°C)] with the cleaning solution at 150 to 160°F (65 to 71°C) and allowing it to soak for 6 to 8 h or until samples of the solution show no appreciable further reduction in acid strength. The boiler should never be fired while it contains an acid solution, and open lights or other ignition sources must be prohibited in the area to avoid the ignition of the explosive gases, usually hydrogen, evolved during the cleaning operation. The unit is then drained and flushed several times, preferably under a nitrogen blanket, with neutral or slightly acidic water to remove the loosened deposits and to displace the acid solution and any corrosive gases. The flushing is followed by boil-out with an alkaline solution to neutralize any residual acid and to passivate the surfaces. The unit is then flushed with clean water to remove the remaining loose deposits, and it is inspected before being returned to service.

When chemically cleaning forced-flow once-through units, the solvent is continuously circulated through the unit for 4 to 6 h. Generally, the solvent is an inhibited solution of hydroxyacetic-formic acids at a temperature of 200°F (93°C).

Boiler units removed from service for long periods of time may be stored wet or dry. It is practically impossible to drain and dry modern high-pressure utility boilers completely with their complex furnace and superheater circuitry. Thus wet lay-up of the unit with water treated with 10 ppm ammonia and 200 ppm hydrazine is the best means of protection for both short- and long-term lay-up. If, however, dry storage is utilized, the system must be kept dry; and low humidity within the pressure parts and setting can be maintained by the use of trays of moisture-absorbing materials, such as silica gel or lime, which must be replenished at intervals to retain their effectiveness. When using either wet or dry storage, the system should be pressurized to a few pounds above atmospheric pressure with nitrogen gas.

CODES

The ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, initiated in 1914 and supplemented by continuing revisions, contains the basic rules for the safe design, the construction, and the materials for steam generating

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

units. Its legal status depends upon its adoption by state or municipal authority. The Code is administered by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors. This organization also has established the ''Recommended Rules for Repairs by Fusion Welding to Power Boilers and Unfired Pressure Vessels.'' The adoption of both codes has been widespread, and they form the basis for the pertinent legal requirements in all but a few localities throughout the country. The National Bureau of Casualty and Surety Underwriters' book titled ''Synopsis of Boiler Rules and Regulations'' lists the states and the communities having laws which govern the installation and the operation of steam boilers.

NUCLEAR BOILERS

(See also Sec. 9.8.)

Nuclear power boilers are usually identified by the primary fluid used as the reactor coolant. A number of coolants and system design concepts have been studied, but only three basic coolants have been used in U.S. power plants—liquid metals, gases, and water.

Most of the nuclear systems for commercial power production use water in some form as the primary coolant, principally the pressurized-water-reactor (PWR) and the boiling-water-reactor (BWR) systems. The preference for water as the reactor coolant is due to the fact that its physical, chemical, and thermodynamic characteristics are well known and materials and equipment are available for its handling and containment.

The steam-generating unit shown in Fig. 9.2.40 is typical of those used in PWR installations. In this design, hot primary fluid enters one side of the divided primary head, passes through the U-type tubes, and leaves through the primary outlet nozzle. Boiling takes place on the outside, or secondary side, of the tubes, and the steam-water mixture passes upward through the riser section and then the steam and water separators. The steam is discharged from the scrubbers into the outlet connection. The separated water flows downward, mixes with the incoming feedwater, and is then circulated downward through the annulus around the tube bundle to reenter the tube bundle at the bottom.

Generally, in units of this type, stainless-steel or Inconel tubes are used to minimize corrosion, the structural components are of carbon or

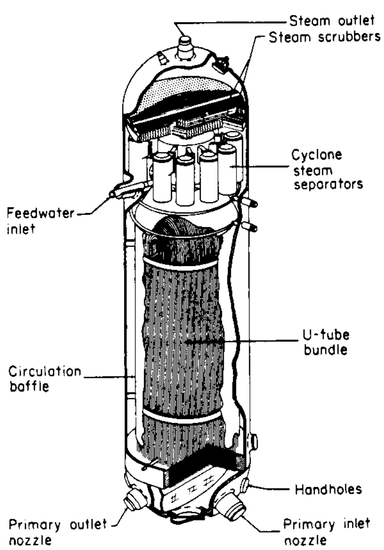


Fig. 9.2.40 Nuclear power boiler.

low-alloy steel, and the primary head and primary tube-sheet faces are completely clad with stainless steel or Inconel.

Design considerations are similar to those for fossil-fuel boiler units, but particular emphasis is placed upon possible hazards, codes and specifications, and system economics.

1. **Hazards.** In the design of nuclear systems, great consideration must be given to the damage and the loss of life that could result from an accident, and also the psychological effect of such an accident. Potential dangers that must be considered by the boiler designer include the following:

Radioactivity. The primary fluid and any materials transported in the primary passages may become radioactive from neutron bombardment. This radioactivity can hold at a high level for varying lengths of time, and since the radioactive products may be deposited anywhere in the primary system, the boiler designer must design the equipment for minimum exposure of personnel to radiation.

Chemical poisons. Some fission products are lethal, not only because they are radioactive but because they are chemically poisonous by both ingestion and inhalation. Personnel must be protected against exposure to these poisons.

Chemical reactions. In some nuclear systems, possible contact between the primary and secondary fluids could cause strong chemical reactions. Sodium and water, for example, react violently, yet sodium has been selected as the primary fluid in some systems because of its excellent nuclear properties and good heat-transfer and heat-transport characteristics. Therefore, steam generators in which sodium is used for the primary fluid must be designed so that direct contact between the sodium and the water is unlikely and so that the effects of such a contact, if one should occur, are minimized.

2. **Codes and specifications.** The requirements for safe design and fabrication are delineated in the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, augmented by Special Code Cases. The special cases applying specifically to nuclear components establish design, inspection, and fabrication rules which are more stringent than those usually required for other types of equipment. The construction of commercial nuclear components is governed by the ASME Code, Section III, ''Nuclear Power Plant Components'' while that of equipment for military use is governed by special military specifications.

3 **Economics.** Basic design considerations of PWR and the BWR systems differ greatly from those of fossil-fuel systems. The temperature difference that produces the flow or transfer of heat between the primary and secondary water is dependent upon the difference in the pressures of the two fluids, and the hotter primary fluid is maintained at the higher pressure. Therefore, an optimized steam-generator design using a minimum amount of heat-absorbing surface should have the boiling secondary fluid on the outside of the tubes since a tube, or cylinder, can withstand greater internal pressures. This contrasts with fossil-fuel-fired water-tube boiler designs in which the boiling fluid is contained within the tubes.

Both internal and external heat-transfer coefficients are high in nuclear steam generators, and consequently, in most cases the tube metal and the fouling film coefficients control the overall rate of heat transfer. Thus tube diameters should be small and tube walls as thin as practical. Further, the water must be conditioned to minimize scale and sludge formations and, thus, fouling coefficients.

Primary-water systems are designed for relatively high pressures 1,200 to 2,500 lb/in^2 (84 to 176 kgf/cm^2), and extremely compact systems are economically justified in the efforts to minimize the size and the weight of the steam generator, reactor, and other pressure vessels. Fluid-temperature differences are necessarily small when operating with the highest practical secondary-steam pressure; this tends to increase surface requirements and, consequently, the size of the steam generator.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

9.3 STEAM ENGINES

Staff Contribution

REFERENCES: Ewing, ''The Steam Engine and Other Engines,'' Cambridge. Ripper, ''Steam Engine Theory and Practice,'' Longmans. Heck, ''The Steam Engine and Turbine,'' Van Nostrand. Allen, ''Uniflow, Back Pressure, and Steam Extraction Engines,'' Pitman. Peabody, ''Valve Gears for Steam Engines,'' Wiley. Zeuner, ''Treatise on Valve Gears,'' Spon. Spangler, ''Valve Gears,'' Wiley. Dalby, ''Valves and Valve Gear Mechanisms,'' Longmans.

EDITOR'S NOTE: Although largely relegated to history and nostalgia, small steam engines are still manufactured in the United States, primarily as replacement items. Steam locomotives in the United States cater only to the tourist trade; they are kept in repair and in service mainly with parts manufactured locally. The remaining steam locomotives in India are in the last stage of being phased out of service; all are scrapped and replaced by diesel, electric, or diesel-electric locomotives. China is still engaged in the manufacture of steam locomotives, and has based its railroad system on their continued use.

The reciprocating steam engine was the heart of the early industrial era. It dominated power generation for stationary and transportation service for more than a century until the development of the steam turbine and the internal-combustion engine. The mechanisms were numerous (see Patent Office listings), but practicality essentially standardized the positive-displacement, double-acting, piston and cylinder design in a vertical or horizontal configuration. These engines were heavy, cast-iron structures, e.g., 50 to 100 lb/hp; they had low piston speed (600 to 1,200 ft/min); long stroke (up to 6 ft); low turning speeds (50 to 500 r/min); steam conditions less than 300 lb/in^2 (dry saturated, or 100 to 200°F superheat); noncondensing or condensing (25 ± in Hg vacuum); sized from children's toys to 25,000 hp. Diversity of valve gear was an inventor's paradise with many suitable for reversible operation, as in locomotive, rolling-mill, and ship applications. Most of the machine elements known today, such as cylinders, piston rods, crossheads, connecting rods, crankshafts, flywheels, and governors, were developed in steam engines.

These engines utilize the expansive power of steam. Theoretically, the more the steam can be expanded in the engine cylinder, the better will be the economy. Practical losses, which occur in every steam engine, limit the expansion ratio and result in a minimum steam rate for a definite degree of expansion. Cylinder dimensions preclude the practical utilization of high-vacuum conditions because of the high specific volume (e.g., 339 ft^3/lb dry and saturated at 2 inHg abs). The steam turbine can effectively utilize maximum vacuum.

WORK AND DIMENSIONS OF THE STEAM ENGINE

Thermodynamic principles define the limits of the conversion efficiency of heat into work (see Rankine and Carnot cycles, Sec. 4). In fact, the historical development of thermodynamic principles was primarily aimed in the nineteenth century at defining the thermal performance of steam engines and steam power plants. It can be said that the steam engine did more for thermodynamics than thermodynamics did for the steam engine. Steam tables and steam charts (e.g., temperature-entropy; enthalpy-entropy; and pressure-volume) are essential to evaluate theoretical and actual equipment performance.

The pressure-volume diagram, or indicator card, is of primary significance in both the design and operation of the reciprocating piston and cylinder mechanism—not only steam engines, but also internal-combustion engines, air compressors, and pumps. The utility of the *p-v* diagram is often lost in attempts to improve fluid-dynamic reciprocating mechanisms. The work and power are the consequence of the difference in pressure on the two sides of the piston, expressed as mean effective pressure (mep or p_m). This is applied to the cylinder dimensions and rotating speed in the **''plan'' equation**

$$\text{hp} = \frac{p_m L a n}{33{,}000} \tag{9.3.1}$$

where p_m = mep, lb/in^2; L = stroke, ft; a = effective piston area, in^2; n = number of cycles completed per min; 33,000 = mechanical equivalent of horsepower, ft·lb/min, by definition.

A typical steam-engine indicator card is shown in Fig. 9.3.1, identifying the established nomenclature for the events of the cycle. Superimposed is a theoretical diagram, with expansion, but without clearance or compression. The terminal pressure controls the steam, or water, rate. The term ''back pressure'' is used for pressures above the atmosphere, while ''condenser pressure'' is used when engines operate with negative exhaust pressure. The volume ratio $v_j/v_h = R$ is called the **ratio of expansion.**

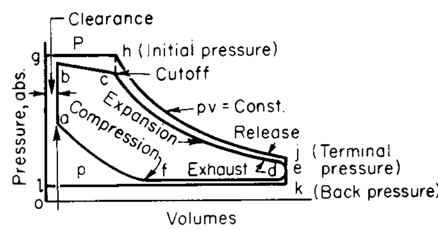


Fig. 9.3.1 Typical steam engine indicator diagram.

The average ordinate, or **mean effective pressure** p_m [applicable in Eq. (9.3.1)] for the ideal cycle diagram *ghjkl* is

$$p_m = P[(1 + \log_e R)/R] - p \tag{9.3.2}$$

The expansion phase *h* to *j* of the cycle is *logarithmic* where pv = constant. It is not isothermal but reasonably approximates expansion (and compression) in actual engines where condensation and evaporation on cylinder walls, heads, pistons, and valves are cyclically recurrent.

The value of R is commonly around 4 in simple engines. It should increase as P increases and as p decreases, usually between 3 and 5. It should be higher in jacketed than in unjacketed engines. The efficiency of the engine depends largely on the value chosen for R. This is dictated by service requirements, e.g., load variation, load fluctuation, engine governing type (cutoff vs. throttle), overload capacity, steam cost, and economics. Efficiency, however, is not the sole requirement for all installations. The high starting torque of a steam locomotive dictates a valve gear that allows full-stroke admission of steam with zero expansion, a rectangular indica tor card with consequent maximum p_m.

Figure 9.3.1 shows that the theoretical card has a larger area than the actual card. The value of p_m obtained from Eq. (9.3.2) must be multiplied by the **diagram factor** to obtain the actual p_m under the assumed conditions. This factor may have a value between 0.7 and 0.95. The actual p_m is obtained from the card drawn on the indicator drum under running conditions of the engine. The card area, graphically measured by a planimeter (see Sec. 16), is divided by the card length to get the average equivalent height of the card. The spring scale of the instrument, applied to this average height, gives the mean effective pressure actually obtaining within the engine cylinder. This value, when introduced in Eq. (9.3.1), gives the indicated horsepower (ihp) of the engine.

Losses in steam-engine cylinders are (1) incomplete expansion; (2) initial condensation; (3) throttling, affected by valve and port area; and (4) radiation, which can be considered constant. The point of best steam economy occurs with the p_m at which the total of all losses is a minimum.

Mechanical Efficiency and Shaft Output

$$\text{Brake horsepower (bhp)} = \text{ihp} \times \text{mechanical efficiency} \tag{9.3.3}$$

$$\text{Friction horsepower} = \text{ihp} - \text{bhp} \tag{9.3.4}$$

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

bhp	25	50	75	100
Friction hp	6	6	6	6
ihp	31	56	81	106
Mechanical efficiency, %	81	89.5	92.5	94

Figure 9.3.2 shows the effect of mechanical efficiency and generator efficiency on the steam rate of an engine-generator set, both as to relative magnitude and as to location of the minimum values.

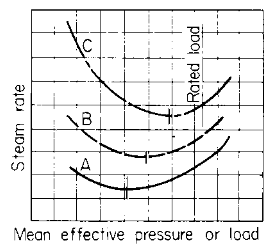


Fig. 9.3.2 Engine steam rate curves (*a*) at the steam cylinder, lb/(ihp · h); (*b*) at the engine shaft, lb/(bhp · h); (*c*) at the generator, lb/kWh.

Engine economy may be improved by a number of methods: (1) **separation of inlet and outlet ports;** (2) **steam jackets,** applied to cylinders and heads to keep surfaces hot and dry; (3) **multiple expansion.** Condensation losses are related to the temperature difference existing in the cylinder. Cylinders in series reduce this temperature difference and allow more complete overall expansion of the steam. Two, three, and four cylinders in series, as in **compound-, triple-,** and **quadruple-expansion** engines were common constructions, but the successive improvement is smaller for each additional stage. (4) **Superheating** gives the vapor the properties of a gas, reduces cylinder condensation, and necessitates decisive changes in engine design. The overall improvement in performance and water rate is so substantial that superheat is prevalent in practice. (5) The **uniflow** arrangement was the last great improvement in design (Figs. 9.3.3 and 9.3.4). Its high economy results from the high temperature of the residual steam at the end of compression. This temperature, aided by jackets, is higher than the live steam temperature, so that initial condensation is reduced to a negligible amount. For **condensing operation** the

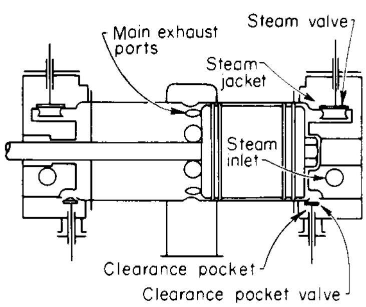


Fig. 9.3.3 Condensing uniflow engine cylinder, with clearance pockets.

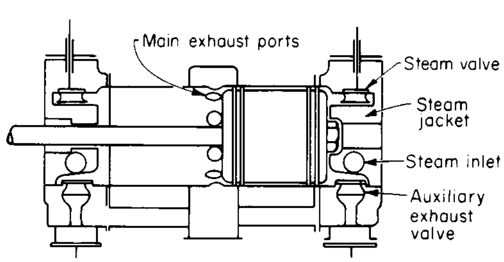


Fig. 9.3.4 Noncondensing uniflow engine cylinder, with auxiliary exhaust valves.

engines are built with steam valves only (two-valve type), Fig. 9.3.3. Clearance pockets are provided, with either hand-operated or automatic valves to permit operation with atmospheric exhaust or against back pressure. **Noncondensing uniflow** engines have, in addition, auxiliary exhaust valves to reduce the otherwise large clearance required (four-valve type). If back pressure is variable, exhaust-valve *gears* are designed to change the length of compression while the engine is in operation (Fig. 9.3.4).

Engine Steam (Water) Rates The efficiency of steam engines has generally been expressed in terms of pounds of steam per horsepower-hour. The term water rate was frequently used because of the convenient accuracy in weighing liquid water in the condensing plant. Figure 9.3.5 shows, on a percentage basis, two types of performance curves, one in

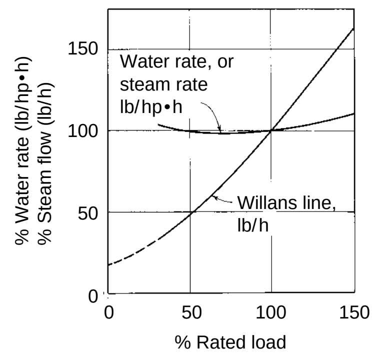


Fig. 9.3.5 Actual steam (water) rate, lb/(hp · h), and Willans line, lb/h, for a noncondensing uniflow engine, percentage basis.

lb/hph and the other in lb/h. The latter is identified as the ''total steam'' or **Willans line** and is straight for an engine with fixed cutoff and variable initial pressure. Figure 9.3.6 reflects the impact of steam pressure and superheat on the steam consumption of a condensing uniflow engine.

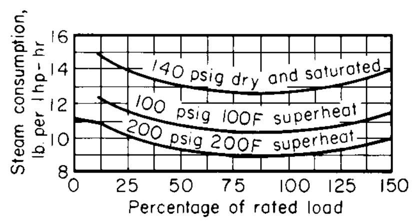


Fig. 9.3.6 Steam consumption of uniflow engine with 27.5-in vacuum.

The **Rankine cycle** (see Sec. 4) is the accepted thermodynamic standard for comparing the performance of steam prime movers (engines and turbines). It is predicated on complete isentropic (reversible adiabatic) expansion of the steam from initial to back pressure. It is shown on the *p-v* basis in Fig. 9.3.7. There is no compression or clearance. The water rate of this cycle is most conveniently calculated by use of the Mollier chart (Sec. 4) where

$$\text{Rankine steam rate} = 2{,}545/(h_1 - h_2) \qquad \text{lb/hph} \qquad (9.3.5)$$

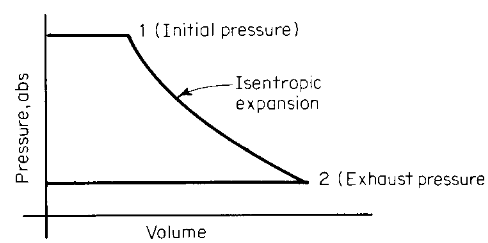


Fig. 9.3.7 Rankine cycle, *p-v* diagram.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

and h_1 and h_2 are the initial and exhaust enthalpies, Btu/lb (constant entropy). The lowest point of the actual steam-rate curve (Fig. 9.3.6) is usually referred to as the Rankine rate, and the ratio of Rankine rate to actual rate is the **Rankine efficiency ratio (RER).** This ratio may vary from 0.5 to 0.9, depending on the type of engine.

When clearance, compression, and incomplete expansion are introduced, the methods of Sec. 4 should be used to evaluate steam rate. This involves steam tables and charts to find the net work of the indicator card from the positive and negative areas of the several component phases. Figure 9.3.8 shows a theoretical steam-rate curve, computed by such methods, together with the actual test curve for the engine.

Engine Details Valves and valve-gear types range from the simplest D slide to gridiron, double-slide (Meyer or Rider), rocking, piston, releasing and nonreleasing Corliss, and poppet.

Volumetric clearance should be made as small as possible. Slide and piston valves bring clearance volumes to 12 to 15 percent, Corliss valves 6 to 10 percent, and poppet valves 4 to 8 percent.

Valve and Port Sizes Flow area of valves and cross section of ports are usually determined by port area $= AS/C$ in^2, where A is net piston area, in^2, S is mean piston speed, ft/min, and C is a constant, ft/min. Values of C are approximately 9,000 to 15,000 ft/min for inlet and 6,000 to 7,000 ft/min for outlet. Small valves and ports represent lost work.

Superheated Steam With high-temperature steam, the cylinder and parts design must allow for free expansion. Poppet and piston-valve cylinders can easily meet these requirements. The orthodox type of Corliss cylinder, however, is not suitable for highly superheated steam.

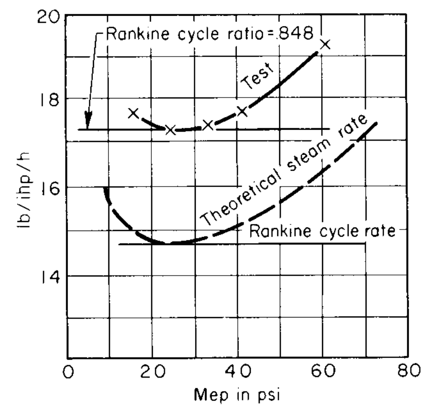


Fig. 9.3.8 Theoretical and test steam rate curves. Uniflow engine 20 × 24 at 200 r/min; throttle conditions 150 lb/in^2 saturated steam; exhaust to atmosphere.

9.4 STEAM TURBINES

by Frederick G. Baily

REFERENCES: Stodola, ''Steam and Gas Turbines,'' trans. by L. C. Loewenstein, McGraw-Hill. Bartlett, ''Steam Turbine Performance and Economics,'' McGraw-Hill. Warren, Development of Steam Turbines for Main Propulsion of High-Powered Combatant Ships, *Trans. Soc. Naval Architects Marine Engrs.*, 1946. Newman, Modern Extraction Turbines, *Power Plant Eng.*, Jan.–Apr., 1945. Salisbury, ''Steam Turbines and Their Cycles,'' Wiley. Campbell and Heckman, Tangential Vibration of Steam Turbine Buckets, *Trans. ASME*, **47,** 1925, pp. 643–671. Campbell, Protection of Steam Turbine Disk Wheels from Axial Vibration, *Trans. ASME*, **46,** 1924, pp. 31–139. Deak and Baird, A Procedure for Calculating the Packet Frequencies of Steam Turbine Exhaust Blades, *Trans. ASME*, **85,** series A, Oct. 1963.

Steam turbines have established a wide usefulness as prime movers, and are manufactured in many different forms and arrangements. They are used to drive many different types of apparatus, e.g., electric generators, pumps, compressors, and for driving ship propellers, through suitable gears. When designed for variable-speed operation, a turbine may be operated over a considerable speed range, which may be of advantage in many applications. Steam turbines range in output capacity from a few horsepower to over 1,300 MW. The largest ones are used for generator drive in central power stations.

Turbines are classified descriptively in various ways.

1. **By steam supply and exhaust conditions,** e.g., condensing, noncondensing, automatic extraction, mixed pressure (in which steam is supplied from more than one source at more than one pressure), regenerative extractions, reheat.
2. **By casing or shaft arrangement,** e.g., single casing, tandem compound (two or more casings with the shaft coupled together in line), cross-compound (two or more shafts not in line, often at different speeds).
3. **By number of exhaust stages in parallel** as regards steam flow, e.g., two-flow, four-flow, six-flow.
4. **By details of stage design,** e.g., **impulse** or **reaction**.
5. **By direction of steam flow** in the turbine, e.g., axial flow, radial flow, tangential flow. In this country, radial-flow steam turbines have not been used; there are quite a few such machines abroad. Axial-flow units predominate; some small turbines in this country operate on the tangential-flow principle.
6. **Whether single-stage or multistage.** Small turbines, or those designed for small energy drop, may have only one stage; larger units are always multistage.
7. **By type of driven apparatus,** e.g., generator, mechanical, or ship drive.
8. **By nature of steam supply,** e.g., fossil-fuel-fired boiler, or light-water nuclear reactor.

Any particular turbine unit may be described under one or more of these classifications, e.g., a single-casing, condensing, regenerative extraction fossil unit, or a tandem-compound, three-casing, four-flow steam-reheat nuclear unit.

Turbine-Stage Design A turbine stage consists of a **stationary set of blades,** often called **nozzles,** and a moving set adjacent thereto, called **buckets,** or **rotor blades**. These stationary and rotating blades act together to allow the steam flow to do work on the rotor, which can be transmitted to the **load** through the **shaft** on which the rotor assembly is carried. Classical turbine-stage design recognized two distinct designs of turbine stage, ''impulse'' and ''reaction'' (see classification 4 above). In the **impulse** stage, the total pressure drop for the stage is taken across the nozzles or stationary element, the flow through the buckets or rotor blades then being substantially at constant static pressure. This may be extended to include flow through an additional set of stationary ''intermediate'' blades and another row of buckets, or rotor blades (Curtis or two row stages). See velocity diagrams, Figs. 9.4.1 and 9.4.2.

In the **reaction** stage, the total pressure drop assigned to the stage is divided equally between the stationary blades and the rotor blades, giving rise to a velocity diagram, as shown in Fig. 9.4.3. As can be seen, there arises a marked difference in the shapes of the rotor blades in the two classical designs; the impulse buckets do much more turning of the stream; the reaction-bucket shape is more nearly the same as the nozzle-blade shape.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Fluid flow theory recognizes that only in rare cases can an axial-flow turbine stage be either pure impulse or pure reaction. The annulus following the nozzle exit is filled with steam flowing with a high tangential velocity, i.e., a vortex, confined between inner and outer boundaries,

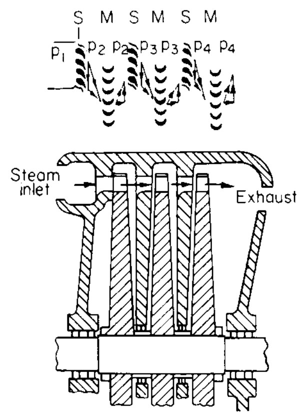


Fig. 9.4.1 Impulse turbine with single-velocity stages.

and for equilibrium to exist, there must be a gradient in static pressure from a lower-than-average value at the inner boundary to a higher-than-average value at the outer boundary. The amount of this depends upon the boundary **radius ratio** R_{outer}/R_{inner}. Thus only for a radius ratio near

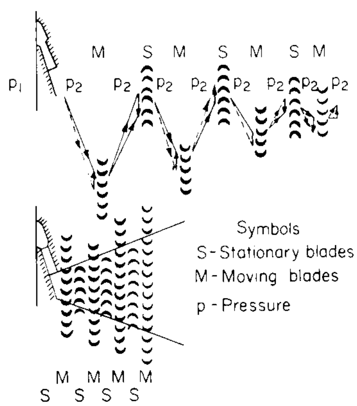


Fig. 9.4.2 Impulse turbine with multivelocity stages.

1.0 (small-height blades) can it be said that any one pressure condition exists for the stage. All axial-flow turbine stages of larger radius tend to be more nearly impulse at the inner diameter and more nearly reaction at the outer diameter.

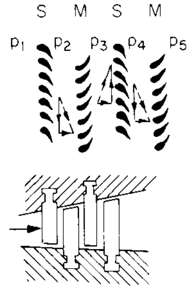


Fig. 9.4.3 Reaction turbine.

The designers of multistage steam turbines have continued to refine the efficiency of their steam paths over the years. For example, the 1950s saw the broad introduction of **twisted free-vortex staging**. Vane profiles have been improved since the 1950s by drawing on developments made in their aerodynamic laboratories and those of others. Complex computational fluid-dynamics computer codes based on true three-dimensional formulations of the inviscid Euler and viscous Navier-Stokes equations, and the supercomputers on which to run them, have recently become available. Manufacturing technology advancement permits the creation of steam-path components of almost any desired three-dimensional configuration. The result has been the introduction of **controlled-vortex staging** in the 1990s, in which the flow is biased toward the more efficient midsection of the blade, and secondary flow and profile losses are minimized by refinement in nozzle and bucket profiles.

Differences in basic mechanical construction of axial-flow turbine stages exist. Generally, the reaction type of turbine has continued as in the past with a ‘‘drum rotor’’ and stationary blades fixed in the casing, while the impulse type continues as a ‘‘diaphragm-and-wheel’’ construction. However, the mechanical construction bears no fixed relation to the degree of impulse or reaction adopted in the blading design. Designers employ the mechanical construction which they deem suitable for best reliability and efficiency.

An impulse stage, when employed for the first expansion, permits nozzle group control, i.e., steam admission to each group, opening and closing, successively, in response to load changes. This improves the efficiency at low loads through the reduction of the loss due to throttling.

A greater enthalpy drop can be employed per stage with the impulse element, particularly in the case of multivelocity elements, thus reducing the number of stages in a turbine. This is of special importance in the first expansion if the nozzle chamber is not integral with the turbine casing, so that the casing is not subjected to the initial steam conditions. If turbine elements of equal blade speed could have equal efficiency, one 2 row impulse element would equal four 1 row impulse elements or 16 rows (8 pairs) of reaction elements.

General Advantages of Steam Turbines Compared with reciprocating engines steam turbines require less floor space, lighter foundations, and less attendance; have a lower lubricating-oil consumption, with no internal lubrication, the exhaust steam being free from oil; have no reciprocating masses with their resulting vibrations; have uniform torque; have no rubbing parts excepting the bearings; have great overload capacity, great reliability, low maintenance cost, and excellent regulation; are capable of operating with higher steam temperature and of expanding to lower exhaust pressure than the reciprocating steam engine. Their efficiencies may be as good as steam engines for small powers, and much better at large capacities. Single units can be built of greater capacity than can any other type of prime mover. Small turbines cost about the same as reciprocating engines; larger turbines cost much less than corresponding sizes of reciprocating engines, and they can be built in capacities never reached by reciprocating engines. Combustion-gas turbines possess many of the advantages of steam turbines but are not available in ratings much exceeding 175 and 225 MW for 60- and 50-Hz service, respectively.

STEAM FLOW THROUGH NOZZLES AND BUCKETS IN IMPULSE TURBINES

Nozzles For the general treatment of the flow of steam and for maximum weight of flow of saturated steam, see Sec. 4.

The **theoretical work** obtainable from the expansion of 1 lb of steam is equal to the enthalpy drop in isentropic expansion $h_1 - h_{s2}$, in Btu/lb, and the spouting velocity in $223.8\sqrt{h - h_{s2}}$ ft/s (m/s $= 44.7\sqrt{h_1' - h_{s2}'}$, where h' is in kJ/kg). The actual expansion is not isentropic but follows a path such as h_1h_2 on the enthalpy-entropy diagram (Fig. 9.4.4), and the available work becomes $h_1 - h_2$.

The **nozzle efficiency** is $(h_1 - h_2)/(h_1 - h_{s2})$.

The required **throat area** of the nozzle is $A_t = Wv_t/V_t$, and the **mouth**

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

area is $A_m = Wv_m/V_m$, where v is specific volume, V is velocity, and the subscripts relate to throat and mouth, respectively.

In the case of a subcritical pressure ratio, throat and mouth conditions will coincide; with a supercritical pressure ratio, the mouth area will be

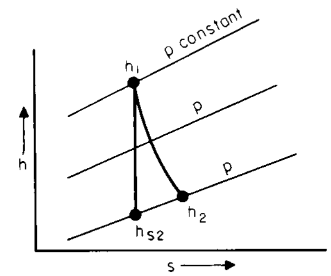


Fig. 9.4.4 Enthalpy-entropy diagram.

larger than the throat area. For **nozzle velocity coefficients** based on tests, see Keenan and Kraft, *Trans. ASME*, **71,** 1949, pp. 773–787. The **bucket-velocity coefficient** is the ratio of the average exit velocity from the bucket divided by the velocity equivalent of the total energy available to the bucket, i.e., the sum of inlet-velocity energy and pressure-drop energy. Typical values of tests on impulse buckets are shown in Fig. 9.4.5, when the bucket inlet angle is 3 to 5° larger than the exit angle. These are for subsonic flow. Reaction buckets can have the same coefficients as nozzles. For intermediate cases between pure impulse and pure reaction, interpolate between the values for these limiting cases.

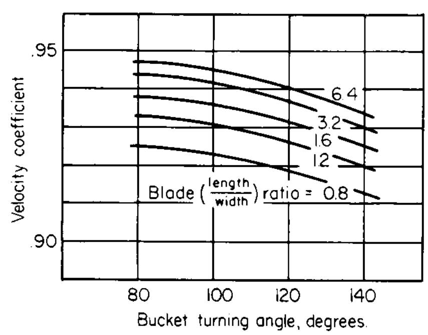


Fig. 9.4.5 Impulse-bucket velocity coefficients.

If, in the velocity diagram for a usual turbine stage, V_1 = actual nozzle exit velocity, V_2 = bucket relative entrance velocity, V_3 = bucket relative exit velocity, V_4 = absolute leaving velocity, V_0 = velocity corresponding to total stage available energy, then the **diagram efficiency** is $(V_1^2 - V_2^2 + V_3^2 - V_4^2)/V_0^2$.

Diagram efficiencies calculated with nozzle and bucket coefficients given above will be higher than the efficiencies derived by turbine tests, because of losses not existing in stationary tests of nozzles and buckets.

For supersonic bucket velocities, the impulse bucket-velocity coefficient is lower by the factors in Table 9.4.1.

Turbine Stage Efficiency Single-row stages of short blade length have relatively lower efficiency, owing to inner and outer sidewall losses; stages with longer blades are therefore higher in efficiency. Figure 9.4.6 shows typical values of stage efficiency for single-row stages, plotted against the wheel-speed steam-speed ratio, with pitch diam, inches/nozzle area, square inches, as a parameter. These curves reflect the net total of losses: (1) friction losses in nozzles (stationary blades); (2) friction losses in buckets (rotor blades); (3) rotation loss of rotor; (4) leakage loss between inner circumference of stationary element and rotor; (5) leakage loss between tip of rotor blades and casing; (6) moisture and supersaturation losses, if steam is wet (not included in curves of Fig. 9.4.6).

Table 9.4.1 Impulse Bucket-Velocity Coefficient Factors

Mach no.	< 1.0	1.2	1.3	1.5	1.75	2.0
Factor	1.0	0.997	0.995	0.978	0.928	0.816

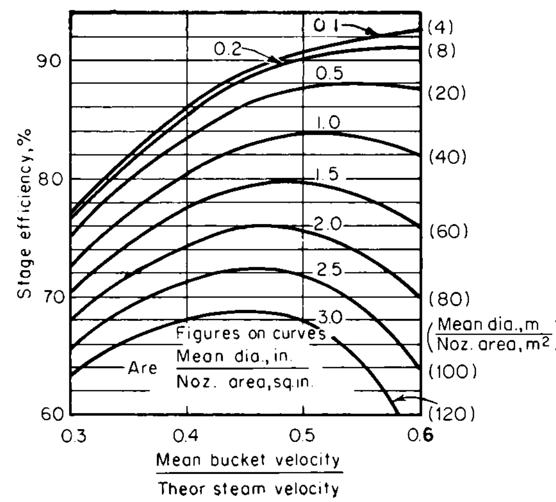


Fig. 9.4.6 Turbine single-row stage efficiency.

Nozzles and bucket friction losses are minimized by good aerodynamic design and by increasing **aspect ratio** (blade length/steam passage width). Rotation losses depend upon disk or rotor dimensions and surrounding stationary parts. Exact values for rotation loss depend on several factors; the following formulas may be relied upon for all usual purposes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_d &= 0.042D^2w(U/100)^{2.9} = (1.4 \times 10^{-12})(D')^2w'(U')^{2.9} \\
L_b &= 0.187Dwh^{1.25}(U/100)^{2.9} \\
&= 3.34 \times 10^{-11}D'w'(h')^{1.25}(U')^{2.9}
\end{aligned}
$$

where L_d = rotation loss of disk carrying buckets, kW; L_b = rotation loss of one row of buckets, kW; U = wheel speed at pitch diameter, ft/s; U', m/s; D = pitch diameter (at center line of nozzle), ft; D', mm; w = density of steam, lb/ft^3; w', kg/m^3; h = mean bucket height, in; h', mm. L_b must be figured for each row of buckets. L_d plus the sum of the values of L_b gives the total rotation loss in kilowatts for dry saturated steam. The formula for L_b is approximate.

Leakage loss of steam between inner circumference of stationary element and rotor is minimized by maintaining minimum practical clearance and by use of labyrinth packings (see Figs. 9.4.14 and 9.4.15 and accompanying text). Leakage loss of steam between tip of rotor blades and casing is similar to that through labyrinths between shaft and stationary parts; the magnitude depends upon the clearance area and the amount of reaction; other things being equal, the larger the percentage of reaction, the larger the leakage (see Fig. 9.4.9). Thus designers often employ considerable amounts of reaction in stages with long blades where such losses are small; this improves the net efficiency. In stages with short blades, the best net efficiency obtains with near impulse design. The curves in Fig. 9.4.6 reflect the effects of these practices.

The presence of moisture in the steam causes extra losses. These are probably mainly due to three factors:

1. Effect of supersaturation; i.e., the steam in expanding rapidly does not remain in equilibrium but tends to be more or less supercooled; thus less than theoretical equilibrium energy is available.

2. The presence of water drops increases friction losses in the steam itself.

3. Water drops tend to move more slowly than the vapor; they strike the rotor blades at unfavorable velocities and exert a braking effect.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Figure 9.4.7 gives correction factors which may be applied to the values from Fig. 9.4.6 to arrive at stage efficiencies in the ''wet'' region. Curves are identified by initial superheat, °F, or by initial quality, percent.

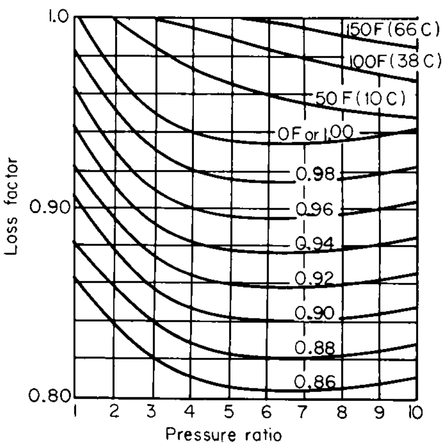


Fig. 9.4.7 Supersaturation and moisture loss.

Two-row stages, with one set of nozzles, have lower basic efficiency than single-row stages; they are useful for the first, or governing, stage in small to medium units. They are no longer employed in large central station designs. The approximate relative efficiency level of these stages is shown in Fig. 9.4.9.

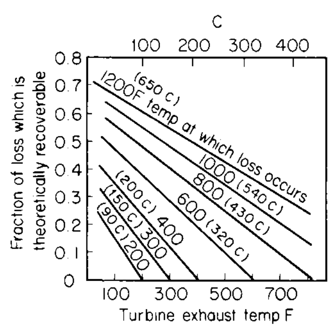


Fig. 9.4.8 Energy regain chart.

The losses occurring in a turbine stage are partially recoverable in succeeding stages in a multistage turbine because the energy available to succeeding stages is increased above that resulting from isentropic expansion. The amount of this factor depends upon the temperature at which the loss takes place, and the turbine exhaust temperature. Values for the reheat or energy-regain factor are shown in Fig. 9.4.8.

Turbine Steam-Flow Requirements The steam flow required by a turbine is related to its power output and steam conditions by the following expressions:

$$\text{Flow, lb/h} = (\text{TSR/efficiency}) \times \text{power output, hp or kW}$$

where TSR = theoretical steam rate, lb/(hp · h) = 2,545/available energy, Btu/lb, or TSR, lb/kWh = 3,412.14/available energy, Btu/lb.

Values of TSR are given in tables or may be calculated. In case of mixed-pressure or extraction turbines, the various sections of the turbine where flows are added or subtracted must be treated separately.

Turbine Steam-Path Design The basic quantities required for this are the steam conditions (i.e., inlet pressure and temperature and exhaust pressure), the required flow (see above), and the turbine speed. The latter is often fixed by the requirements of the driven machine; if not, the choice of speed by the designer is based upon experience, and factors such as space or weight limitations, efficiency requirements, stress limits, or required exhaust area. Often several preliminary layouts are needed to arrive at the best design. If it appears that a single stage will suffice, the problem is simple, since the entire available energy is allotted to the one stage. If a multistage machine is required, the total available energy must be divided properly between the various stages.

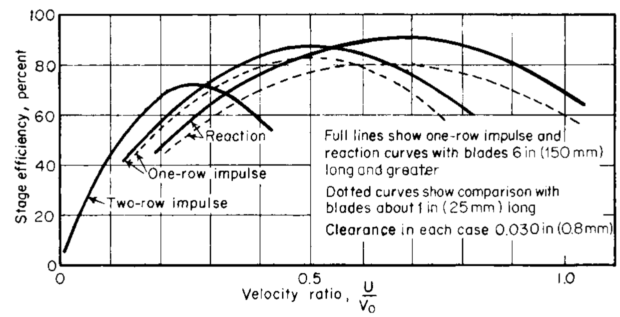


Fig. 9.4.9 Variation of the efficiency of turbine elements with velocity ratio.

For a given wheel-speed/steam-speed ratio, the energy to be allotted to the stage is directly proportional to the square of the product (r/min × *D*), *D* being the rotor mean diameter. If available energy *AE* is in Btu/lb, *D*, in, and velocity ratio, 0.50, then

$$AE = (\text{r/min} \times D)^2/(6.57 \times 10^8)$$

The sum of the *AE* values per stage for all the stages must equal the total energy on the turbine, which is greater than the isentropic available energy by the amount of the reheat factor.

Having determined the energy to be assigned to each stage, the steam pressure in each stage is fixed, and this, together with the enthalpy determined from the efficiency of the machine from inlet, determines the steam specific volume. The velocity ratio and the degree of reaction decided upon fix the velocity diagram, from which the velocities through the stationary and rotating blades are determined. With the flow *Q*, lb/h, the velocity *V*, ft/s, and the volume *v*, ft³/lb, determined, theoretical areas required are given by

$$A = Qv/(25V) \qquad \text{in}^2$$

The actual area required will be larger than theoretical because of friction losses; a value of 0.98 for nozzle flow coefficient is reasonable.

There is no fixed criterion for the number of stages to be used in a steam-turbine design, and experienced designers differ in the number they will choose for any particular design. The stage velocity ratio, the mean diameter, and often the r/min are subject to judgment, bearing in mind the general relationships shown in Figs. 9.4.6, 9.4.7, and 9.4.8. Cross-compound arrangements are possible, allowing higher speed for the high-pressure section, where steam volume flow is smaller, and a lower speed for the low-pressure section, where the final exhaust area desired may require long blades on a large diameter.

A detailed calculation of the efficiencies and energy outputs of each stage can be summed up to the total ''internal used energy'' of the turbine, which, when divided by the isentropic available energy, results in an ''**internal efficiency**.'' Then, account must be taken of other losses to arrive at the turbine overall efficiency. These losses are

1. Exhaust loss, i.e., the kinetic energy corresponding to the absolute velocity of the steam leaving the last stage, plus the pressure drop through the exhaust connection to the turbine outlet flange, where exhaust pressure is by custom measured as a static pressure.
2. Pressure drops through interconnecting piping if turbine has more than one casing
3. Shaft end-packing leakages
4. Valve-stem leakages, if any
5. Inlet-valve and intermediate-valve pressure-drop losses
6. Bearing, oil-pump, and coupling power losses

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

7. If the turbine drives a generator or gear, the losses of these elements

LOW-PRESSURE ELEMENTS OF TURBINES

In condensing turbines expanding to high vacuum, the steam increases in specific volume as it passes through the stages, exhausting at about 1,000 times the inlet volume. The increase in specific volume from stage to stage is greatest in the latter few stages, which are commonly designed for pressure ratios of about 2 : 1. Considerations of efficiency and economics dictate providing reasonably low interstage steam velocity in these stages, and reasonable leaving loss from the last-stage blades. These requirements are satisfied by providing a steam path whose cross-sectional area increases in proportion to the specific volume. The area increase may be achieved by increasing blading length, by increasing the mean diameter of the steam path, by arranging the last expansions in multiple flow, or by some combination of two or more. The relatively small single casing unit of Fig. 9.4.10 is provided with increasing area by the first two techniques.

The ratio of the last-stage blade height to the mean diameter of the steam path may be as high as 0.35 in the last stage of large central station units. With such a ratio, there is a variation in blade velocity between the inner and the outer radii of the steam path that cannot be properly satisfied by any one steam velocity. Losses incidental to this may be minimized or eliminated by providing blades with warped surfaces, the sections at the inner radius partaking of impulse form with relatively small inlet angles, and those at the outer radius of reaction form with large inlet angles. The longest last-stage blades in service today have tips whose speed exceeds sonic velocity. Many are of transonic design employing subsonic profiles toward the inner radius, blending into supersonic profiles at the tip.

Among the methods of obtaining increased low-pressure blade areas through multiple flowing are:

1. A single-casing turbine with the last elements arranged for double flow.

2. The steam expansion divided between two casings, coupled in tandem, and driving a single main generator, the low-pressure casing being arranged for double flow. This arrangement is commonly extended to provide tandem-compound turbines with four and six exhaust ends. Figure 9.4.11 illustrates the application of a double-flow low-pressure casing to a unit of medium rating.

3. Cross-compound turbines, in which the steam expansion is divided between two or more separate casings driving separate generators, electrically synchronized. The low-pressure casings are usually double-flow and can be arranged so as to provide two, four, or six exhaust ends. This system permits the turbine elements to be operated at different speeds, selected as appropriate to the respective steam volumes. It lends itself to geared applications, such as marine propulsion machinery, when two or more pinions of different diameters and speeds drive a single-output gear wheel.

4. Divided-flow turbines in which steam expands in a series of elements in a single flow to a point where the flow is divided, with, perhaps, one-third continuing expansion within the same casing to condenser pressure, the remaining two-thirds expanding to condenser pressure in a separate double-flow casing. This construction has been used to provide triple-flow exhaust ends.

The **leaving loss** at the exit from the last row of blades is $V_{c2}^2/50{,}100$ Btu/lb of steam, where V_{c2} is the absolute terminal velocity in feet per second [or $(V'_{c2})^2/2{,}000$ kJ/kg, where V'_{c2} is in m/s]. The presence of moisture in the steam causes **moisture loss.** The acceleration of moisture particles is less as the density of the steam decreases; hence the difference between the velocities of the particles and the steam increases. As indicated in Fig. 9.4.12, with steam velocity, V_{s1} and moisture velocity V_m leaving the stationary blades and with bucket velocity V_b, the velocities relative to the moving blades of the steam are V_{c1} and of the moisture V_{m1}. The component V_{m2} of the moisture relative to the moving blades is opposite to the direction of their motion and is proportional to the force acting on the back of the blades, needed to accelerate the water to blade speed, and results in negative work. This negative work can be calculated when the weight of moisture per pound of steam and V_m are known. The results of many tests indicate that the *efficiency of a stage is reduced about 1 percent for each 1 percent moisture present in the steam.*

The presence of moisture particles will result in erosion of the blades

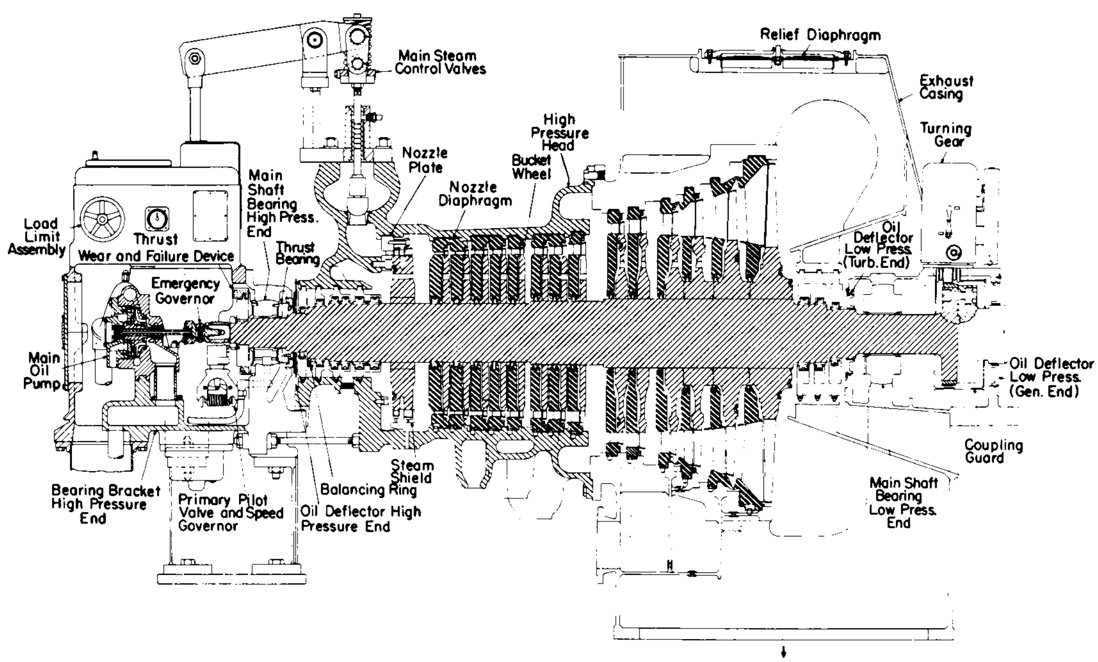


Fig. 9.4.10 Cross section of a multistage impulse condensing turbine rated at 30,000 kW. *(General Electric Co.)*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

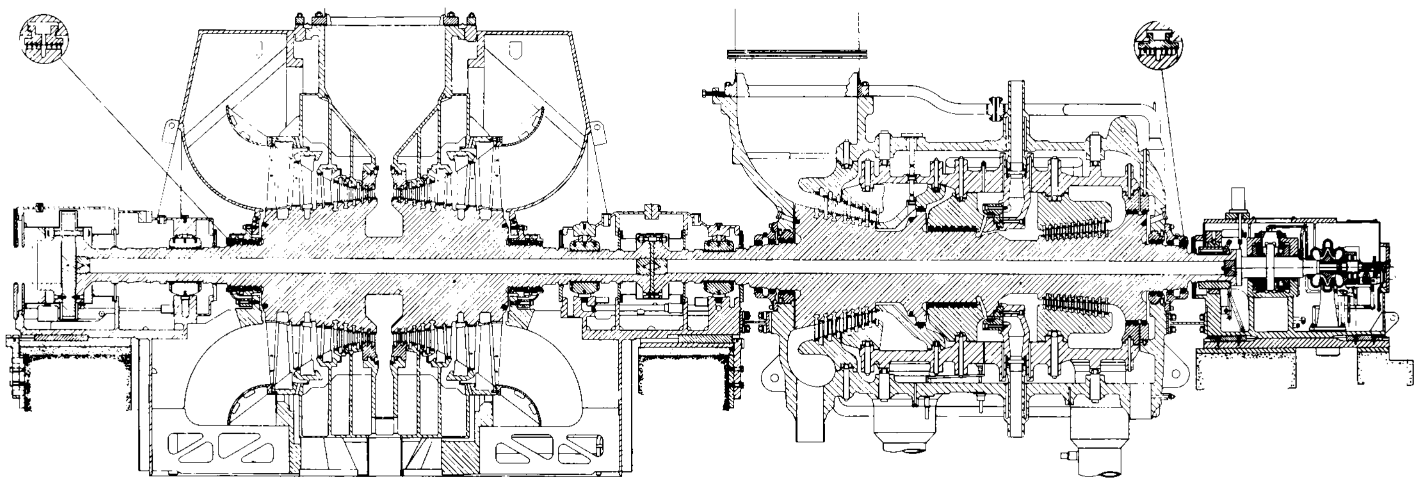


Fig. 9.4.11 Cross section of a 160,000-kW tandem-compound, double-flow reheat turbine. *(Westinghouse Electric Corp.)*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

along their inlet edges if V_{m1} is too large—unless the moisture content is very small. The rate of erosion is reduced by using materials of inherently high erosion resistance, or protective shielding of hardened materials along the inlet edge. Attached Stellite shields and thermally hardened edges are commonly employed. Protective materials and processes are carefully chosen to minimize the possibility of corrosion.

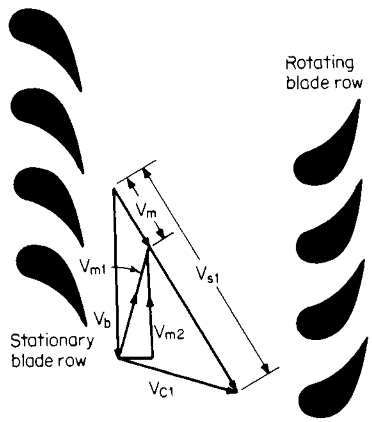


Fig. 9.4.12 Velocity of steam and of the moisture in steam.

Experience with the usual 12-chrome alloy bucket steels indicates that a threshold velocity exists at about $V_b = 900$ ft/s (270 m/s), below which impact erosion does not normally occur. With alloys specifically selected for their erosion resistance and with Stellite shields, satisfactory service has been obtained with values of V_b in excess of 1,900 ft/s (580 m/s). Centrifugal stress limits the application of steel blades to a tip velocity of about 2,000 ft/s (610 m/s). Titanium alloys provide high strength, low density (and hence low centrifugal stress), combined with excellent inherent moisture erosion resistance. Titanium bucket designs are available with a tip speed of 2,200 ft/s (670 m/s), without the need for separate erosion protection shielding. The severity of erosion penetration is dependent upon the thermodynamic properties of the stage and the effectiveness of reducing moisture content by means of interstage collection and drainage as well.

Rotative Speed The speed selected greatly influences weight and cost. With two geometrically similar turbines, one having twice the linear dimensions of the other, the steampath areas of the larger, and hence its capacity, would be 4 times and its weight 8 times as great as those of the smaller. The weight per unit of capacity with similar machines increases inversely as the speed with strict geometrical similarity. For this reason, the highest possible low-pressure blade speeds and r/min are selected. Machines of different speeds are not usually made strictly geometrically similar, and the reduction of specific weight is not so rapid as the above rule would indicate. With large-capacity turbines, blade speeds, at the outer radius, can reach 2,200 ft/s (670 m/s). With high speeds and small dimensions, the turbine can operate with higher steam temperature and greater temperature fluctuations because of lighter casing walls and less mass of rotor; the amount of distortion is less with more uniform heating; the turbine can be heated and put in service more quickly; space requirements are less; and dynamic loadings on foundations are less.

Balancing (see Secs. 3 and 5) With a rotor, or a component of a rotor, of relatively short axial length (such as a disk), static balancing may suffice. Single bodies of more than half the diameter in axial length are usually dynamically balanced by the use of balancing machines. The balancing may be done at less than the running speed, since a bladed turbine rotor cannot be rotated in air at a speed approaching the running speed, or at high speed in an evacuated spin facility, or with a combination of both. Balance at full speed may not be satisfactory unless the balance weights are applied at points diametrically opposite the errors in balance, so that balance corrections must frequently be provided along the length of the rotor. Five balance planes are commonly used for the rotors of large central-station turbines, of which three are in the rotor body between bearings and two are in the overhung couplings.

Unsatisfactory operation of turbine rotors in service, resembling a simple unbalance, may be caused by nonuniform material or nonuniform heating of the rotor. The latter may be caused by permitting a rotor to remain stationary in a hot casing, or by packing rubbing which may apply frictional heating to the ''high'' side of the rotor, leading to further bowing into the rub. Care must be taken to see that nonuniformity of material which could cause rotor distortion with heat is avoided, and to avoid rubbing of the packings on the rotor. Turning gears are generally used to keep the rotor turning at low speed to maintain uniform temperature when the turbine is shut down and cooling, and for a prolonged period before starting.

TURBINE BUCKETS, BLADING, AND PARTS

Figure 9.4.13 shows various blade fastenings. Blades are subject to vibration and possible fatigue fracture if their natural frequency is resonant with some applied vibration force. Forced vibrations may arise from the following causes (see also Sec. 5):

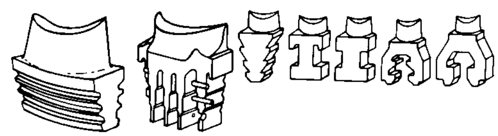


Fig. 9.4.13 Steam-turbine blade fastenings.

1. Variations in steam forces. The blade frequencies should not be even multiples of the running speed, nor should they be resonant with the frequency of passing nozzle partitions or exhaust-hood struts.
2. Shock, the result of blades being subjected to discontinuous steam flow, such as may be caused by incomplete peripheral steam admission or extraction.
3. Torsional vibrations of the rotor.

High-speed, low-pressure blades of condensing turbines are usually of tapering section and have a warped surface in order to provide appropriate blade angles throughout their length. Long blades of this type frequently have their natural frequency between three and four times the running speed or even lower. Such blades should always be specially tuned to have a margin in frequency away from running-speed stimuli.

Margins from running speed to assure freedom from fatigue due to resonant vibration and transverse to the plane of the wheel are as follows:

Frequency, cycles per revolution	2	3	4	5
Margin between critical and running speeds, %:				
Within wheel plane (tangential)	15	10	5	5
Transverse to wheel plane (axial)	20	10	10	5

Higher-frequency buckets whose frequencies cannot assuredly be made nonresonant should be designed with adequate strength to resist such stimuli as may occur under service conditions.

Blade Materials The material in most general use is a low-carbon stainless steel of the following composition: Cr, 12 to 14 percent; C, 0.10 to 0.12; Mn, 0.08 max; P, 0.03 max; S, 0.05 max; Si, 0.25 max. Its physical characteristics in the heat-treated condition at room temperature may be tensile strength, 100,000 lb/in^2 (690 MPa); yield point, 80,000 lb/in^2 (550 MPa); elongation, 21 percent; reduction of area, 60 percent. For the higher-temperature blades, particularly on large machines, it is practice to use alloyed chrome steel to achieve the required strength and oxidation-erosion resistance (see also Sec. 6).

Rotor Materials Since steam turbines operate at high speeds, rotor materials must be of very high integrity and of basically high strength. In addition, the material should be ''tough'' at the temperatures at

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

which it is to be highly stressed. A measure of this toughness may be obtained by running Charpy notch impact tests at various temperatures (see Sec. 5). In large modern machines the rotor forgings are almost exclusively made of steel melted in basic electric furnaces and vacuum poured to achieve freedom from internal defects. Turbine rotor forgings are usually made with small amounts of alloying elements such as Ni, Cr, V, or Mo.

Casing and Bolting Materials High-temperature and -pressure casings are almost always made of castings in order to achieve the complicated shapes required by these components. The alloy compositions used are selected so as to provide good weldability and castability as well as good physical properties. Low-temperature and -pressure casings are usually fabricated from steel plate. Bolts are made of forged or rolled materials.

The practical use of higher steam pressures and temperatures is limited by the strength and cost of available materials.

Leakage Metallic labyrinth packings are employed to (1) reduce internal steam leakage from stage to stage, (2) prevent steam from escaping the turbine from elevated-pressure ends, and (3) prevent air from leaking into the turbine at subatmospheric-pressure shaft ends. Interstage packings usually employ single rings with multiple teeth. End packings are arranged in multiple rings. At the high-pressure end, the leakage of steam past the first few rings may be carried to a lower-pressure stage of the turbine so that the outer rings need only prevent the leakage of low-pressure steam to atmosphere. The annulus above the last ring, or group of rings, is connected to a packing exhauster which maintains a pressure slightly below atmospheric. In consequence, no steam leaks out along the shaft, while a small amount of air is drawn past the final packing to the exhauster. Vacuum packings are provided with an inner annulus which is supplied with steam above atmospheric pressure. Steam flows inward from that annulus to supply the leakage toward the vacuum end, and outward toward a packing-exhauster connection. Thus steam is prevented from escaping along the shaft, while air is prevented from being drawn into the turbine.

Some turbines use carbon end packings or water seals. Carbon packings consist of one or more rings of pure carbon made in sections of 90 or 120° and held toward the shaft with small clearances by means of springs. The springs should have an axial component of force to hold the rings against the side of the box.

Labyrinths dependent upon radial clearances are shown in Fig. 9.4.14. In the design with ''high and low'' teeth, heavy teeth are cut on the turbine shaft, and thin teeth are part of a renewable packing ring which is made in segments backed and held inward by flat springs. The key indicated in the figure prevents turning of the segments. These types require that the rotor remain sensibly concentric with the stator but do not require a close axial adjustment.

Labyrinths dependent upon axial clearances are shown in Fig. 9.4.15. These require the maintenance of a close axial adjustment of the rotor.

The flow through a labyrinth may be approximately determined by the formula

$$W = 25KA\sqrt{\frac{(P_1/V_1)[1 - (P_2/P_1)]}{N - \ln (P_2/P_1)}}$$

where W = mass flow of steam, lb/h; K = experimentally determined coefficient; A = area through packing clearance space, in^2; P_1 = initial pressure, lb/in^2 abs; V_1 = initial specific volume of steam, ft^3/lb; P_2 = final pressure, lb/in^2 abs; N = number of throttlings.

The value of K for interlocking labyrinths where the flow velocity is effectively destroyed between throttlings is approximately 50 and is independent of clearance for usual clearance values.

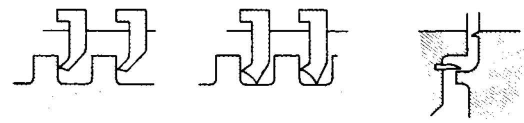


Fig. 9.4.15 Labyrinths with axial clearance.

For noninterlocking labyrinths, i.e., stationary teeth against a straight cylindrical shaft, the value of K varies with the ratio of tooth spacing to radial clearance, being about 120 for tooth spacing of five times the radial clearance, reducing to approximately 50 for a tooth spacing fifty times the clearance.

Turning Gears Large turbines are equipped with turning gears to rotate the rotors slowly during warming up, cooling off, and particularly during shutdown periods of several days when it may be necessary to start the turbine again on short notice. The object is to maintain the shaft or rotor at an approximately uniform temperature circumferentially, so as to maintain straightness and preserve the balance. Turning gears permit an appreciable reduction in starting time, particularly following a relatively short shutdown.

It is seldom necessary to use high-pressure oil to lift the journals off their bearings when using a turning gear. A low-pressure motor-driven oil pump is used which floods the bearings with about half their usual flow of oil. The turning gear is made powerful enough to start the rotor and rotate it at low speed.

High-Temperature Bolting The bolting of high-pressure, high-temperature joints, particularly turbine-shell or valve-bonnet joints, is very exacting. It is worthwhile to taper the threads of either the male or the female element so that the engagement of the threads throughout the length of the engaged thread portion will give approximately uniform bearing. The reliability of taper-threaded bolts is superior to that of parallel-threaded bolts.

Thrust bearings must usually be designed to carry axial rotor thrust in either direction, with sufficient margin to take care of unusual operating conditions. Thrust runners may be machined solid on the shaft or can be a separate piece shrunk on and secured from endwise motion. The stationary bearing surfaces may be of the pivoted-shoe type, or made in solid plates with babbitt or other bearing-material facing, with grooves for oil supply and ''lands'' to carry the thrust load.

Axial thrust on the turbine rotor is caused by pressure and velocity differences across the rotor blades, pressure differences from one side to the other on wheels or rotor bodies, and pressure differences across shaft labyrinths which have steps in diameter. The net thrust is the sum of all these effects, some of which may be in one direction, and some in the opposite direction. Rotor-blade and wheel or body thrust are usually in the direction of steam flow. It is usual to balance this thrust either partially or completely by proper choice of shaft packing diameters and pressure differences so that the net thrust is not too large. The thrust

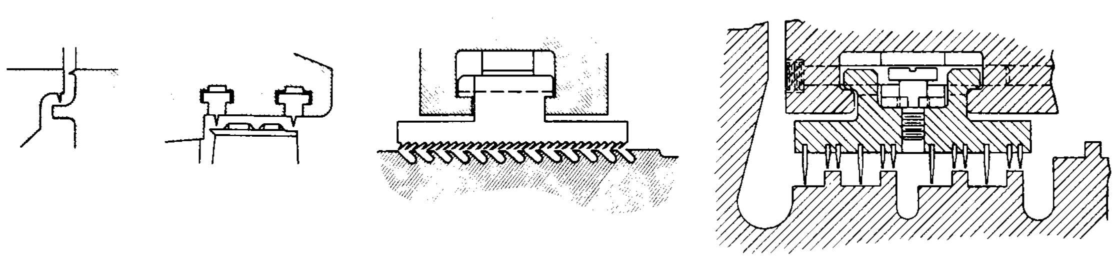


Fig. 9.4.14 Labyrinths with radial clearance.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

bearing must be made large enough so that it is not overloaded by the net thrust. In this respect it is necessary to foresee all operating conditions which may influence the net thrust and allow for these; in addition some margin must be allowed for abnormal or unforeseen circumstances which may occur in service. (See also Sec. 8.)

Controls Steam turbines are nearly always equipped with speed-control governors, and with separate overspeed governors. The only exceptions are special cases where it is judged that the possibility of overspeed due to loss of load is exceedingly remote. The speed-control governor may be arranged for a wide range of speed setting in the case of a variable-speed turbine. The steam flow-control valve or valves are operated by this governor, usually through a hydraulic relay mechanism. The overspeed governor is usually of an overisochronous type, arranged to trip at 10 percent over normal full speed (on some small turbines, 15 percent), actuating quick-closing stop valves to shut off the steam supply to the turbine. Speed-control governing systems are usually designed so that the overspeed-governing system is not brought into action on sudden loss of full load.

On automatic extraction machines, the speed governor must be correlated with the extraction-pressure controlling-valve system.

On fossil-reheat turbines, because of the large stored steam volume in the reheater and piping, and on nuclear turbines, because of the moisture separator/steam reheater and piping volumes, it is necessary to protect the turbine from overspeed on sudden loss of load by shutting off this stored steam ahead of the lower-pressure stages. It is done by intermediate intercept valves, actuated by a governor set slightly higher than the speed-control governor. An intermediate stop valve actuated by the overspeed trip is usually added in series for additional protection.

Speed-governing systems can be supplied of various sensitivities and speed ranges, to suit the requirements of the driven apparatus. Both mechanical-hydraulic and electrohydraulic systems are employed. Analog electrohydraulic systems were introduced during the 1960s as electronic components of sufficient reliability for turbine service became available. Digital systems were introduced in the 1980s and have become the standard control technology. Modern systems control transient thermal stress and the expenditure of low-cycle fatigue life of high-temperature components, in addition to controlling speed and load. (See ''Steam Temperature—Starting and Loading.'')

Steam turbines are usually provided with a supervisory instrumentation system. That for a large central station unit may process several hundred channels of information, providing alarms and/or trips for abnormal parameters. Data may be stored on paper charts, on magnetic media, or in computer memory depending upon the design of the system. Displays frequently employ color cathode-ray tubes.

INDUSTRIAL AND AUXILIARY TURBINES

Low-capacity turbines are employed for services such as engine-room auxiliaries and small generating sets. Usually they comprise a single turbine element. Their efficiency may be less than that of a corresponding reciprocating engine, but they are employed because of their compactness and because they require no internal lubrication. The exhaust steam is free from oil and grease and is available for heating purposes. They are frequently coupled to the driven machine by means of speed-reducing gears. Turbines of this type are usually of the axial-flow type, but the **tangential helical-flow** turbine, in which the steam is directed tangentially and radially inward by nozzles against buckets milled in the wheel rim and made to flow in a helical path reentering the buckets one or more times, is also used. Such machines have generally been limited to small single-stage designs, and are very simple and rugged.

In **back-pressure turbines,** the exhaust steam is employed for some heating process, and the turbine work may be a by-product. If all the exhaust steam is condensed in heat-absorbing apparatus and returned to the system, the thermal efficiency of the system may be over 90 percent. One application is the **superposition** of a high-pressure system on lower-pressure power units, with the exhaust from the high-pressure turbine power units, with the exhaust from the high-pressure turbine going to the low-pressure steam mains. By this device, an old power station can be rehabilitated and its capacity increased. Two methods of operation are in use: (1) with constant intermediate pressure as when the lower-pressure power units operate also with steam from existing lower-pressure boilers and (2) with variable intermediate pressure as when the low-pressure units receive steam only from the back-pressure turbine.

Boiler-feed-pump-drive turbines have been used extensively as part of the power-plant system, especially for large, high-pressure plants where the required feed-pump power may amount to 4 percent of the gross plant output, and for large nuclear units. The turbine and pump can be matched as to rotative speed. These turbines are variously integrated into the main cycle. The most common present practice is to use condensing, nonextracting turbines supplied with steam in the range of 150 to 200 lb/in^2 abs (1,000 to 1,400 kPa) taken from the exhaust of the intermediate sections of fossil turbines, or from the inlet of the low-pressure sections of nuclear units. These turbines normally have a connection to the main steam supply for starting and low-load operation. Similar auxiliary turbines are frequently used to drive the forced- or induced-draft fans of large fossil-fuel-fired boilers.

With **extraction turbines,** partly expanded steam is extracted for external process use at one or more points. The turbines may be either condensing or noncondensing. Extraction turbines are usually designed to sustain full rated output, with or without extraction, and are provided with automatic regulating mechanisms to deliver steam from the extraction points at constant pressure, as long as there is sufficient power load to permit the necessary flow. The use of such extraction turbines, particularly with high initial pressures in connection with many industrial processes requiring moderate- or low-pressure steam, results frequently in a high efficiency of power production, i.e., the only heat required in such a plant over and above that to provide the required process steam is the heat equivalent of the power generated by the steam before extraction. This means that such power can be produced at nearly 100 percent thermal efficiency.

Figure 9.4.16 illustrates a typical double-automatic, condensing extraction turbine, providing two controlled extraction pressures. In this case, the unit is equipped with internal spool valves at both extraction points. Grid and poppet-type valves have been used for this purpose. The extraction-stage valves are under the control of an extraction-pressure-actuated governor; they determine the flow to the subsequent stages of the turbine and maintain the pressure in the extraction stage. The operation of the valves is by means of a pilot valve controlling the admission of high-pressure fluid to an actuating cylinder, which, in turn, opens or closes the valves to the nozzle ports to the succeeding stage. Extractions of this kind are called pressure-controlled extractions, and the pressure is maintained practically constant over a wide range if the load is sufficient to permit the required steam flow.

Mechanical-drive turbines are commonly applied where moderate to high power and/or precise speed control of the driven machine are needed. Typical applications include the powering of papermaking machines and the driving of fluid compressors in petrochemical plants. So many sizes and types are available from the manufacturers, and they have been adapted to so many applications, that it is impossible to give here more than a general description. These turbines are commonly built in sizes from a few to several thousand horsepower. If the speed of the driven machine is low, a reduction gear may be used in order to reduce the size and cost of the driving turbine and to improve its efficiency. Mechanical-drive turbines have a wide range of application, being adaptable for any steam conditions and a wide variety of speeds. They can be equipped with speed governors suited to the requirements, i.e., of very good stability and accuracy, if this is desirable, and arranged for various constant speed settings over a speed range as wide as 10 : 1.

Main Propulsion Marine Turbines (see also Sec. 11.3) Steam turbines were commonly employed for the propulsion of naval and merchant ships into the 1970s. The availability of aero-derivative gas turbines of light weight, high capacity, and acceptable efficiency has led to their use for the propulsion of oil-fired naval vessels. The rapid rise in the price of fuel oil in the 1970s led merchant ship operators away from steam propulsion to the use of the more efficient diesel engine. Steam turbines continue to be used for the propulsion of all nuclear-powered

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

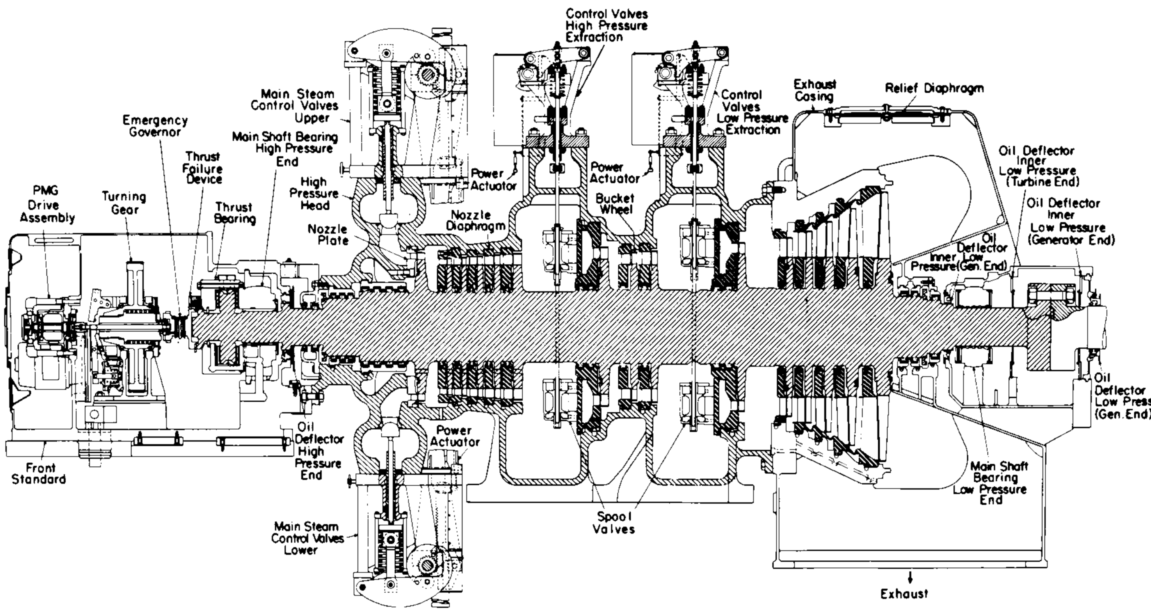


Fig. 9.4.16 Double automatic condensing extracting turbine, 25,000 kW. *(General Electric Co.)*

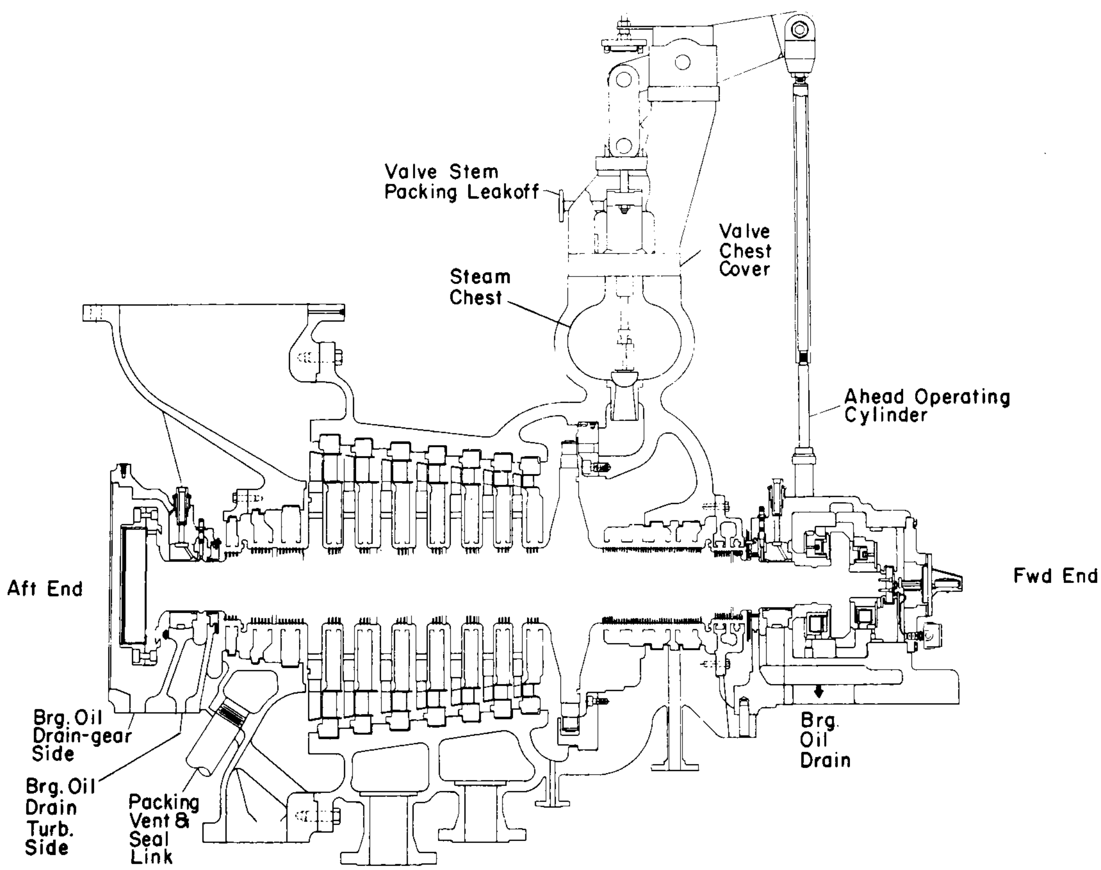


Fig. 9.4.17*a* A 16,000-hp cross-compound marine turbine designed for steam conditions of 600 lb/in² gage, 850°F, 1½ inHg abs. High-pressure section for 6,550-r/min normal speed. Low-pressure section in Fig. 9.4.17*b*. *(General Electric Co.)*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

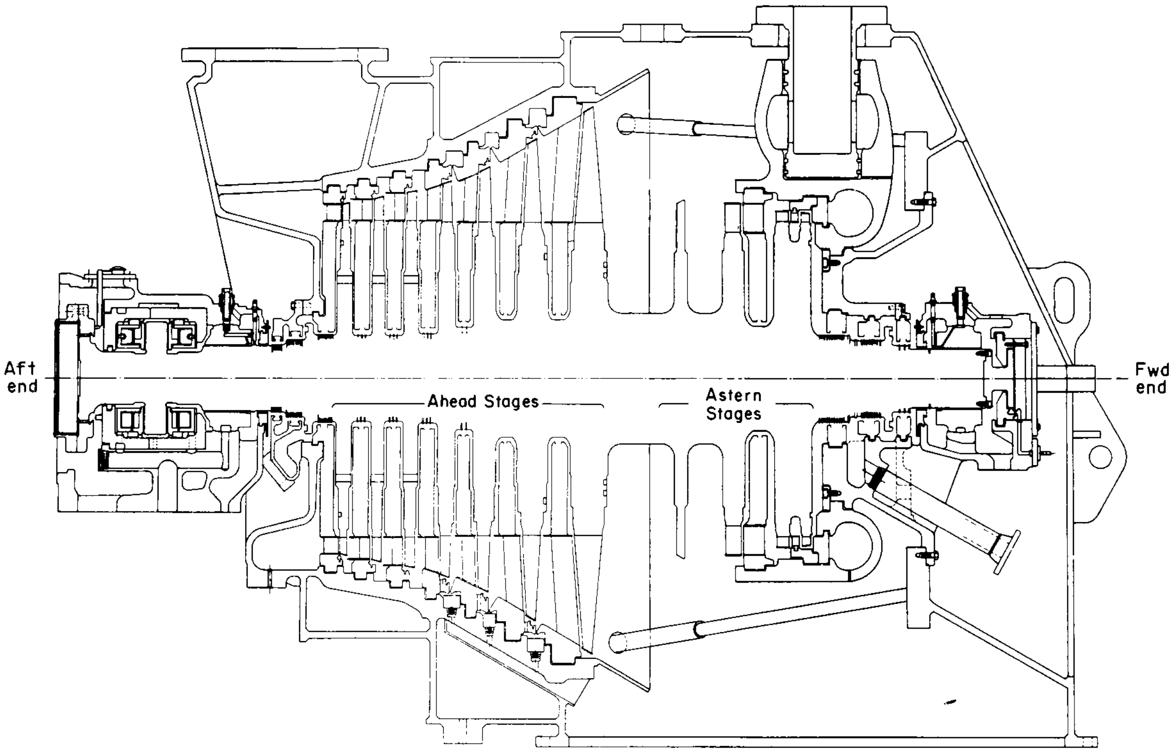


Fig. 9.4.17*b* Same marine turbine as in Fig. 9.4.17*a*, but showing low-pressure section for 3,750-r/min normal speed. Low-pressure section contains two-stage reversing element. *(General Electric Co.)*

vessels. Marine turbines are basically the same as central-station or industrial turbines except that usually the turbine is divided into a high-pressure and a low-pressure element, each geared through a common low-speed gear to the propeller shaft. The advantages of this compound arrangement are that two high-speed pinions divide the load on a common low-speed gear, thus reducing gear weight when compared with a single turbine. The high-pressure turbine can be made higher-speed than the low-pressure turbine and so be better adapted to the low volume flow. Each turbine can have a short rugged shaft, and either turbine can be used to propel the ship in an emergency.

Geared marine turbines require a reversing element for operating the vessel astern. This is typically a two-stage impulse turbine with two 2-row, or one 2-row and one 1-row, velocity stages arranged in the exhaust space of the low-pressure ahead turbine, so as to operate under vacuum under normal ahead conditions. The rotation loss of such an astern turbine is about ½ percent under normal ahead conditions.

Being directly geared to the propeller shaft, marine turbines must work at variable speeds. Overspeed governors are not required but are sometimes applied as a precautionary measure. Control is effected in most cases by sequentially operated nozzle valves. A typical marine turbine rated 16,000 hp is shown in Fig. 9.4.17. Ratings of 70,000 hp have been built, and larger sizes are realistic.

LARGE CENTRAL-STATION TURBINES

Figures 9.4.18 and 9.4.19 show examples of large central-station turbines as built by two manufacturers.

Figure 9.4.18 illustrates a 3,600-r/min tandem-compound four-flow

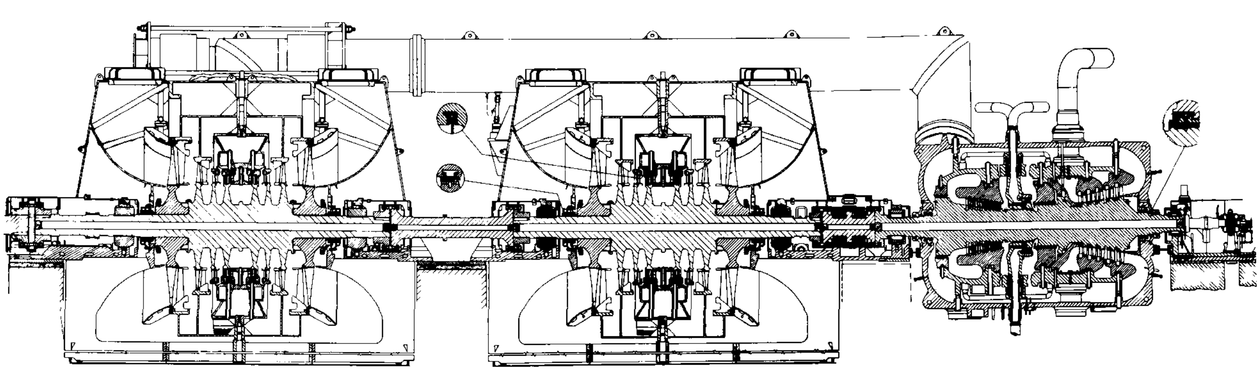


Fig. 9.4.18 Cross section of a 500-MW tandem-compound, quadruple-flow 3,600-r/min reheat turbine. *(Westinghouse Electric Corp.)*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

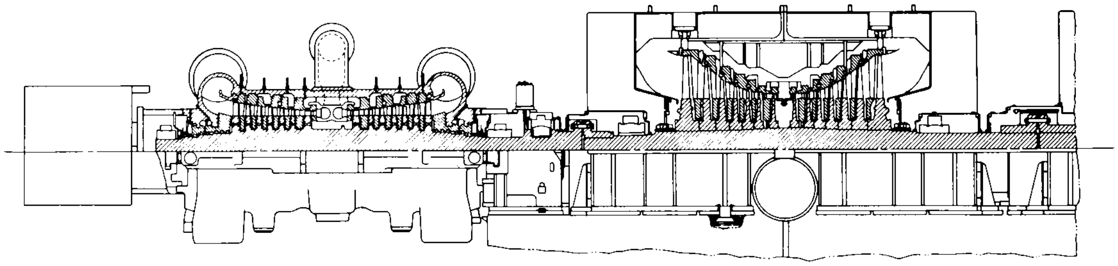


Fig. 9.4.19 Cross section of a 1,300-MW class tandem-compound, six-flow 1,800-r/min turbine for steam from light-water nuclear reactors, showing one of the three low-pressure sections. *(General Electric Co.)*

unit rated 500 MW. It is a single-reheat fossil unit for nominal inlet-steam conditions of 2,400 lb/in^2 gage (16,650 kPa) 1,000°F (538°C), reheat to 1,000°F (538°C). The right-hand casing is a combined high-pressure and reheat section. Steam flows from the left center to the right through the impulse-type governing stage, then reverses, flowing to the left through the nine reaction-type high-pressure stages, and exhausts from the casing to the reheat section of the boiler. Reheated steam reenters that casing at its right center, flowing to the right through five reheat stages, turning once more to flow to the left between the inner and outer casings, finally exhausting up and to the left to the two double-flow low-pressure casings on the left end of the unit. The inlet stop and control valves, the reheat stop and intercepter valves, and the generator are not shown.

Four-flow units of this general type employ last-stage rotor blades from 25 to 40 in. (600 to 900 mm) long and in ratings up to about 700 MW. Significantly higher ratings require dividing the functions of the combined casing into a separate single-flow high-pressure casing and a separate two-flow reheat casing, for a total of four casings. The use of the long titanium last-stage buckets makes this configuration suitable for ratings up to 1,200 MW. In cases requiring additional exhaust area, a third double-flow low-pressure element can be employed for a total of five casings. Tandem-compound 3,600- and 3,000-r/min units are commonly offered for ratings up to about 1,200 MW. Somewhat larger ratings can be accommodated by 3,600/3,600- or 3,600/1,800-r/min cross-compound units, but economic considerations makes their application infrequent.

Figure 9.4.19 illustrates an 1,800-r/min tandem-compound six-flow turbine designed for steam from light-water nuclear reactors. Reactors of both the boiling and pressurized-water types raise steam at 1,000 lb/in^2 abs (7,000 kPa) approximately with little or no initial superheat, so that the initial temperature is about 545°F (285°C), with a fraction of 1 percent of moisture frequently present. The poorer steam conditions result in higher steam rates than seen by fossil turbines. The lower initial pressure causes larger initial specific volume. In consequence, a typical nuclear turbine must accommodate 2.5 to 4 times the initial volume flow, and about 1½ times the exhaust volume flow of a fossil unit of the same rating. These considerations and the fact that the low temperature of the steam results in high moisture content in the expansion lead to the choice of 1,800 r/min. In halving the speed, diameters are less than doubled, balancing the advantages of larger steam-path area to accommodate large flow, while reducing velocities to minimize the occurrence of impact moisture erosion. The shortened energy range due to the lower initial conditions requires only two kinds of casings, high pressure and low pressure, compared with the three needed by fossil-reheat units.

Referring to Fig. 9.4.19, the steam enters the double-flow nozzle boxes of the high-pressure section, to the left, through stop and control valves which are not shown. It flows in both directions through the impulse-type stages, exhausting through four connections on each end of the shell. At the exhaust, the pressure is reduced to 200 lb/in^2 abs (1,400 kPa) approximately, and the moisture content is increased to 12 percent. That moisture poses an erosion risk and a performance loss to the low-pressure section following. It is current practice to dry the steam in an external moisture separator, frequently combined with one or two stages of steam-to-steam reheating, before admission to the low-pressure casings. Figure 9.4.20 is a cross section through a combination moisture separator and two-stage steam reheater. The exhaust from the high-pressure turbine enters the shell at the bottom, flowing upward through the inclined corrugated-plate moisture-separating elements, which remove essentially all the entrained water. It continues upward, flowing over the tubes of the first-stage bundle, which are supplied with

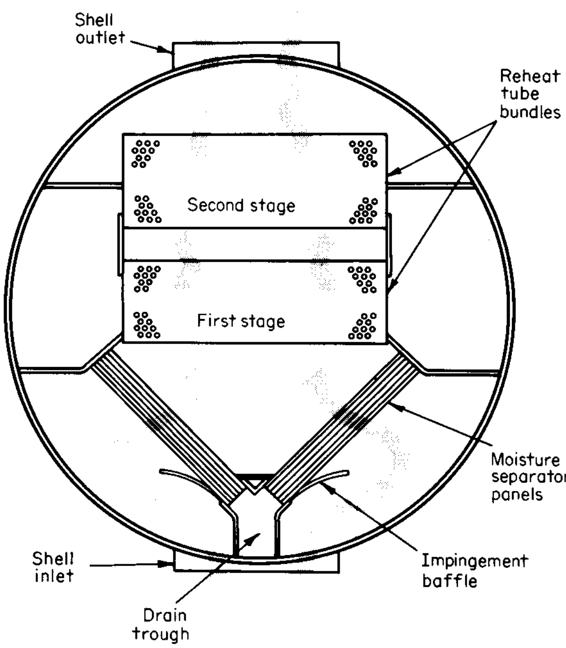


Fig. 9.4.20 Cross section of a combination moisture separator and two-stage steam reheater for use with nuclear reactor turbines.

steam extracted from the high-pressure turbine, approaching to within 20 to 50°F (11 to 28°C) of that temperature. Next, it flows over the tubes of the second stage bundle, which are supplied with initial steam, approaching to within 20 to 50°F (11 to 28°C) of that temperature, or to 495 to 525°F (257 to 274°C). The steam leaves the vessel at the top and is admitted to the low-pressure sections of Fig. 9.4.19, through stop and intercept valves, not shown. The last-stage blade length is in the range of 38 to 52 in (960 to 1,320 mm).

Units of the type described are built to ratings of approximately 1,300 MW with larger sizes available. Similar four-flow units are employed for ratings up to approximately 1,000 MW.

Other types of nuclear reactors, such as the high-temperature gas-cooled reactor and the liquid-metal-cooled fast-breeder reactor, produce steam conditions at temperature and pressure levels comparable with fossil-fuel-fired boilers, leading to the use of 3,600-r/min units similar to fossil practice.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

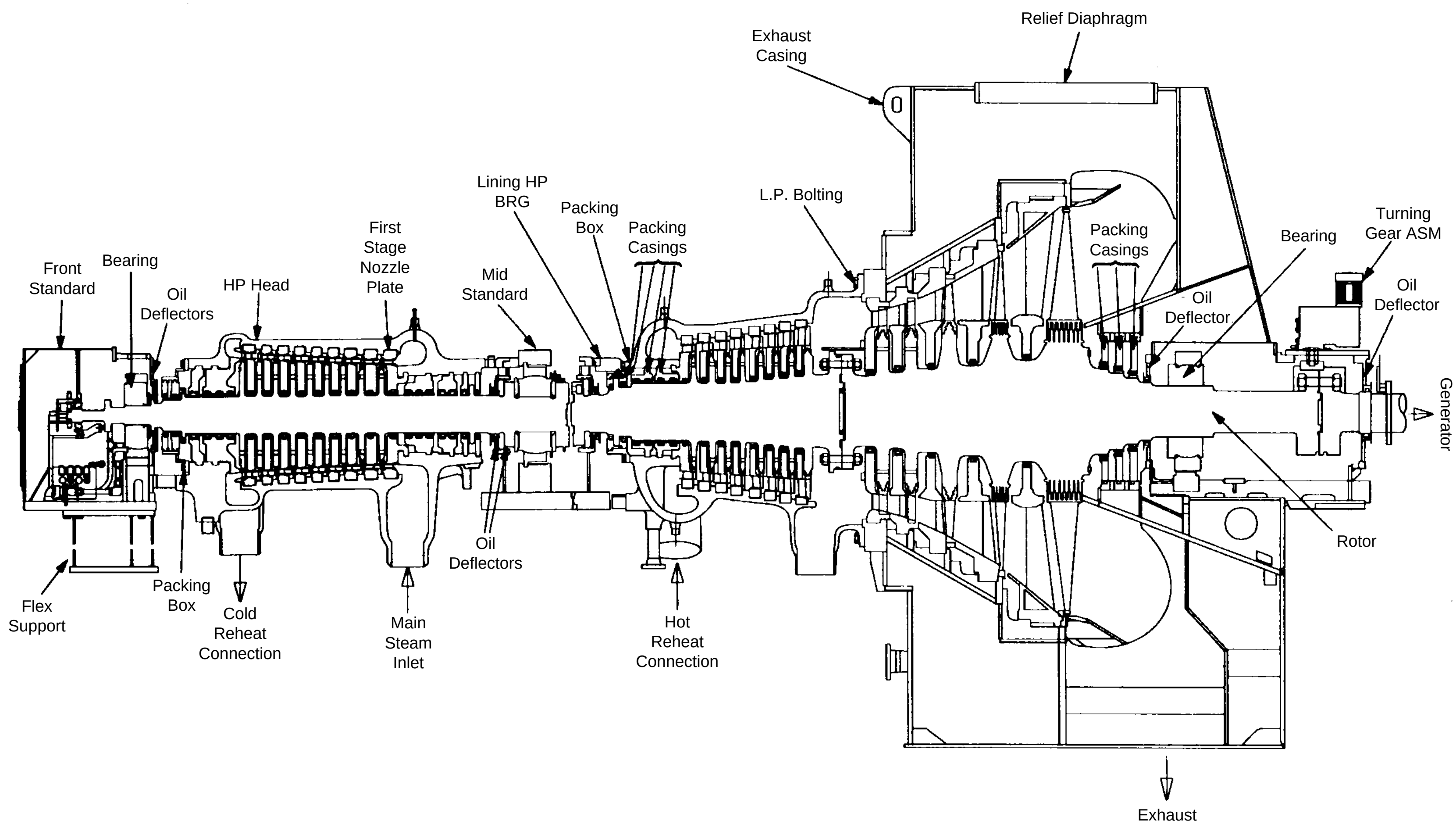


Fig. 9.4.21 Two-casing reheat combined-cycle turbine with single-flow down exhaust. *(General Electric Co.)*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

STEAM TURBINES FOR COMBINED CYCLES

(See also Sec. 9.7)

Modern combustion **gas turbines (GTs)** have ratings approaching 250 MW. Considerable sensible heat is available in the gas-turbine exhaust-gas flow which ranges from 1,000 to 1,100°F (530 to 600°C) in temperature. In the **combined cycle,** the gas-turbine exhaust is directed to an unfired steam boiler called a **heat-recovery steam generator (HRSG)**. The steam generated in the HRSG is admitted to a steam turbine, whose electrical output is approximately one-half that of the gas turbine. The resulting **combined thermal efficiency** can range from 50 to 55 percent, better than that of any other available power cycle. High efficiency combined with the clean exhaust of gas turbines burning natural gas has created a broad field of application for combined cycles and the associated steam turbines.

Combined cycles can be arranged in several ways. In the *single-shaft* configuration, the gas and steam turbines are coupled together, driving a single generator. Units rated 352 MW have been manufactured for 50-Hz power systems, in which the gas turbine contributes 223 MW while the steam turbine generates 129 MW. The *multiple-shaft* arrangement uses a separate generator for each steam turbine and gas turbine. Each gas turbine has its own HRSG. The steam output from two or more GT/HRSG pairs can be manifolded to a single steam turbine. For example, a typical application for 60-Hz power systems combines two 164-MW gas turbines with one 188-MW steam turbine for a combined output of 516 MW. The steam conditions are 1,400 lb/in² gage (9,760 kPa), 1,000°F (538°C) with reheat in the HRSGs back to 1,000°F (538°C).

Steam turbines in combined-cycle service operate following the gas turbine(s), with their admission valves wide open accepting the full instantaneous output of the HRSG(s). The valves are located away from the turbine casings and are used only for speed control upon starting and for overspeed protection in the event of loss of load. The result is a very simple symmetric casing arrangement which reduces transient thermal stress and helps the steam turbine follow the potentially rapid changes in gas-turbine output. These features can be seen in Fig. 9.4.21. A two-casing reheat unit with single-flow exhaust is illustrated.

STEAM-TURBINE PERFORMANCE

The ideal **steam rate** (steam consumption, lb/kWh) of a simple turbine cycle is $3{,}412.14/(h_1 - h_{s2})$, where h is in Btu/lb [or kg/kWs = $1/(h'_1 - h'_{s2})$, h' in kJ/kg]. (See Fig. 9.4.4.)

The actual steam rate is $3{,}412.14/[\eta_t(h_1 - h_{s2})]$, where η_t is the **engine efficiency** of the turbine only, inclusive of mechanical losses {or kg/kWs = $1/[\eta_t(h'_1 - h'_{s2})]$}.

The actual steam rate of turbine and generator is $3{,}412.14/\eta_e(h_1 - h_{s2})]$, where η_e is the engine efficiency including all mechanical and electrical losses {or kg/kWs = $1/[\eta_e\,(h'_1 - h'_{s2})]$}.

The enthalpy of the steam leaving the turbine elements h_2 is

$$h_2 = h_1 - \eta_s(h_1 - h_{s2}) = (Wh_1 - 3{,}412.14P_g)/W$$

where η_s is the engine efficiency of the steam path, inclusive of leakages and losses but exclusive of mechanical and electrical losses; W is the steam flow, lb/h; and the gross output P_g is the net output plus mechanical and electrical losses, kW [or $h'_2 = h'_1 - \eta_s(h'_1 - h'_{s_2}) = (W'h'_1 - P_g)/W'$, where W' is flow in kg/s].

Table 9.4.2 gives steam rates for the ideal simple turbine cycle through a wide range of operating conditions. The performance of a turbine is usually expressed as a steam rate in the case of machines having no extraction or admission of steam between inlet and exhaust, which is generally true of small units and most noncondensing turbines.

Table 9.4.2 Theoretical Steam Rates for Typical Steam Conditions, lb/kWh*

	Initial pressure, lb/in² gage															
	150	250	400	600	600	850	850	900	900	1,200	1,250	1,250	1,450	1,450	1,800	2,400
	Initial temp, °F															
	365.9	500	650	750	825	825	900	825	900	825	900	950	825	950	1000	1000
	Initial Superheat, °F															
	0	94.0	201.9	261.2	336.2	297.8	372.8	291.1	366.1	256.3	326.1	376.1	232.0	357.0	377.9	337.0
Exhaust pressure	Initial enthalpy, Btu/lb															
	1,195.5	1,261.8	1,334.9	1,379.6	1,421.4	1,410.6	1,453.5	1,408.4	1,451.6	1,394.7	1,438.4	1,468.1	1,382.7	1,461.2	1,480.1	1,460.4
inHg abs																
2.0	10.52	9.070	7.831	7.083	6.761	6.580	6.282	6.555	6.256	6.451	6.133	5.944	6.408	5.900	5.668	5.633
2.5	10.88	9.343	8.037	7.251	6.916	6.723	6.415	6.696	6.388	6.584	6.256	6.061	6.536	6.014	5.773	5.733
3.0	11.20	9.582	8.217	7.396	7.052	6.847	6.530	6.819	6.502	6.699	6.362	6.162	6.648	6.112	5.862	5.819
4.0	11.76	9.996	8.524	7.644	7.282	7.058	6.726	7.026	6.694	6.894	6.541	6.332	6.835	6.277	6.013	5.963
lb/in² gage																
5	21.69	16.57	13.01	11.05	10.42	9.838	9.288	9.755	9.209	9.397	8.820	8.491	9.218	8.351	7.874	7.713
10	23.97	17.90	13.83	11.64	10.95	10.30	9.705	10.202	9.617	9.797	9.180	8.830	9.593	8.673	8.158	7.975
20	28.63	20.44	15.33	12.68	11.90	11.10	10.43	10.982	10.327	10.490	9.801	9.415	10.240	9.227	8.642	8.421
30	33.69	22.95	16.73	13.63	12.75	11.80	11.08	11.67	10.952	11.095	10.341	9.922	10.801	9.704	9.057	8.799
40	39.39	25.52	18.08	14.51	13.54	12.46	11.66	12.304	11.52	11.646	10.831	10.380	11.309	10.134	9.427	9.136
50	46.00	28.21	19.42	15.36	14.30	13.07	12.22	12.90	12.06	12.16	11.284	10.804	11.779	10.531	9.767	9.442
60	53.90	31.07	20.76	16.18	15.05	13.66	12.74	13.47	12.57	12.64	11.71	11.20	12.22	10.90	10.08	9.727
75	69.4	35.77	22.81	17.40	16.16	14.50	13.51	14.28	13.30	13.34	12.32	11.77	12.85	11.43	10.53	10.12
80	75.9	37.47	23.51	17.80	16.54	14.78	13.77	14.55	13.55	13.56	12.52	11.95	13.05	11.60	10.67	10.25
100		45.21	26.46	19.43	18.05	15.86	14.77	15.59	14.50	14.42	13.27	12.65	13.83	12.24	11.21	10.73
125		57.88	30.59	21.56	20.03	17.22	16.04	16.87	15.70	15.46	14.17	13.51	14.76	13.01	11.84	11.28
150		76.5	35.40	23.83	22.14	18.61	17.33	18.18	16.91	16.47	15.06	14.35	15.65	13.75	12.44	11.80
160		86.8	37.57	24.79	23.03	19.17	17.85	18.71	17.41	16.88	15.41	14.69	16.00	14.05	12.68	12.00
175			41.16	26.29	24.43	20.04	18.66	19.52	18.16	17.48	15.94	15.20	16.52	14.49	13.03	12.29
200			48.24	29.00	26.95	21.53	20.05	20.91	19.45	18.48	16.84	16.05	17.39	15.23	13.62	12.77
250			69.1	35.40	32.89	24.78	23.08	23.90	22.24	20.57	18.68	17.81	19.11	16.73	14.78	13.69
300				43.72	40.62	28.50	26.53	27.27	25.37	22.79	20.62	19.66	20.89	18.28	15.95	14.59
400				72.2	67.0	38.05	35.43	35.71	33.22	27.82	24.99	23.82	24.74	21.64	18.39	16.41
425				84.2	78.3	41.08	38.26	38.33	35.65	29.24	26.21	24.98	25.78	22.55	19.03	16.87
600						78.5	73.1	68.11	63.4	42.10	37.03	35.30	34.50	30.16	24.06	20.29

* From Theoretical Steam Rate Tables—compatible with the 1967 ASME Steam Tables, ASME 1969.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Turbines having automatic pressure-controlled extractions or admissions of steam between inlet and exhaust usually have their performance expressed by a chart showing required throttle flow vs. load for varying amounts of steam extracted or admitted at specified conditions.

Turbines working on regenerative and/or reheat cycles, condensing, usually have performance expressed as a heat rate, based upon a carefully specified heat cycle arrangement. This is usually illustrated by a diagram that defines all the surrounding conditions. See, for example, Fig. 9.4.26, actual cycle.

The above methods for expressing turbine performance are more satisfactory for most application than the use of turbine ''engine efficiencies.'' However, it is useful to know the general range of turbine efficiency realized in practice. The engine efficiency of a turbine depends mainly upon the flow areas and diameter of stages, the average velocity ratio, as can be deduced from Fig. 9.4.6, 9.4.7, and 9.4.8, the number of turbine stages, and the steam conditions. With so many variables, it is not possible to do more than show a general picture of efficiency as a function of rating, as in Fig. 9.4.22, for multistage condensing turbines. Noncondensing turbines will usually have similar efficiency levels; automatic extraction turbines will generally be slightly lower because of extra losses in the control-stage sections.

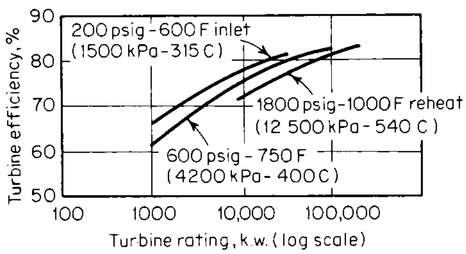


Fig. 9.4.22 Turbine efficiencies vs. capacity.

Approximate steam rates for turbines operating without auxiliary admissions or extractions of steam between inlet and exhaust may be estimated for any turbine rating by dividing theoretical steam rate, corresponding to inlet steam pressure and temperature and exhaust pressure, by the appropriate turbine efficiency from Fig. 9.4.22.

A short method for calculating extraction-turbine performance is illustrated by the following example:

Assume a 12,500-kW automatic-extraction-condensing unit operating at 10,000 kW, with 175,000 lb/h extraction for process at 150 psig with no extraction for feedwater heating, and throttle steam conditions of 850 lb/in², 825°F, exhaust at 2 inHg abs.

PROCEDURE. Find theoretical steam rates (TSR) from Table 9.4.2 or steam charts; TSR_1 for 850 lb/in², 825°F, 2 inHg is 6.58 lb/kWh; TSR_2 for 850 lb/in², 825°F to 150 lb/in² is 18.61 lb/kWh.

Turbine-generator efficiency from Table 9.4.3, single autoextraction at 80 percent rating (10,000 kW on a 12,500-kW unit), is 78 percent. Efficiency correction for autoextraction (see Table 9.4.3) is 0.92. Then actual steam rate (ASR) is TSR/(efficiency × correction); $ASR_1 = 6.58/78\% \times 0.92 = 9.17$ lb/kWh; $ASR_2 = 18.61/78\% \times 0.92 = 25.9$ lb/kWh; kW generation from extraction flow = extraction flow/ASR_2 = 175,000/25.9 = 6,760 kW.

kW to be generated by condenser flow = 10,000 − 6,760 = 3,240.

Condenser steam flow required is 3,240 × 9.17 = 29,700 lb/h, or (say) 30,000 lb/h. Total steam flow to throttle then is 175,000 + 30,000 = 205,000 lb/h.

Figure 9.4.23 gives correction factors for speed which differ from 3,600 r/min and is representative of units designed for about 4 inHg abs exhaust pressure.

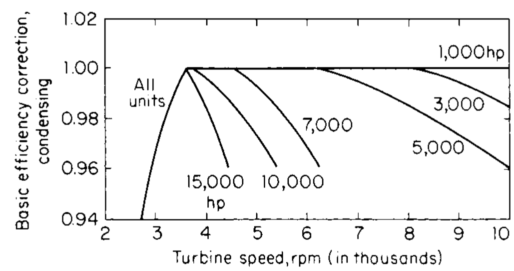


Fig. 9.4.23 Correction factor for condensing mechanical-drive turbines.

Mechanical-Drive Turbines Table 9.4.3 and Figs. 9.4.22 and 9.4.23 provide efficiency-estimating data for typical condensing turbines, primarily for 3600-r/min generator drive. Figure 9.4.24 shows approximate values for turbine efficiency to be expected for noncondensing mechanical-drive units designed for a broad range of horsepower rating, speed, and inlet steam conditions.

Large Central-Station Turbine-Generators

REFERENCES: Spencer, Cotton, and Cannon, A Method for Predicting the Performance of Steam Turbine-Generators . . . 16,500 kW and Larger, *Trans. ASME,* ser. A, Oct. 1963. Baily, Cotton, and Spencer, Predicting the Performance of Large Steam Turbine-Generators Operating with Saturated and Low Superheat Steam Conditions, *Proc. Amer. Power Conf.,* 1967; discussion of foregoing, *Combustion,* Sept. 1967. Spencer and Booth, Heat Rate Performance of Nuclear Steam Turbine-Generators, *Proc. Amer. Power Conf.,* 1968. Baily, Booth, Cotton, and Miller, ''Predicting the Performance of 1800-rpm Large Steam Turbine-Generators Operating with Light Water-Cooled Reactors,'' General Electric publication GET-6020, 1973. ''Heat Rates for Fossil Reheat Cycles Using General Electric Steam Turbine-Generators 150,000 kW and Larger,'' General Electric publication GET-2050C, 1974.

Table 9.4.3 Basic Efficiency for Steam Turbines, Straight Condensing at Rated Load*

kW capacity	Equivalent mechanical drive, hp	Initial steam conditions (gage pressure and temp.) 250 lb/in² 500°F	400 lb/in² 650°F	600 lb/in² 750°F	800 lb/in² 825°F	1,250 lb/in² 900°F
875	1,200	63	63	62		
1,875	2,600	76	67	66		
2,500	3,500	69	69	68		
5,000	6,900		74	73	73	
7,500	10,300		76	75	75	
12,500	17,200		78	78	78	77
15,625	21,500		79	79	79	77
20,000	27,100		79	80	79	79

* Efficiency correction factors, mechanical drive and auto extraction-condensing turbines—multiply basic efficiencies by:

	At 80% rating	At 100% rating
Single autoextraction-condensing	0.92	0.96
Double autoextraction-condensing	0.88	0.92

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

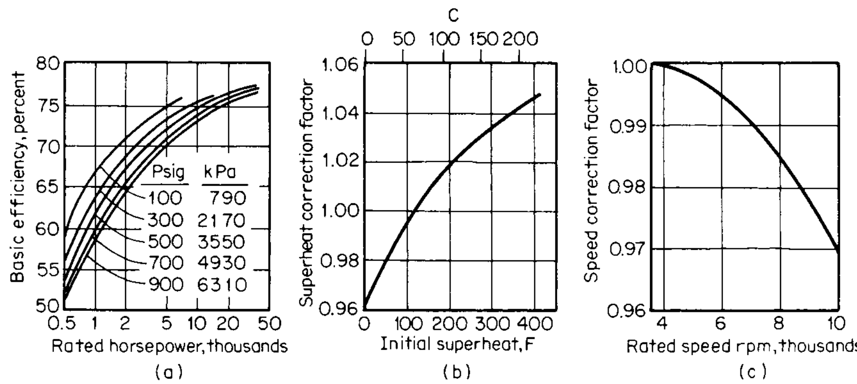


Fig. 9.4.24 Mechanical-drive turbine efficiencies. (*a*) Basic efficiency, 3,600 r/min. Figures on curve are inlet steam pressure in lb/in^2 gage. (*b*) Superheat correction factor. (*c*) Rated-load speed-correction factor.

The performance of central-station turbine-generators is generally expressed as **heat rate,** Btu/kWh, the ratio of the heat added to the cycle in Btu/h, to generation, in kW. Heat rate may be converted to **thermal efficiency** using the relationship, Efficiency = 3,412.14/heat rate (or 1/heat rate expressed in kJ/kWs). Heat rates are calculated by the preparation of a **heat balance,** which considers steam conditions, steam flow, turbine-expansion efficiency, packing leaking losses, exhaust loss at the end of the low-pressure expansion (perhaps other casings as well), mechanical losses, electrical losses associated with the generator, moisture separation and reheat if present, and extraction for feedwater heating. **Gross heat rate** is calculated without consideration of the power consumed by the boiler feed pump. **Net heat rate** does consider pump power and is higher (poorer) than gross by a factor related to the initial steam pressure. If the pump is driven by an auxiliary turbine, as is the present usual practice, net heat rate is the natural result of the heat-balance calculation, and gross heat rate has little meaning. **Net station heat rate** considers the auxiliary power required by the rest of the power-plant equipment, and the boiler efficiency of fossil plants. It is generally about 3 percent higher than net heat rate in nuclear plants (3 percent auxiliary power, 100 percent ''boiler'' efficiency), and about 16 percent higher than net heat in the case of a coal-fired plant (4 percent auxiliary power, 90 percent boiler efficiency).

A typical current value of net station heat rate for the fossil steam conditions is 9,000 Btu/kWh (2.64 kJ/kWs), equivalent to a thermal efficiency of 38 percent. A typical net station heat rate for a large light-water nuclear-reactor plant is about 10,100 Btu/kWh (2.96 kJ/kWs), or about 34 percent thermal efficiency.

Table 9.4.4 lists representative net heat rates for large fossil turbines of today's types and steam conditions. Steam pressures in excess of 3,500 lb/in^2 gage (24,200 kPa) and initial and reheat temperatures in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) were frequently employed in the past. However, a number of operating and economic considerations have led to near standardization on the single reheat cycle with initial pressure of 2,400 or 3,500 lb/in^2 gage (16,650 or 24,240 kPa), with initial and reheat temperature of 1,000°F (538°C).

Table 9.4.5 lists some representative net heat rates for large nuclear turbines for service with steam from boiling-water reactors (BWR), at 950 lb/in^2 gage (6,650 kPa), ½ percent initial moisture. Values for other light-water reactors may be approximated by reducing heat rate by 1 percent for each 100 lb/in^2 (690 kPa) pressure increase, reducing heat rate by 0.15 percent for reducing initial moisture to 0 percent, reducing heat rate by 0.3 percent for each 10°F (6°C) of initial superheat provided.

Reheating with Regenerative Cycle

REFERENCES: Reynolds, Reheating in Steam Turbines, *Trans. ASME,* **71,** 1949, p. 701. Harris and White, Development in Resuperheating in Steam Power Plants, *Trans. ASME,* **71,** 1949, p. 685.

Reheating is currently used on all new large fossil central-station turbines. It is accomplished by taking the steam from the turbine after partial expansion, reheating it in a separate section of the boiler, and returning it to the next lower-pressure section of the turbine. Reheating results in lowering of the turbine heat rate by approximately 5 percent; the exact improvement is dependent on several factors. Roughly speaking, 40 percent of the improvement comes from having added heat to

Table 9.4.4 Representative Net Heat Rates for Large Fossil Central-Station Turbine-Generators

Nominal rating, MW, at 1.5 inHg abs	Steam conditions: Throttle pressure lb/in^2 gage	Steam conditions: Temp, °F	Steam conditions: Reheat temp, °F	Tandem compound, 3,600 r/min. last-stage buckets: No. of rows	Length, in	Exhaust area, ft^2	Approx kW/ft^2	Boiler feed-pump drive	Net heat rate, Btu/kWh, at rated load and steam conditions, and at exhaust pressure, inHg abs: 1.5	2	3	4	5
150	1,800	1,000	1,000	2	26	82	1,820	Motor	8,010	8,060	8,230	8,440	8,630
235	1,800	1,000	1,000	2	26	82	2,860	Motor	8,240	8,240	8,290	8,380	8,500
250	1,800	1,000	1,000	2	30	111	2,250	Motor	8,080	8,100	8,220	8,400	8,620
250	1,800	1,000	1,000	2	30	111	2,250	Turbine	8,030	8,060	8,200	8,390	8,610
250	2,400	1,000	1,000	2	30	111	2,250	Turbine	7,850	7,890	8,030	8,240	8,450
500	2,400	1,000	1,000	4	30	222	2,250	Turbine	7,790	7,830	7,970	8,170	8,370
700	2,400	1,000	1,000	4	33.5	264	2,650	Turbine	7,860	7,870	7,970	8,130	8,320
1,000	2,400	1,000	1,000	6	30	334	3,000	Turbine	7,920	7,930	8,000	8,100	8,250
500	3,500	1,000	1,000	4	30	222	2,250	Turbine	7,620	7,660	7,820	8,030	8,220
700	3,500	1,000	1,000	4	33.5	264	2,650	Turbine	7,670	7,690	7,810	7,980	8,170
1,000	3,500	1,000	1,000	6	30	334	3,000	Turbine	7,710	7,730	7,810	7,940	8,090
1,100	3,500	1,000	1,000	6	33.5	397	2,770	Turbine	7,680	7,700	7,810	7,960	8,140

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.4.5 Representative Net Heat Rates for Large Nuclear Central-Station Turbine-Generators

Warranted reactor thermal power, MWt	Nominal turbine rating, MWe at 2 inHg abs	Tandem compound, 1,800 r/min, last-stage buckets				Net heat rate, Btu/kWh, at warranted reactor thermal power, at rated steam conditions, and at exhaust pressure, inHg abs				
		No. of rows	Length, in	Exhaust area, ft²	Approx kW/ft²	1.5	2	3	4	5
2,440	840	4	38	423	1,980	9,950	9,950	10,090	10,190	10,410
2,440	850	4	43	495	1,720	9,810	9,820	9,950	10,170	10,440
2,890	1,010	6	38	634	1,590	9,750	9,780	9,950	10,200	10,480
2,890	990	4	43	495	2,000	9,980	9,980	10,050	10,200	10,410
3,580	1,230	6	38	634	1,940	9,910	9,920	10,000	10,170	10,380
3,580	1,250	6	43	743	1,680	9,780	9,790	9,930	10,160	10,430
3,830	1,310	6	38	634	2,070	9,990	9,990	10,050	10,190	10,390
3,830	1,330	6	43	743	1,790	9,840	9,850	9,960	10,170	10,420

All units boiling-water reactor steam conditions of 965 lb/in² abs, 1,190.8 Btu/lb, and two stage steam reheat with 25°F approach to reheating steam temperature.

the cycle at a higher-than-average temperature (thermodynamic gain), and the remaining 60 percent comes from improvement in turbine efficiency due to reduced moisture loss and increased reheat factor.

Reheating can theoretically be done any number of times, but because of extra cost of apparatus and piping, and the steam pressure drops required in practice (8 to 10 percent of the reheat pressure), the economic gains diminish rapidly with more than one reheating (see Fig. 9.4.25). In a few cases, two reheatings are employed. (See also Sec. 4.)

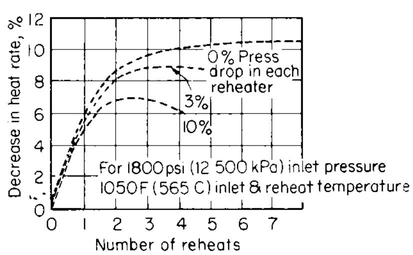


Fig. 9.4.25 Approximate gains due to reheating.

The throttle and condenser steam-flow rates for a given turbine output are reduced approximately 17 and 13 percent, respectively, by reheating once to the initial temperature, as compared with no reheat with the same initial steam conditions.

The maximum gain in heat rate from one reheating with a fixed-percentage pressure drop through the reheating system occurs when the reheat pressure is about 0.15 of the initial pressure. In practice, however, the reheat pressure is higher, 0.20 to 0.30 times initial pressure, because of the extra cost of larger piping, valves, etc., required for lower reheater pressures owing to the larger steam volume.

Regenerative Feedwater Heating

(See also Sec. 4.)

The heat consumption of a turbine may be reduced by heating the condensate (feedwater) in stages by the condensation of steam extracted at various points from the turbine. This is shown diagrammatically for an ideal cycle and a more practical cycle in Fig. 9.4.26. The difference between the two is in the use of mixing heaters in the ideal cycle with each discharge pumped back while the practical cycle has closed heaters with cascaded drains in the upper and pumped drains in the lowest heater, together with some pressure drop between turbine and heaters and a terminal temperature difference between saturated-steam temperature in the heater and feedwater temperature coming out. Usually the difference between such an ideal and a practical cycle is about 1½ percent. A deaerating type of contact heater with no terminal difference may be substituted for one of the closed heaters as is shown in Fig. 9.4.26. Other variations are the use of (1) all open-contact heaters, or (2) drain coolers to reduce the loss due to cascading the drips, or (3) a desuperheating section on the top heater to get a higher final feed temperature, thereby approaching most closely to the ideal cycle.

Figures 9.4.27 and 9.4.28 and Table 9.4.6 supply data on the results of regenerative heating based on the ideal cycle of Fig. 9.4.26. Figure 9.4.27 shows the reduction in heat rate for various initial pressures and

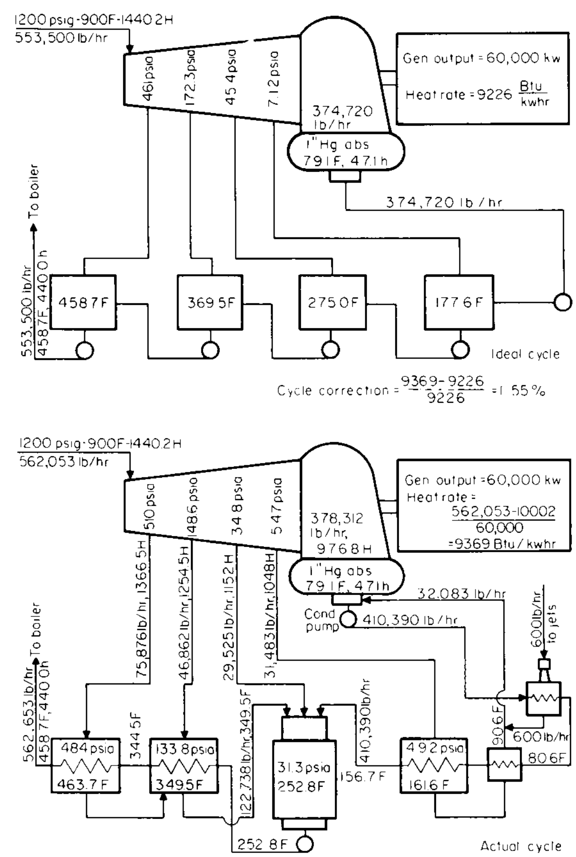


Fig. 9.4.26 Comparison of ideal and actual cycles for regenerative feedwater heating.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

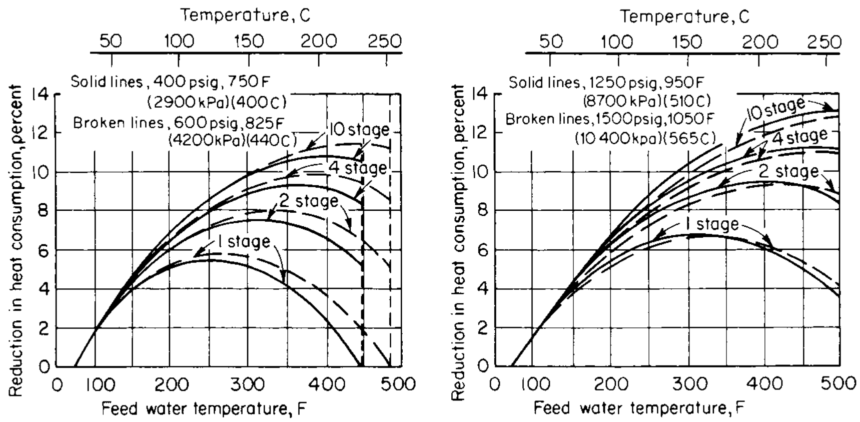


Fig. 9.4.27 Reduction in heat rate by use of ideal regenerative cycle, with 1-inHg back pressure.

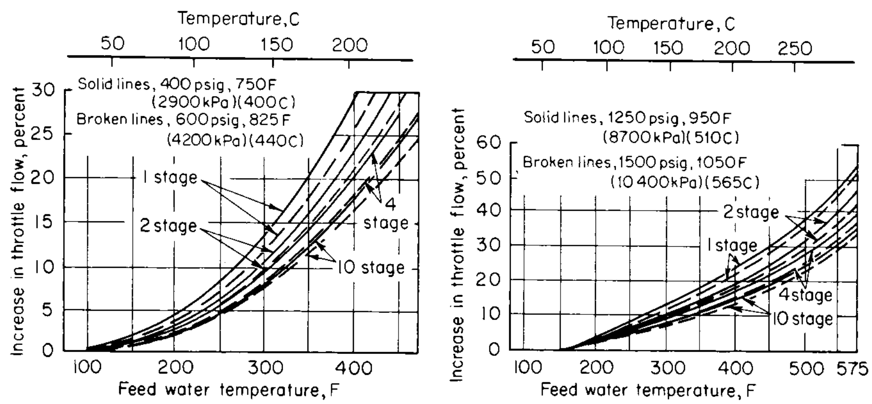


Fig. 9.4.28 Increase in steam flow necessary to maintain the same power output when using the ideal regenerative cycle, with 1-inHg back pressure.

temperatures at 1 inHg abs (3.4 kPa) exhaust pressure, for various feedwater temperatures and number of heaters. The increase in throttle flow necessary to maintain the same power output when extracting steam for feedwater heating is shown in Fig. 9.4.28.

INSTALLATION, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE CONSIDERATIONS

Steam turbines are capable of long life and high reliability with relatively little maintenance, if proper attention is paid to their installation, operation, and preventive maintenance. This section considers four areas proved to be of particular importance by operating experience.

Steam Temperature—Starting and Loading

REFERENCES: Mora et al., ''Design and Operation of Large Fossil-Fueled Steam Turbines Engaged in Cyclic Duty,'' ASME/IEEE Joint Power Generation Conference, Oct. 1979. Spencer and Timo, Starting and Loading of Large Steam Turbines, *Proc. Amer. Power Conf.,* 1974. Ipsen and Timo, The Design of Turbines for Frequent Starting, *Proc. Amer. Power Conf.,* 1969. Timo and Sarney, ''The Operation of Large Steam Turbines to Limit Cyclic Shell Cracking,'' ASME Paper 67-WA/PWR-4, 1967.

Table 9.4.6 Total Steam Bled, Percent of Throttle Flow

Final feed temp		Steam pressure and temperature							
		400 lb/in² gage (2,900 kPa)		600 lb/in² gage 825°F (4,200 kPa, 440°C)		1,250 lb/in² gage 950°F (8,700 kPa, 510°C)		1,500 lb/in² gage 1,050°F 10,400 kPa, 565°C)	
		Stages of feedwater heating							
°F	°C	2	10	2	10	2	10	2	10
150	65	7.0	7.1	6.9	7.0				
200	93	11.4	11.8	11.3	11.6	11.2	11.5	10.7	11.0
250	121	15.6	16.2	15.5	16.0	15.5	15.9	12.6	13.1
300	149	19.6	20.6	19.5	20.4	19.5	20.3	18.8	19.5
350	177	23.6	24.8	23.5	24.6	23.6	24.6	20.7	21.6
400	204	27.1	29.0	27.1	28.8	27.4	28.9	26.4	27.8
450	232			30.2	32.5	31.1	33.2	30.0	32.0
500	260					35.0	37.4	33.9	36.1

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Changing steam temperature at constant load or changing load at constant temperature subjects rotors and shells to thermal transients. Whereas temperature and load may be changed in seconds, it may take heavy metal sections hours to reach equilibrium with the new temperatures imposed on their surfaces. Parts are subjected to transient thermal stresses which may deplete their low-cycle thermal fatigue life. Repeated thermal cycles may lead to full expenditure of the available fatigue life of the part, followed by surface cracking. Further cycles tend to drive the cracks deeper into the affected part, leading to steam leakage through shells or vibration problems with rotors. Cracks tend to be driven deeper by downward steam-temperature changes, since the surface chills faster than the underlying material and is stressed in tension.

Steam-turbine manufacturers publish specific starting and loading instructions for their units. Data are provided such that the operator may select loading rates that stay within an acceptable expenditure of total low-cycle fatigue life per starting or loading cycle. For example, if a unit is expected to be started and loaded daily for a 30-year life, total cycles will be about 10,000, and it would be desirable to avoid exceeding 0.01 percent life expenditure per daily cycle.

Water-Induction Damage

REFERENCES: Recommended Practices for the Prevention of Water Damage to Steam Turbines Used for Electric Power Generation, ANSI/ASME TDP-1-1985 Fossil Fueled Plants. ASME Standard No. TWPDS-1, Part 2—Nuclear Fueled Plants, Apr. 1973.

Any connection to a steam turbine is a potential source of water either by induction from external equipment or by accumulation of condensed steam. The sources include the following along with their piping and drains: main and reheat steam systems; reheat attemperating system (fossil units); bypass systems, crossaround piping, moisture separator/reheater system (nuclear units); extraction system and feedwater heaters; steam-seal system; turbine-drain system. Water induction may lead to steam-path damage such as broken buckets, thrust-bearing failure, rotor bowing, and shell distortion, which may be indicated by abnormal vibration or differential expansion, or inability to turn the rotor on turning gear.

Water induction may be prevented by proper system installation, provision of protective and indicating devices, and periodic testing, inspection, and maintenance. Detailed recommendations are given in the ANSI/ASME and ASME standards and in manufacturers' instructions.

Lubricating-Oil and Hydraulic-Fluid Purity

Most steam turbines are provided with a lubricating-oil system consisting of reservoir, pumps, coolers, and piping to provide the thrust and journal bearings with a generous supply of oil at the proper temperature and viscosity. Some units also use the lube-oil system as a source of fluid power for control devices and steam-valve actuation. It is most important to assure the cleanliness and purity of the lube oil at all times to avoid bearing and journal damage, or control-system malfunction. Bearings have failed because of oil starvation caused by clogged lines. At least one overspeed failure has resulted from the silting of control devices with rust caused by the entry of water into the oil system.

Units employing an electrohydraulic control system frequently use a synthetic fire-resistant fluid for the high-pressure control hydraulics, separate from the petroleum oil used in the bearing lubrication system. High-pressure hydraulic systems employing synthetic fluid offer advantages in size reduction, speed of response, and fire safety. However, because of the need for very close clearances between small parts at high pressures, and because of the poorer rust-preventing properties of the fluid, cleanliness is of even greater importance than with oil-based systems.

Turbine manufacturers provide equipment such as conditioners to maintain bulk lubricating oil purity and full-flow filters to remove contaminants before they enter bearings. Further, they provide instructions for cleaning oil systems by oil flushing between installation and first operation, and for maintaining the required oil and hydraulic-fluid purity. It is important that these be followed carefully.

Steam Purity

REFERENCES: Lindinger and Curren, ''Corrosion Experience in Large Steam Turbines,'' ASME/IEEE Joint Power Generation Conference, Oct. 1981. Bussert et al., ''The Effect of Water Chemistry on the Reliability of Modern Large Steam Turbines,'' ASME/IEEE Joint Power Generation Conference, Sept. 1978. McCord et al., ''Stress Corrosion Cracking of Steam Turbine Materials,'' National Association of Corrosion Engineers, Apr. 1975.

Boiler feedwater treatments have traditionally been designed to remove solids that might clog steam passages in the boiler, remove salts that could cause scaling of tube surfaces and interfere with heat transfer, prevent corrosion of tube surfaces by reducing oxygen content and by maintaining pH at a high level, and provide ''clean'' steam to the turbine.

At one time the main concern with steam quality in the turbine was the level of silica present, since that chemical tends to deposit in the steam passages and causes reduction in capacity and efficiency. In general, the monitoring and control of silica has been well developed, and as steam turbines have increased in rating, the passages have increased in area, so that the net effect has been a reduction in the extent of losses in efficiency and capacity from deposits.

On the other hand, the growth in unit ratings has been accomplished without a proportional growth in physical size, and has resulted in greater power densities per casing, per stage, and per pound of material. Such increased duty has required the use of higher-strength alloys operating at higher stresses. As a result, modern turbine components are more susceptible to stress-corrosion cracking than those in older, smaller units, and therefore require better control of contaminants in the steam.

The **feedwater treatment** in most fossil fuel stations is designed to provide a sufficiently low level of contaminants so that stress-corrosion cracking of turbine components should not be a problem. Both the ''zero solids'' and the ''coordinated phosphate'' treatments can be controlled to provide steam of acceptable chemistry. Unfortunately, there are a number of situations in which undesirable chemicals can be introduced in the steam in spite of well-intentioned ''normal'' water-control practices. For example, the composition of coatings put on turbine components for corrosion protection during shipment, storage, and installation must be controlled. The chemistry of solutions used for the removal of coatings during installation, and the methods used, must be carefully regulated. The turbine must be protected during the chemical cleaning of related components such as the boiler, condenser, and feedwater heaters. Critical components have been damaged by fumes from cleaning. The feedwater system must be designed so that only water of high purity is used for boiler desuperheater sprays, and for the turbine exhaust-hood sprays used to limit temperature during light-load operation. Condensate demineralizers must be operated and regenerated so as to ensure that they do not introduce the harmful chemical they are intended to remove. In the event of a leak into the condenser of impure cooling water, it is important to avoid changing the feedwater treatment in such a way that the turbine is subjected to harmful contaminants introduced to protect other station components.

In each of these undesirable instances, the average concentration of chemicals in the steam can be quite low, but high local concentrations can be developed through several mechanisms. For example, dilute solutions can enter crevices not washed by flowing steam; as water evaporates on heating, the concentration of the solution wetting the surfaces tends to increase. In the case of expansion-joint bellows, chemicals contained in steam condensing on shutdown or cold start-up tend to be trapped and concentrated in the bottom of the bellows convolutions.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Succeeding cycles can lead to dry residue or to concentrated solutions during operating conditions which provide moisture. In the case of the steam path, as the expansion crosses into the moisture region, the first droplets of water condensed from the steam will tend to contain most of the contaminants. Concentration-enhancement factors of 100 to 1,000 can be achieved. In modern reheat turbines the early-moisture region occurs in one of the later few stages of the low-pressure section, and at light loads can occur on the most highly stressed last-stage buckets.

Extreme care must be exercised in protecting turbines from chemical contamination during installation, operation, and maintenance. Any deviation from sound feedwater-treatment practice during condenser leaks should be done with the full realization that damage to the turbine may result.

9.5 POWER PLANT HEAT EXCHANGERS

by William J. Bow, assisted by Donald E. Bolt

NOTE: Standards for this industry retain USCS units except as indicated in the text.

SURFACE CONDENSERS

REFERENCE: Heat Exchange Institute Standards for Steam Surface Condensers.

The power plant surface condenser is attached to the low-pressure exhaust of a steam turbine (see Figs. 9.5.1 and 9.5.2). Its purposes are (1) to produce a vacuum or desired back pressure at the turbine exhaust for the improvement of plant heat rate, (2) to condense turbine exhaust steam for reuse in the closed cycle, (3) to deaerate the condensate, and (4) to accept heater drains, makeup water, steam drains, and start-up and emergency drains.

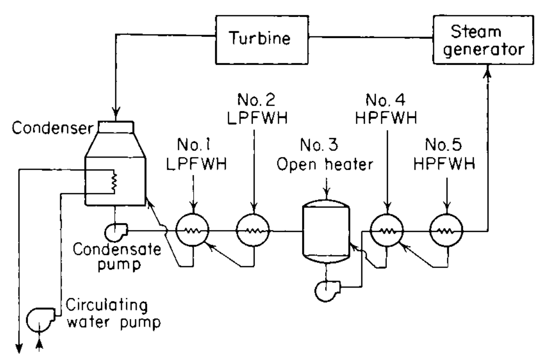


Fig. 9.5.1 Equipment arrangement, schematic.

An economical turbine back pressure is from 1.0 to 3.5 inHg abs. The factors involved in establishing this pressure are involved and will not be discussed here.

An equipment diagram of a closed power plant cycle is shown in Fig. 9.5.1.

For a condenser to deaerate the condensate, it must remove oxygen and other noncondensable gases to an acceptable level compatible with material selection and/or chemical treatment of the feedwater (condensate). Depending on materials and treatment, the dissolved O_2 level must normally be kept below 0.005 cm^3/L for turbine units operating with high-pressure and -temperature steam.

Deaeration in a condenser is accomplished by applying Henry's law, which states that the concentration of the dissolved gas in a solution is directly proportional to the partial pressure of that gas in the free space above the condensate level in the hot well, with the exception of those gases (e.g., $CO_2 + NH_3$) which unite chemically with the solvent. In a condenser droplets of condensate are continually scrubbed with steam, liberating the O_2 and permitting it to flow to the low-pressure air-removal section, where it is discharged to the atmosphere by the air-removal equipment.

To remove the last traces of O_2 from the condensate, an ammonia compound such as hydrazine is normally added. Free ammonia is liberated in the cycle and is either removed with the noncondensables as a gas or is condensed and retained in the condensate, depending on the detailed design of the condenser air-removal section. If the ammonia is concentrated as a liquid, it can be very corrosive to certain copper-base materials.

Most condenser manufacturers have **tube-bundle configurations** unique to their design philosophy. Basically, pressure losses from turbine exhaust to the air offtake are kept to a minimum and tubes are arranged to promote good heat-transfer rates. Small condensers are usually cylindrical, whereas large ones are rectangular for better utilization of space. Most turbines exhaust downward into the condenser, but condensers are also built to accommodate side as well as axial exhaust turbines.

Because of the inherent strength of cylindrical shapes as opposed to flat plates, condenser **water boxes** are generally made with curved surfaces. This has come about because of the increased pressure resulting from cooling towers, which in turn, are the result of environmental influences. With a cooling tower, pressures are in the 60 to 80 lb/in^2 range, whereas with water from lakes, rivers, etc., where a siphon system can be employed, water-box design pressures are in the 20 to 30 lb/in^2 range.

As a general rule, **tube selection** is based on economics; 18 BWG admiralty metal has been satisfactory for freshwater service and 90-10 copper-nickel material likewise for seawater. The current trend is to use 22 BWG titanium or one of the new specially formulated stainless-steel tube materials for this application. Material prices fluctuate greatly, and selection can be influenced by first cost. Lost revenue due to downtime caused by tube leaks or other causes, particularly in larger units, can usually justify the use of more exotic and expensive materials.

Low-pressure feedwater heaters are frequently located in the steam-inlet neck of a condenser. This is done to minimize pressure drop in the extraction steam piping and to utilize floor space surrounding the condenser better.

A sufficient number of **tube supports** must be provided within the condenser so that the tubes will not vibrate excessively, which will cause tubes to rub or crack circumferentially. During low-water-temperature operation, the steam entering the condenser will often reach sonic velocities, causing severe **flow-induced vibration** and ultimate tube failures if the tube support system is inadaquate.

Where once-through boiler or nuclear steam generators are used, it is imperative to dispose of large quantities of steam during starting and stopping of a turbine unit. The condenser, because of its large volume, has been used as a convenient dumping place for this steam. Means must be provided within the condenser to accommodate the high-energy steam without damage to condenser tubing, structural members, or the low-pressure end of the turbine.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

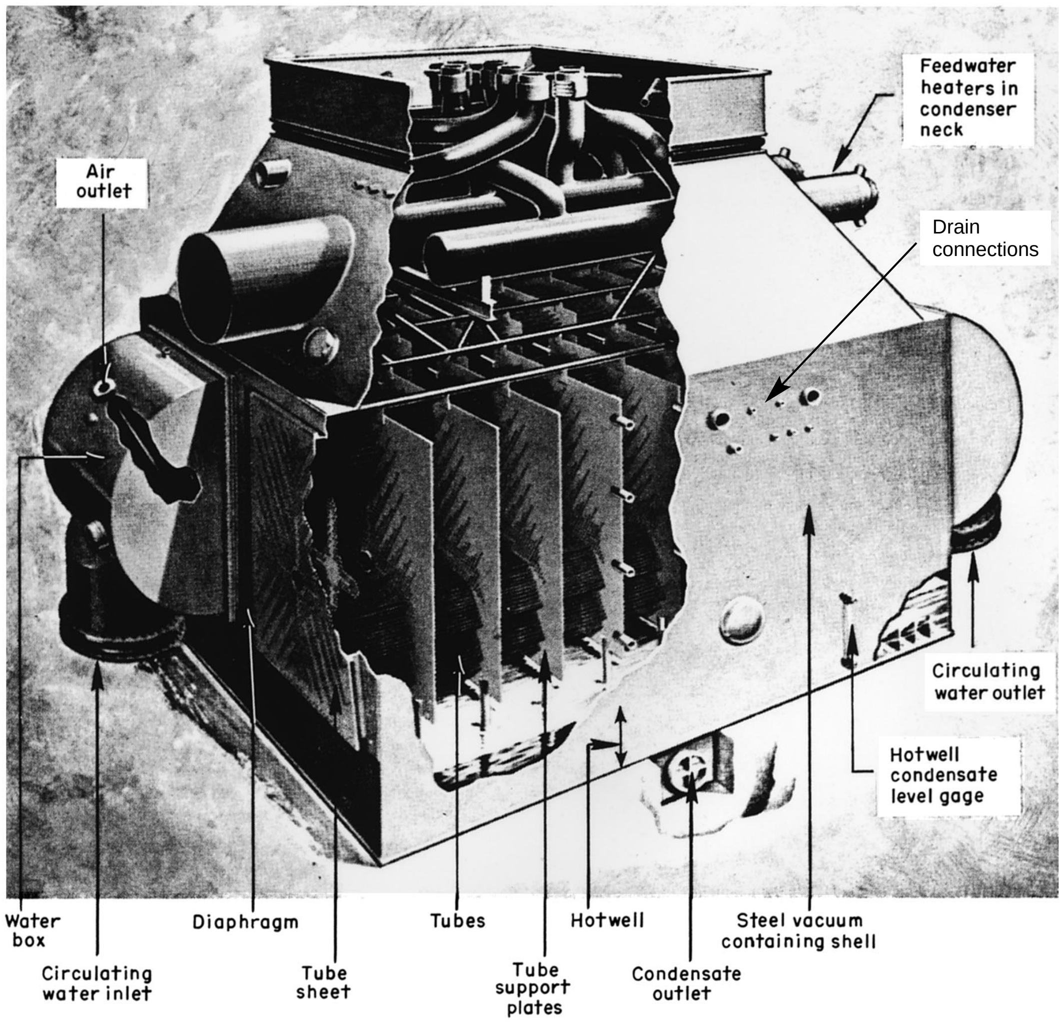


Fig. 9.5.2 One-pass rectangular surface condenser.

A major factor in condenser performance is **tube cleanliness.** Tubes can be plugged with leaves, marine life, and other debris deposited on the face of the tube sheets. By valving, various arrangements for back washing, or flushing, are effected to remove these materials.

The inside surfaces of the tubes can also become fouled by scaling, corrosion products, silt, products of biofouling such as slimes, or a combination of these. To clean the inside surfaces of the tubes, it is necessary to force brushes or plugs through them individually by the use of water or air jets. To do this, the affected portion of the condenser must be shut down. As an alternative, recirculating sponge rubber ball or brush systems are available that can be used during normal operation. To remove scale formations, sponge rubber balls with abrasive coatings are effective, but their continued use will shorten tube life.

Movement due to **temperature differences** between turbine and condenser is usually accommodated by a stainless-steel bellow or rubber-belt-type **expansion joint.** For small units the condenser may be supported on springs and rigidly connected to the turbine. To accommodate differential expansion between condenser shell and tubes, a flexible diaphragm or other expansion element may be installed.

The **tube-to-tube sheet joint** is usually rolled but has been welded in certain installations. Proper material selection must be made regardless of whether the joint is rolled or welded. Currently, considerable emphasis is placed on inward leakage of circulating water into the condenser steam space. Double tube sheets have been supplied for some large central-station condensers for nuclear units. They are standard in the Navy's nuclear-powered ships and submarines to minimize this source of contamination.

Condensers for some large turbine units having two or three low-pressure ends are designed for **multipressure application.** Usually there will be a gain, in the form of either heat-rate improvement or a reduction in capital investment, with a multipressure condenser. A rather complex analysis must be made for each application before a decision can be made.

The current version of ''Standards for Steam Surface Condensers'' is published by the Heat Exchange Institute in Cleveland, OH. These are available to the public and provide guidance in solving most structural and sizing problems related to surface condensers.

Performance Calculations and Sizing

Notation

S = condenser tube surface area, ft^2
C_c = cleanliness factor
C_1 = heat-transfer-rate constant
C_m = material and gage factor

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

C_t = temperature correction factor
c_p = specific heat, Btu/lb, °F
G = circulating-water quantity, gal/min
h = enthalpy, Btu/lb
h_r = heat rejected by steam, Btu/lb
L = length of water travel, ft
NPSH = net positive suction head, ft
OD = tube outside diameter, in
Q = heat transferred, Btu/h
R = temperature rise $(t_o - t_i)$, °F
TDH = total dynamic head, ft
t = tube thickness, in
TTD = terminal temperature difference $= t_s - t_o$
t_i = inlet-water temperature, °F
t_o = outlet-water temperature, °F
t_s = saturation temperature in condenser, °F
U_o = overall heat-transfer rate, Btu/(ft^2 · h · °F)
V = water velocity, ft/s
W_s = steam to be condensed, lb/h
Δt_m = logarithmic mean temperature difference, °F

In **sizing** a condenser, the steam flow and heat rejected to the condenser are obtained from the turbine heat balance. Table 9.5.1 gives representative steam flows; heat rejected to the condenser is approximately 950 Btu/lb of steam for nonreheat turbines and 975 Btu/lb for reheat machines. Figure 9.5.3 shows approximate average water temperatures for the United States; local water temperature should be used, when known. The number of passes is usually dictated by the plant arrangement, with total length of water travel and tube diameter dictated by economic considerations. Normally, small-diameter tubes, single-pass condensers are used where water is plentiful, and larger-diameter tubes, two-pass condensers when water is scarce. The vacuum, or back pressure, is determined by economic evaluation, but Table 9.5.2 gives normal recommended values for average water temperatures. Table 9.5.3 is a pressure-temperature conversion table.

Table 9.5.1 Steam Flow to Condensers*

Turbine throttle conditions	Weight flow, lb/kWh
600 lb/in², 825°F	7.08
850 lb/in², 900°F	6.45
1,250 lb/in², 950°F	5.80
1,450 lb/in², 1,000°F	5.44
1,450 lb/in², 1,000°F, 1,000°F	4.70

* Approximate values for unit sizes to 100,000 kW and exhaust at 1.0 inHg abs.
NOTE: For exhaust pressures other than 1.0 inHg abs, multiply tabular values by 1.02 (1.04)[1.06] for 1.5 (2.0)[2.5] in.

Table 9.5.2 Normal Condenser Pressures and Circulating-Water Temperatures

Water inlet temp t_i, °F	Normal back pressure, inHg abs
55	1.0
70	1.5
80	2.0
85	2.5
90	3.0
95	3.5

A **cleanliness factor** is applied to the heat-transfer rate of new, clean tubes to allow for gradual decrease by fouling. A standardized cleanliness factor of 85 percent is frequently used, but this can often be misleading and even erroneous. The fouling is attributable to (1) sedimentation, (2) scaling, (3) steam-side deposits, (4) corrosion, and (5) biological growth. The fouling is correctly determined by use; in some cases the cleanliness factor may be 90 percent, whereas in other cases it may never rise above 75 percent.

Velocities normally used are: for clean water, 7.0 ft/s; for very clean water with cooling towers, 8.0 ft/s; and for seawater, with entrained sand, as low as 6.0 ft/s to minimize erosion. Prevalent velocities are 6.5 ft/s with aluminum-brass tubes, 7.0 ft/s with admiralty metal, and

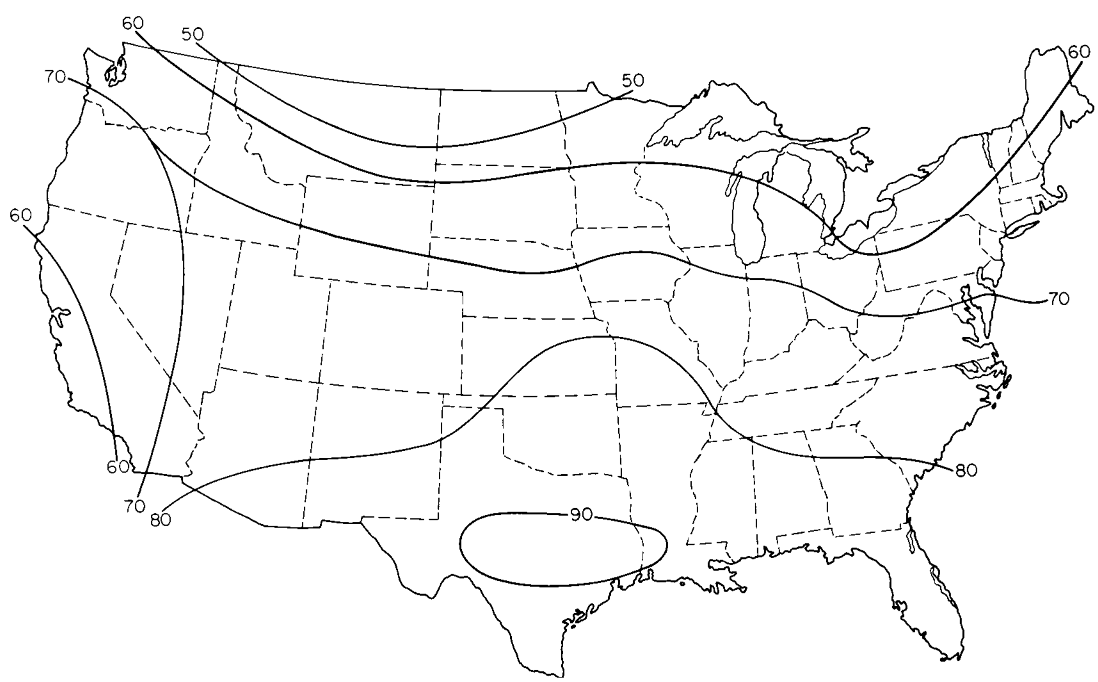


Fig. 9.5.3 Average inlet temperature of circulating water, °F, United States.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.5.3 Pressure-Temperature Conversion Table for Water*

Abs press, inHg	Sat temp, °F	Abs press, inHg	Sat temp, °F	Abs press, inHg	Sat temp, °F	Abs press, inHg	Sat temp, °F
0.20	34.57	1.35	88.36	2.50	108.71	8.00	152.24
0.25	40.23	1.40	89.51	2.55	109.38	9.00	157.09
0.30	44.96	1.45	90.64	2.60	110.06	10.00	161.49
0.35	49.06	1.50	91.72	2.65	110.72	11.00	165.54
0.40	52.64	1.55	92.77	2.70	111.37	12.00	169.28
0.45	55.89	1.60	93.81	2.75	112.01	13.00	172.78
0.50	58.80	1.65	94.80	2.80	112.63	14.00	176.05
0.55	61.48	1.70	95.78	2.85	113.25	15.00	179.14
0.60	63.96	1.75	96.73	2.90	113.86	16.00	182.05
0.65	66.26	1.80	97.65	2.95	114.45	17.00	184.82
0.70	68.41	1.85	98.56	3.00	115.06	18.00	187.45
0.75	70.43	1.90	99.43	3.20	117.35	19.00	189.96
0.80	72.32	1.95	100.30	3.40	119.51	20.00	192.37
0.85	74.13	2.00	101.14	3.60	121.57	21.00	194.68
0.90	75.84	2.05	101.96	3.80	123.53	22.00	196.90
0.95	77.48	2.10	102.77	4.00	125.43	23.00	199.03
1.00	79.03	2.15	103.56	4.20	127.21	24.00	201.09
1.05	80.53	2.20	104.33	4.40	128.94	25.00	203.08
1.10	81.96	2.25	105.09	4.60	130.61	26.00	205.00
1.15	83.33	2.30	105.85	4.80	132.20	27.00	206.87
1.20	84.64	2.35	106.58	5.00	133.76	28.00	208.67
1.25	85.93	2.40	107.30	6.00	140.78	29.00	210.43
1.30	87.17	2.45	108.01	7.00	146.86	29.921	212.00

* See also Sec. 4 for further data.

8 + ft/s with stainless steel or titanium. **Water-temperature rise** is about 10°F for single-pass condensers and 15°F for two-pass condensers, with a minimum 5° terminal temperature difference (TTD).

Approximate general rules for condensers serving turbines rated up to 100 MW. The **surface area,** ft², is equal to the steam flow, lb/h, divided by 10 for single-pass condensers and by 7.5 for two-pass condensers. **Circulating-water quantity,** gal/min, is equal to the area, ft², for a two-pass condenser and is twice the area for a single-pass condenser. Condenser **proportions** are given in Table 9.5.4. Empty **weight** of an installed condenser is 5 to 6 lb/ft² of surface.

Table 9.5.4 Typical Small Condenser Proportions

Surface area, ft²	Effective tube lengths, ft: ¾-in OD	⅞-in OD	1-in OD
1,000–1,750	8, 10, 12, 14		
2,000–2,500	10, 12, 14, 16		
2,750–4,750	12, 14, 16, 18	12, 14, 16, 18	
5,000–7,000	14, 16, 18, 20	14, 16, 18, 20	14, 16, 18, 20
7,250–14,000	16, 18, 20, 22	16, 18, 20, 22	16, 18, 20, 22
15,000–19,000		18, 20, 22, 24	18, 20, 22, 24
20,000–27,500		20, 22, 24, 26	20, 22, 24, 26
30,000–47,500		22, 24, 26, 28	22, 24, 26, 28
50,000–75,000		24, 26, 28, 30	24, 26, 28, 30

Condenser Calculations

It is normally a tedious process to calculate the size and performance of a condenser directly by use of the logarithmic mean temperature difference. But using the following formula, the sizing can readily be determined by iteration, and performance can be found directly.

$$t_s = \frac{R}{\ln^{-1}[(S/G)(U_o/500)] - 1} + t_o \qquad (9.5.1)$$

Note that the specific heat c_p is normally neglected in condenser work, it being considered insignificant.

The basic diagram is shown in Fig. 9.5.4, and the applicable equations are

$$Q = U_o S \, \Delta t_m \qquad (9.5.2)$$

$$Q = 500 G c_p (t_o - t_i) \qquad (9.5.3)$$

$$R = W_s h_r / (500G) \qquad (9.5.4)$$

$$U_o = C_1 \sqrt{V} C_t C_m C_c \qquad (9.5.5)$$

EXAMPLE. Calculate the surface and circulating-water requirements to condense 445,000 lb of steam per h to an absolute pressure of 2.00 inHg abs. The heat rejected is 980 Btu/lb of steam and is absorbed by circulating seawater at an average inlet temperature of 75°F. The condenser is to be two-pass with ⅞-in 18-gage 26-ft-active-length aluminum-brass tubes; cleanliness factor = 85 percent.

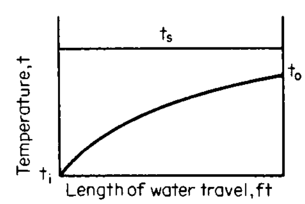


Fig. 9.5.4 Temperature vs. water travel, surface condenser.

SOLUTION. The heat transfer rate U_o is a function of the tube diameter, material, gage, water velocity, and cleanliness factors within the velocity limits of 3 and 10 ft/s. For ⅝- and ¾-in tubes $C_1 = 267$; for ⅞- and 1-in tubes $C_1 = 263$, and for 1⅛- and 1¼-in tubes $C_1 = 259$. The inlet-water-temperature correction factor is obtained from Table 9.5.7. The material and gage correction factor C_m is obtained from Table 9.5.6, and the cleanliness factor C_c is given in the conditions of the example.

Assume a surface of 59,000 ft² based on the typical steam loading for such a unit and a water velocity of 6.5 ft/s. For the selected surface and water velocity, by using the information in Table 9.5.5, the number of gallons per minute required by this selection is determined. It is now possible to determine the steam temperature that this selection would produce, by using Eq. (9.5.1).

The results show a steam temperature of 99°F, indicating that a smaller surface

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

is required to attain a 2-inHg abs condenser pressure. Try a smaller unit until a surface with no more than three significant figures will yield a steam temperature of no more than 101.14°F. The surface arrived at is 54,400 ft^2 with 43,900 gal/min of cooling water.

Table 9.5.5 Tube Characteristics

OD and ext. surface, ft^2/ft	BWG no.	ID, in	Water, gal/min @ 1 ft/s velocity
	16	0.495	0.600
⅝-in OD 0.1636	18	0.527	0.680
	20	0.555	0.754
	22	0.569	0.793
	16	0.620	0.941
¾-in OD 0.1963	18	0.652	1.041
	20	0.680	1.132
	22	0.694	1.179
	16	0.745	1.359
⅞-in OD 0.2291	18	0.777	1.478
	20	0.805	1.586
	22	0.819	1.642
	16	0.870	1.853
1-in OD 0.2618	18	0.902	1.992
	20	0.930	2.117
	22	0.944	2.182

Table 9.5.6 Material and Gage Factor

	C_m						
	BWG no.						
Tube material	24	22	20	18	16	14	12
Admiralty metal	1.03	1.02	1.01	1.00	0.98	0.96	0.93
Arsenical copper	1.04	1.03	1.03	1.02	1.01	1.00	0.98
Copper iron 194	1.04	1.04	1.03	1.03	1.02	1.01	1.00
Aluminum brass	1.02	1.02	1.01	0.99	0.97	0.95	0.92
Aluminum bronze	1.02	1.01	1.00	0.98	0.96	0.93	0.89
90–10 Cu-Ni	0.99	0.98	0.96	0.93	0.89	0.85	0.80
70–30 Cu-Ni	0.97	0.95	0.92	0.88	0.83	0.78	0.71
Cold-rolled carbon steel	1.00	0.98	0.97	0.93	0.89	0.85	0.80
Stainless steel type 304/316	0.90	0.86	0.82	0.75	0.69	0.62	0.54
Titanium	0.94	0.91	0.88	0.82	0.77	0.71	0.63

Table 9.5.7 Inlet-Water-Temperature Correction Factors

Inlet temp t_i, °F	Correction factor C_t
40	0.740
50	0.830
60	0.920
70	1.000
80	1.045
90	1.075
100	1.100

If this condenser is single-shell with one main turbine exhaust inlet and has no auxiliary turbine exhausts entering it (such as from a turbine-driven boiler feed pump), then the air-removal equipment must have a minimum capacity of 10 scfm of air at 1-inHg abs suction pressure. (See Table 9.5.8.)

Performance curves (Fig. 9.5.5) are drawn for a condenser to show the back pressure for various condenser steam loads and inlet-water temperatures maintaining a minimum TTD of 5°. The zero-load back pressure and the cutoff pressure are shown in Fig. 9.5.6, where the cutoff

Table 9.5.8 Venting-Equipment Capacities*

	One condenser shell		
Effective steam flow each main exhaust opening, lb/h		Total number of exhaust openings	
		1	2
Up to 25,000	scfm†	3.0	4.0
	Dry air, lb/h	13.5	18.0
	Water vapor, lb/h	29.7	39.6
	Total mixture, lb/h	43.2	57.6
25,001–50,000	scfm†	4.0	5.0
	Dry air, lb/h	18.0	22.5
	Water vapor, lb/h	39.6	49.5
	Total mixture, lb/h	57.6	72.0
50,001–100,000	scfm†	5.0	7.5
	Dry air, lb/h	22.5	33.8
	Water vapor, lb/h	49.5	74.4
	Total mixture, lb/h	72.0	108.2
100,001–250,000	scfm†	7.5	12.5
	Dry air, lb/h	33.8	56.2
	Water vapor, lb/h	74.4	123.6
	Total mixture, lb/h	108.2	179.8
250,001–500,000	scfm†	10.0	15.0
	Dry air, lb/h	45.0	67.5
	Water vapor, lb/h	99.0	148.5
	Total mixture, lb/h	144.0	216.0
500,001–1,000,000	scfm†	12.5	20.0
	Dry air, lb/h	56.2	90.0
	Water vapor, lb/h	123.6	198.0
	Total mixture, lb/h	179.8	288.0
1,000,001–2,000,000	scfm†	15.0	25.0
	Dry air, lb/h	67.5	112.5
	Water vapor, lb/h	148.5	247.5
	Total mixture, lb/h	216.0	360.0

* Heat Exchange Institute.
† 14.7 lb/in^2 abs at 70°F.
NOTE: These tables are based on air leakage only and the air-vapor mixture at 1 inHg abs and 71.5°F.

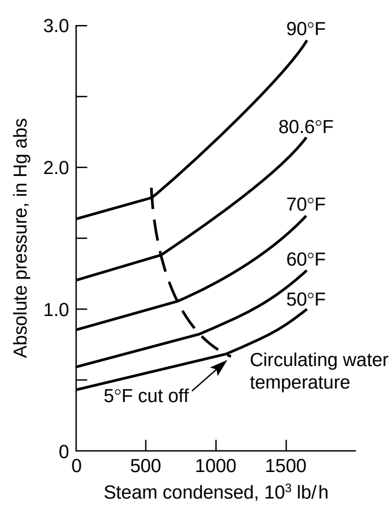


Fig. 9.5.5 Representative performance curves for a 157,500-ft^2 one-pass surface condenser, 1-in, 18-gage, 37.8-ft-active-length aluminum-brass tubes. Performance is based on 85 percent clean tubes, 221,400 gal/min cooling water at a velocity of 7 ft/s, and 968 Btu/lb rejected to the cooling water.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

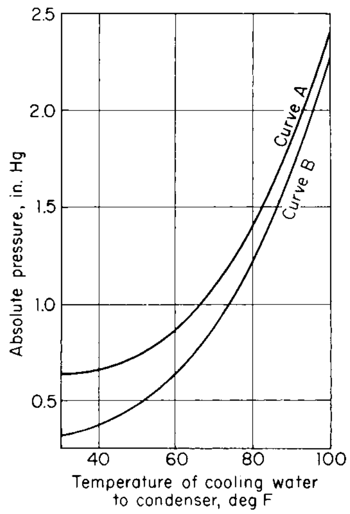


Fig. 9.5.6 Cutoff and zero load vacuums. Curve *A*, cutoff (except where the absolute pressure is limited to 5°F TTD); curve *B*, zero load.

limitation is set by the air-removal equipment. A combined turbine-condenser performance curve is sometimes drawn in which heat rejected vs. back pressure for a given turbine load is superimposed on the condenser performance.

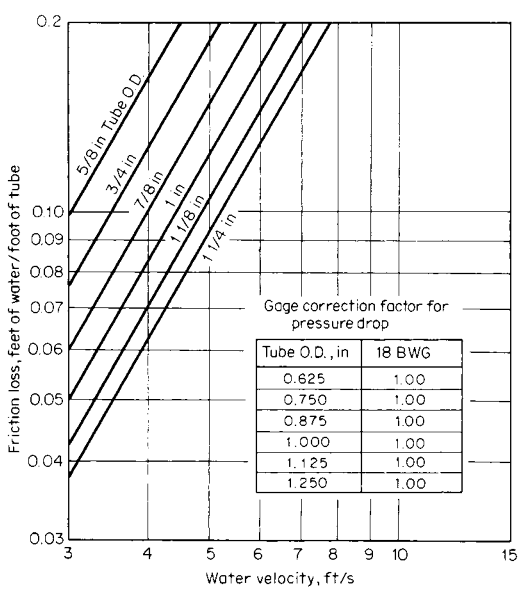


Fig. 9.5.7 Friction loss for water flowing in 18 BWG tubes, low velocity. *(Heat Exchange Institute.)*

Circulating-water pumps are usually half capacity, with 3 or 4 percent additional allowance on each pump for miscellaneous heat exchangers. The total dynamic head (TDH) is the sum of the condenser and water-box friction (Figs. 9.5.7 to 9.5.11), the pipe loss, and any unrecovered static head. Normal heads are about 20 ft; for cooling-tower installations, 60 ft. (See also Sec. 14 and Fig. 9.5.12.)

Condensate pumps are usually full capacity, determined by condenser flow plus any heater drains dumped into the condenser and 5 percent

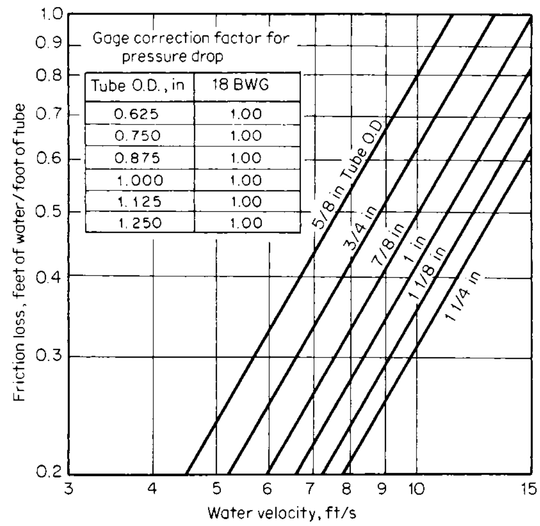


Fig. 9.5.8 Friction loss for water flowing in 18 BWG tubes, high velocity. *(Heat Exchange Institute.)*

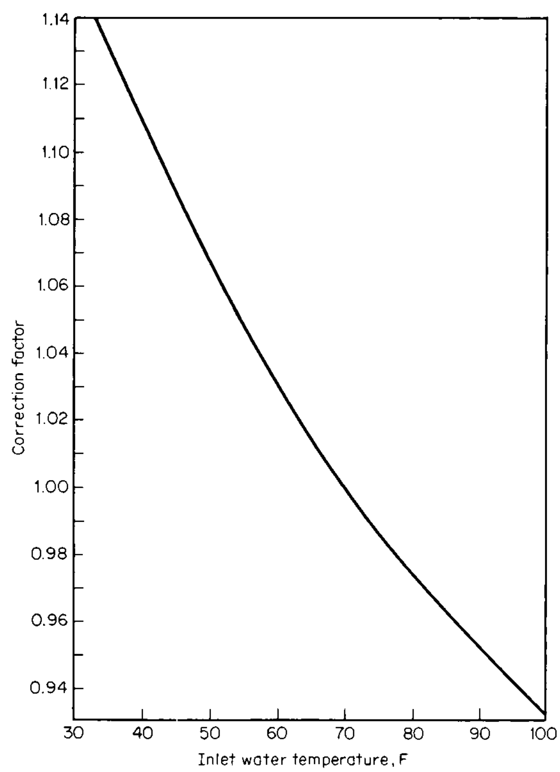


Fig. 9.5.9 Temperature correction for friction losses in tubes (see Figs. 9.5.7 and 9.5.8). *(Heat Exchange Institute.)*

additional margin. Vertical-pit-type designs are commonly used because of low net-positive-suction-head (NPSH) requirements with water at the boiling point. TDH ranges from a normal value of 100 ft on small plants to 800 ft on larger plants. (See Sec. 14.)

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

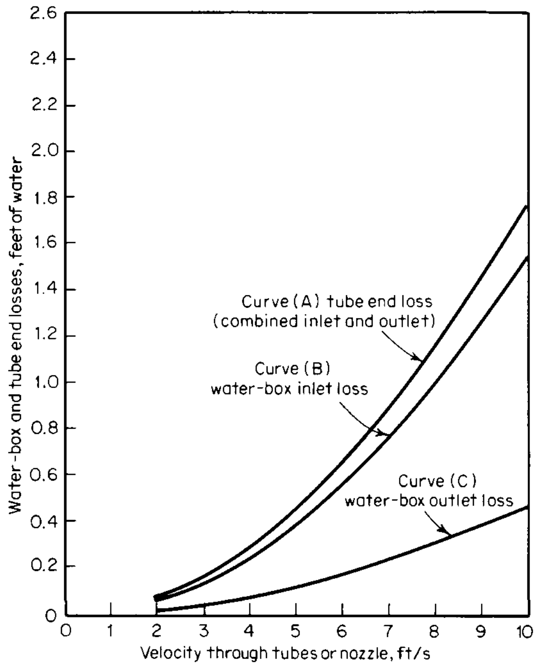


Fig. 9.5.10 Water-box and tube end losses, single-pass condensers. *(Heat Exchange Institute.)*

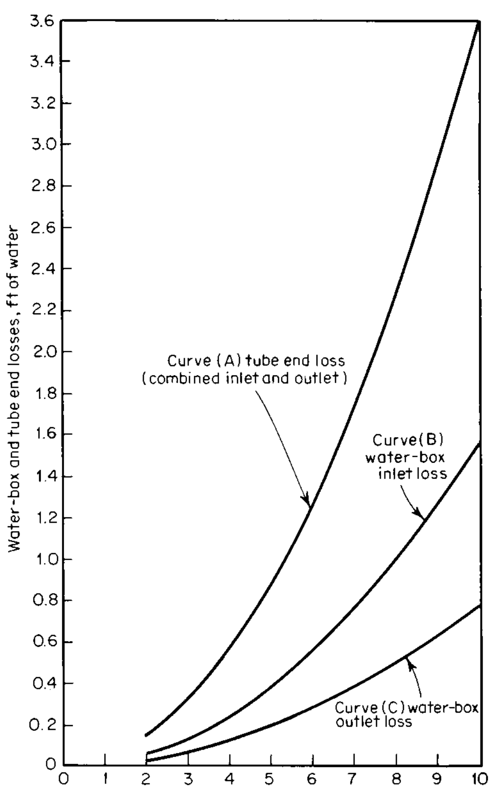


Fig. 9.5.11 Water-box and tube end losses, two-pass condensers. *(Heat Exchange Institute.)*

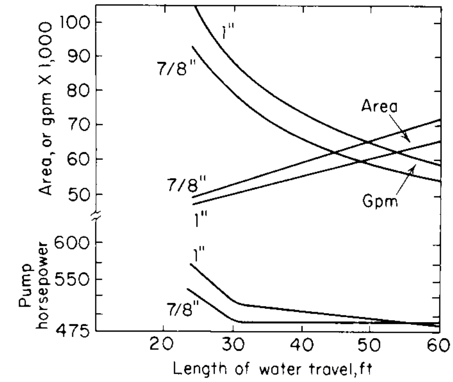


Fig. 9.5.12 Condenser configuration selection for a given heat load, W_s = 477,355 lb/h; h = 975 Btu/lb; t_i = 70.0°F; 1.5 inHg abs; 18-gage admiralty metal tubes; 7.0-ft/s water velocity; 85 percent cleanliness factor.

AIR-COOLED CONDENSERS

The air-cooled condenser is used where adaquate water is not available in sufficient quantities to permit the use of conventional cooling towers. The water lost by evaporation and cooling tower blow-down is approximately equal to the steam condensed from the turbine exhaust.

In an air-cooled condenser, the steam is condensed inside tubes while cooling air flows over fins on the external surfaces. These tubes are arranged in the area where packing or fill would be arranged in a conventional cooling tower, and propeller fans (see Sec. 14) supply air across the tube surfaces.

Aluminum is generally the material of choice for tubing because of its excellent heat transfer properties and availability. Items to be considered in design are the overall heat-transfer coefficient, steam-side pressure drop, uniformity of steam distribution, noncondensible gas concentration for air removal, and, of course, provision for freeze protection. Turbine design back pressures are normally in the range of 5 in Hga when served by air-cooled condensers.

DIRECT-CONTACT CONDENSERS

REFERENCES: Heat Exchange Institute Standards for Direct Contact and Low Level Condensers.

When (1) low investment is desired and (2) condensate recovery is not a factor, direct-contact condensers are effective. They are relatively simple to build and operate, are limited to sizes less than 250,000 lb of steam per h, and are built in three types: (1) barometric, (2) low-level, and (3) jet.

Figure 9.5.13 shows a self-supported counterflow **barometric condenser** with tail pipe, hot well, and air ejector. Steam and cooling water flow in opposite directions, with the coldest water for final condensation and cooling of noncondensables. The air pump must handle that part of the air disengaged from the cooling water as well as air leakage. The head required to pump water is pipe friction plus static head, minus 75 percent approx of the design vacuum. The barometric condenser is usually placed outdoors, and the water leg must be more than 34 ft high.

The **low-level condenser** substitutes a pump for the water leg of the barometric condenser to remove the liquid from the vacuum space. The **jet condenser** utilizes the aspirating effect of a jet for the entrainment of noncondensables and the consequent elimination of a separate air pump.

In the usual direct-contact condenser, where steam and raw circulating water are mixed, the recovery of pure condensate is precluded; greater feedwater makeup is necessary, and poorer vacuums are attained than with surface condensers. Direct-contact-condenser installations are not found in large plants, but there is some recent interest in their use with dry cooling towers.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

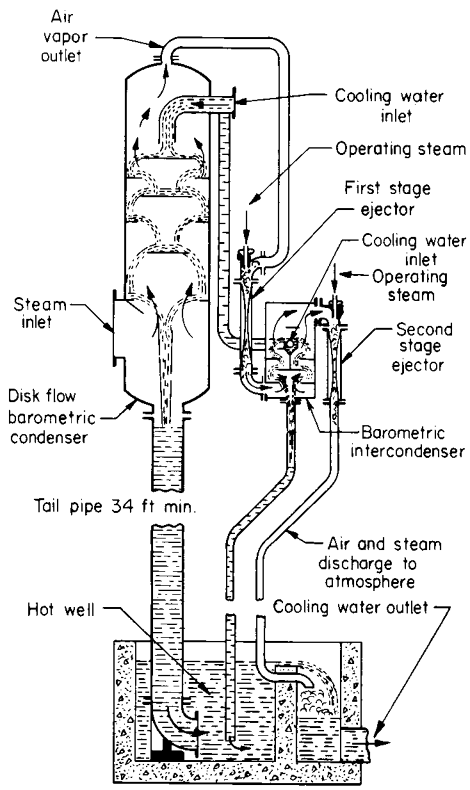


Fig. 9.5.13 Counterflow barometric condenser with two-stage air ejector. *(Ingersoll-Rand Co.)*

Table 9.5.9 gives values of expected air content of cooling waters; Fig. 9.5.14 gives typical performance curves; Fig. 9.5.15 defines flows W, temperatures t, and enthalpies h needed for the basic heat-balance equation $W_s(h_s - h_2) = W_w(t_2 - t_1)$. The latent heat $(h_s - h_2)$ is frequently taken as 950 Btu/lb of steam.

Shell materials are usually steel plate; with dirty or corrosive water, bronze, stainless steel, or linings of ceramic, plastic, or rubber may be used.

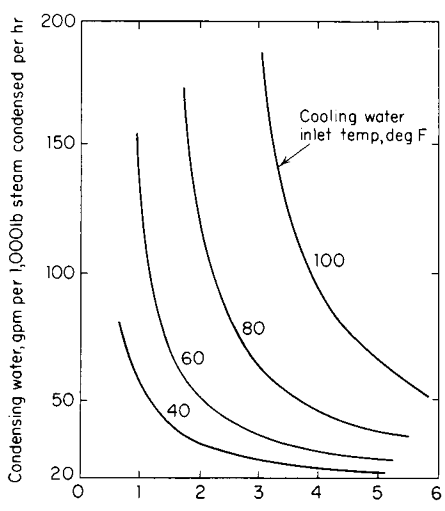


Fig. 9.5.14 Representative performance curves for a direct-contact condenser.

Table 9.5.9 Air in Cooling Water

Water temp, °F	Air, ft³/min per 1,000 gal/min
35	4.0
40	3.78
50	3.35
60	2.97
70	2.68
80	2.41
90	2.21
100	2.0

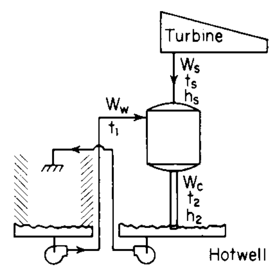


Fig. 9.5.15 Direct-contact condenser performance terms.

AIR EJECTORS

REFERENCE: Heat Exchange Institute, Standards for Steam Jet Ejectors.

The steam-jet ejector is used to remove noncondensable air and gases from condensers. It consists of a suction chamber, diffuser, and steam nozzle. The high-velocity jet of steam issuing from the nozzle entrains the gas, and the kinetic energy of the mixture is converted to pressure energy in the diffuser. Ratings are in lb/h at a given suction pressure. Ejectors are operated in series or are staged for absolute suction pressures of 1 ± inHg abs. They will handle wet or dry mixtures, they are easy to operate, installation costs are low, and there are no moving parts—with consequent long life, high sustained efficiency, and low maintenance.

Two-stage ejectors, with surface-type inter- and aftercondensers (Fig. 9.5.16), are common in steam-surface-condenser application. The main condensate serves as a coolant, returning heat regeneratively to the boiler feed system. Two-stage ejectors have a shutoff pressure of 0.5 inHg abs approx. Two elements are usually provided, one serving as a spare.

Computation of **ejector performance** requires application of Dalton's law of mixtures (see Sec. 4), where basically the total pressure is the sum of the condensable vapor (steam) pressure and the noncondensable gas (air) pressure. In power plant condensers, the mixture is saturated with steam so that the temperature of the mixture fixes the partial pressure of the vapor.

Air ejectors are usually rated with suction conditions of 1 inHg abs and 7.5°F subcooling. Since the saturation temperature of steam at 1 inHg abs is 79°F, the mixture entering the ejector is at 71.5°F. The partial pressure of the vapor at 71.5°F is 0.78 inHg abs, and the partial pressure of the air is $1 - 0.78 = 0.22$ inHg abs. Therefore, an ejector with a standard rating (see Table 9.5.8) of 12.5 ft³/min of free dry air at 30 inHg abs handles, by the gas laws, $12.5(30/0.22) = 1{,}704$ ft³/min at the ejector suction.

Motive steam to the ejector is usually supplied from turbine throttle conditions, e.g., 600 lb/in², 750°F; 1,500 lb/in², 1,000°F; 2,500 lb/in², 1,050°F, through a reducing valve to a pressure not higher than 600 lb/in².

The **inter- and aftercondenser,** one- or two-pass, is a small heat exchanger which condenses the motive steam and allows the noncondensable gases, such as O_2 and CO_2 to be expelled to the atmosphere. How-

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

ever, the highly soluble ammonia gas may be returned to the feedwater system. The water-box pressure of tube-side pressure must be designed for the condensate-pump shutoff head. The pressure drop through the inter- and aftercondensers varies from 1 to 10 ft of water, with 3 ft as a reasonable average.

Normal **materials** used are: nozzle, stainless steel type 303; steam chest, steel; inlet-air chamber, cast steel; diffuser, aluminum bronze; inter- and aftercondenser shell, steel; inter- and aftercondenser tubes, stainless steel type 304; inter- and after-condenser tube sheet, carbon steel.

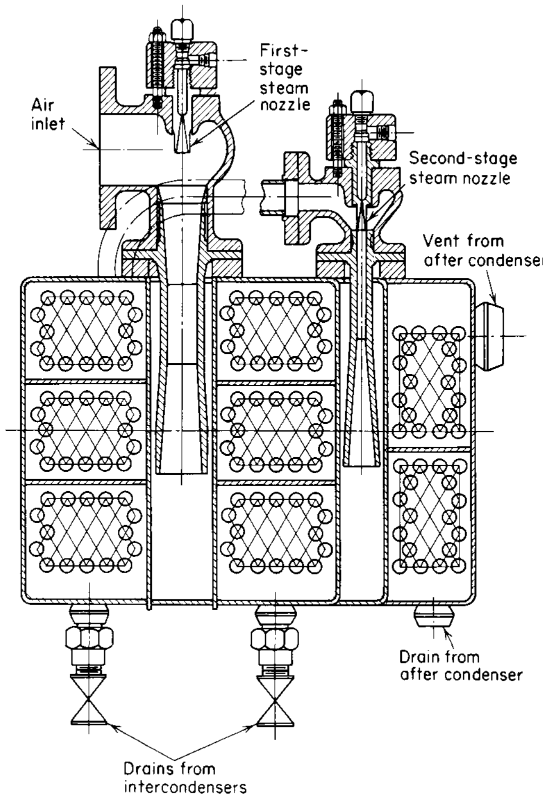


Fig. 9.5.16 Two-stage air ejector with surface-type inter- and aftercondensers. *(Westinghouse Electric Corp.)*

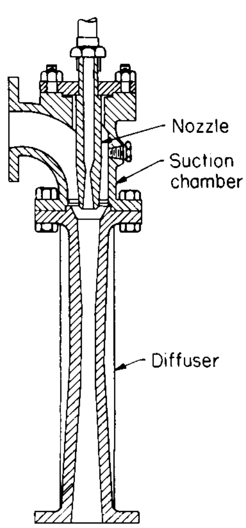


Fig. 9.5.17 Single-stage air ejector.

Hogging and Priming Ejectors Single-stage steam-jet ejectors (Fig. 9.5.17) are used for evacuating, or **hogging,** the air from the steam side of a surface condenser, in 15 or 20 min time, so that steam flow can be established and the condenser brought on the line. These ejectors are usually noncondensing and exhaust to the atmosphere. Ratings (Table 9.5.10) are typically in lb/h of free dry air at 70°F, suction conditions of 15 inHg abs, shutoff pressure about 2 inHg abs, motive steam pressures and temperatures as with multistage ejectors.

Priming ejectors are also single-stage noncondensing units and are used to withdraw air from the water side and to fill the condenser with circulating water during start-up periods. The hogging ejector may also serve this priming function by a suitable system of piping and valves.

Materials normally employed are: for the nozzle, stainless steel, 18-8 chrome nickel; steam chest, steel; air-inlet chamber and diffuser, cast steel.

Table 9.5.10 Hogger Capacities*

Total steam condensed, lb/h	scfm†—dry air at 10 inHg abs design suction pressure
Up to 100,000	50
100,001–250,000	100
250,001–500,000	200
500,001–1,000,000	350
1,000,001–2,000,000	700
2,000,001–3,000,000	1,050
3,000,001–4,000,000	1,400
4,000,001–5,000,000	1,750
5,000,001–6,000,000	2,100
6,000,001–7,000,000	2,450
7,000,001–8,000,000	2,800
8,000,001–9,000,000	3,150
9,000,001–10,000,000	3,500

* Heat Exchange Institute.
† 14.7 lb/in² abs at 70°F.
NOTE: In the range of 500,000 lb/h steam condensed and above, the table provides evacuation of the air in the condenser and low-pressure turbine from atmospheric pressure to 10 inHg abs in about 30 min if the volume of condenser and low-pressure turbine is assumed to be 26 ft³/(1,000 lb/h) of steam condensed.

VACUUM PUMPS

REFERENCE: Woodman, Rotary or Steam-Jet Air Pumps, *Power,* Aug. 1948.

Mechanical vacuum pumps, used for hogging, holding, and priming, are of several types for power-plant service: (1) reciprocating—piston, diaphragm; (2) rotary—sliding-vane, oval-water- seal, eccentric-rotor. (See Sec. 14 for details.) Multistage pumps usually need intercooling. A silencer is generally provided on the air discharge. Normally, two half-capacity pumps are installed, both operating during hogging and one adequate for holding service. The relative capabilities of a vacuum pump and hogging and holding ejectors are illustrated in Fig. 9.5.18 (note the considerable hogging capacity of the vacuum pump on start-up).

Advantages of vacuum pumps compared to steam-jet air ejectors include (1) system independent of a steam supply; (2) start-up when steam is not available, as on a once-through boiler system; (3) system capable of completely automatic operation; (4) high-pressure steam piping eliminated; (5) recycling of noncondensables and ammonia eliminated; (6) quieter operation. Disadvantages include (1) damage by water entering the intake (except when pumps having a liquid rotating seal); (2) higher initial cost; (3) higher maintenance cost. Operating costs are approximately equal. Various combination arrangements are found in practice, e.g., an air-operated air-ejector first stage followed by

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

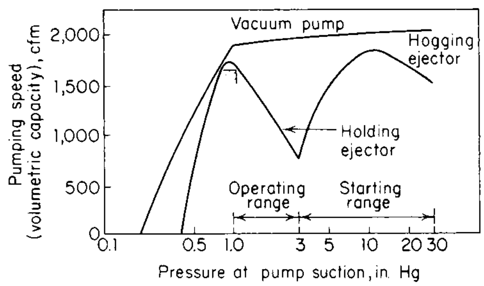


Fig. 9.5.18 Relative capabilities of air-removal pumps.

a vacuum-pump second stage, with consequent savings in motor-horsepower and space requirements.

COOLING TOWERS

REFERENCES: ''Evaluated Weather Data for Cooling Equipment Design,'' Fluor Products Co. Cooling Towers, *Power,* Mar. 1963. Baker and Shryock, A Comprehensive Approach to the Analysis of Cooling Tower Performance, *Trans. ASME,* 1961.

The prevalent type of cooling tower (see Figs. 9.5.19 and 9.5.22) dissipates heat by the evaporation of some of the water sprayed into the air circulated through the tower. It is used where water is in limited supply, where temperature pollution of natural water bodies is to be avoided, where water conservation is to be effected, or where otherwise polluted sources must be avoided. Figure 9.5.20 illustrates the functional cycle and the significant basic terms (see also Sec. 4).

Wet-bulb temperature, for design purposes, should not exceed the maximum expected value more than 5 percent of the time during summer (June to September). (See Fig. 9.5.21.)

Approach is the difference in temperature between the cold water leaving the tower and the ambient wet bulb.

Cooling range is the difference in temperature between the hot water entering and the cold water leaving the tower.

Drift is the water lost as mist or droplets entrained by the circulating air and discharged to the atmosphere. It is in addition to the evaporative loss and is minimized by good design.

Makeup is the water required to replace total losses by evaporation, drift, blowdown, and small leaks.

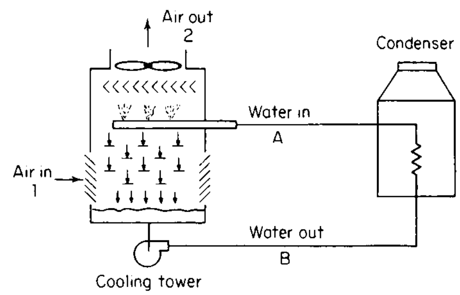


Fig. 9.5.19 Schematic for induced-draft, counterflow, cooling tower installation.

The early, simple atmospheric towers have, because of reliance on natural air circulation, high pumping heads, excessive spray losses, and makeup, been largely superseded by three important types: (1) forced-draft, (2) induced-draft, and (3) hyperbolic (Fig. 9.5.22).

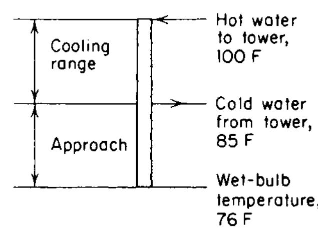


Fig. 9.5.20 Cooling tower terms.

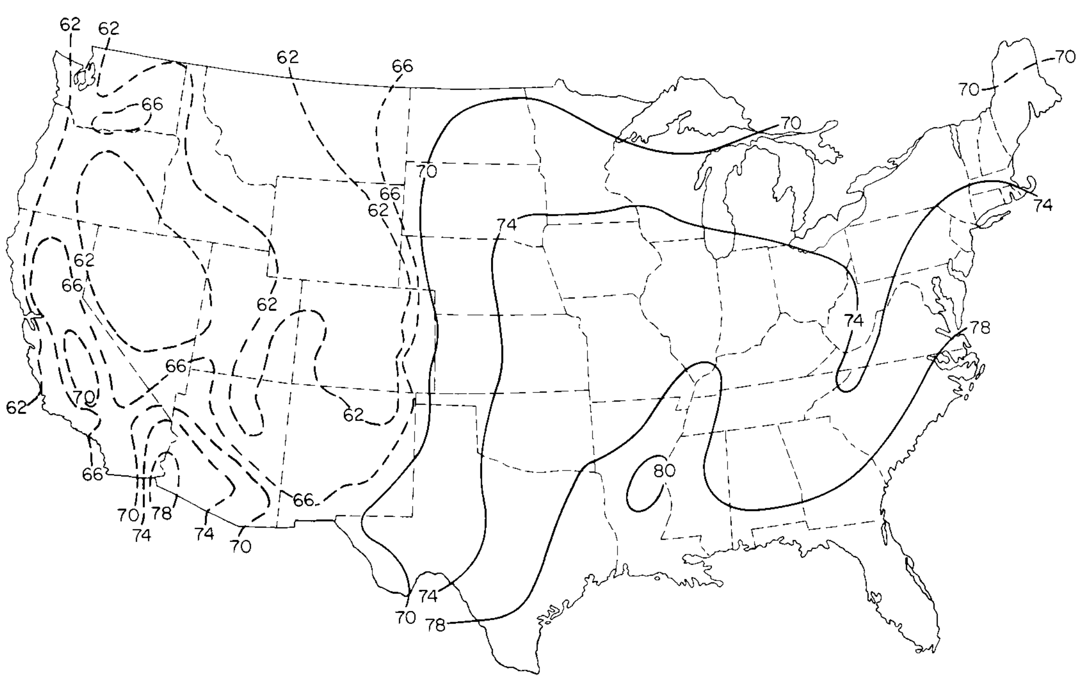


Fig. 9.5.21 Wet-bulb temperature, °F, isoclines at the 5 percent level, United States. *(Adapted from Fluor Products Co., by permission.)*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

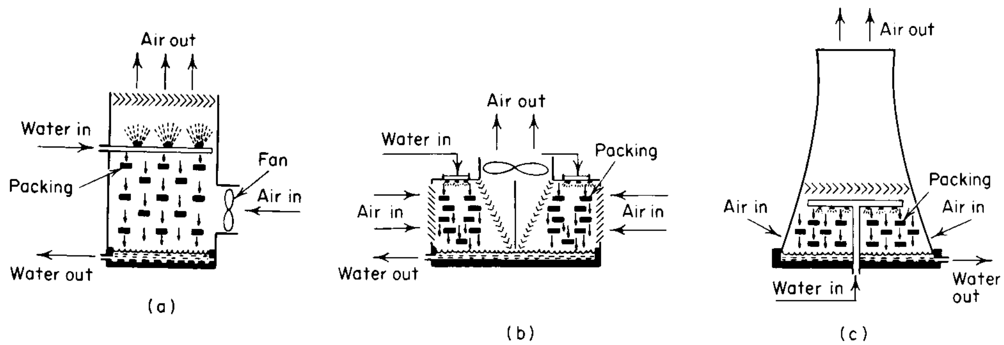


Fig. 9.5.22 Cooling tower types. (*a*) Forced draft; (*b*) crossflow-induced draft; (*c*) hyperbolic.

The **mechanical forced-draft tower** (Fig. 9.5.22*a*) gives (1) a controllable air supply from fans conveniently located for inspection and maintenance at ground level, and (2) reduced water- pumping head. Nonuniform distribution of air over the ground area of the tower cell, recirculation of vapor from the tower discharge to the tower inlet, with its deleterious effects and fan icing in cold weather, and limitations on the physical diameter of fans are all problems with forced-draft towers.

The **induced-draft tower** (Fig. 9.5.22*b*) is prevalent in U.S. practice. The fan is mounted on the top (discharge) of the cell, with consequent improved air distribution within the cell; drift eliminators reduce makeup requirements; spray nozzles, downspouts, splash plates, and splash bars ensure ample evaporative surface for the water, with maximum volumetric heat-transfer rates. In the **counterflow** design, air is introduced beneath the cell fill, but in the **crossflow** design (Fig. 9.5.22*b*), air is introduced at the sides of the fill.

The **hyperbolic tower** (Fig. 9.5.22*c*) utilizes the chimney effect (height, 300 ± ft) for natural circulation. It has been favored in large European installations where the prevalent lower dry-bulb ambient temperature gives a greater difference in density between entrance to and exit from the tower. The wide approach keeps the unit size within practical bounds, and the savings in fan power support the higher investment. Recent installations in the United States attest to its attractiveness.

Precautions are necessary to avoid freezing troubles in cold weather, fire hazards with intermittent operations, corrosion, scale, and microbiological growth problems. **Location** must avoid recirculation: for tower lengths to 250 ft, the long-axis orientation should be parallel to the prevailing wind; towers longer than 250 ft should be arranged broadside to the prevailing wind. The tower should be isolated as much as possible; adjacent heat sources compel the specification of higher design wet-bulb temperatures.

Performance Calculations

(See Fig. 9.5.19.)

Applicable equations are

$$W_{a1}h_{a1} + W_{v1}h_{v1} + W_{wA}h_{fA} = W_{a2}h_{a2} + W_{v2}h_{v2} + W_{wB}h_{fB} \qquad (9.5.6)$$

$$W_{wB} = W_{wA} - (W_{v2} - W_{v1}) \qquad W_{a1} - W_{a2} \qquad (9.5.7)$$

$$W_{wA}(h_{fA} - h_{fB}) = W_{a2}h_{a2} + W_{v2}h_{v2} - (W_{a1}h_{a1} + W_{v1}h_{v1}) - (W_{v2} - W_{v1})h_{fB} \qquad (9.5.8)$$

$$h_{fA} - h_{fB} = t_{wA} - t_{wB} \qquad (9.5.9)$$

and

$$W_a h_a + W_v h_v = \text{total heat, from psychrometric chart} \qquad \text{(See Sec. 4.)} \qquad (9.5.10)$$

$$W_{wA}(t_{wA} - t_{wB}) = \text{total heat at 2} - \text{total heat at 1} - (W_{v2} - W_{v1})h_{fB} \qquad (9.5.11)$$

where W = flow, lb/h; a = air; w = water; v = vapor; h = enthalpy, Btu/lb; f = fluid; t = temperature, °F; 1, 2, A, B = locations.

EXAMPLE. Given: flow = 80,000; wet bulb = 76°F; dry bulb = 86°F; range (also condenser rise) = 100 − 85 = 15°F; approach = 9°F. Find: economical tower size, circulating-pump power, fan capacity and power, and makeup water.

SOLUTION. (1) *Economical tower size:* A study must be made to tie in with condenser. Heat to be dissipated is constant. Vary rise (range), approach, and then compare capital costs of cooling tower, circulating pump, and condenser with operating costs for fan and pump power. (2) *Circulating-water-pump power;* bhp = gal/min × TDH/3,960 × eff. TDH = condenser friction + pipe friction + static head. (3) *Fan capacity and power:* If air leaves tower saturated at 95°F, then from psychrometric charts (Sec. 4),

$$\text{Total heat} = 1 \text{ lb dry air } C_p(t_a - 0°) + W_v h_g \qquad \text{at } t_a \qquad (9.5.12)$$

For air and vapor at 1, vapor = 120 grains/lb dry air. By Eqs. (9.5.10) and (9.5.12), total heat = 1 × 0.24(86 − 0) + (120/7,000)1,099.2 = 39.5 Btu/lb dry air. For air and vapor at 2, vapor = 256 grains/lb dry air. Total heat = 63.1 per lb dry air. Sp vol (air and vapor) = 14.80 ft³/lb dry air. By Eq. (9.5.11), $W_{wA}(100 - 85) = 63.1 - 39.5 - (256 - 120)\,\frac{63}{7{,}000}$ = 1.50 lb water/lb dry air. 80,000 gal/min/(1.50 × 500) = 26.6 × 10^6 lb dry air/h, or 26.6 × 10^6 × 14.80/60 = 6.58 × 10^6 ft³/min. With test data on static-pressure requirements for the tower and with the fan characteristics, the horsepower to drive the fan can be calculated. (4) *Makeup:* $W_{v2} - W_{v1}$ = (256 − 120) 26.6 × 10^6/7,000 = 515,000 lb/h.

Normally, a cooling tower is purchased for only one guarantee point. It is well, however, to have **performance** curves (Fig. 9.5.23) showing operation for various wet-bulb temperatures and cooling ranges. The **investment** for a cooling tower is essentially a matter of water flow and is

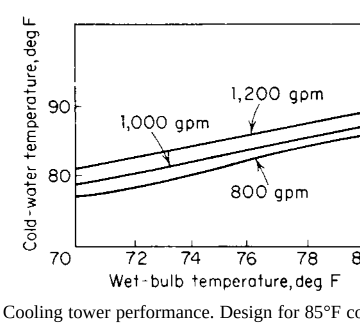


Fig. 9.5.23 Cooling tower performance. Design for 85°F cold water, 95°F hot water, 78°F wet-bulb temperature, 10° range; 1,000-gal/min cell.

influenced by approach, range, and wet bulb (Fig. 9.5.24). The **cost evaluation** should include consideration of tower frame and fill, fans, motors, basin and pump pit, pump head, fan horsepower, freight, labor, and erection. In the choice of a tower for a power plant, there should be coordinated study and evaluation of the turbine and condenser for best overall economy.

The **height** of a field-erected induced-draft tower, from basin curb to fan deck, ranges from 8 to 50 ft; widths vary from 6 to 60 ft; lengths from 8 to 500 ft; fan-stack height between 2 and 15 ft.

Materials used are: frame—redwood (treated or untreated), Douglas fir (treated), steel (galvanized), concrete; fill—red wood, plastics (polyethylene, polypropylene), cement asbestos board (extruded);

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

casing—cement asbestos board (corrugated, slat), redwood, fiber glass, aluminum, concrete; fan blades—aluminum, glass-reinforced polyester, stainless steel, monel; fan hubs—cast iron, galvanized steel, stainless steel; fan stack—redwood, steel, masonite, drift eliminators—redwood, cement, asbestos board; spray nozzles—ceramic, bakelite; louvers—redwood, cement asbestos board.

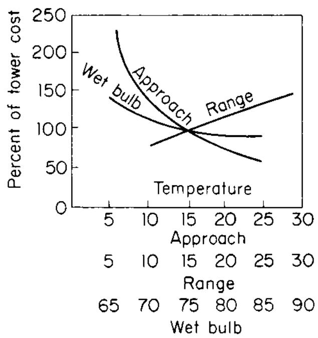


Fig. 9.5.24 Comparative cooling tower costs. *(Foster Wheeler Corp.)*

DRY COOLING TOWERS, WITH DIRECT-CONTACT CONDENSERS

REFERENCE: Ritchings and Lotz, Economics of Closed vs. Open Cooling Water Cycles, *Power Eng.,* May and June 1963.

The thermodynamic requirement for a heat sink can generally best be met with a natural body of water such as a river, lake, or ocean. When water supplies are limited, a **"wet" cooling tower** (water losses less than 2 or 3 percent) may be used for reclamation. A **"dry" cooling tower** will further reduce this loss. Figure 9.5.25 shows an application with a direct-contact condenser. The finned surfaces of the dry cooling tower are

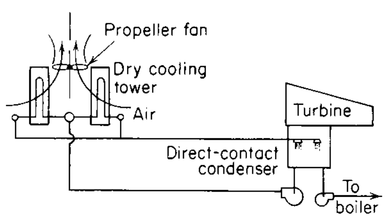


Fig. 9.5.25 Dry cooling tower system.

substituted for the tubes of a surface condenser. Heat-transfer rates (see Sec. 4) are appreciably lower, but the extended surface, relatively low in cost, may be installed in an induced-draft tower or in a hyperbolic tower, as in England for a 125,000-kW unit. Problems of recirculation, freezing, and air leakage must be solved. If a minor evaporative loss is permissible, peaking capacity is obtained by wetting the heat-exchange surface in the tower.

SPRAY PONDS

If land area is available, a spray pond may serve as an alternative reclamation system. Pipelines are typically arranged on 50-ft centers, with five nozzles (50 ± gal/min each) every 12 ft of pipeline. Cooling is limited by the relatively short period of contact between spray and air. Drift, especially with adverse wind conditions, can make losses higher than on towers. Generally, if cooling efficiencies above 50 percent are required, a tower is favored, where efficiency $= (t_h - t_c) \times 100/(t_h - t_{wb})$, where the temperature t subscripts are h = hot water, c = cold water, wb = wet bulb of the ambient air. (See Wright and Kirsopp, Pond Surface Cooling of a Chemical Plant Cooling Water, *Proc. Am. Power Conf.,* 1960.)

CLOSED FEEDWATER HEATERS

REFERENCES: Heat Exchange Institute Standards for Closed Feedwater Heaters. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Sec. VIII.

Feedwater heaters are used (1) to effect the thermodynamic gains of the regenerative steam cycle (see Secs. 4 and 9), and (2) to raise water temperatures to a sufficient value for the avoidance of thermal shock to the boiler metal. The **number and types of heaters** usually employed are: (1) plant sizes of up to 70 mW, two closed low-pressure heaters, one open heater, one closed high-pressure heater; (2) plant sizes of 75 to 300 mW, two or three closed low-pressure heaters, one open heater, two closed high-pressure heaters; (3) fossil-fueled plant sizes above 300 mW, three or four closed low-pressure heaters, one open heater, two or three high-pressure heaters. Nuclear units require very large feedwater flows, necessitating double or triple parallel strings of heaters. There are generally five or six low-pressure and one high-pressure heaters (no open heaters) in each string.

Minimum heater cost prevails with minimum restrictive specifications, e.g., horizontal, two-pass, high water velocity (10 ft/s at 60°F), no length limits. Overall heater length is limited by maximum available tube lengths of 100 ft for copper alloys, admiralty metal, and copper-nickel and 85 ft for Monel. With U-tube construction, this results in heater lengths of about 48 and 40 ft, respectively. A general rule, to ensure good steam distribution, is that the length in feet shall not exceed the shell diameter in inches plus 2; i.e., with a 30-in diam shell, the length should not exceed 32 ft. **Pressure drop** through the tubes must be economically evaluated as it varies approximately with the square of the water velocity.

If a **length restriction** is imposed, the designer may have to substitute a four-pass arrangement for the two-pass design, with consequent large-diameter shell and water chamber, heavier walls, more tube holes to be drilled, more tubes to be installed, and a cost increase. If a **pressure-drop restriction** is imposed, a lower water velocity results, with more tubes, larger shell and chamber diameter, and more surface because of the lower heat-transfer rate. Vertical heaters, with appropriate construction details, are also higher in cost.

The **condensing heater** (Fig. 9.5.26), like a surface condenser, performs at constant saturation temperature outside the tubes with no condensate subcooling. Feedwater is generally heated to within 5°F of the

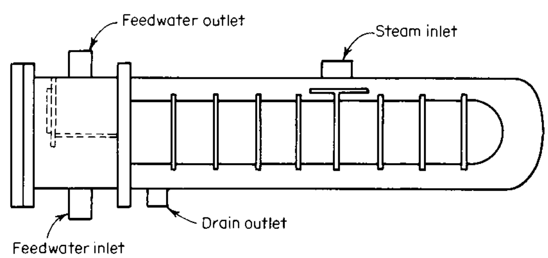


Fig. 9.5.26 Basic heater section for condensing heater.

saturation temperature. The addition of a **drain-cooling section** (Fig. 9.5.27), with a cover or enveloping baffle around the tubes of the inlet pass, can reduce the drip temperature to within 10 or 15°F of the incoming water. When the steam is at sufficient pressure (above 125 lb/in^2 abs) and contains enough superheat (more than 250°), a **desuperheating**

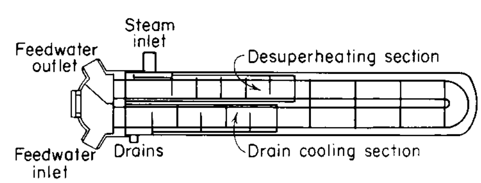


Fig. 9.5.27 Basic heater section with drain cooling and desuperheater sections added.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

section (Fig. 9.5.27), using an enveloping baffle around the tubes at feedwater outlet, can raise the water temperature above the saturation temperature of the entering steam. Drain coolers and desuperheating sections improve overall plant heat rate by reduction of energy degradation. Subcooling of drains reduces flashing, erosion, vibration, and noise when drains are dropped to a lower-pressure heater. Special attention should be given to drains flashed to the main condenser, as this is a direct thermodynamic loss. As an alternate, these drains can be pumped forward into the feedwater line.

Heat-transfer rates for a condensing feedwater heater range, overall, between 500 and 900 Btu/(h · ft² · °F). (See Figs. 9.5.28 and 9.5.29.)

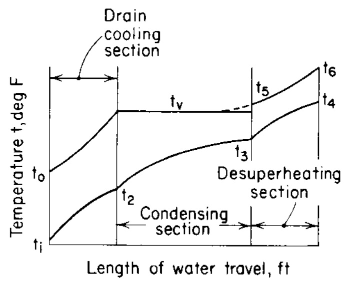


Fig. 9.5.28 Temperature vs. water travel, closed-feed heater.

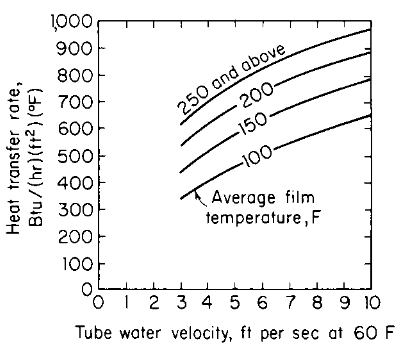


Fig. 9.5.29 Approximate condenser heat-transfer rates with 18 BWG admiralty metal tubes. Average film temperature $= t_s - 0.8\delta t_m$.

Heat-transfer rates for drain-cooling and desuperheating sections must be separately evaluated, with overall ranges from 300 to 500 on the former and 80 to 140 on the latter. (See Figs. 9.5.30 and 9.5.31.) Normally, the three sections are included in the same shell (Fig. 9.5.27); when the cooler becomes too large, as with the lowest-pressure heater, a separate shell-and-tube exchanger may be justified.

Low-pressure heaters (upstream of the boiler feed pump) are usually designed for tube-side pressure of less than 90 lb/in² gage. This is based on the shutoff head of the condensate pump plus 10 percent. For pressures up to 300 to 400 lb/in² gage, a bolted cover with flange and gasket

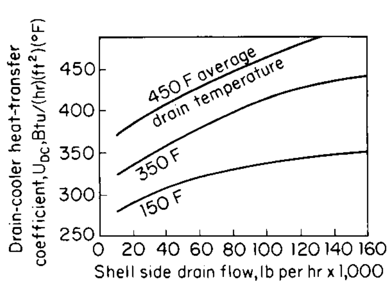


Fig. 9.5.30 Approximate drain-cooler heat-transfer rates.

(Fig. 9.5.32*a*) is used, while higher pressures usually justify a welded joint to eliminate the gasket (Fig. 9.5.32*b* and *c*). A manway is utilized for access to the tube sheet. Tubes are generally rolled into the tube sheet.

High-pressure heaters (downstream of the boiler feed pump) are designed for shutoff head of the pump plus 10 percent, resulting in about

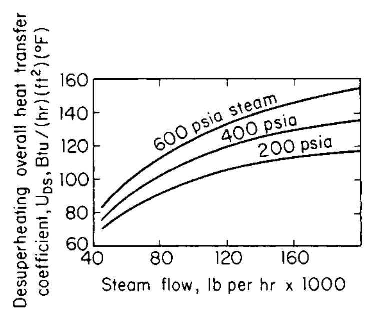


Fig. 9.5.31 Approximate desuperheater section heat-transfer rates.

1,500 lb/in² gage for a nuclear plant and up to 5,000 lb/in² gage for fossil-fuel plants. Hemispherical head construction (Fig. 9.5.32*c*) and welded tube-to-tube sheet joints are almost exclusively used. Since the cost of the tubes represents the largest portion of the heater cost, material selection is important (see Table 9.5.11). Depending on the desired water-chemistry requirements, low-pressure heaters usually use admiralty metal, 90-10 Cu-Ni, stainless or carbon steel. High-pressure heaters require the use of the higher-strength alloys of 70-30 Cu-Ni, monel, stainless, or carbon steel. The thinnest wall possible [$t = Pd/(2s + 0.8p)$] or the industry minimum standard of 18 BWG (20 BWG for stainless steel) is utilized.

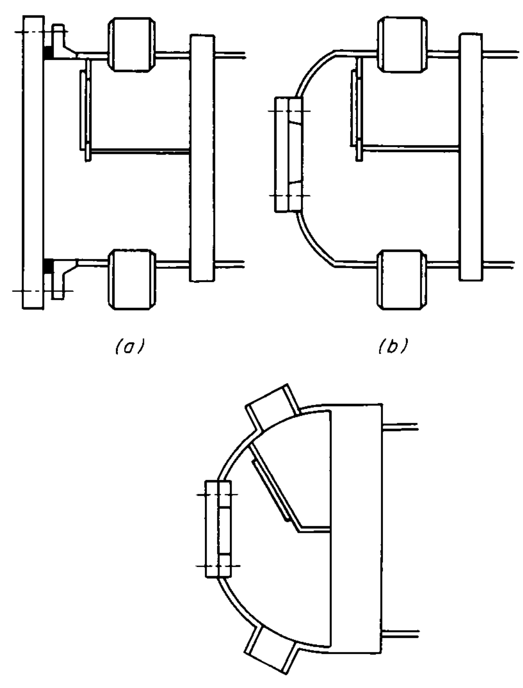


Fig. 9.5.32 Feedwater heater channels. (*a*) Bolted; (*b*) dished; (*c*) hemispherical.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.5.11 Material and Gage Correction Factor C_m
(For ⅝- to 1-in tubes)

	Tube material							
BWG no.	Ars-Cu	Admiralty	90-10 Cu-Ni	80-20 Cu-Ni	70-30 Cu-Ni	Monel	18-8 SS	Carbon steel
18	1.00	1.00	0.97	0.95	0.92	0.89	0.85	0.96
17	1.00	1.00	0.94	0.91	0.87	0.85	0.80	0.92
16	1.00	1.00	0.91	0.88	0.84	0.82	0.77	0.89
15	1.00	0.99	0.89	0.86	0.82	0.79	0.74	0.87
14	1.00	0.96	0.85	0.82	0.77	0.75	0.70	0.83
13	0.98	0.93	0.81	0.78	0.73	0.70	0.65	0.79

Performance Calculations

Notation

A = heat-transfer surface, ft²
C_m = material and gage correction factor, Table 9.5.11
D = tube ID, in, Table 9.5.12
d = OD of tube, in (⅝ and ¾ in are most common)
F_1 = friction factor, Table 9.5.13
F_2 = water-temperature correction factor, Table 9.5.14
h = enthalpy, Btu/lb
k = tube diameter and gage factor, Table 9.5.15
L = active length of tubes per pass, ft
N = number of passes
n = number of tubes
P = design pressure, lb/in²
p = pressure, lb/in²
Q = total heat transferred, Btu/h
S = allowable design stress at tube design temperature, lb/in², from ASME Code
t = wall thickness, in (see Table 9.5.16); temperature, °F
U_o = overall heat-transfer rate, Btu/(h · ft² · °F) (the material correction factor, Table 9.5.11, must be applied to the overall heat-transfer rate)
V = water velocity, ft/s
W = steam flow, lb/h
W_w = feedwater flow, lb/h
Δp = pressure drop, lb/in²
Δt_m = logarithmic mean temperature difference, °F (Fig. 9.5.28)

Table 9.5.12 Feedwater-Heater Tube Constants

Tube	⅛-in OD		¾-in OD		⅞-in OD	
BWG	D	$D^{1.24}$	D	$D^{1.24}$	D	$D^{1.24}$
18	0.527	0.452	0.652	0.589	0.777	0.731
17	0.509	0.433	0.634	0.567	0.759	0.710
16	0.495	0.418	0.620	0.554	0.745	0.695
15	0.481	0.404	0.606	0.538	0.731	0.678
14	0.458	0.380	0.584	0.514	0.709	0.652
13	—	—	0.560	0.488	0.685	0.625

Table 9.5.13 Friction Loss, lb/in² per ft of Straight Travel

Water velocity (at 60°F), ft/s	F_1
3.0	0.018
4.0	0.031
5.0	0.047
6.0	0.065
7.0	0.085
8.0	0.108
9.0	0.134
10.0	0.162

Table 9.5.14 Water-Temperature Correction Factor*

Average water temp, °F	F_2
100	0.905
150	0.840
200	0.795
250	0.770
300	0.755
350	0.750
400	0.755
450	0.757
500	0.795
550	0.830
600	0.885

* Average water temperature $= t_s - \Delta t_m$.

Table 9.5.15 Tube Diameter and Gage Factor k

	BWG no.				
Diam, in	20	18	17	16	15
⅝	0.217	0.2407	0.2580	0.2728	0.289
¾	0.1732	0.1887	0.1995	0.2089	0.218
⅞	0.1445	0.1550	0.1624	0.1686	0.1748
1	0.1238	0.1314	0.1369	0.1413	0.1458

Table 9.5.16 Tube-Wall Thickness

Gage, BWG	Thickness, in
15	0.072
16	0.065
17	0.058
18	0.049
19	0.042
20	0.035
22	0.028

Heat-balance data will provide the major parameters of steam pressure, feedwater flows, and temperatures. The choice of tube diameter and material must be made first. Tube thickness is calculated by

$$t = Pd/(2S + 0.8P)$$

Test pressure is 1.5 times design pressure.

Condensing-heater-size equations are

$$Q = UA\,\Delta t_m = W_w(h_3 - h_2) = W_s(\Delta h_s)$$

(See Figs. 9.5.28 and 9.5.29.) The minimum terminal temperature difference is 2°F.

The active length of tubes is calculated from $L = 500AV/(NW_wk)$, where maximum velocity is 10 ft/s at 60°F; the number of tubes, from $n = 3.82A/(Ld)$; the pressure drop, from $\Delta p = (L + 5.5D)F_1F_2N/D^{1.24}$.

The shell design pressure is 20 percent greater than the maximum operating pressure, rounded to the higher 25 lb/in² as a minimum.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

A **drain-cooling section,** when added, is treated as a separate heat exchanger where the quantities t_v, t_o, t_i, W_s, and W_w are known; t_2 is the only unknown and is to be calculated from a heat balance on the section or $Q = W_s(h_v - h_o) = W_w(h_2 - h_1)$. Compute Δt_m; find the area of the drain-cooler section A_{dc} from $Q = U_o A_{dc} \Delta t_m$, with overall U_o from Fig. 9.5.30.

A **desuperheating section** is similarly calculated with t_v, t_6, t_4, p_6, h_6, h_4, W_s known. Allow approximately 1 percent pressure drop through the section to get p_v, and 80 to 90 percent desuperheating (30°F superheat entering condensing section) to obtain t_5 and h_5. By a heat balance on section, calculate h_3 from $Q = W_s(h_6 - h_5) = W_w(h_4 - h_3)$. With equivalent t_3, calculate Δt_m and substitute in $Q = U_o A \Delta t_m$ for area of desuperheating section (overall U_o from Fig. 9.5.31).

Materials

Heaters are designed in accordance with the Heat Exchange Institute Standards for Closed Feedwater Heaters and the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Sec. VIII, using the following materials:

Tubes:

Material		Max temp, °F Rolled joint	Max temp, °F Welded joint
Admiralty metal	ASME SB-395	350	
90-10 Cu-Ni	ASME SB-395	400	450
80-20 Cu-Ni	ASME SB-395	400	475
70-30 Cu-Ni	ASME SB-395	400	525
70-30 Cu-Ni, stress-relieved	ASME SB-395	400	525
Monel, ASME SB-163		400	600
Carbon steel, ASME SA-556, grades A, B, and C		350	650
Stainless steel, ASME SA-249; TP 304 (welded)		350	650

Shell, nozzles: carbon-steel pipe and plant, ASME SA-515 grade 70; SA-106 grade B.

Channels, or heads, channel covers: carbon-steel plate, forgings, and pipe, ASME SA-515 grade 70; SA-105 grade II; SA-106 grade B.

Baffles and tube supports: steel plate, ASME SA-283 grade C.

Tube sheets: carbon-steel plate and forgings, ASME SA-515 grade 70; SA-105 grade II.

Carbon steel is used for temperatures up to 800°F. Chromium-molybdenum steel (ASME SA-387 grade C) is used for higher temperatures.

OPEN, DEAERATING, AND DIRECT-CONTACT HEATERS

REFERENCE: Heat Exchange Institute Standards for Deaerators and Deaerating Heaters.

Deaerators or deaerating heaters serve (1) to degasify feedwater and thus reduce equipment corrosion (see Sec. 6), (2) to heat feedwater regeneratively and improve thermodynamic efficiency (see Sec. 9), and (3) to provide storage, positive submergence, and surge protection on the boiler feed-pump suction (see Sec. 14).

Removal of oxygen and carbon dioxide from boiler feedwater and process water at elevated temperature is essential for adequate conditioning. In some power-plant applications, a well-designed surface condenser gives adequate deaeration and the accompanying exclusive use of closed feedwater heaters.

A modern **deaerator** will, by mechanical action, reduce O_2 content of effluent to less than 0.005 cm³/L and CO_2 content to a negligible amount. Water must (1) be heated to and kept at saturation temperature, as the gas solubility is zero at the boiling point of the liquid, and (2) be mechanically agitated by spraying or cascading over trays for effective scrubbing, release, and removal of gases. Gases must be swept away by an adequate supply of steam. Since the water is heated to saturation conditions, the terminal temperature difference is zero with maximum improvement in associated turbine heat rate. Extremely low partial gas pressures, dictated by Henry's law, call for large volumes of scrubbing steam. **Vent condensers** of the shell-and-tube or direct-contact types, cooled by incoming feed, serve to recover heat and water before release of gases to the atmosphere.

The **tray-type deaerator** (Fig. 9.5.33) is prevalent. While it has some tendency to scale, it will operate at wide load conditions and is practically independent of water-inlet temperature. Trays can be loaded to some 10,000 lb/(ft² · h), and the deaerator seldom exceeds 8 ft in height.

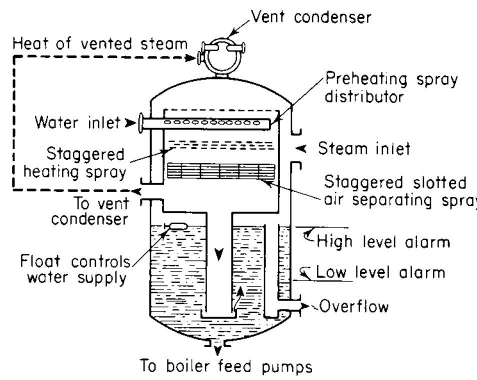


Fig. 9.5.33 Tray-type deaerating heater section.

The **spray type** uses a high-velocity steam jet to atomize and scrub the preheated water. Applications are (1) marine service, where it is unaffected by ship roll and pitch, and (2) industrial plants where operating pressures are stable. It requires a temperature gradient, e.g., 50°F minimum, to produce the fine sprays and vacuums with the cold water required.

Materials

Open-feed heaters are designed to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Materials used are: shell—steel, ASME SA-285 grade C and SA-515 grade 70; trays—stainless steel, type 304; baffles in vent condenser—stainless steel, type 304; spray valves—stainless steel, type 304.

EVAPORATORS

For general treatment of evaporators used in the preparation of makeup water, see Sec. 6.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

9.6 INTERNAL COMBUSTION ENGINES

by D. Assanis, C. Borgnakke, D. E. Cole, and D. J. Patterson

REFERENCES: Lichty ‘‘Internal-Combustion Engines,’’ McGraw-Hill. Obert, ‘‘Internal-Combustion Engines and Air Pollution,’’ Harper & Row. Taylor and Taylor, ‘‘The Internal-Combustion Engine,’’ International Textbook. Vincent, ‘‘Supercharging the Internal-Combustion Engine,’’ McGraw-Hill. Crouse, ‘‘Automotive Engine Design,’’ McGraw-Hill. Patterson and Henein, ‘‘Emissions from Combustion Engines,’’ Ann Arbor Science. Starkman, ‘‘Combustion Generated Air Pollution,’’ Plenum. *Trans. ASME Trans. SAE Proc. I Mech E,* Automobile Division, *Automotive Inds.* Ferguson, ‘‘Internal Combustion Engines,’’ Wiley. Heywood, ‘‘Internal Combustion Engine Fundamentals,’’ McGraw-Hill. Blair, ‘‘The Basic Design of Two-Stroke Engines,’’ SAE. Watson and Janota, ‘‘Turbocharging the Internal Combustion Engine,’’ Wiley. Benson and Whitehouse, ‘‘Internal Combustion Engines,’’ Pergamon.

GENERAL FEATURES

Cycles

(See also Sec. 4.1)

In piston-type **internal combustion engines,** the combustion process is assumed to occur at constant volume (Fig. 9.6.1), at constant pressure (Fig. 9.6.2), or by some combination of these (Fig. 9.6.3). The constant-volume process is characteristic of the **spark ignition** or **Otto cycle;** the

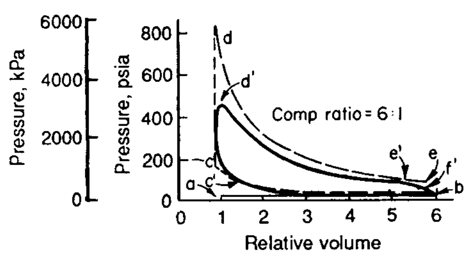


Fig. 9.6.1 Otto cycle (constant-volume combustion, no excess air). Process of the ideal cycle: *a-b,* suction stroke, admission of the charge; *b-c,* compression stroke; at *c,* ignition of the compressed charge; *d-e,* expansion; at *e,* exhaust valve opens; *b-a,* exhaust stroke.

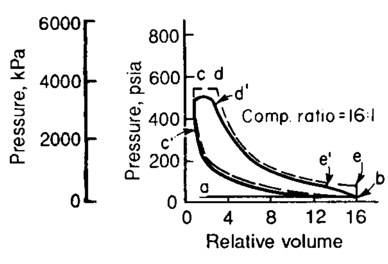


Fig. 9.6.2 Diesel cycle (constant-pressure combustion, 50 percent excess air). Processes of the ideal cycle: *a-b,* suction stroke, admission of air; *b-c,* compression of air; *c-d,* injection and combustion of the fuel; *d-e,* expansion; at *e,* exhaust valve opens; *b-a,* exhaust stroke.

constant pressure is found only in the slow-speed **compression ignition** or **diesel cycle;** with both processes, the cycle is sometimes called a **mixed, combination,** or **limited pressure cycle**. Actually, the indicator card obtained from a high-speed, mixed-cycle, compression ignition engine may be similar to that obtained from a spark ignition engine. The fundamental differences are the methods of mixing the air and fuel (before compression in the Otto cycle, and usually near the end of compression in the diesel cycle) and the methods of ignition.

The nominal **compression ratio** (usually specified) is the displacement plus clearance volume divided by the clearance volume. The actual compression ratio is appreciably less than the nominal value because of late intake valve or port closing.

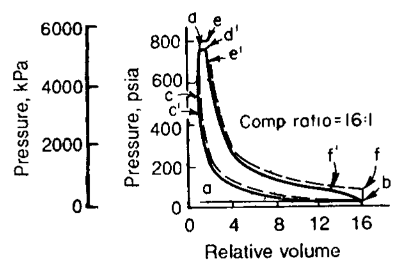


Fig. 9.6.3 Mixed cycle (constant-volume and constant-pressure combustion, 50 percent excess air). Processes of the ideal cycle: *a-b,* suction stroke, admission of air; *b-c,* compression of air; *c-d,* ignition and constant-volume combustion; *e-f,* expansion; at *f,* exhaust begins; *b-a,* exhaust stroke. Broken lines represent ideal cycle; solid lines show characteristics of actual cycle. Primes attached to letters show actual locations of events, though some lower-compression-ratio and multiple-chamber engines may require starting aids.

The **compression pressure** may be estimated from the relation $p = r_a^{1.33}$, where p_m is the intake manifold pressure and r_a is the actual compression ratio.

The actual compression pressure can be determined with a compression pressure gage that traps the gases by means of a check valve, thus indicating the maximum pressure under motoring conditions.

Spark ignition engines use volatile liquids or gases as fuel; have compression ratios between 6 : 1 and 12 : 1 (limited by combustion knock or the fuel/air mixture) and compression pressures from below 150 to above 300 lb/in² (1,030 to 2,060 kPa); use carburetors, gas mixing valves, or fuel injection systems; and operate on the Otto cycle. Gasoline is the fuel commonly used in airplane, automobile, small marine, small stationary, and tractor engines. Commercial gases such as blast furnace gas, coal gas, coke oven gas, carbureted water gas, producer gas, and natural gas are used in large stationary engines. The mixtures used generally are near chemically correct. Combustion pressures are usually 3.5 to 5 times the compression pressures. Load and speed are usually controlled by throttling the charge; piston speeds above 3,000 ft/min (15 m/s) are permissible.

Advantages are low first cost, low specific weight, low cranking effort required, wide variation obtainable in speed and load, high mechanical efficiency, and fairly low specific fuel consumption at high compression ratios and wide-open throttle.

Compression ignition engines use liquid fuels of low volatility varying from fuel oil and distillates to crude oil (see Sec. 7.1), have compression ratios between 11.5 : 1 and 22 : 1 and compression pressures 400 to 700 lb/in² (2,760 to 4,830 kPa), and operate on the diesel or mixed cycle. Generally no ignition devices are used, although some lower-compression-ratio and multiple-chamber engines may require starting aids. Load and speed are controlled by varying the fuel quantity injected.

The **dual-fuel engine** is a diesel engine with a compression ratio which is too low to result in ignition, at the desired time, of the gas/air mixture inducted into the cylinder. A pilot (small) injection of liquid fuel with good ignition quality is used to initiate the combustion process.

Advantages are low specific fuel consumption, high thermal efficiency at partial loads, possibly lower fuel cost, no preignition, low CO and hydrocarbon emission at low and moderate loads, suitability for

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

two-stroke operation, and excellent durability. The lower-compression engines are of simpler construction (usually valveless two-stroke cycle), are more lightweight, and have lower first cost, lower operating expense, and higher mechanical efficiency than the higher-compression engines.

The **four-stroke cycle** (four-cycle) engine requires four piston strokes or two crankshaft revolutions per cycle (Figs. 9.6.1 and 9.6.2). This engine cycle is used almost exclusively in automobile, tractor, and aircraft engines of all types and sizes and in engines of other classifications with the exception of most outboard engines. Small four-cycle engines are always single-acting (combustion on only one side of the piston). The pumping loss, indicated by the area between the exhaust and the induction curves (Fig. 9.6.12), is more than the negative loop of the indicator card and at wide-open throttle depends on valve openings and speed and amounts to 3 to 7 percent of the engine indicated power. Throttling increases the pumping loss and reduces the positive indicator card area.

Advantages compared with two-cycle crankcase compression spark ignition engines include the wider variation in speed and load, cooler pistons, common crankcase in multicylinder engines, good lubrication secured more easily, no fuel loss during exhaust, lower specific fuel consumption lower pumping losses, less exhaust dilution, lower hydrocarbon emissions, positive-displacement inlet and exhaust processes, and easier power regulation.

The **two-stroke cycle** (two-cycle) engine requires two piston strokes or only one revolution for each cycle. Exhaust ports in the cylinder wall are uncovered by the piston, or exhaust valves in the cylinder head are opened near the end (at 60 to 88 percent) of the expansion stroke, permitting the escape of exhaust gases and reducing the pressure in the cylinder (Fig. 9.6.4). The charge of air or combustible mixture flows into and is compressed in a separate crankcase compartment for each cylinder, by a compressor or a blower to slightly above atmospheric pressure. Intake ports are uncovered by the piston or intake valves and

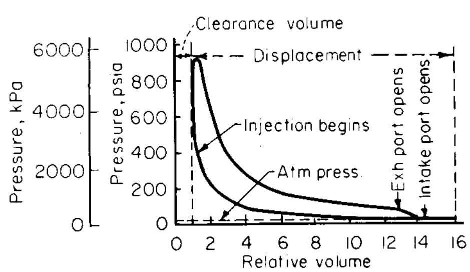


Fig. 9.6.4 Indicator card for two-cycle diesel engine (16 : 1 compression ratio).

are opened soon after the opening of the exhaust, and the compressed charge flows into the cylinder, expelling most of the exhaust products, some charge escaping with the exhaust. Blowers or compressors, driven either mechanically or by an exhaust turbine, are often used to supply sufficient air to scavenge the cylinder and clearance space and, in some cases, to supercharge the engine. Although small engines use only ports and crankcase compression (Fig. 9.6.5), large engines usually have separate compressors or blowers and either ports or both valves and ports. With crankcase compression, low scavenging of the cylinder occurs, and the volumetric efficiency is low (30 to 70 percent). The crankcase compression work amounts to 7 to 12 percent of the total work, but scavenging blowers with displacements 20 to 80 percent greater than the piston displacement may require as high as 30 percent of the indicated work in high-speed engines.

Advantages compared with four-cycle engines include the 50 to 80 percent greater power output per unit piston displacement and same speed (depending on scavenging) twice at many power impulses per cylinder per revolution, low cost for valveless designs employing crankcase compression, low NO_x emissions (spark ignited), and light weight.

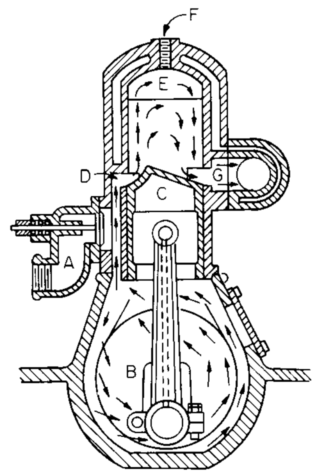


Fig. 9.6.5 Small two-cycle gasoline engine with crankcase compression.

ANALYSIS OF ENGINE PROCESS

Cycle Analysis The theoretical indicated thermal efficiency η_a of the air standard Otto cycle depends only on the volumetric compression ratio r_c (Sec. 4.1):

$$\eta = 1 - \left(\frac{1}{r_c}\right)^{0.4} \tag{9.6.1}$$

For the air standard diesel cycle (constant-pressure combustion),

$$\eta_a = 1 - \frac{(r_d^{1.4} - 1)}{1.4 r_c^{0.4}(r_d - 1)} \tag{9.6.2}$$

where r_d is the volumetric expansion ratio during constant-pressure combustion.

However, the diesel engine is more closely approximated by the limited pressure combustion (dual) cycle for which the thermal efficiency is given by

$$\eta_a = 1 - \frac{r_p r_d^{1.4} - 1}{r_c^{0.4}[r_p - 1 + 1.4 r_p (r_d - 1)]} \tag{9.6.3}$$

where r_p is the pressure ratio during the constant-volume heat addition.

The efficiencies indicated by the air standard analysis are much higher than can be attained, principally because of variable specific heats, dissociation, and heat and time losses. The fuel-air cycle analysis takes into consideration variable fuel/air mixture properties and dissociation of combustion products and results in lower, more realistic values for efficiencies (Figs. 9.6.6 and 9.6.7). Real cycle analyses include, in addition, combustion losses, heat losses, and leakages, resulting in thermal efficiencies approximately 80 percent of those predicted by the fuel-air cycle analyses.

The **mean effective pressure (mep)** is equal to net work divided by volumetric displacement. Horsepower follows from

$$\text{hp} = P_{\text{mep}}\, SA \text{ rpm}/K \tag{9.6.4}$$

where P_{mep} = mean effective pressure, lb/in^2 (kPa); S = stroke, ft (m); A = total piston area, in^2 (m^2); rpm = number of cycles completed per min; K = 33,000 (0.4566 for SI units).

Increasing the compression ratio and the air-fuel ratio increases the thermal efficiency of the Otto cycle (Fig. 9.6.6). Increasing the compression ratio and the air/fuel ratio also increases the thermal efficiency of the diesel cycle with constant-pressure combustion (Fig. 9.6.7). Mean effective pressures depend on charge input and thermal efficiency, both of which depend on compression ratio and air and fuel supply (Figs. 9.6.8 and 9.6.9).

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

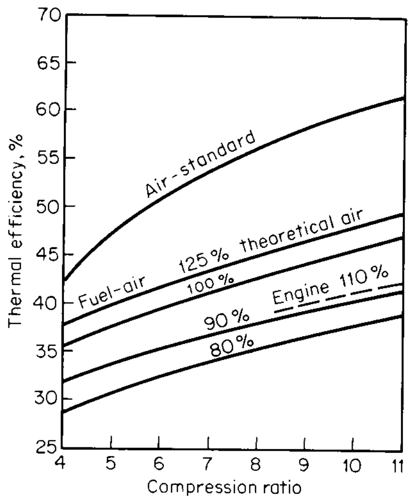


Fig. 9.6.6 Indicated thermal efficiencies of various Otto cycle analyses and engine test results.

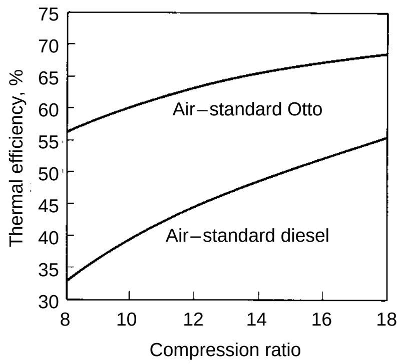


Fig. 9.6.7 Indicated thermal efficiency of the air standard diesel cycle with constant-pressure combustion.

Deviations from Ideal Processes

Changes in atmospheric pressure and temperature change power output although they do not appreciably affect thermal efficiency. The standard correction formulas adopted by SAE for brake power output are, for spark ignition engines,

$$\mathrm{bhp}_s = \mathrm{bhp}_o \left(\frac{P_s}{P_o}\right) \sqrt{\frac{T_o}{T_s}}$$

and for diesel engines,

$$\mathrm{bhp}_s = \mathrm{bhp}_o \left(\frac{P_s}{P_o}\right) \left(\frac{T_o}{T_s}\right)^{0.7}$$

where subscripts o and s indicate observed and standard conditions, respectively, P_o being the dry barometric pressure.

Pumping work (area EFGAE, Fig. 9.6.10) is required to overcome the resistance to flow of fresh charge into and exhaust products out of the cylinder. It varies from almost 0 for an engine running at slow speed with wide-open throttle to about 3 lb/in^2 (21 kPa) mep at high speed, and to 10 lb/in^2 with idle throttle position. The negative loop (area AXFGA, Fig. 9.6.10) in a normally aspirated engine represents about 60 percent of the pumping work.

Volumetric efficiency is the ratio of the volume of air (for a liquid-fuel) engine) and charge (for a gas engine) actually admitted, measured at atmospheric pressure and temperature, to the displacement volume. High manifold and cylinder temperatures and resistance to flow reduce volumetric efficiency. High-output aircraft engines have maximum volumetric efficiencies of 85 to 90 percent at rated speeds. Supercharged engines can have volumetric efficiencies well above 100 percent or can be designed to maintain high volumetric efficiencies with an increase in speed.

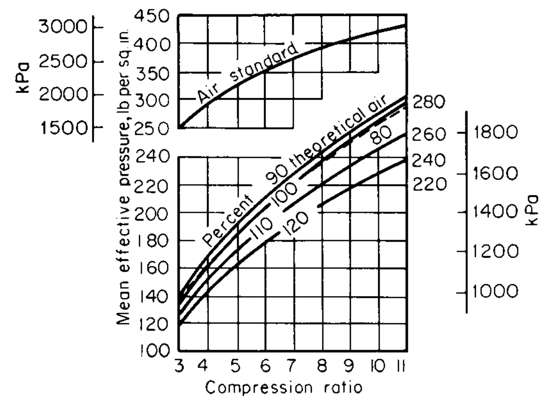


Fig. 9.6.8 MEP for Otto cycle engine [air and liquid iso-octane supplied at 60°F (16°C)].

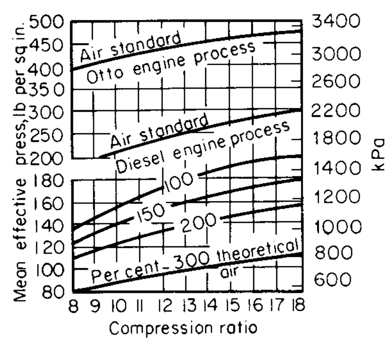


Fig. 9.6.9 MEP for diesel cycle engine [air and liquid dodecane supplied at 60°F (16°C)].

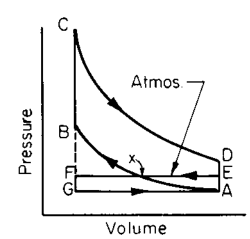


Fig. 9.6.10 Throttled Otto cycle.

Volumetric efficiencies of automobile engines (Fig. 9.6.11) diminish appreciably as piston speeds exceed 1,200 to 1,600 ft/min (6 to 8 m/s), decreasing to approximately 60 percent at top speeds of 2,500 to 3,200 ft/min (13 to 16 m/s). Volumetric efficiency varies appreciably with valve timing.

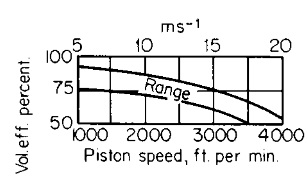


Fig. 9.6.11 Volumetric efficiencies of normally aspirated engines with poppet valves.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.1 Relative Ideal Volumetric Efficiencies with Liquid Fuels
(Air and liquid fuel at 60°F)

Fuel	Chemically correct air-fuel ratio	Heat required per lb of fuel for complete evaporation, Btu/lb (J/gm)	Percent evap with 200 Btu/lb fuel	Suction temperature, °F (°C)		Relative volumetric efficiency	
				Complete evaporation	200 Btu/lb fuel	Complete evaporation	200 Btu/lb fuel
Gasoline	15.11	330 (768)	81	106 (41)	81 (27)	100	100
Benzene	13.26	149 (347)	100 +	50 (10)	68 (20)	111	103
Ethyl alcohol	8.99	425 (989)	55	71 (22)	55 (13)	107	105
Methyl alcohol	6.46	519 (1,207)	49	68 (20)	45 (7)	108	107

Two-cycle crankcase compression engines have volumetric efficiencies of about 60 percent at low speeds and 50 percent or below at high speeds.

Fuels with high latent heats and low boiling temperatures reduce the charge temperature and result in high volumetric efficiencies (Table 9.6.1).

Air cleaners, governors, and carburetors increase the resistance to flow and decrease the volumetric efficiency.

The **compression stroke** begins with heat transfer from the cylinder walls to the charge but ends with heat transfer from the charge to the walls. The net result is a heat loss of about 0.5 to 1.5 percent of the heat value of the charge. Heat loss during compression lowers the compression curve and work, but lowers the expansion work a greater amount, thus slightly reducing the net work output.

The mean value of the exponent n in the approximate equation $p v^n =$ constant for the polytropic compression of a correct mixture of octane and air is about 1.33. For the diesel cycle in which the gas under compression is mainly air, the exponent is about 1.38 for a 15 : 1 compression ratio. Heat transfer into the charge increases the exponent, but leakage lowers its value.

The **combustion process** begins before the end of the compression stroke and ends after the beginning of the expansion stroke. Rassweiler, Withrow, and Cornelius (*Trans. SAE,* **34,** 1939) found a maximum variation of 30 percent in combustion time for a single-cylinder engine while variations of both maximum cylinder pressure and rate of pressure rise of about 30 percent were found by Patterson (SAE paper 660129) in a V-8 engine. These effects are thought to be due primarily to cyclic variations in swirl and turbulence at the spark plug, but can arise also from variations in air/fuel ratio and homogeneity of the mixture. Poor distribution in multicylinder engines also causes variations between cylinders. It has been shown that the loss due to the actual finite combustion time is 3 to 6 percent of the ideal efficiency with constant-volume combustion. Any energy released before or after top-center piston position has an availability corresponding to the expansion ratio for the piston position at which the energy is released. Heat loss during the combustion process amounts to 5 to 7 percent of the heat supply of the charge at rated outputs and speeds for automotive engines.

Flame Travel Flame begins at the spark plug in the spark ignition engine or at various points in the combustion chamber of the compression ignition engine and travels in all directions through the mixture. At the end of combustion, the first part of the charge to burn has reached a higher temperature than the last portion to burn, except in the constant-pressure process. Rassweiler and Withrow (*Trans. SAE,* **30,** 1935, p. 125) observed temperature differences of over 400°F (200°C) (nonknocking) and over 600°F (315°C) (knocking) in a nonturbulent combustion chamber.

The combustion of part of the charge compresses the remainder. Thus with 30 percent of the mass burned, the volume of the unburned portion will be about 35 percent of the total volume. This increases the temperature of the last fraction to burn in a constant-volume process by about 500°F (280°C) above its temperature at the beginning of combustion.

The mean adiabatic exponent for the **expansion process** is about 1.22, varying from about 1.20 at the beginning to 1.25 at the end of the process. Heat transfer and leakage increase the exponent, an average value of 1.33 being found by Rassweiler and Withrow (*Trans. SAE,* **33,** 1938, p. 185) in an L-head 2⅞- by 4¾-in (7.3- by 12.1-cm) cylinder. The heat transfer during the expansion stroke amounts to 8 to 12 percent of the heat value of the charge. Because of heat losses and real gas effects, the thermal efficiency of the engine is decreased by about 40 percent.

Blowdown begins at 80 to 90 percent of the expansion stroke. This reduces the work about 1 to 2 percent. High gas velocities [1,200 to 1,500 ft/s (360 to 460 m/s)] are attained, and heat transfer, including that through exhaust port walls, amounts to 10 to 20 percent of the heat value of the charge, but represents practically no loss of work or availability.

The **exhaust process** is the discharge of some of the gases from the cylinder by the piston. The exhaust pressure is usually above atmospheric (Fig. 9.6.12) but may run below atmospheric for part of the stroke. Heat loss during exhaust amounts to 3 to 5 percent of the heat value of the charge but does not represent any loss of work or availability. At full load about 80 percent of the gases in the cylinder escape during blowdown, and about 15 percent are pushed out of the cylinder during exhaust, the remainder being left in the clearance space at the end of the exhaust stroke. At partial load, the blowdown pulse is smaller and the residual fraction higher.

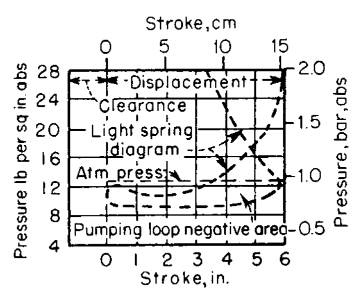


Fig. 9.6.12 Pumping loop of Otto cycle engine.

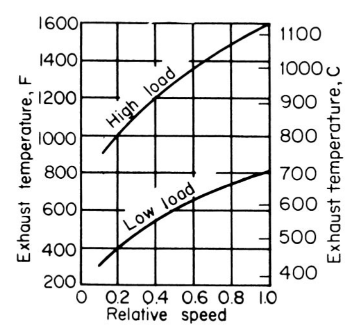


Fig. 9.6.13 Exhaust temperatures for Otto cycle engines.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Exhaust gas temperatures vary with speed and load (Figs. 9.6.13 and 9.6.14), high loads and speeds resulting in the highest temperatures. The first gases escaping during release are at the highest temperatures.

Exhaust Gas Analysis The composition of exhaust varies depending upon the equivalence ratio and the hydrogen/carbon ratio of the fuel. Figure 9.6.15 shows the calculated composition including water

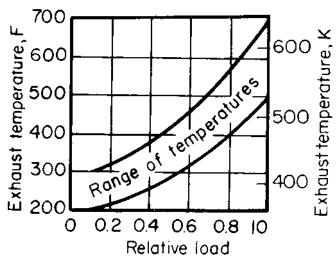


Fig. 9.6.14 Exhaust temperatures for diesel cycle engines.

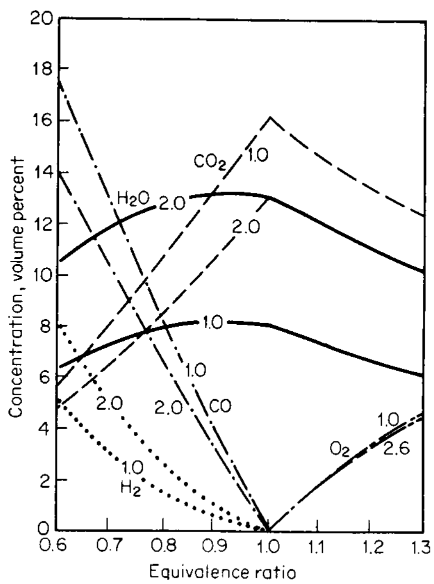


Fig. 9.6.15 Theoretical mole percent of principal combustion products of hydrocarbon fuels for fuel hydrogen/carbon ratios.

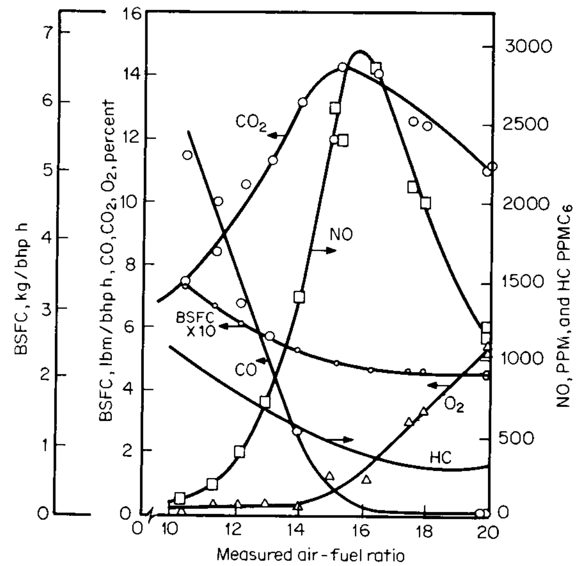


Fig. 9.6.16 Gasoline engine basic specific fuel consumption and emissions vs. air/fuel ratio.

(wet basis) for complete combustion. Charts of theoretical exhaust composition for various fuels have been prepared by D'Alleva (*General Motors Res. Rept.*, **372,** 1960) and Eltinge (*SAE Trans.*, 1968). In practice, nonequilibrium products, namely, unburned hydrocarbons and nitrogen oxide, appear in trace quantities. Figure 9.6.16 shows measured exhaust composition on a dry basis for a fuel with a hydrogen/carbon ratio of 1.85.

Equations for calculating the air/fuel ratio from exhaust CO, CO_2, HC, and O_2 have been developed by Spindt (*SAE Trans.*, 1966) and others. Such determinations and those for calculation of remaining but unmeasured exhaust species depend upon carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen balances employing measured values for some exhaust constituents (Obert, ''Internal Combustion Engines'').

Table 9.6.2 summarizes the principal exhaust gas constituents and combustion efficiency. HC and NO were not measured.

U.S. AUTOMOBILE ENGINES

The size (displacement) of U.S. automobile engines varies from 61 in^3 (1.0 L) to 488 in^3 (8 L). Rated horsepower and displacement have

Table 9.6.2 Summary of Exhaust Gas Constituents and Combustion Efficiency*

Air/Fuel	Percent by volume: CO_2	O_2	CO	H_2	N_2	H_2O	H_2O/CO_2	H_2O/Fuel	Combustion† eff., percent
11	8.76	0.15	9.14	4.66	77.08	13.78	1.57	0.972	66.7
12	10.18	0.44	6.65	3.39	79.13	13.93	1.37	1.043	73.8
13	11.60	0.59	4.31	2.20	81.09	14.16	1.22	1.122	81.5
14	13.02	0.63	2.09	1.07	82.99	14.46	1.11	1.205	89.6
15	13.23	1.35	0.99	0.50	83.72	14.09	1.06	1.247	93.8
16	12.62	2.49	0.68	0.35	83.65	13.30	1.05	1.256	94.8
17	12.00	3.55	0.48	0.25	83.51	12.54	1.05	1.261	95.5
18	11.45	4.49	0.30	0.16	83.39	11.88	1.04	1.267	96.2
19	10.90	5.36	0.20	0.10	83.23	11.25	1.03	1.269	96.5
20	10.40	6.15	0.11	0.06	83.07	10.68	1.03	1.272	96.9
21	9.92	6.86	0.08	0.04	82.90	10.16	1.03	1.271	96.9
22	9.44	7.55	0.06	0.03	82.71	9.65	1.02	1.268	96.8
23	9.00	8.18	0.05	0.03	82.53	9.19	1.02	1.266	96.7
24	8.60	8.74	0.06	0.03	82.37	8.78	1.02	1.264	96.6

* Gerrish and Voss, *NACA Rept.* 616, 1937.
† Low-heat-value basis.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

trended downward while horsepower per unit of displacement has generally increased during the period from 1984 to 1994 (Fig. 9.6.17). Most U.S. automobiles are spark-ignited and are fueled with gasoline.

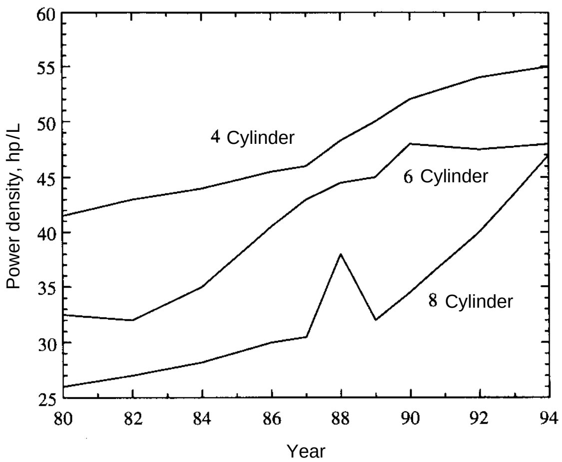


Fig. 9.6.17 Trend of average U.S. automobile power density.

Emission control has brought about (1) reduced compression ratios, (2) improved valves, (3) more precise and accurate fuel metering (carburetion and fuel injection), (4) controlled inlet air temperatures, and (5) electronically controlled fuel management (most with closed-loop feedback to maintain a chemically correct mixture), exhaust gas recirculation, and ignition timing. Current advertised horsepower is based on net rather than gross horsepower. Net horsepower is measured with a fully equipped engine, including all parts needed to perform its intended function unaided, such as fuel pump, oil pump, intake air system, and exhaust system.

Valve timing, particularly the closure of intake valves (approximately 50° crankshaft rotation after bottom dead center), is selected to give a rising volumetric efficiency and torque as the rotation speed is increased. At high speeds, restrictions in the intake system, developed primarily by the carburetor venturi and the intake valves, begin to throttle the engine. The 1994 base engines developed maximum torque at approximately 2,600 r/min. Despite reduced torque at higher speeds, the power peaks at 4,200 to 5,200 r/min. Higher powers were obtained with four-barrel (compound) carburetors, electronic fuel injection, and other modifications.

Engines have been produced with various numbers of cylinders over the years (from 2 to 16), but the most common engines in modern cars are in-line four-cylinder designs (Fig. 9.6.18) for smaller cars and V-6 and some V-8 designs for larger cars. All V-8 engines have an angle of 90° between the two banks of four cylinders, whereas the V-6 engines have an angle of either 60° or 90° between two banks of three cylinders. Smaller engines, in terms of both cylinder number and displacement, provide improved fuel economy, which is particularly important because of rigid federal corporate average fuel economy (CAFE) standards. Neither four- nor six-cylinder engines operate as smoothly as the V-8 because of less effective dynamic balancing and greater torque fluctuations. With the rapid growth in the use of transverse engines with front drive, and smaller and lighter vehicle structures with sloping aerodynamic front hoods, packaging constraints on automobile engines are severe.

All modern engines employ compact, rigid structures. Most cylinder blocks and heads are made of cast iron, although use of aluminum is increasing, particularly in cylinder heads. Four-cylinder engines use three or five crankshaft bearings; the V-6 uses four, and the V-8 uses five. Cylinder bore is usually greater than piston stroke.

Liquid cooling passages are provided around the bore of each cylinder as well as at the hot regions of the combustion chambers and exhaust ports in the head. Modern pistons are almost always made of aluminum. Crankshafts and connecting rods are usually made of cast iron or forged steel. Four-cylinder engines and some six-cylinder engines use a separate crank throw (eccentric portion of the crankshaft) for each connecting rod, whereas in V-8s, connecting rods for corresponding cylinders on each side of the V are side by side on the same crank throw.

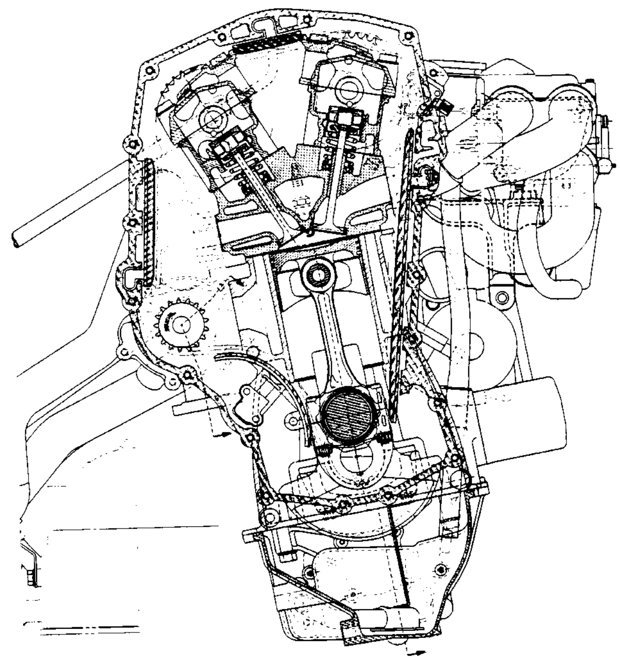


Fig. 9.6.18 Oldsmobile Division Quad 4 with four valves per cylinder (1987).

Detachable cylinder heads contain the inlet and exhaust valves (overhead valves). Most engines employ a single exhaust and inlet valve, although there is a growing trend toward designs with three or four valves per cylinder (Table 9.6.3). Many four-cylinder engines use a belt-driven overhead camshaft, although most V-6s and V-8s still have a camshaft in the valley between the cylinder banks. Exhaust gas is directed through short passages to the exhaust collector or manifold.

Fuel and air are delivered to the head by a compact inlet manifold. Fuel management is provided by either a carburetor or an electronic fuel injection system which may be either multipoint (one injector for each inlet port) or single-point (throttle body injection). In most cases, feedback from an exhaust gas composition sensor is used to provide precise control of air/fuel ratio and optimize performance of the emission control system. Electronic ignition virtually eliminates the need for periodic ignition system maintenance. Manufacturing precision has been improved considerably, leading to improved overall quality, reduced friction, and greater reliability.

Quiet operation is essential in automobile engines and requires close manufacturing control of clearances. Most engines have hydraulic valve lifters and means of rotating the exhaust valves, at least, to prolong life.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.3 Selected U.S. Automobile Engines

	Cylinders						Published maximums			
Make and model	Type and no.*	Bore, in (cm)	B/S ratio	Displacement, in³ (L)	No. of valves per cyl.	Comp. ratio	bhp	r/min	bhp/L	Car weight, lb (kg)
Chrysler Corp.										
Chrysler LeBaron	SOHC V-6	3.55 (9.02)	1.19	181 (3.0)	2	8.9	141	5,000	47	3,122 (1,416)
Chrysler New Yorker	SOHC V-6	3.78 (9.60)	1.19	215 (3.5)	4	10.5	214	5,800	61	3,457 (1,568)
Dodge Intrepid	OHV V-6	3.66 (9.30)	1.15	201 (3.3)	2	8.9	153	5,300	46	3,217 (1,459)
Plymouth Neon	SOHC I-4	3.45 (8.76)	1.06	122 (2.0)	4	9.8	132	6,000	66	2,320 (1,052)
Ford Motor Co.										
Ford Escort	SOHC I-4	3.23 (8.20)	0.93	114 (1.9)	2	9.0	88	4,400	46	2,304 (1,045)
Ford Mustang GT	OHV V-8	4.00 (10.2)	1.33	302 (5.0)	2	9.0	215	4,200	43	3,258 (1,478)
Lincoln Town Car	SOHC V-8	3.60 (9.14)	1.00	281 (4.6)	4	9.0	210	4,600	46	4,039 (1,832)
Ford Taurus†	DOHC V-6	3.50 (8.89)	1.11	182 (3.0)	4	10.0	200	5,750	67	3,104 (1,408)
Taurus SHO†	DOHC V-8	3.24 (8.24)	1.04	207 (3.4)	4	10.0	235	6,100	69	3,150 (1,429)
Contour†	DOHC I-4	3.30 (8.38)	0.94	121 (2.0)	4	9.6	125	5,500	63	2,500 (1,135)
General Motors										
Buick Century	OHV I-4	3.50 (8.89)	1.01	133 (2.2)	2	9.0	120	5,200	55	2,974 (1,349)
Cadillac Eldorado	DOHC V-8	3.66 (9.30)	1.11	279 (4.6)	4	10.3	270	5,600	59	3,774 (1,712)
Chevrolet Cavalier	OHV I-4	3.50 (8.89)	1.01	133 (2.2)	2	9.0	120	5,200	55	2,509 (1,138)
Chevrolet Geo†	SOHC I-4	2.91 (7.40)	0.98	79 (1.3)	2	9.5	70	5,500	54	1,949 (884)
Chevrolet Lumina†	DOHC V-6	3.62 (9.20)	1.10	207 (3.4)	4	9.7	215	5,200	63	3,309 (1,501)
Oldsmobile Cutlass	OHV V-6	3.50 (8.89)	1.06	191 (3.1)	2	9.5	160	5,200	52	3,086 (1,400)
Pontiac Formula	OHV V-8	4.00 (10.2)	1.15	350 (5.7)	2	10.5	275	5,000	48	3,425 (1,553)
Pontiac Grand Am	DOHC I-4	3.63 (9.22)	1.08	138 (2.3)	4	10.0	175	6,200	76	2,822 (1,280)
Saturn	SOHC I-4	3.23 (8.20)	0.91	116 (1.9)	2	9.3	85	5,000	45	2,314 (1,050)

* I = in-line, V = vee type.
† From 1996 Manufacturers Motor Vehicle Specifications.
SOURCE: *Wards Automotive*, 1994; *Auto Ind.*, July 1994.

Exhaust valve seats are hardened to prevent recession with unleaded fuel.

It is standard practice to provide pistons with three rings above the wrist pin—two narrow compression rings above one oil scraper ring, with several drain holes from the back of the ring groove to return oil to the crankcase. All compression rings are narrow, are made of cast iron from 0.063 to 0.0787 in (0.160 to 0.200 cm) wide, and have a wear-resistant coating, such as chromium (particularly for the top ring) and tin, or compounds (iron oxide, phosphates), which minimizes the running-in period without danger of scuffing or scoring the cylinders. Oil scraper rings are of steel or cast iron, generally are a little less than 3⁄16 in (0.476 cm) wide, and are provided with internal expander springs to increase pressure against the cylinder walls. Many oil scraper rings, especially those of steel, also use wear-resistant coatings.

Liquid coolant under a pressure of 15 lb/in² (103 kPa) is standard for U.S. cars. Coolant jacket temperatures are controlled by thermostats which open at approximately 195°F (90.6°C), permitting coolant from the cylinder heads to flow to the radiator. All engines either are designed with coolant all around each cylinder or are ''siamesed'' and with jackets the full length of the piston travel.

FOREIGN AUTOMOBILE ENGINES

Foreign automobile engines sold in the United States are increasingly similar to engines produced in the United States. (See Table 9.6.4.) These similarities include size and basic design features. They are mostly four-stroke, Otto cycle engines; the rest are diesels. All engines are liquid-cooled. Engines produced for areas of the world other than

Table 9.6.4 Selected Foreign Automobile Engines

	Cylinders						Published maximums			
Make and model	Type and no.*	Bore, in (cm)	B/S ratio	Displacement, in³ (L)	No. of valves per cyl.	Comp. ratio	bhp	r/min	bhp/L	Car weight, lb (kg)
Audi 90 and 100	DOHC V-6	3.25 (8.26)	0.96	169 (2.8)	4	10.3	172	5,500	61	3,400 (1,542)
BMW325i	DOHC I-6	3.31 (8.41)	1.12	152 (2.5)	4	10.5	189	5,900	76	3,087 (1,400)
Chrysler Colt	SOHC I-4	3.19 (8.10)	0.91	112 (1.8)	4	9.5	113	6,000	63	2,195 (996)
Ford Aspire	SOHC I-4	2.79 (7.09)	0.85	81 (1.3)	2	9.7	63	5,000	48	2,004 (909)
Honda Corp.:										
Accord	SOHC I-4	3.35 (8.50)	0.90	132 (2.2)	4	8.8	130	5,300	59	2,800 (1,270)
Civic	SOHC I-4	2.95 (7.49)	0.89	91 (1.5)	4	9.2	102	5,900	68	2,224 (1,009)
Mazda 626	DOHC I-4	3.30 (8.38)	0.92	122 (2.0)	4	9.0	118	5,500	59	2,606 (1,182)
Mercedes 220	DOHC I-4	3.54 (9.0)	1.04	134 (2.2)	4	9.8	110	5,500	50	3,150 (1,429)
Nissan Centra	DOHC I-4	2.99 (7.60)	0.86	97 (1.6)	4	9.5	110	6,000	69	2,346 (1,064)
Porsche 911	SOHC H-6	3.94 (10.0)	1.31	220 (3.6)	2	11.3	247	6,100	69	3,031 (1,375)
Saab 900	DOHC I-4	3.54 (9.0)	1.00	140 (2.3)	4	10.5	155	4,300	67	2,950 (1,338)
Subaru Legacy	SOHC H-4	3.82 (9.70)	1.29	135 (2.2)	2	9.5	130	5,600	59	2,825 (1,280)
Toyota:										
Camry	DOHC I-4	3.43 (8.71)	0.96	134 (2.2)	4	9.5	130	5,400	59	3,086 (1,400)
Tercel	SOHC I-4	2.87 (7.29)	0.84	89 (1.5)	3	9.3	82	5,200	55	1,975 (896)
VW Jetta	SOHC I-4	3.25 (8.26)	0.89	121 (2.0)	2	10.0	115	5,400	58	2,647 (1,200)
Volvo 850	DOHC I-5	3.32 (8.43)	0.92	149 (2.4)	4	10.5	168	6,200	70	3,280 (1,488)

* I = in-line, V = vee type.
SOURCE: *Ward's Automotive*, 1994; *Auto Ind.*, July 1994.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

the United States exhibit a broader range of characteristics. Very small cars with engines of less than 40 in^3 (0.66 L) and 35 hp are found in some areas. Engines produced for the U.S. market are slightly larger, on average, in terms of piston displacement, than those used elsewhere. Some European engines, however, have very high specific output in terms of horsepower per unit displacement because of taxation based on engine displacement, higher vehicle speed limits, and less severe pollution requirements. Many countries tax larger engines at a higher rate than smaller engines.

Most engines are normally aspirated, although the use of turbocharging is increasing. Displacements range from three cylinders, 61 in^3 (1.0 L); four cylinders, 82 to 156 in^3 (1.35 to 2.6 L); five-cylinders, 109 to 183 in^3 (1.8 to 3.0 L); six cylinders, 152 to 258 in^3 (2.5 to 4.26 L); eight cylinders, 149 to 412 in^3 (2.46 to 6.8 L).

The maximum horsepower of foreign automobile engines ranges from approximately 50 to over 400 hp, equivalent to the range for U.S. engines. For a number of years, power has decreased because of emphasis on fuel economy and emission controls, but power levels have once more increased in response to consumer demand.

A number of foreign engines were considered ''high tech'' engines, with such features as three and four valves per cylinder, aluminum cylinder heads and blocks, and lightweight precision components. These features are now common in all cars produced worldwide. See Tables 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

TRUCK AND BUS ENGINES

Truck and bus engines (Figs. 9.6.19 and 9.6.20) are similar to automobile engines but, in general, are larger, having 300- to 1,000-in^3 (4.6- to 16-L) displacement, are more rugged, and run at lower speeds. Both Otto and diesel cycles are used, with the diesel predominant in the larger sizes. The two-cycle blower scavenged diesel engine with or without a turbocharger is in common use (Fig. 9.6.20). Water cooling is universally used. The gasoline engines are naturally aspirated and have compression ratios slightly lower than automobile engines but are valved

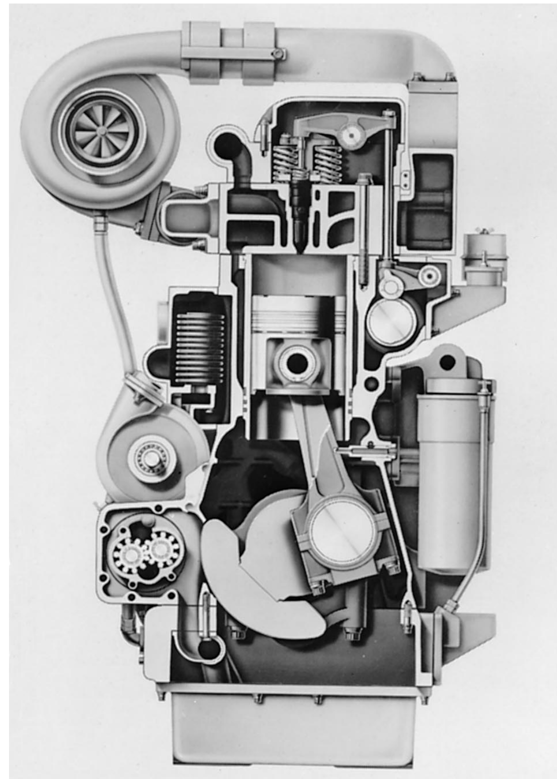


Fig. 9.6.19 Cummins model KT 450-hp turbocharged, four-stroke diesel engine.

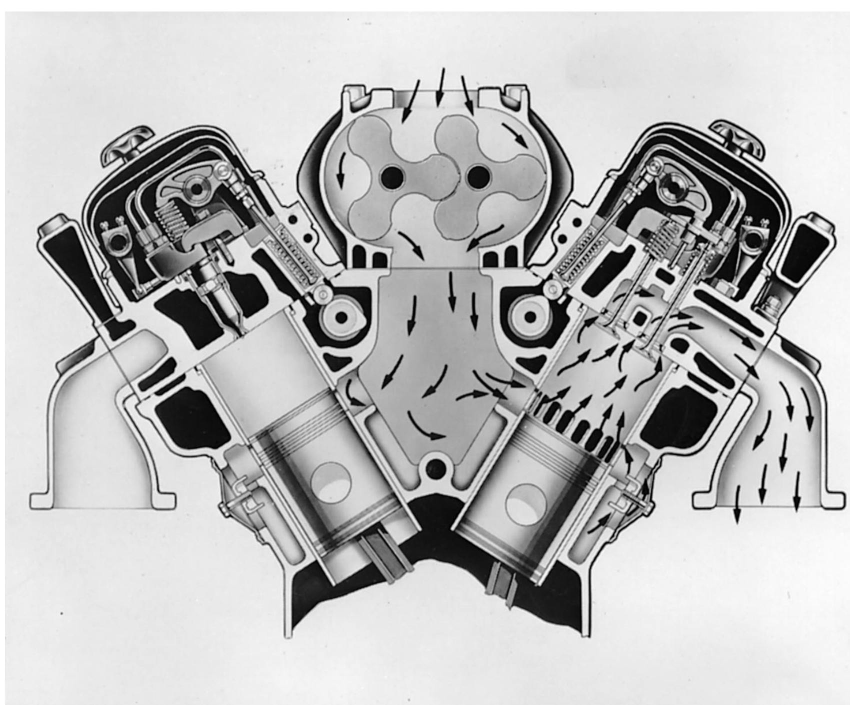


Fig. 9.6.20 Blower-scavenged Detroit diesel model 8V-71N two-stroke diesel engine.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.5 Selected Diesel Engines for Truck, Bus, Tractor, Marine, and Industrial Uses

Make and model	Designed for*	Cylinders No.	Cylinders Bore, in (cm)	Cylinders B/S ratio	Cylinders Displacement, in^3 (cm^3)	Cylinders Compression ratio	Max continuous bhp	at r/min	Max torque, lb·ft (N·m)	at r/min
Allis-Chalmers 2800	Tr, Ind	6	3.88 (9.85)	0.91	301 (4,932)	16.25	68	2,200	225 (305)	1,400
Case 336 BD	Tr, Ind	4	4.63 (11.76)	0.93	336 (5,506)	16.5	72	2,200	281 (381)	1,400
Caterpillar D 348	T, Ind	12	5.41 (13.74)	0.83	1,786 (29,267)	16.5	725	1,800	2,840 (3,850)	1,500
Chrysler Nissan IN675	Ind	6	4.33 (10.99)	0.84	452 (7,407)	16	168	1,800	664 (900)	1,400
Cummins V-785-C	Ind	8	5.50 (14.0)	1.33	785 (12,864)	15.9	220	2,300	560 (759)	1,600
Deere 3164 D	Tr, Ind	3	4.02 (10.21)	0.93	164 (2,687)	16.3†	40	2,200	122 (165)	1,500
Detroit Diesel 8V-71T	T, Tr, Ind	8	4.25 (10.80)	0.85	568 (9,308)	17†	350	2,100	965 (1,312)	1,600
Deutz F6L-714	T, B, Tr, Ind	6	4.75 (12.07)	0.86	579 (9,488)	17.8	117	2,000	376 (510)	1,300
Ford 401-D	Tr	6	4.41 (11.20)	1.00	401 (6,571)	16.5	108	2,300	284 (385)	1,400
GMC DH478	T, B	6	5.13 (13.03)	1.33	478 (7,833)	17.5	155	2,800	337 (457)	2,000
Hercules D-3000	Tr, Ind	6	3.75 (9.53)	0.83	298 (4,883)	17.5	85	2,400	244 (331)	1,400
International DT-407	Tr, Ind	6	4.33 (10.9)	0.89	407 (6,670)	17†	130	2,400	393 (533)	1,800
Mack END 673E	T	6	4.88 (12.40)	0.81	672 (11,012)	16.11	168	2,100	540 (732)	1,400
Murphy MP-321	Ind	6	5.75 (14.61)	1.09	1,013 (16,600)	16	207	1,400	946 (1,283)	800
Oliver 1855	Tr	6	3.88 (9.85)	0.89	310 (5,080)	16	98	2,400	298 (404)	1,600
Perkins 6-354	Tr, Ind	6	3.88 (9.85)	0.78	354 (5,801)	16	88	2,250	288 (390)	1,400
MAN DO826	B	6	4.25 (10.8)	0.86	419 (6,871)	16	270	2,400	710 (960)	1,500

* B = bus; T = truck; Ind = industrial; Tr = tractor.
† Turbocharged.

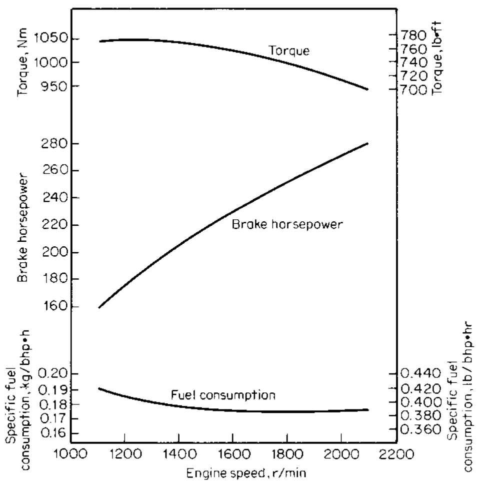


Fig. 9.6.21 Performance data for blower-scavenged Detroit diesel model 8V-71N two-stroke diesel engine. (See Fig. 9.6.20.)

similarly, have similar performance curves, and attain maximum brake horsepower (bhp) (55 to above 300) at a mean piston speed averaging about 2,600 ft/min (13 m/s). Maximum torque is obtained at about 1,500 r/min, appreciably lower than for automobile engines. Diesel engines, which are often supercharged and/or turbocharged, have piston speeds ranging from 1,500 to 2,100 ft/min (7.6 to 11 m/s) and operate at somewhat lower speeds than gasoline engines. Truck and bus gasoline engines can operate at speeds slightly higher than those at which maximum power is attained. Some diesel engines can be operated near the maximum power speed. Most are operated below (Fig. 9.6.21).

Truck and bus engines are usually built with four or six cylinders in line or with eight cylinders in V-type construction. The bore/stroke ratio ranges from about 0.75 to 1.4, the latter engines having the larger values (see Tables 9.6.5 and 9.6.6).

TRACTOR ENGINES

Both spark ignition (gasoline or liquefied petroleum gas) and compression ignition (diesel) engines are used in tractors. Almost all engines above 100 hp are diesels. Most engines are four-cycle, water-cooled, with valve-in-head arrangement. Integral bore, dry-sleeve, or wet-sleeve cylinder liner arrangements are utilized. One-, two-, three-, four-, five-, six-, and eight-cylinder engines are used. All engines except the

Table 9.6.6 Selected Gasoline Engines for Truck, Bus, Tractor, Marine, and Industrial Uses

Make and model	Designed for*	Cylinders No.	Cylinders Bore, in (cm)	Cylinders B/S ratio	Cylinders Displacement, in^3 (L)	Cylinders Compression ratio	Rating† bhp	at r/min	Max torque, lb·ft (N·m)	at r/min
Allis-Chalmers G-153	Ind	4	3.44 (8.74)	0.83	153 (2.5)	8	52	2,400	132 (179)	1,460
Jeep Cherokee	T, Tr, Gp, Ind	I-6	3.88 (9.53)	1.13	242 (4.0)	8.8	190	4,750	215 (292)	1,400
Case 201 G	Tr, Gp, Ind	4	4.0 (10.16)	—	251 (4.1)	7.5	87	2,400	221 (300)	1,400
Chevrolet 350	Gp	V-8	4.0 (10.16)	1.15	350 (5.7)	9.1	210	4,000	—	
Chevrolet 454	T	8	4.25 (10.79)	1.06	454 (7.4)	8.3	250	4,000	365 (495)	2,800
Chrysler H-225	M, Ind	6	3.41 (8.66)	0.83	225 (3.7)	8.4	132	4,000	203 (275)	2,000
Continental R 821-46	Tr, Ind	4	3.03 (7.70)	0.92	95.5 (1.6)	8.6	67.2	5,000	84 (114)	2,400
Diamond Reo 8-250	T, B	8	4.24 (10.79)	1.03	468 (7.7)	7.5	250	3,400	420 (569)	2,400
Dodge CT 900	T	8	4.19 (10.64)	1.12	413 (6.8)	7.5	238	3,600	355 (481)	2,000
Ford 158-G	Tr	3	4.20 (10.67)	1.10	158 (2.6)	7.8	45.7	2,100	120 (163)	1,350
Ford Aerostar	Gp	V-6	3.5 (8.89)	1.11	182 (3.0)	9.2	135	4,600	—	
Ford F150	T	I-6	4.0 (10.16)	1.00	300 (4.9)	8.8	145	3,400	—	
Hercules G-3400	Tr, Ind	6	4.0 (10.16)	0.89	339 (5.6)	7.5	143	2,800	311 (422)	1,400
International V5-401	T	8	4.13 (10.49)	1.10	400 (6.6)	7.7	226	3,600	355 (481)	2,000
Minneapolis-Moline HD 425	Tr	6	4.25 (10.79)	0.85	425 (7.0)	8.1	133	2,000	378 (512)	800
Oliver 1655	Tr	6	3.75 (9.53)	0.94	265 (4.4)	8.5	84	2,200	220 (298)	1,300
Volkswagen 124A	Ind	4	3.38 (8.59)	1.24	96.7 (1.6)	7.7	53	3,600	75.5 (102)	2,500

* B = bus; T = truck; Tr = tractor; M = marine; Gp = general purpose; Ind = industrial.
† hp without accessories.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

six-cylinder are usually in-line in order to minimize the width of the hood in the interest of driver visibility. Tractor applications have a high load factor, are relatively low-speed, and deliver high low-speed torque (Fig. 9.6.22). Future off-road engines are expected to be emission-controlled.

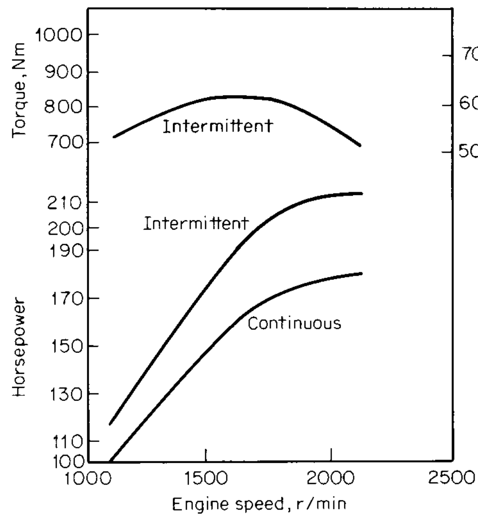


Fig. 9.6.22 Performance of John Deere model 6351 A, a diesel engine.

STATIONARY ENGINES

Stationary engines may be either Otto or diesel cycle, use either liquid or gaseous fuel, and use the two- or four-stroke cycle. The power output ranges up to about 48,000 bhp per engine. Piston rods, which permit the crankcase to be isolated from blowby gases and the bottom face of the piston to function as an air pump, are commonly used. Nearly all engines are now single-acting. In the larger sizes, cylinders are built up of several parts, cylinder liners are used, and long pistons for single-acting diesel engines usually have about five piston rings. The valves are usually massive and in the larger sizes may be cooled. The exhaust pipe is sometimes water-cooled, and the pistons for large-bore engines are always liquid-cooled with oil or water. In general, there is much less integral construction (Fig. 9.6.23) in the large stationary engine than in the automobile type.

An interesting medium-speed, four-stroke diesel engine, V-type design with rotating pistons, is illustrated in Fig. 9.6.23. The symmetric piston is cooled with lubricating oil, and besides the reciprocating motion, it performs a slow rotating motion around its longitudinal axis. At each stroke, a new oil-wetted portion of the piston is always in contact with the pressure side of the liner, thus minimizing wear, oil consumption, and local overheating of the liner resulting from blowby.

Stationary engines usually operate at constant speed and are governed by throttling the charge of the Otto engine and by varying the amount of fuel injected into the diesel engine. Compression ratios as low as 6 : 1 are used with spark ignition engines and as low as 12 : 1 with compression ignition engines. Stationary engines are usually built with 1 to 12 cylinders, with cylinders in a vertical line, or with a V-type arrangement having up to 16 or more cylinders.

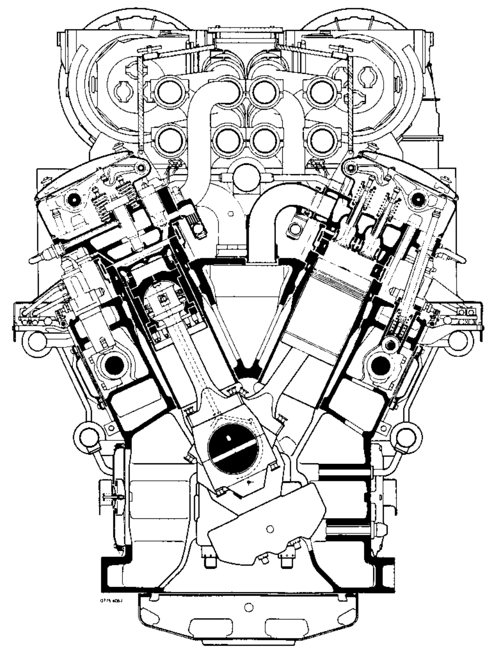


Fig. 9.6.23 Cross section of Sulzer V-type ZV-40 engine. Bore = 400 mm; stroke = 480 mm.

MARINE ENGINES

(See also Sec. 11.3)

Marine engines may be either Otto or diesel cycle and may be normally aspirated or supercharged. Outboard engines range in power from less than 1 to more than 200 bhp and are generally of the two-cycle gasoline type. Modified automotive gasoline engines are also used in larger boats. Diesel engines range in power from below 20 to 48,000 bhp and may be either two- or four-cycle. Both automotive and stationary types are used in marine work; consequently, wide variations in specific weights are found. (See Tables 9.6.5, 9.6.6, and 9.6.7).

The outboard two-cycle engines (see Table 9.6.7) have crankcase compression (Fig. 9.6.24) and may have two ports, three ports, or two

Table 9.6.7 Selected Outboard Engines

Make and model	Cylinders: Type and no.*	Bore, in (cm)	B/S ratio	Displacement, in³ (cm³)	Rating, bhp	at r/min	Weight, lb (kg)
Evinrude Yachtwin 6	I-2	1.937 (4.92)	1.14	10 (164)	6	5,000	56 (25.5)
Evinrude 25	I-2	3.000 (7.62)	1.33	31.8 (521)	25	5,000	117 (53.6)
Evinrude 90	V-4	3.500 (8.89)	1.35	99.6 (1,632)	90	5,000	301 (136)
Yamaha Force 9.9	I-2	2.250 (5.71)	1.16	14.2 (232)	9.9	5,050	91 (41.5)
Yamaha Force C85	I-3	3.313 (8.41)	1.18	69.6 (1,140)	85	5,000	248 (113)
Johnson 15	I-2	2.375 (5.56)	1.35	15.6 (255)	15	5,500	77 (35)
Johnson 225	V-6	3.685 (8.89)	1.29	183.3 (3,000)	225	5,500	470 (212)
Mercury 8	I-2	2.13 (5.4)	1.20	12.8 (210)	8	5,000	69 (31)
Mercury 100	I-4	3.5 (8.9)	1.19	113 (1,848)	100	5,000	348 (158)
Mercury 200	V-6	3.5 (8.9)	1.32	153 (2,507)	200	5,500	422 (192)

* I = in-line, V = vee type.
SOURCE: Manufacturer's publications.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

ports with a rotary or reed crankcase inlet valve for the highest outputs (Fig. 9.6.25). Otto four-cycle engines have either L-head or valve-in-head construction, and diesel four-cycle engines are invariably of valve-in-head construction.

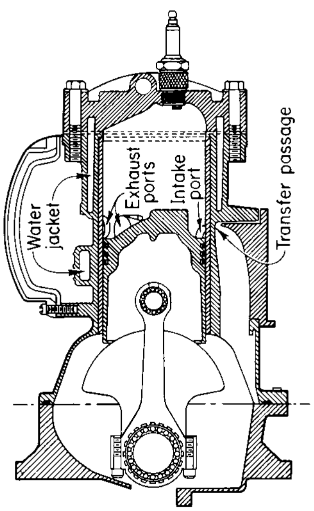


Fig. 9.6.24 Johnson two-cycle, 30-hp outboard motor.

Regular gasoline is required for Otto cycle engines, the fuel and lubricating oil being mixed for outboard two-cycle engines. A comparison of a number of fuel-consumption curves for various types of engine shows the large low-speed marine diesel engine as having the lowest specific fuel consumption (Fig. 9.6.26).

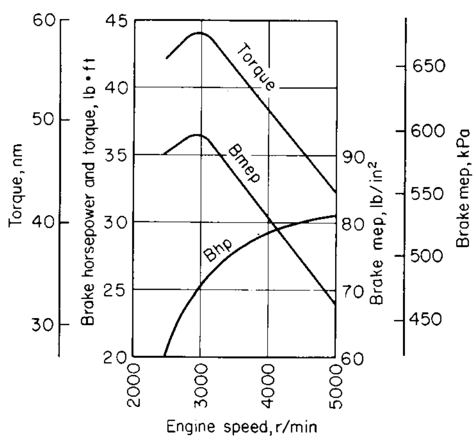


Fig. 9.6.25 Performance of Johnson outboard motor.

Low-speed engines are directly connected to the propellers, and high-speed engines are connected through reduction gearing. Outboard engines have maximum speeds of 4,500 to 6,000 r/min with the piston speeds ranging from 1,000 to about 2,500 ft/min (5.0 to 12.7 m/s).

Maximum engine speed is obtained at the intersection of the propeller/horsepower and the maximum horsepower curves (Fig. 9.6.27). This may occur well below the speed for maximum horsepower or beyond this speed. The effect of throttling to reduce speed is to increase the specific fuel consumption considerably.

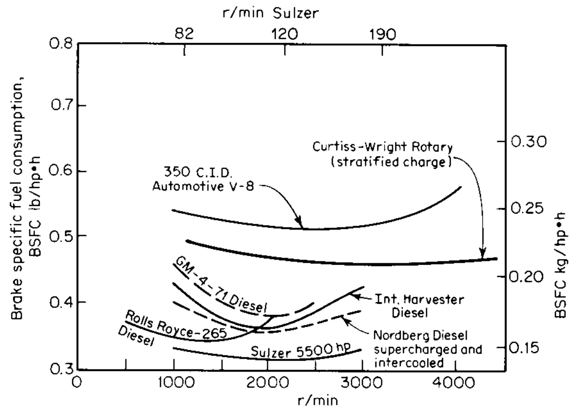


Fig. 9.6.26 Specific fuel consumption curves.

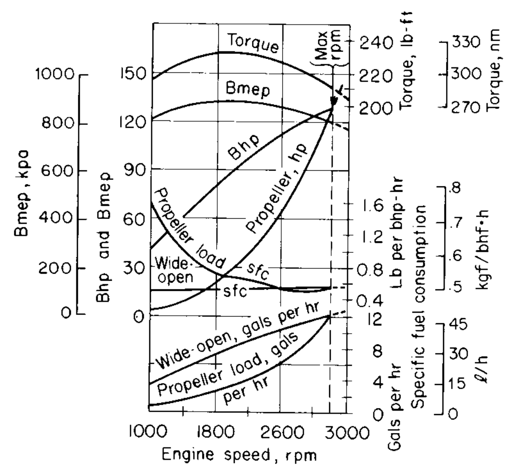


Fig. 9.6.27 Performance of six-cylinder 3⁷⁄₁₆ × 4¾ in (8.73 × 12.07 cm) Chrysler marine engine with 7 : 1 compression ratio.

SMALL INDUSTRIAL, UTILITY, AND RECREATIONAL VEHICLE GASOLINE ENGINES

The Otto cycle engine with two or fewer cylinders is predominant in this class (Table 9.6.8). Fuel economy is generally not a major concern, whereas simplicity and performance are important. For reciprocating engines, the L-head design is predominant. Both high- and low-speed engines are used, depending on the application. Engines of this type generally employ air cooling of the cylinder and charge cooling of the interior. Water or liquid cooling is used on a few high-output small engines. Higher-mep air-cooled engines used forced fan cooling. Two-stroke engines are often used in applications where minimum weight and cost are important.

Carburetion, ignition systems, and other auxiliary equipment are usually less sophisticated than those on larger engines. A given engine is often used in a wide range of applications.

Engines used in motorcycles and in all-terrain vehicles are generally very sophisticated and constructed with great precision. Features such as overhead valves and overhead cams are common. The specific output of these engines is often high as measured by power per unit of piston displacement.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.8 Selected Small Gasoline Engines

Make and model	Cycles	Type	Cylinders No.	Bore, in (cm)	B/S ratio	Displacement, in^3 (cm^3)	Compression ratio	Valve location*	Continuous rating, bhp	at r/min	Max torque, lb·ft (N·m)	at r/min	Weight, lb (kg)
Briggs & Stratton 100900	4	V	1	2.5 (6.50)	1.17	10.43 (171)	6.2	L	3.40	3,600	5.9 (8.0)	3,100	30.5 (13.9)
Briggs & Stratton 80400	4	H	1	2.38 (6.04)	1.36	7.75 (127)	6.2	L	2.55	3,600	4.6 (6.2)	3,100	25.25 (11.9)
Chrysler 500	2	H, V	1	2.00 (6.45)	1.26	5.00 (82)	6.5		3.33	7,000	3 (4.1)	5,000	8.75 (3.9)
Homelite XL-123	2	H	1	1.81 (4.60)	1.31	3.60 (59)	8.3						13.0 (5.9)
Kohler MV18	4	H, V	2	3.12 (7.92)	1.13	42.2 (692)	6	L	18	3,600	26 (35)	2,600	130 (59)
O & R 13A	2	V	1	1.25 (3.18)	1.15	1.34 (22)	9		1.0	6,300	0.88 (1.2)	5,200	3.75 (1.70)
Onan AI	4	V	1	2.75 (6.99)	1.10	14.90 (244)	6.25	L	3.86	3,600	8 (10.8)	2,100	150 (68.2)
Rockwell Zf-400	2	V	2	2.56 (6.50)	1.00	24.29 (398)	7.5		24.0	6,250	28 (38)	6,250	62 (28.2)
Tecumseh LAV 35-1A	4	V	1	2.50 (6.35)	1.36	9.06 (149)	—	L	2.27	2,400	5.25 (7.12)	3,100	21.5 (9.77)
Tecumseh HH160	4	H	1	3.5 (8.89)	1.22	27.66 (453)	8.7	I	16.0	3,600	25 (33.9)	2,400	84 (38.2)
WE400 Wisconsin TRA-10D	4	V	1	3.3 (8.4)	1.20	23.7 (388)	6.5	L	10.0	3,400	16.5 (22.4)	2,800	80 (36.4)
Fichtel & Sachs KM 914	4	H	1	—	—	18.5 (303)	8	RC	20	5,000	—	—	56 (25.5)

* I = valve in head; L = L head; RC = rotary combustion.
SOURCE: *Auto. Ind.*, **48**, no. 7, Apr. 1, 1973, pp. 104–106.

Table 9.6.9 Selected Medium-Size Diesel Engines*

Make and model	Cylinder arrangement†	Cycles	Cylinders No.	Bore, in (cm)	B/S ratio	Displacement, in^3 (L)	Compression ratio	Max rating, bhp.	at r/min	Weight, lb (kg)
Alco 251	V	4	12	9.0 (22.86)	0.86	8,016 (131.4)	11.5	3,150	1,000	35,581 (16,152)
DeLaval GVB-16	V	4	16	13.0 (33.0)	0.87	31,856 (522.0)	—	2,900	1,000	141,000 (64,005)
Electro-Motive 12-645	V	2	12	9.125 (22.0)	0.92	7,740 (128.4)	16	2,950	950	28,600 (11,350)
Fairbanks-Morse 12-38D 1/8	OP	2	12	8.13 (20.65)	0.81	12,443 (203.9)	16.1	3,840	900	45,000 (20,430)
White-Superior 40-VX-12	V	4	12	10.0 (25.4)	0.95	9,896 (162.2)	—	1,800	1,000	—

* ''Diesel and Gas Turbine Catalog,'' 1994. All engines are turbocharged.
† V = V type; OP = opposed.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES

Diesel engines are used for locomotive service because of high thermal efficiency (overall diesel brake thermal efficiency of about 38 to 40 percent with the net locomotive traction efficiency of about 32 percent for a diesel locomotive, compared with 6 percent for a steam locomotive), high availability for service, elimination of destructive pounding of rails, and elimination of shutdown fuel losses. The locomotive diesels are usually lighter, have lower displacement per cylinder, but higher outputs per cubic inch of displacement than the corresponding stationary diesel engine. These engines are built with 4 to 20 cylinders. Usually one engine is used per locomotive, and one or more locomotives are used per train. On an experimental basis, locomotive diesel engines have used coal-water slurries and natural gas as fuel. The convenience and low cost of conventional liquid diesel fuel will cause liquid fuels to predominate into the foreseeable future. (See Table. 9.6.9.)

AIRCRAFT ENGINES

Small aircraft piston engines are air-cooled and invariably four-stroke. All types are naturally aspirated or supercharged. These engines have the lowest specific weight of piston engines (Table 9.6.10). Aircraft engines always have valve-in-head construction; they also have low specific fuel consumption, and the guaranteed minimum may be as low as 0.40 lb (0.18 kg)/(bhp · h). Maximum cruising bmep ranges from 100 to 150 lb/in^2 (690 to 1,030 kPa), while takeoff bmep ranges from 120 to 200 lb/in^2 (830 to 1,380 kPa), depending principally on the compression ratio, fuel, and supercharge.

Aircraft engines are valved to obtain high mean effective pressure at rated speed. High-output engines usually operate with compression ratios and supercharging levels that prohibit full-throttle operation at or near sea level with the specified fuel. Such engines can be operated at full throttle at or above a critical altitude, beyond which the power decreases with an increase in altitude. Below the critical altitude, the power decreases with a decrease in altitude, at constant intake-manifold pressure, because of the increase in exhaust back pressure and ambient temperature. Turbocharged engines, however, maintain essentially constant-power with constant manifold pressure from sea level to a critical altitude, which can be as high as 20,000 ft (6,100 m).

The performance of an aircraft engine varies with speed, manifold pressure, and altitude. At any given speed and with a fixed supercharger or blower ratio (supercharger r/min to engine r/min) and wide-open throttle, the bhp of an engine varies almost linearly with the density of the atmosphere. This characteristic makes it possible to estimate the power curves at altitude if the sea-level output is known. The power at 20,000-ft (6,100-m) altitude is about 50 percent of the sea-level wide-open-throttle output for any given speed.

Low specific fuel consumption is obtained by operating with reduced r/min for the desired power with a lean mixture setting, the optimum output at this point being about one-half to two-thirds of the normal rated output of the engine.

Aircraft engine cylinders are limited to a maximum diameter of about 6 in (0.15 m) by piston cooling and knocking difficulties that arise with large cylinders, high compression ratios, and high intake manifold pressures. The bore/stroke ratio is commonly above 1.0. The larger piston engine sizes are being replaced by turbine-type engines.

Piston aircraft engines are mostly of the horizontally opposed design (desirable profile) with an even number of cylinders, usually four, six, or eight. They are equipped with a dual ignition system, resulting in more reliable combustion.

WANKEL (ROTARY) ENGINES

The Wankel (rotary) SI engine is used in the Mazda RX series. A triangular rotor rotates on an eccentric shaft inside an epitrochoidal housing. The rotor tips are in constant contact with the housing and form three working chambers. The operating cycle (Fig. 9.6.28) follows the four-stroke cycle principle, although the output shaft rotates at 3 times rotor speed, providing one power stroke per crankshaft revolution (as in the single-cylinder two-cycle). A fixed gear meshes with an internal gear in the rotor to maintain the proper relationship between the rotor and housing. Housing cooling is by either water or air and rotor cooling by oil or fuel/air charge. Auxiliary equipment (fuel system, ignition system, etc.) is similar to that used on piston engines. A major problem is the sealing grid (90° intersection of seals and single-line seal at apexes of rotor), and this tends to produce high hydrocarbon emissions.

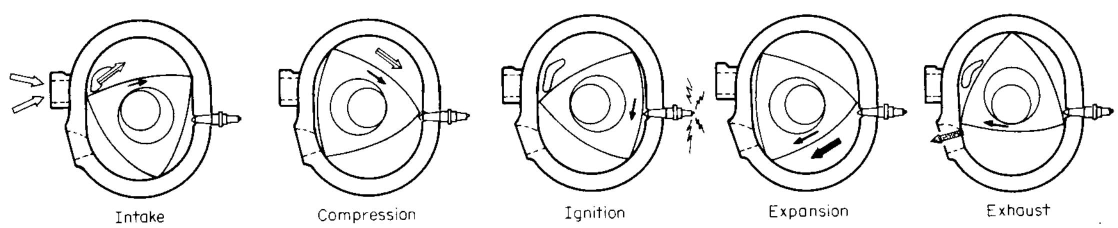


Fig. 9.6.28 Operating cycle of Wankel rotating combustion engine.

Table 9.6.10 Selected Piston-Type Aircraft Engines

Make and model	Cylinders: No.	Cylinders: Arrangements*	Cylinders: Bore, in (cm)	Cylinders: Stroke, in (cm)	Cylinders: Displacement, in^3 (cm^3)	Ratings (METO)†: Comp. ratio	Ratings (METO)†: bhp‡	Ratings (METO)†: r/min	Ratings (METO)†: At sea level (SL) or altitude, ft	Weight§: bmep at max bhp, lb/in^2 (kPa)	Weight§: Engine, dry, lb (kg)	Fuel octane no. required
Avco Lycoming												
0-320-E	4	H	5.13 (13.03)	3.88 (9.86)	319.8 (5,240.6)	7.0	150	2,700	SL	138 (952)	244 (110.4)	80/87
I0-360-A	4	H	5.13 (13.03)	4.38 (9.86)	361.0 (5,915.7)	8.7	200	2,700	SL	163 (1,120)	293 (132.6)	100/130
TIGO-541-E	6	H	5.13 (13.03)	4.38 (9.86)	541.5 (8,873.6)	7.3	425	3,200	15,000	195 (1,340)	700 (316.8)	100/130
Teledyne Continental												
0-200	4	H	4.06 (10.31)	3.88 (9.86)	201 (3,293.8)	7.1	100	2,750	SL	143 (986)	190 (86.0)	80/87
I0-470	6	H	5.0 (12.7)	4.0 (10.16)	471 (7,718.3)	8.6	260	2,600	SL	166 (1,140)	465 (210.5)	100/130
GTSIO-520-F	6	H	5.25 (13.34)	4.0 (10.16)	520 (8,521.3)	7.5	435	3,400	19,000	195 (1,340)	647 (292.8)	100/130

* H = horizontal (production of radial and vertical cylinder arrangements has been discontinued).
† METO = maximum except during takeoff.
‡ Takeoff power is usually higher than the recommended maximum continuous power.
§ Weights are for dry engines without hub or starter.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.11 Data on Fuel Properties

Fuel	Formula (phase)	Molecular weight	Specific gravity (density* kg/m³)	Heat of vaporization, kJ/kg†	Specific heat: Liquid, kJ/(kg·K)	Specific heat: Vapor c_p, kJ/(kg·K)	Higher heating value, MJ/kg	Lower heating value, MJ/kg	LHV of stoich. mixture, MJ/kg	$(A/F)_s$	$(F/A)_s$	Fuel octane rating: RON	Fuel octane rating: MON
Practical fuels													
Gasoline	$C_nH_{1.87n}(l)$	~110	0.72–0.78	305	2.4	~1.7	47.3	44.0	2.83	14.6	0.0685	92–98	80–90
Light diesel	$C_nH_{1.8n}(l)$	~170	0.84–0.88	270	2.2	~1.7	44.8	42.5	2.74	14.5	0.0690	—	—
Heavy diesel	$C_nH_{1.7n}(l)$	~200	0.82–0.95	230	1.9	~1.7	43.8	41.4	2.76	14.4	0.0697	—	—
Natural gas‡	$C_nH_{3.8n}N_{0.1n}(g)$	~18	(~0.79†)	—	—	~2	50	45	2.9	14.5	0.069	—	—
Pure hydrocarbons													
Methane	$CH_4(g)$	16.04	(0.72*)	509	0.63	2.2	55.5	50.0	2.72	17.23	0.0580	120	120
Propane	$C_3H_8(g)$	44.10	0.51 (2.0*)	426	2.5	1.6	50.4	46.4	2.75	15.67	0.0638	112	97
Isooctane	$C_8H_{18}(l)$	114.23	0.692	308	2.1	1.63	47.8	44.3	2.75	15.13	0.0661	100	100
Cetane	$C_{16}H_{34}(l)$	226.44	0.773	358		1.6	47.3	44.0	2.78	14.82	0.0675	—	—
Benzene	$C_6H_6(l)$	78.11	0.879	433	1.72	1.1	41.9	40.2	2.82	13.27	0.0753		115
Toluene	$C_7H_8(l)$	92.14	0.867	412	1.68	1.1	42.5	40.6	2.79	13.50	0.0741	120	109
Alcohols													
Methanol	$CH_4O(l)$	32.04	0.792	1,103	2.6	1.72	22.7	20.0	2.68	6.47	0.155	106	92
Ethanol	$C_2H_6(l)$	46.07	0.785	840	2.5	1.93	29.7	26.9	2.69	9.00	0.111	107	89
Other fuels													
Carbon	$C(s)$	12.01	~2‡	—	—	—	33.8	33.8	2.70	11.51	0.0869		
Carbon monoxide	$CO(g)$	28.01	(1.25*)	—	—	1.05	10.1	10.1	2.91	2.467	0.405		
Hydrogen	$H_2(g)$	2.015	(0.090*)	—	—	1.44	142.0	120.0	3.40	34.3	0.0292		

(l) = liquid phase; (g) = gaseous phase; (s) = solid phase; RON = research octane number; MON = motor octane number.
* Density in kg/m³ at 0°C and 1 atm.
† At 1 atm and 25°C for liquid fuels; at 1 atm and boiling temperature for gaseous fuels.
‡ Typical values.

SOURCES: E. M. Goodger, ''Hydrocarbon Fuels; Production, Properties and Performance of Liquids and Gases,'' Macmillan, London, 1975. E. F. Obert, ''Internal Combustion Engines and Air Pollution,'' Intext Educational Publishers, 1973. C. F. Taylor, ''The Internal Combustion Engine in Theory and Practice,'' vol. 1, MIT Press, 1966. J. W. Rose and J. R. Cooper (eds.), ''Technical Data on Fuel,'' 7th ed., British National Committee, World Energy Conference, London, 1977.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Advantages include small size, low weight, simple and fewer components (compared with piston-type four-cycle engines), superior breathing, no valves (rotor and its seals serve as valves), lower friction, low-octane fuel requirement, low NO emissions, and no reciprocating unbalance.

FUELS

Fuels for internal combustion engines are predominantly petroleum products. Natural and manufactured gases are also used in limited quantities. Data on properties of fuels which are commonly used for internal combustion engines are summarized in Table 9.6.11. Additional details on fuels are given in Sec. 7.1.

Gasoline

Gasoline consists of various amounts of many hydrocarbons, each having its vapor, pressure, and temperature characteristics. Also included are small amounts of additives such as knock suppressers, deposit modifiers, antioxidants, metal deactivators, antirust agents, anti-icing agents, detergents, upper cylinder lubricants, and dyes. Different grades of gasoline are marketed on the basis of octane number. The overall volatility of a gasoline sample is specified in U.S. industry by the ASTM Distillation Test (D86) and the ASTM Vapor Pressure Test (D323, Reid Method). The distillation test records the increasing temperature of the vapor in the neck of a flask vs. percent evaporated as 100 mL of fuel is gradually heated and distilled. The vapor pressure test gives the pressure in a split-chamber bomb which contains the fuel sample and room air in thermal equilibrium with a 100°F (311 K) temperature bath. The pressure, corrected to standard initial bomb air conditions, gives the **Reid vapor pressure (RVP)** of the gasoline. Typical results for summer- and winter-grade gasolines are given in Table 9.6.12.

In general, volatility is specified by giving the initial boiling point (IBP); the 10, 50, and 90 percent evaporation points; and the endpoint (EP) temperatures as well as the Reid vapor pressure. These data indicate the effects of fuel volatility on engine performance, e.g., ease of starting, warm-up, and fuel economy (Figs. 9.6.29 and 9.6.30.)

Reformulated Gasoline (RFG) The composition of gasoline is known to affect the exhaust and evaporative emissions. The C_4 and C_5 paraffins and olefins (photochemically active) are the main contributors to evaporative losses. Reformulated gasolines have much reduced amounts, and thus lower vapor pressures (Reid vapor pressure maximum of 48 kPa) and a maximum of 6 percent by volume olefins. Benzene, a toxic compound, is limited to a maximum of 0.85 percent by volume, while aromatics (photochemically active, deposits) as a class are limited to 25 percent by volume. Oxygenated fuel components (methanol, ethanol, etc.) are added at a level of 1.8 to 2.2 percent by weight. This reduces CO somewhat, especially from older vehicles without feedback fuel controls. For the federal RFG standards, sulfur is limited to 130 ppm; this lowers acid emissions and lengthens engine life. Further, the ASTM 90 percent distillation temperature is limited to 165°C. This minimizes deposits and leads to less enrichment required upon cold starting. Such a fuel may give fewer miles per gallon. The California Air Resources Board (CARB) applies even more stringent limits, with sulfur held to 30 ppm and the 90 percent distillation temperature limited to 143°C.

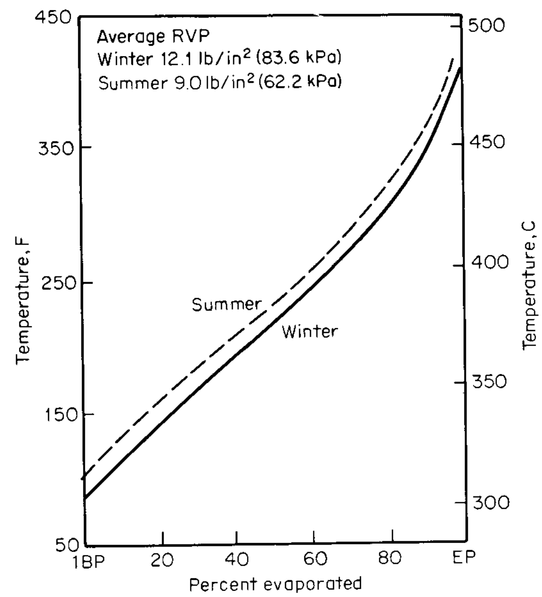


Fig. 9.6.29 Distillation curves for typical winter and summer gasolines. *(Ethyl Corp.)*

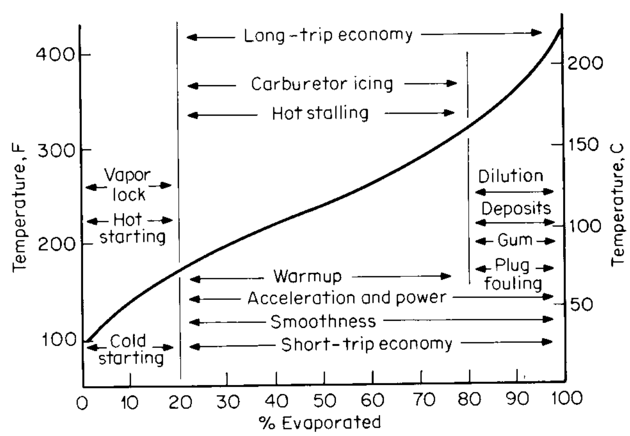


Fig. 9.6.30 Effects of volatility characteristics on engine performance.

Diesel Fuels Automotive and railroad diesel fuels are derived from petroleum refinery products which are referred to as **middle distillates;** the latter have a higher boiling range than gasoline. The properties of commercial distillate diesel fuels depend on the refinery practices employed and the nature of the crude oil from which they are derived, and thus vary substantially. Such fuels generally boil over a range between 163 and 371°C (325 and 700°F). Their makeup can represent various

Table 9.6.12 Average Volatility Characteristics of U.S. Motor Gasolines

	Summer				Winter			
	Premium		Regular		Premium		Regular	
IBP temp, °F (°C)	93	(34)	94	(34)	82	(28)	82	(28)
10% temp, °F (°C)	126	(52)	125	(52)	107	(42)	107	(42)
50% temp, °F (°C)	216	(102)	207	(97)	207	(97)	198	(92)
90% temp, °F (°C)	321	(160)	338	(170)	316	(157)	333	(167)
Endpoint temp, °F (°C)	402	(205)	414	(212)	397	(203)	407	(209)
RVP, lb/in^2 (kPa)	8.9	(61.3)	8.8	(60.6)	12.3	(84.8)	12.1	(83.4)

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.13 Detailed Requirements for Diesel Fuel Oils[a,h,i] (ASTM D975)

Grade of diesel fuel oil	Flash point, °C (°F)	Cloud point °C (°F)	Water and sediment, vol %	Carbon residue on, 10 percent residuum, %	Ash, wt %	Distillation temperatures, °C (°F), at 90% point	Distillation temperatures, °C (°F), at 90% point	Viscosity kinematic, cSt (mm^2/s), at 40°C	Viscosity kinematic, cSt (mm^2/s), at 40°C	Viscosity, Saybolt, SUS at 100°F	Viscosity, Saybolt, SUS at 100°F	Sulfur,[d] wt %	Copper strip corrosion	Cetane no.
	Min	Max	Max	Max	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Max	Max	Min
No. 1-D—a volatile distillate fuel oil for engines in service requiring frequent speed and load changes	38 (100)	[b]	0.05	0.15	0.01	—	288 (550)	1.3	2.4	—	34.4	0.50	No. 3	40[f]
No. 2-D—a distillate fuel oil of lower volatility for engines in industrial and heavy mobile service	52 (125)	[b]	0.05	0.35	0.01	282[c] (540)	338 (640)	1.9	4.1	32.6	40.1	0.50	No. 3	40[f]
No. 4-D—a fuel oil for low- and medium-speed engines	55 (130)	[b]	0.05	—	0.10	—	—	5.5	24.0	45.0	125.0	2.0	—	30[f]

[a] To meet special operating conditions, modifications of individual limiting requirements may be agreed upon between purchaser, seller, and manufacturer.
[b] It is unrealistic to specify low-temperature properties that will ensure satisfactory operation on a broad basis. Satisfactory operation should be achieved in most cases if the cloud point (or wax appearance point) is specified at 6°C (10°F) above the tenth percentile minimum ambient temperature for the area in which the fuel will be used. The tenth percentile minimum ambient temperatures for the months of October, November, December, January, February, and March are given in ASTM D 975 in maps for the 48 contiguous states and Alaska. This guidance is of a general nature; some equipment designs, use of flow improver additives, fuel properties, and/or operations may allow higher or require lower cloud point fuels. Appropriate low-temperature operability properties should be agreed on between the fuel supplier and purchaser for the intended use and expected ambient temperatures.
[c] When cloud point less than −12°C (10°F) is specified, the minimum viscosity shall be 1.7 cSt and the 90% point shall be waived.
[d] In countries outside the U.S., other sulfur limits may apply.
[e] Where cetane number by method D 613 is not available, method D 976 may be used as an approximation. Where there is disagreement, method D 613 shall be the preferred method.
[f] Low atmospheric temperatures as well as engine operation at high altitudes may require system use of fuels with higher cetane ratings.
[g] Millimeter squared per second (official SI unit) (Note: 1 cSt = 1 mm^2/s).
[h] The values in SI units are to be regarded as the standard. The values in U.S. Customary system units are for information only.
[i] Nothing in this specification shall preclude observance of federal, state, or local regulations which may be more restrictive.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

combinations of volatility, ignition quality, viscosity, sulfur level, gravity, and other characteristics. Additives may be used to enhance specific properties. The SAE recommended practices are described in SAE J313 (March 1992). Permissible limits of significant diesel fuel properties are summarized in ASTM's classification chart D975, reproduced as Table 9.6.13.

Alternative Fuels Other than gasoline and diesel fuels, alternative fuels used in various parts of the world include propane, frequently referred to as LPG; hydrous ethyl alcohol (ethanol), particularly in Brazil; gasohol, a blend of 10 percent by volume of gasoline and 90 percent by volume of denatured anhydrous ethanol. Other possible fuels include compressed or liquefied natural gas (CNG or LNG)—primarily methane, other alcohols—particularly methanol, which is also used in racing, and biomass fuels. Details can be found in SAE J1297.

GAS EXCHANGE PROCESSES

Intake Manifolds The intake manifold distributes the air (diesel) or the air and fuel (Otto) to various cylinders of a multicylinder engine. Intake manifolds are **streamlined** (always with diesel), the **rake type,** or a combination of both. The sections may be either circular or rectangular. In some cases, the circular sections are combined with a flat **floor** or bottom to provide more surface on which the liquid fuel may spread and be vaporized. **Dams** are also used to prevent liquid fuel from flowing along the manifold floor. In carbureted engines, the updraft manifold should have a **riser velocity** of not less than 40 ft/s (12 m/s) to entrain or lift the liquid fuel particles from the carburetor to the **distributor** section of the manifold. This determines the minimum wide-open throttle speed for satisfactory operation. The downdraft manifold permits larger areas and lower velocities between the carburetor and manifold.

The overlapping of the intake valve periods produces complicated disturbances in the intake manifold and has resulted in the use of dual manifolds in some engines with six or more cylinders. V-8 automobile engines have complicated dual manifolds, integrally cast, with each manifold usually feeding two cylinders of each bank. Port fuel injection permits extensive manifold tuning because the wall wetting produced by the carburetor is eliminated. Rotary engines have a simple intake system requirement. A separate carburetor or fuel injector may be used to feed each chamber.

Preheating the intake air and controlling its temperature are desirable in that they reduce air density variation and thereby allow better control of the mixture ratio for economy and emission control. In carbureted engines, carburetor icing is thereby minimized and the need for an exhaust manifold crossover valve reduced. However, air preheating is undesirable in that it reduces volumetric efficiency, heats the carburetor, and evaporates fuel in the float chamber, and may increase intake system coking. While preheating the fuel is also undesirable in that the light fuel fractions will be lost by vaporization, many intake manifolds for liquid fuels have a **hot spot** which receives heat from the exhaust (usually thermostatically controlled) and on which the fuel particles impinge upon leaving the manifold riser. The dew points or condensation temperatures for fuel in an air/fuel mixture depend on the fuel, air/fuel ratio, and total pressure (Table 9.6.14), and they may be determined from equilibrium air distillation data.

Exhaust Manifolds In addition to adequate flow area, the most important consideration in exhaust manifold design is expansion. Small multicylinder engines employ a one-piece exhaust manifold. This is anchored at the center of the engine, and elongated holes are provided at other points for expansion. Large engines employ multipiece manifolds with expansion joints. They are usually water-cooled in marine applications to prevent strain and for safety reasons. In turbocharged engines, exhaust manifolds are usually insulated to conserve energy.

Manifold flow area should be large enough to avoid local back pressure buildup during exhaust and in connection with the total exhaust system should not raise back pressure excessively at maximum flow. A flow area of 0.7 times the intake manifold area may be used for four-cycle engines. For two-cycle engines, the exhaust flow area usually exceeds the intake flow area. Overlapping of the exhaust valve periods in multicylinder engines makes multiple manifolds desirable.

Mufflers (see Sec. 12.6) In order to be efficient as sound silencers, exhaust mufflers must decrease the exhaust gas velocity and either absorb the sound waves or cancel them by interference with other waves from the same source. Mufflers should have volumes 6 to 8 times the piston displacement and may contain baffles with or without holes. Mufflers that cancel sound waves by interference usually break the waves into two parts which follow different paths and meet again, out of phase, before leaving the muffler (Davis et al., NACA Rept. 1192).

Exhaust **muffle pits** are used with large engines, are usually made of concrete, have a volume about 20 times the piston displacement, and may be open or provided with baffling or partly filled with loose stone through which the gases must pass. A stack is usually provided for the escape of the gases, and a drain for the discharge of the condensed water from the exhaust products.

Exhaust **back pressure** should be kept to a minimum since an increase of 1 lb/in^2 (6.9 kPa) in back pressure decreases the maximum power output about 2 percent, about 1 percent being due to more exhaust work and the balance of the effect of increased clearance gas pressure on volumetric efficiency.

Supercharging

Supercharging increases the amount of charge per cycle (above that of the normally aspirated engine) by increasing its pressure and hence its density. Supercharging permits more fuel to be burned and is a practical means to increase engine power, but it increases mechanical and thermal stresses in the engine. For aircraft piston engines, it is a means to high-power output for takeoff and to offset the rare atmosphere at high altitude. For diesel engines supercharging results in smaller and lighter power plants. It is especially practical for diesel engines because supercharging does not add to the fuel quality required, and because diesel engines do not use combustion air as effectively as spark ignited engines.

Three alternative methods can be used to achieve supercharging. In **mechanical supercharging,** a positive-displacement type of Roots blower or compressor is geared directly to the engine shaft and thus is driven by engine power. This type is desirable for variable-speed engines (diesel railcar) where high torque is required at various speeds, since the pressure and capacity characteristics of this type do not decrease with speed. In **turbocharging,** exhaust energy drives a turbine, which, in turn, provides the necessary work to drive the turbocharger's compressor, mounted on the same shaft as the turbine (Fig. 9.6.31). The centrifugal compressor is particularly adaptable to aircraft engines because of high capacity, small size, and low weight. It is also used with truck diesel

Table 9.6.14 Condensation Temperatures of Liquid Fuels, °F (°C)

		ASTM distillation				Condensation temp.			
						Atmospheric pressure		Pressure, ⅔ atmospheric	
						Air/fuel ratio		Air/fuel ratio	
Fuel	Deg API	Initial point	50 percent	90 percent	Endpoint	12:1	15:1	12:1	15:1
Gasoline	60	100 (38)	249 (121)	354 (179)	400 (204)	118 (48)	114 (46)	111 (44)	107 (42)
Kerosene	43	350 (177)	450 (232)	510 (266)	550 (288)	204 (96)	200 (93)	201 (94)	197 (92)

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

engines to improve the volumetric efficiency and power at high engine speeds. Centrifugal blowers may have one or two stages with cooling between stages or after the single or last stage. The rotors run at maximum speeds of 15,000 to 70,000 r/min. Finally, in **pressure wave supercharging,** wave action and resonant tuning in the intake and exhaust systems are used to compress the charge and thereby boost volumetric efficiency.

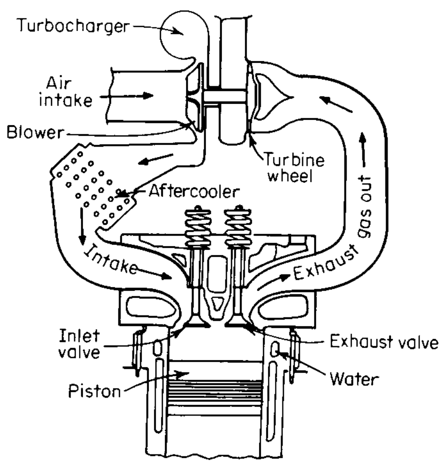


Fig. 9.6.31 Schematic of exhaust turbosupercharger installation on diesel engine cylinder.

Supercharging a spark ignition, premixed-charge engine which has the optimum compression ratio for the available fuel causes combustion knock and necessitates lowering the compression ratio, enriching the mixture, or increasing the octane number of the fuel. Supercharging a diesel engine increases the maximum pressure and necessitates lowering the compression ratio or changing the fuel injection timing, if the limiting pressure is already attained without supercharging. The use of variable engine compression ratio together with supercharging is very desirable but difficult and costly.

Turbocharging of diesel engines is usual for most applications, including truck, locomotive, and marine uses. The exhaust gas turbine

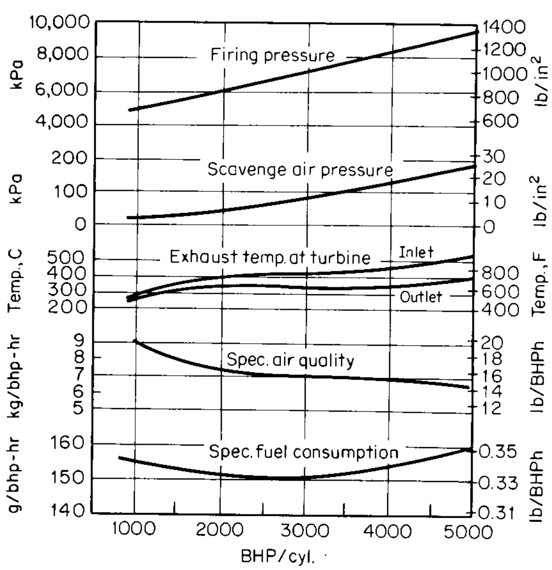


Fig. 9.6.32 Performance curves of a turbocharged diesel engine. *(Sulzer.)*

provides more complete expansion of the combustion gases than is practical in the engine cylinder and contributes to improved thermal efficiency. Higher output also increases the engine mechanical efficiency (Buchi, *ASME Trans.,* **59,** pp. 85–96). Supercharging assists with NO_x control without a fuel economy penalty. The fuel economy and other performance characteristics of a supercharged Sulzer marine diesel engine of 30-in (760-mm) cylinder diameter are shown in Fig. 9.6.32.

Scavenging Two-Stroke Cycle Engines

Crankcase compression for each cylinder or an engine driven blower may be used for scavenging and charging the cylinders of a two-stroke cycle engine (Fig. 9.6.33). With crankcase compression, used on small gasoline outboard marine engines, a third port uncovered by the piston near the top of the stroke, a rotary valve, or an automatic poppet valve may be used. The top of the piston is shaped to deflect the gases entering the cylinder and to prevent short-circuiting to the exhaust port. A ''dead'' spot of gases may remain in the lower center of the cylinder or in the upper corners.

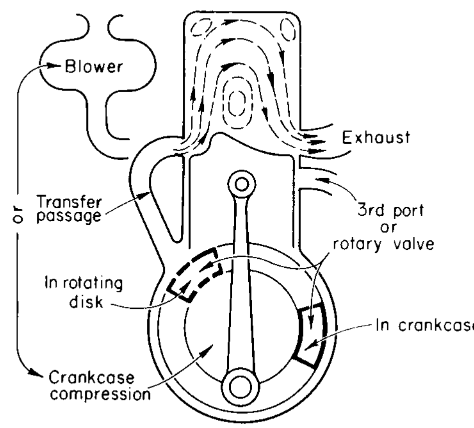


Fig. 9.6.33 Common scavenging systems.

The intake may be inclined and tangential, giving the entering charge an upward helical motion (Fig. 9.6.34). This motion keeps the entering charge near the cylinder walls, forcing the exhaust gases to the center of the cylinder and down to the exhaust port. Some engines employ loop scavenging (Fig. 9.6.35).

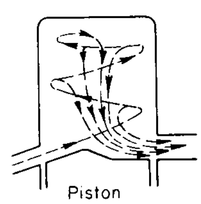


Fig. 9.6.34 Hesselman helical-loop system.

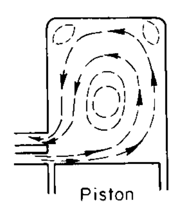


Fig. 9.6.35 M-A-N loop scavenging.

Some large diesel engines, such as the General Motors engine shown in Fig. 9.6.20, have poppet exhaust valves in the cylinder head, eliminating the hot exhaust ports from the cylinder walls. Intake ports can then completely surround the cylinder. The resulting flow pattern is referred to as **uniflow scavenging**. Typical blower pressures and related conditions are as shown in Table 9.6.15 for a General Motors two-stroke diesel engine.

Opposed-piston engines have intake and exhaust ports located in the cylinder walls at opposite ends of the cylinder. A blower forces the

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.15 General Motors Two-Stroke Cycle Diesel Engine

Engine type	Air-box pressure at 500 to 2,300 r/min		Max bmep*		Max imep*	
	inHg	cmHg	lb/in²	kPa	lb/in²	kPa
Naturally aspirated	1–9	2.54–22.86	101	697	129	890
Turbocharged	1.5–40	3.81–101.62	136	938	163	1,125

* At 2,300 r/min.

entering charge through the intake ports which extend around the entire circumference of the cylinder.

The two-stroke cycle Sulzer diesel engine (Fig. 9.6.36) makes use of a crosshead and piston rod design. The air in the space between the piston and the diaphragm carrying the piston rod stuffing box is displaced by the descending piston and is forced into the cylinder through the intake ports as they are uncovered by the piston. This aids the scavenging of the cylinder. Supercharging is provided by exhaust gas turbine-driven blowers. Air from these blowers passes through intercoolers and is admitted through automatic one-way valves to the scavenging chambers. Electric motor-driven air blowers are sometimes used on large engines to assist scavenging at idle and low power.

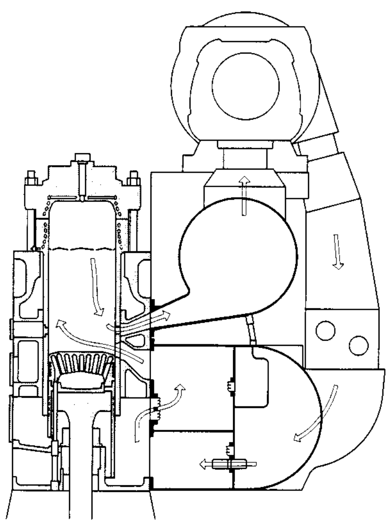


Fig. 9.6.36 A Sulzer series RL two-stroke crosshead diesel engine.

The crosshead design, with its stuffing box, also prevents combustion products from contaminating the crankcase oil system and is commonly used on large engines. This RL design (Fig. 9.6.36) is used for cylinder diameters of 560, 660, 760, and 1,900 mm. The largest cylinder, with a stroke of 1,900 mm, delivers a normal output of 4,000 bhp at 102 r/min corresponding to a bmep of 1,430 kPa (207 lb/in²) and a piston speed of 6,480 m/s (1,300 ft/min). Figure 9.6.32 shows the performance curves of this type up to an overload of 5,000 bhp per cylinder. Smaller cylinders produce correspondingly lower outputs with roughly the same mep and piston speed.

FUEL-AIR MIXTURE PREPARATION

Mixture Distribution Perfect distribution of fuel-air mixture consists of equal distribution of both air and fuel to the various cylinders of a multicylinder engine for each cycle. The compression pressure of each cylinder is an indication of the air distribution if all cylinders have identical valve timing and compression ratios and no leakage. Cylinders receiving lean mixtures develop less power than those receiving correspondingly rich mixtures. Poor distribution can be masked by enriching the mixture, and high-power output attained at the cost of high fuel consumption rates and HC and CO emission increases. The CO, CO_2, and O_2 analysis of the exhaust gases from the individual cylinders and spark plug temperatures (thermocouple in the center electrode) may be used to determine the mixture distribution.

Distribution of load (and fuel) and variation in injection timing between cylinders of a diesel engine are similarly indicated by the exhaust gas composition and temperature of the individual cylinders, the mixtures in the various cylinders usually being lean under all conditions.

Air lines, extending from the engine to the outside air, should be designed for air velocities of 50 to 100 ft/s (15 to 30 m/s). Air cleaners remove dirt particles and reduce piston, ring, and cylinder wear. Air silencers, used at the entrance to the air lines, are combined with cleaners for automotive purposes.

Gasoline and **diesel fuel lines** should be designed for maximum velocities under 1 ft/s (0.3 m/s) for gravity feed. Gasoline lines should be in a cool location, because heating above 100°F (38°C) may vaporize the lighter fractions and cause **vapor lock.** Sediment and water traps as well as strainers or filters should be located in the fuel line ahead of the fuel injector or carburetor, fuel pump, or injection pump.

Gas lines should be designed for gas velocities of 30 to 60 ft/s (9 to 18 m/s). A pressure drop of 0.07 to 0.12 in (1.8 to 3 mm) of water should be allowed per 100 ft (30 m) of pipe. Close calculation of the **size of gas pipe** for industrial gas installations is undesirable, because of the reduction of the normal pipe cross section by tar and dust deposits. A large-diameter storage chamber should be located in the pipe near the engine. The gas line should be free of traps and as free as possible from changes in direction of flow, and it should be pitched slightly from both ends toward a low point in the center, where a sealed drain should be located. All water seals in the gas line should be as cool as possible, to minimize evaporation and the breaking of the seal.

Mixture Preparation in Spark Ignition Engines

A rich mixture is required for idling and small throttle openings because of dilution of the small incoming charge with the exhaust gases in the clearance space. A maximum-economy mixture is desired at intermediate loads, and a maximum-power mixture is usually desired (automotive practice) at wide-open throttle (Fig. 9.6.37). Maximum economy is obtained with lean mixtures. Maximum power is obtained with rich mixtures which permit optimum utilization of the oxygen with maximum energy liberation per unit of volume of the mixture. Mixture ratios

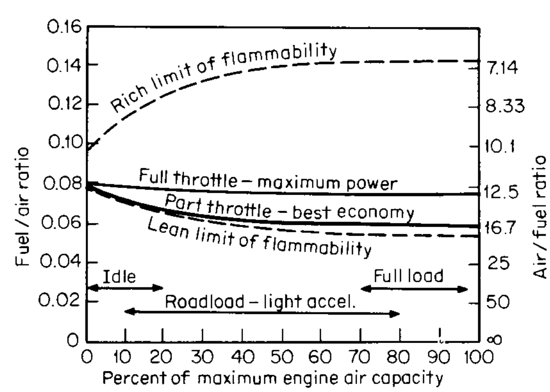


Fig. 9.6.37 Mixture ratios for spark ignition engines.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

for minimum specific fuel consumption and for maximum power are also indicated on Fig. 9.6.37. The rich mixture which provides maximum power also results in large amounts of carbon monoxide and unburned fuel in the exhaust.

For many years, carburetion has been used to meter, atomize (if liquid), and mix the fuel with the air flowing to the engine. This method is still in use for mixing gaseous fuels with air, for small engines such as those used in household and off-road applications, for piston-type air-cooled engines, and for older passenger cars. However, except for parts of the world with less stringent emission standards, carburetion has been replaced by fuel injection for automotive applications. The two methods of fuel-air mixture preparation are described below.

Carburetion

The basic principle of carburetion is illustrated in Fig. 9.6.38. A float maintains a constant fuel level in a float chamber which is vented to the atmosphere or air entrance of the carburetor. The float chamber fuel level is slightly below the outlet of the fuel jet. The engine air flows through a venturi tube which has a throat diameter of 0.75 to 0.85 of the diameter of the carburetor bore. The reduction in pressure at the venturi

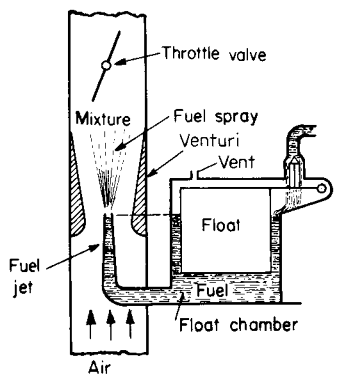


Fig. 9.6.38 Principle of carburetion.

throat causes fuel to flow from the float chamber through the main fuel jet into the airstream. Fuel atomization is accomplished by the velocity difference between the air and fuel. Vaporization of the fuel continues while flowing to the engine cylinder but is usually not completed in the intake manifold at wide-open throttle.

The metering characteristic of a carburetor is the weight ratio of fuel to air supplied over the operating range of airflow. These carburetor flow characteristics are commonly shown on a graph, similar to Fig. 9.6.37, which gives the fuel/air ratios at idle, along the ''road-load curve'' for an automobile engine, and at wide-open throttle. Although computations can be made to establish the fuel/air ratio under specified conditions, estimates are approximate because air is usually bled into the fuel channels to help control the fuel flow. Also, airflow through the venturi is pulsating in nature and makes both airflow and fuel flow somewhat unpredictable. Actual carburetor characteristics approach the desirable characteristics indicated in Fig. 9.6.37.

When the throttle is opened quickly, there is a momentary lag of the fuel flow in relation to the airflow due to the formation of a liquid film on the intake manifold walls. This necessitates the use of some device (accelerating pump or well) to enrich the mixture during sudden accelerations and thereby avoid engine backfire. At idle, the depression of the throat of the venturi is insufficient to overcome the viscosity of the fuel, thus requiring special idle circuits to overcome this problem and to enrich the otherwise very dilute, high-residual cylinder contents. Provisions are also made for mixture enrichment at high loads. In the 1980s, with the enforcement of more stringent emissions standards and the introduction of closed-loop control of the fuel/air ratio to ensure operation in a narrow window about the stoichiometric ratio, the electronic carburetor was introduced (Fig. 9.6.39). In this device, the flow area for fuel metering is computer-controlled by a pulse-width-modulated solenoid.

Carburetors for piston-type air-cooled aircraft engines provide fuel/air ratios that vary from 0.11 at idle to 0.085 for cruising rich (cruising lean being about 0.072). As the full-power condition is approached, the

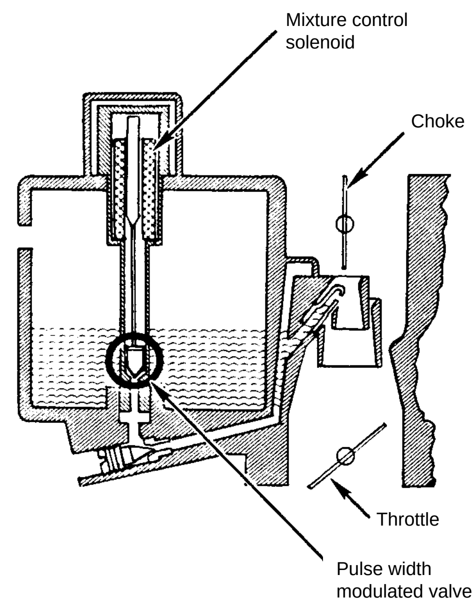


Fig. 9.6.39 Electronic carburetor. *(Amann, ''The Automotive Spark-Ignition Engine—An Historical Perspective,'' ASME-ICE vol. 8, 1989, pp. 33–45.)*

mixture richness is increased to aid cylinder cooling, becoming about 0.108 at maximum output. Aircraft carburetors must compensate for the effect of altitude on the air density and the resulting change in the mixture ratio. Compensation for the enrichment that occurs with increasing altitude is usually provided by reducing the area of the main fuel-metering orifice. This is accomplished by moving a tapered needle in the orifice, which may be done manually or automatically by means of an air-pressure-sensitive bellows. A carburetor providing a 0.067 fuel/air ratio at sea level would provide a fuel/air ratio of about 0.091 at an altitude of 20,000 ft (6,100 m).

Fuel Injection in Spark Ignition Engines A majority of new automobile and truck engines and some small marine and utility engines (future) employ fuel injection. Fuel is injected into the supercharger, intake manifold, intake valve ports, or combustion chambers of spark ignition engines. Fuel injection consists of an in-tank pump, common-rail recirculating supply, and injection nozzles. With single-point, central fuel injection above the throttle, as typified by the throttle body injector of Fig. 9.6.40, one or two injectors with injection pressure of about 70 kPa are used for multicylinder engines. This system provides an electronically controlled injector at the intake manifold entrance where the carburetor was formerly positioned. With multipoint fuel injection, an injector is positioned in each port, and pressures from 400 to 700 kPa are used to avoid vapor formation in the tip located in the hot spit-back region just upstream of the intake valve. In certain cases, an additional injector is used to supplement the fuel flow during starting.

The advantages of fuel injection over carburetion are the more uniform distribution of fuel between the engine cylinders, the reduction of combustion knock caused by nonuniform fuel distribution, the elimination of heat to the intake manifold to obtain the desirable fuel vaporization (thus obtaining higher-power outputs because of higher charge density), more rapid throttle response, and the use of less volatile fuel. Carburetor and induction system icing are eliminated. With an injection system, it is easier to cut off the fuel flow during deceleration (coasting) than is the case with the carburetor with its fuel-wetted intake manifold.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Note that throttle body injection encounters problems associated with the slower transport of fuel than air during transients, as with carburetors.

Fuel injection systems may have mechanical or electronic control of fuel flow, with the electronic type being predominant. In mechanical systems, such as the Bosch K-Jetronic, fuel is continuously injected into

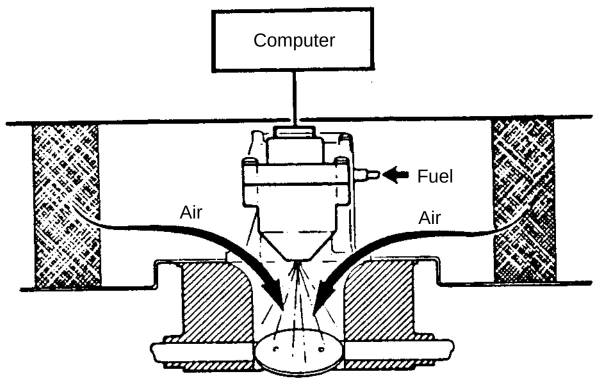


Fig. 9.6.40 Throttle body injector. *(Amann, ''The Automotive Spark-Ignition Engine—An Historical Perspective,'' ASME-ICE vol. 8, 1989, pp. 33–45.)*

the port where fuel quantity is mechanically determined by movement of an air valve. In electronic systems, an electromagnetic injector is pulsed on and off by the computer to supply the desired fuel quantity in proportion to the air. The **injector pulse** width may be trimmed by an exhaust sensor signal to achieve the desired mixture strength. The airflow must be sensed to establish the correct fuel/air ratio for various engine conditions. This can be done by sensing the airflow with a venturi or equivalent, a hot-film, hot-wire, or other air anemometer (such as in the L-Jetronic system), or by sensing the principal engine variables which control engine air consumption. The latter is referred to as a **speed-density** control system. A system of this type is shown schematically in Fig. 9.6.41. Engine speed and manifold pressure and air temperature are used to calculate the engine airflow from prior dynamometer data, a method which has proved less accurate in practice.

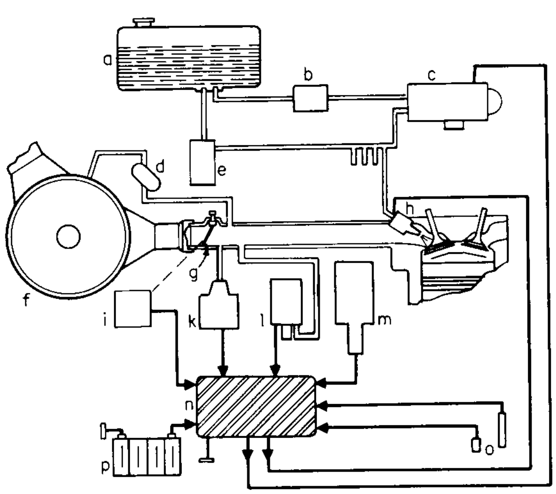


Fig. 9.6.41 Schematic of electronic gasoline injection system for an automobile. (*a*) Gasoline tank; (*b*) fuel filter; (*c*) fuel supply pump; (*d*) auxiliary idling air valve; (*e*) fuel pressure regulator; (*f*) air filter, (*g*) throttle plate; (*h*) fuel injection valve; (*i*) throttle position switch; (*k*) full load pressure switch; (*l*) manifold pressure sensor; (*m*) ignition distributor with trigger contacts; (*n*) electronic control unit; (*o*) temperature sensor; (*p*) battery. (*Robert Bosch.*)

For central fuel injection designs, the injector opening angle may be independent of engine cylinder events (asynchronous). For port injection designs, the opening is normally synchronized with cylinder events to open before the intake valve opens. This minimizes axial mixture stratification which occurs when the injector supplies fuel when the intake valve is open. Such axial stratification may be used advantageously to create a lean-burning engine (Toyota). Injection of fuel into the intake port usually occurs early in the intake stroke, to provide the maximum time for fuel evaporation and mixing to occur. Injection into the intake port provides good mixing as the fuel and air are drawn at high velocity through the intake valve passages, and it isolates the injector from combustion gases at high pressure and temperature. Direct injection into the cylinder occurs during intake or early compression, and it usually results in charge stratification.

Spray targeting in port fuel injection is especially important for fuel evaporation, wall wetting, and engine emissions. Typically when the spray is directed at the center of the intake valve, toward its valve stem base, hydrocarbon and CO emissions are minimized (Fig. 9.6.42). Injector design, spray angle, and droplet size distribution are important. Quader (1989) also showed that targeting the fuel spray at the intake valve centerline toward the valve head resulted in the lowest smoke and

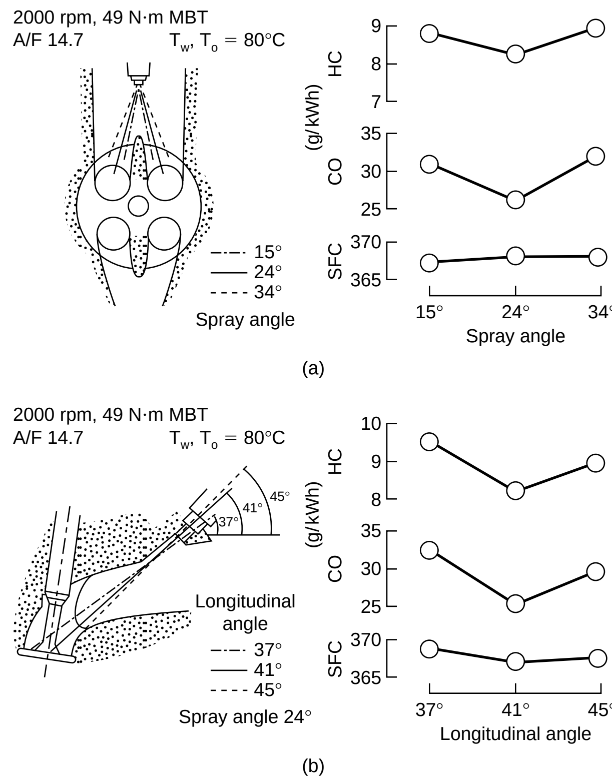


Fig. 9.6.42 Effects of spray angle and injection targeting on engine emissions. (*a*) Effect of dual stream separation angle; (*b*) effect of injection direction. *(Iwata et al., SAE paper 870125, 1987.)*

HC emissions under high-speed and heavy-load conditions. Some designs are less affected by deposits. Air-assisted fuel sprays provide smaller droplets and may be an advantage in both port and direct cylinder injection. Air-assisted direct cylinder injection has shown promise for improved economy and lower emissions in two-stroke, spark ignition, orbital combustion process (OCP) engines.

Fuel Injection in Diesel Engines The fuel injection system for diesel engines usually consists of a pump, fuel line, and nozzle. This system provides control of the beginning, rate and duration of injection, and

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

desired fuel quantity per injection, and atomizes and partially distributes the fuel in the combustion chamber. Methods of fuel injection include pump or unit injectors and common-rail systems. In the **pump injection system** (Fig. 9.6.43), a pump forces a desired quantity of fuel through a high-pressure fuel line and an atomizing nozzle into the combustion chamber. Unit injectors combine the plunger pump and spray nozzle, thus eliminating the high-pressure fuel line. Injection pressures usually range from 1,500 to 7,000 lb/in² (10,300 to 48,000 kPa) but may run above 30,000 lb/in² (206,000 kPa) at high injection rates. Fuel quantity

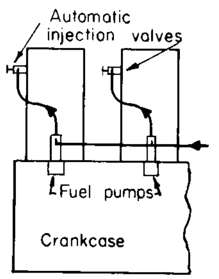


Fig. 9.6.43 Pump injection.

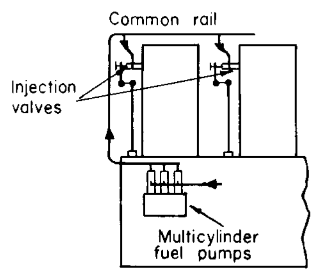


Fig. 9.6.44 Common rail.

control with this type of injection is usually affected by controlling a bypass valve in the pump or the pump discharge line or by varying the time of closure or opening of the fuel-pump inlet port. A separate fuel-pump is commonly required for each engine cylinder, although rotating plunger pumps serving from two to eight cylinders per plunger are in common use, especially on small engines. In the **common-rail system** (Fig. 9.6.44), a constant pressure is maintained in the fuel discharge line, and the discharge of fuel to the engine cylinder is controlled by the lift, timing, and duration of opening of the fuel valve. Considerable capacity of the discharge line is necessary in this case, a triplex pump being considered desirable to supply fuel at a constant rate.

Pumps Fuel pumps for pump injection systems require rugged construction, are usually actuated by a cam, and have constant mechanical stroke. The pump plunger and barrel (Fig. 9.6.45) are a very close lapped fit to minimize leakage. The inlet port is uncovered near the

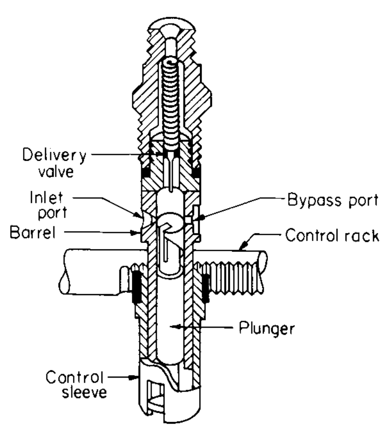


Fig. 9.6.45 Bosch plunger, barrel, and delivery valve assembly.

bottom of the plunger stroke, the low vapor pressure in the pump cylinder causing fuel flow into the barrel. On the upward plunger stroke, fuel flows past the discharge valve and out of the spring-loaded nozzle. Fuel spray from the nozzle continues until the pump bypass port is uncovered. The pressure then subsides, the nozzle closes, and the pump delivery valve closes to maintain a desired residual line pressure until the next injection. Fuel quantity control is obtained by turning the pump plunger in the barrel, which varies the time of uncovering the bypass port by the plunger helix. This in turn varies the duration of the effective plunger stroke and the amount of fuel injected. The high pressures which occur in these injection systems, together with the compressibility of the fuel oil, give rise to transient pressure wave phenomena in the connecting lines which change injection characteristics.

Fuel Lines The tubing connecting the injection pump with the spray nozzle must be thick-walled, of smooth and uniform bore, and made of ductile material to permit bending. Tubes range in size from ¼-in (0.64-cm) OD and 1⁄16-in (0.16-cm) ID to ½-in (1.3-cm) OD and 3⁄16-in (0.48-cm) ID. Fuel lines should be the same length for each cylinder, to obtain the same transient hydraulic characteristics. Pressure waves due to plunger motion and nozzle efflux characteristics are developed, travel back and forth, and create disturbances during the injection process (De Juhasz, *Trans. ASME, Oil and Gas Power,* **60,** p. 2; Bolt et al., *SAE Trans.,* 1971, paper 710569), making short lines desirable.

Fuel Injection Nozzles Injection nozzles are usually hydraulically operated, having a differential-diameter valve (Fig. 9.Í.46), held on its seat by a spring, which opens when the fuel line pressure is increased by the injection pump. The valve closing pressure is always lower than the opening pressure, depending on the relative effective valve areas exposed to fuel pressure. The valves may be either the pintle or multiple-orifice type (Fig. 9.6.46). The former has a single orifice through which the end of the valve protrudes, and it is used mostly with precombustion

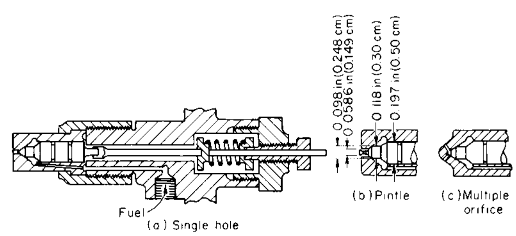


Fig. 9.6.46 Solid injection closed nozzle.

chambers. A pintle may be designed to restrict the fuel flow as it opens; this results in a throttling nozzle. The pintle nozzle provides a hollow conical spray with an included angle which varies from 4° to 60° with various pintle sizes. The multiple-orifice type of nozzle (Fig. 9.6.46*c*) is used principally with the open combustion chamber. The resulting fuel spray consists of a core and surrounding envelope of atomized fuel.

Diesel Fuel Injection System Characteristics At any given setting, most fuel injection systems deliver more fuel per cycle with a decrease in speed, except under the idling condition of very low speed and small fuel delivery. The rising fuel delivery curve with decrease in speed at full load contributes to the good torque rise and lugging ability of the high-speed diesel. At the idle condition, decrease in speed reduces fuel delivery and causes the engine to run still more slowly, etc. Thus the diesel engine is usually unstable and requires a governor for idling as well as at other loads.

COMBUSTION CHAMBERS

Spark Ignition Engines

Most combustion chambers for four-cycle engines, especially automotive, have an open design and employ overhead valves actuated by either pushrods or overhead cams. This design provides fast burning of the charge because of the concentrated combustion volume and minimizes surface area and thus heat losses and wall quenching. Figure 9.6.47 shows classical, two-valve chamber designs. In each case, the spark plug location and chamber shape yield a relation between flame front area and flame travel similar to that in Fig. 9.6.48. For a given engine, the maximum rate of pressure development is proportional to the peak flame-front area viewed at TDC. For the chambers of Fig. 9.6.47*a, b,* and *d,* virtually all the volume is in the head. This design allows large valves and minimizes piston inertia. The hemispherical or

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

domed head of Fig. 9.6.47*b* allows very large valves and with a domed piston provides a combustion chamber of normal compression ratio. Aircraft engines usually have this chamber shape. The chamber of Fig. 9.6.47*c*, used by Jaguar in its V-12 design, is in the piston bowl. The bathtub chamber of Fig. 9.6.47*d* is very compact for good fuel economy. To suppress knock, each chamber has the spark close to the exhaust valve and a well-cooled, quench region in the end gas far from the spark plug. While all these chambers have a squish area to generate turbulence, compression-induced turbulence is low and mixture motion depends on intake-induced swirl, which is generally quite considerable.

More recently, pent-roof heads with four valves per cylinder and a centrally located spark plug have become very popular. This arrangement gives minimum flame travel distance and hence fast burn, as well as large valve flow area and thus high volumetric efficiency. In such designs, turbulence has been generated through the complex interaction of the two inlet flows which produce a tumbling motion. Other fast-burn chambers have been designed by Nissan and Ricardo. In the Nissan NAPS-Z combustion system, there are twin spark plugs and an induction system producing a comparatively high level of axial swirl (Fig. 9.6.49). In Ricardo's high-ratio compact chamber (HRCC), the combustion chamber is centered on the exhaust valve. Chamber compactness, high turbulence, and lean burning allow this design to operate at compression ratios exceeding 11 without knock.

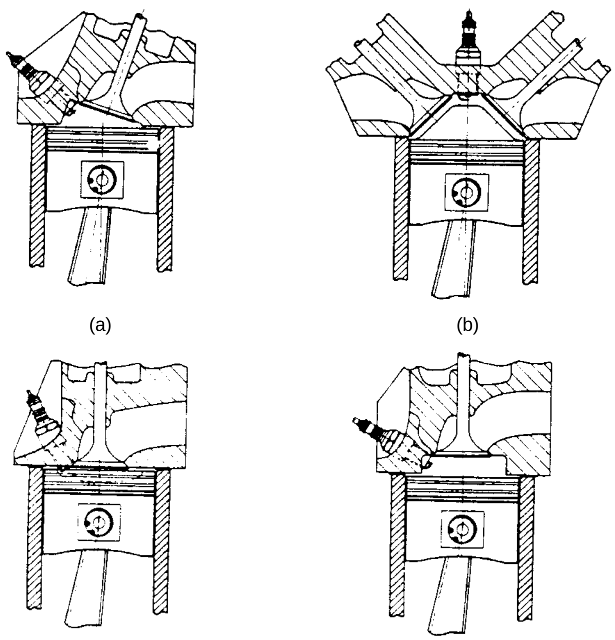


Fig. 9.6.47 Classical combustion chambers for spark-ignition engines; (*a*) Wedge; (*b*) hemispherical head; (*c*) bowl in piston; (*d*) bathtub head. *(Courtesy: R. Stone, SAE, 1995.)*

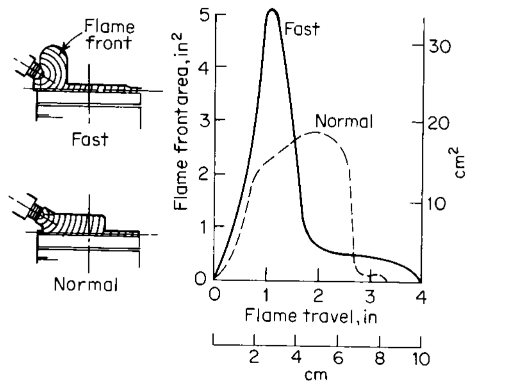


Fig. 9.6.48 Flame-front area curves for fast- and normal-burn combustion chambers.

Where cost or engine height is a principal concern, a design such as the L-head (Fig. 9.6.50), in which the valves are actuated from below directly by the cam, is commonly used. Spark plug location can compensate to some extent for the slow burn rate of the elongated chamber. The L-head has a relatively high surface area, and thus greater heat loss and wall quenching, and a small space for valves.

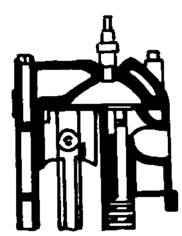


Fig. 9.6.50 L-head engine.

Combustion Roughness The high rate of pressure rise during combustion at relatively low engine speeds (1,000 r/min) and the maximum combustion pressure near peak indicated torque engine speeds subject the engine mechanism to severe stresses which may result in combustion roughness noise unless the pressure rate is controlled. Andon and Marks (*SAE Trans.* **72,** 1964,

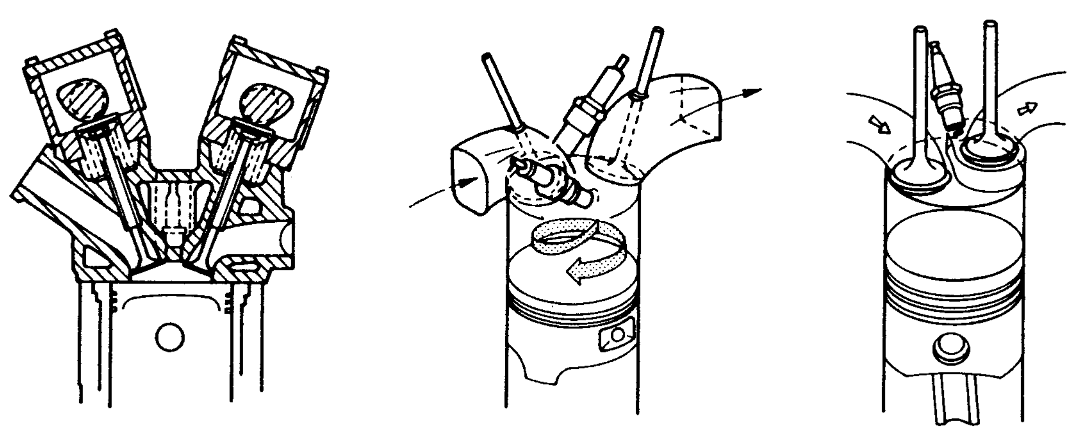


Fig. 9.6.49 Modern fast-burn combustion chambers. (*a*) Four-valve pent-roof; (*b*) NAPS-Z with twin spark plugs and high axial swirl; (*c*) high-ratio compact chamber (HRCC). *(Collins and Stokes, SAE, 1983.)*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

p. 636) found that spark plug location, combustion chamber shape, and degree of turbulence are the principal factors that can be varied to control combustion roughness and the resulting noise. In a given engine, the maximum combustion rate of pressure rise can be reduced by retarding the spark timing or decreasing the volumetric efficiency.

A rate of pressure rise of 30 lb/in^2 (207 kPa) per degree of crank travel results in near-maximum efficiency, and higher rates of pressure rise usually result in combustion roughness noise. Increasing the rigidity of the crankshaft increases the natural frequency of vibration and reduces the deflection of the structure caused by combustion and inertial forces and thereby reduces roughness noise.

Die-cast aluminum transmits roughness noise more readily than cast iron. Structurally stiff compact engines such as the V-block are better than the in-line engines in this regard.

Compression Ignition Engines

Compression ignition engines have valve-in-head construction if operating with four cycles. Two types of combustion chamber arrangements are used: a single chamber, referred to as the *open* or *direct* injection type, and a two-chamber, referred to as a *prechamber* or *divided-chamber* type.

Open Combustion Chambers (Direct Injection) Fuel is injected under high pressure, usually through a multiple-orifice nozzle, directly into the clearance space or chamber between the piston and the cylinder head. The piston head is usually conformed (Figs. 9.6.51 and 9.6.52) to fit the fuel spray, and swirl moves the air into the fuel spray. Air swirl is accomplished by intake port design, by shrouding the intake valve, or, in the two-stroke cycle engine, by using tangential intake ports. High turbulence is accomplished by having the piston closely approach part of the cylinder head. This forces the gases out of the small clearances and agitates the mixture.

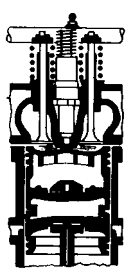


Fig. 9.6.51 Open combustion chamber with swirl produced by intake ports.

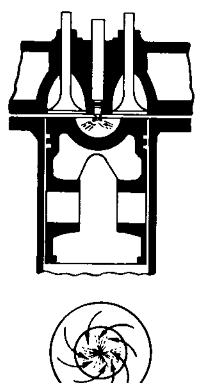


Fig. 9.6.52 Open combustion chamber with high turbulence and some swirl.

Precombustion chambers are divided into two parts, the major volume being between the piston and the cylinder head and connected by a small passageway to the minor volume located in the cylinder head (Fig. 9.6.53). Fuel is injected into only the smaller chamber, and except under light loads, partial combustion occurs and discharges the burning mixture into the large chamber in which combustion is completed. This type of combustion chamber produces smooth combustion but has fairly high fluid friction and heat transfer losses.

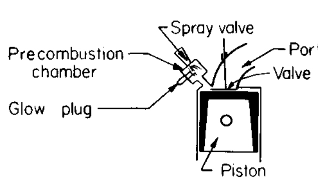


Fig. 9.6.53 Precombustion chamber.

Turbulence or **divided combustion chambers** are modifications of the precombustion chamber, having the major chamber in the cylinder head and usually only a small clearance space between piston and cylinder head (Fig. 9.6.54). The passage between the two chambers is considerably larger than that in the precombustion chamber. Close piston clearance produces high turbulence in the prechamber and promotes rapid combustion. Part of the prechamber containing the transfer passage commonly is thermally insulated. The chamber (Fig. 9.6.53) is typical of those used in automotive diesel engines for passenger automobile use. An electrically heated hot-wire glow plug is used to assist cold starting, together with compression ratios up to 24 : 1.

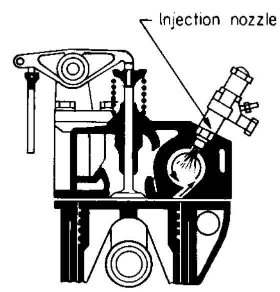


Fig. 9.6.54 Ricardo divided combustion chamber.

A **stratified-charge spark-ignited engine** has potential for burning lean mixtures for improved fuel economy and reduced emissions. In theory, an overall lean mixture is formed in the combustion chamber, while controlled to be slightly richer than stoichiometric in the vicinity of the spark plug at the time of ignition. The richer portion is thus easily ignited, and this in turn ignites the remaining lean mixture. Some of the benefits claimed are (1) lower flame temperature, (2) improved cycle efficiency, (3) less heat loss, (4) less dissociation, and (5) less pumping loss. In addition, less NO_x would be expected because of the lower combustion temperatures; likewise, less unburned hydrocarbon and CO emissions would result because of the overall excess of oxygen.

For effective stratification, very careful development has proved to be necessary to obtain complete combustion of fuel under the wide range of speed and load condition required of an automotive type of engine. Three rather distinct means for accomplishing the stratified charge condition have been explored.

1. A single combustion chamber with a well-controlled rotating air motion is used. This arrangement is illustrated (Fig. 9.6.55) by the Texaco combustion process (TCP), patented in 1949. Ford Motor Company's programmed combustion (PROCO) is a similar, single-chamber concept.

2. There is a prechamber or two-chamber system. This is illustrated by Fig. 9.6.56, which shows the general arrangement of the Honda compound-vortex, controlled-combustion (CVCC) system.

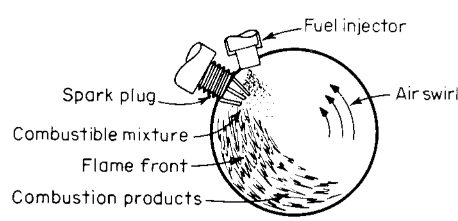


Fig. 9.6.55 Texaco combustion process (TCP).

3. There is axially stratified charge. By turning on the port fuel injector toward the end of the filling process, a rich mixture is produced near the spark plug, while the overall mixture may be lean. This method is known as the *Toyota lean-burn system.*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

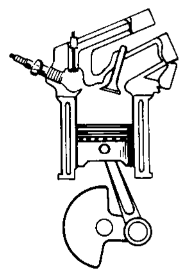


Fig. 9.6.56 Honda CVCC combustion process.

SPARK IGNITION COMBUSTION

Ignition System The ignition system usually consists of a 12-V storage battery, induction coil, and high-tension distributor, or a high-tension magneto with a distributor. Recent automotive practice employs electronic means to interrupt primary current in place of a contact breaker, and the trend is toward individual coils for each plug. For aircraft, the low-tension distribution system to transformer spark plugs, or other apparatus for obtaining a high-tension spark at the plug, appears to eliminate some of the troubles of the conventional ignition system in aircraft engines at high altitude. For details on ignition systems, see Sec. 15.1.

The usual firing order for in-line engines is 1, 3, 4, 2, or 1, 2, 4, 3 for four cylinders; 1, 5, 3, 6, 2, 4 (U.S. automobile engines) or 1, 4, 2, 6, 3, 5 for six cylinders in line; and 1, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2 for V-6 engines. A common procedure for V-8 engines is to number the cylinders from front to rear, with the odd numbers in the left bank, as viewed from the driver's seat. For this arrangement a typical firing order is 1, 8, 4, 3, 6, 5, 7, 2. Radial engines have firing orders that skip every other cylinder. For a nine-cylinder, single-row engine the order is 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 2, 4, 6, 8.

Spark plug gaps vary from 0.020 to 0.080 in (0.5 to 2.0 mm). The smaller gaps require 4,000 to 8,000 V while the larger gaps require 10,000 to 34,000 V. In wedge-shaped, two-valve combustion chambers, spark plugs were typically located near the exhaust valve (hottest spot) so that the flame progressed toward the cooler part of the combustion chamber; this arrangement permitted higher compression ratios without combustion knock. In modern, four-valve, pent-roof combustion chambers, a central spark plug location results in minimum combustion time and good tolerance for dilution. Dual ignition (two spark plugs located opposite each other) also reduces combustion time and results in a slight gain in efficiency (usually less than 1 percent) compared with single ignition with optimum spark advance. Rotary (Wankel) engines employ one or two spark plugs per rotor. Single plugs are centrally located either above or below the trochoid waist. In modern, direct injection, stratified-charge, lean-burn engines, optimum placement of the spark plug is crucial to provide a combustible mixture near its vicinity.

Flame Speed Flame speeds in spark ignition engines are low immediately after ignition, attain maximum values when about one-half the combustion chamber has been inflamed, and decrease toward the end of the piston. Mean flame speeds are a maximum for mixtures usually 10 to 20 percent richer than the chemically correct air/fuel ratio, and they vary with fuel, engine speed, and turbulence.

At 900-ft/min (4.5-m/s) mean piston speed, mean flame speeds with maximum-power gasoline-air mixtures and optimum spark advance range from about 50 to 100 ft/s (15 to 30 m/s). Mean flame speeds under the same mixture, spark, and speed conditions in the CFR Waukesha engine are estimated at 55 (70) [80] ft/s (17, 21, 24 m/s) for a 4.6 : 1 (6.5 : 1) [8 : 1] compression ratio, while with ethyl alcohol–air mixtures the corresponding mean flame speeds are 50 (65) [75] ft/s (15, 20, 23 m/s).

The mean flame speed in an automotive engine under the foregoing conditions is estimated from the optimum spark advance (approximately five-ninths of combustion time) to be 90 ft/s (27 m/s) for a 6.5 : 1 compression ratio. In the same engine, mean flame speeds with optimum conditions vary from about 60 ft/s (18 m/s) at 500 ft/min (2.5 m/s) to about 170 ft/s (0.9 m/s) at 3,000 ft/min (15 m/s) mean piston speed. The higher flame speeds in the automotive engine at comparable piston speeds are due to greater turbulence than that obtained with the usual flat valve-in-head (CFR) design.

Spark Advance Since combustion requires finite time, it is necessary to ignite the mixture in the cylinder before the piston reaches the end of its compression stroke. This should distribute the combustion process before and after top center in order to obtain maximum torque and power. Spark advance is measured by the number of degrees the crankshaft rotates between the time of the spark and the end of the compression stroke. **Optimum spark advance** is the minimum advance which develops the **maximum brake torque (MBT)**. Usually this causes (1) the maximum pressure to peak at about 16° after top center and (2) 50 percent of the charge to be burned by 10° after top center (Heywood, 1988). The torque lost by a spark timing earlier or later than optimum is at first only slight but increases rapidly as the timing further deviates from optimum (see Fig. 9.6.57).

Optimum spark advance depends principally on air-fuel mixture, amount of residual gas, emission control requirements, combustion chamber design, turbulence, engine speed, number of spark plugs, and

Table 9.6.16 Ignition Temperatures of Air-Gas Mixtures at Atmospheric Pressure

Gas	Chemical symbol	With ignition lag*: % gas in mixture	With ignition lag*: Avg temp, °F (K)	Instantaneous† ignition: % gas in mixture	Instantaneous† ignition: °F (K)
Hydrogen	H_2	8–24	1,130 (893)	10	1,377 (1,020)
Carbon monoxide	CO	13–47	1,204 (924)	50	1,708 (1,204)
Methane	CH_4	5–38	1,202‡ (923)	25	> 1,832 (1,273)
Ethane	C_2H_6	§	968‡ (793)		
Propane	C_3H_8	§	914‡ (763)		
Acetylene	C_2H_2	4–22	804 (702)		
Ethylene	C_2H_4	6–19	1,004 (813)	10	1,832 (1,273)
Benzene	C_6H_6			50	1,943 (1,335)
Ether	$C_4H_{10}O$			50	1,892 (1,306)
Gasoline:					
92 octane					734 (663¶)
100 octane					804 (1,702¶)

* Dixon and Coward, *Trans. Chem. Soc.,* **95,** 1909, p. 514.
† David, *Trans. Chem. Soc.,* **111**, 1917, p. 1003.
‡ Minimum value, since spread in values was appreciable.
§ Composition not reported.
¶ Jones, *U.S. Bur. Mines Bull.,* 1946.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.17 Ignition Temperatures at Various Air Pressure, °F (K)

Gas	Air pressure, atm 1	3	5	7	10	15	20	25	30
Hydrogen*	1,134 (885)	1,132 (884)	1,112 (873)	1,100 (866)					
Methane*	1,343 (1,001)	1,269 (960)	1,215 (930)	1,175 (908)					
Gasoline†			590 (583)		480 (522)	420 (489)			
Kerosine†			670 (628)		490 (528)	430 (494)	400 (478)	385 (469)	
Gas oil†			580 (578)		500 (533)	450 (505)	435 (497)	415 (486)	
Machine oil†			710 (650)		610 (594)	550 (561)	520 (544)		
Benzene†			685 (636)		585 (580)	545 (558)	530 (550)	515 (541)	500 (533)
Cylinder oil†			825 (714)		710 (650)	645 (614)	620 (600)	595 (586)	572 (573)
Benzol†					1,095 (864)	970 (794)	930 (772)	905 (758)	880 (744)

* Bone and Townsend, ''Flame and Combustion in Gases, p. 69.
† Tausz and Schulte, *Zeit. V.D.I.,* 1924, p. 574.

spark plug location. The optimum spark advance is also affected by knock considerations, as described later. Maximum power air/fuel ratios require the minimum spark advance. Low-speed engines require 10° to 20° spark advance, and high-speed automotive engines require 30° to 40° spark advance. Racing engines require still more. Full load requires less spark advance than part throttle. Spark advance in contemporary automotive engines is based on computer-stored values and is a function of speed, load, and other engine operating variables.

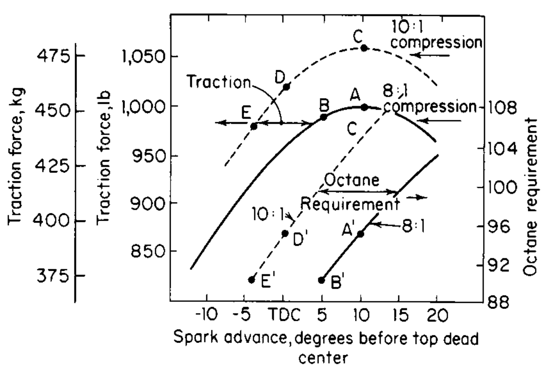


Fig. 9.6.57 Effect of spark advance on traction force and octane requirement.

Autoignition The autoignition temperature of an air-fuel mixture is the lowest temperature at which chemical reaction proceeds at a rate sufficient to result eventually (long time lag) in inflammation. This temperature depends principally on the air-fuel mixture, fuel properties, mixture pressure, and test apparatus. Subjecting a mixture to a temperature higher than the autoignition temperature results in inflammation after a shorter time lag, there being a temperature for each mixture which results in practically instantaneous ignition (Table 9.6.16). An increase in pressure decreases the ignition temperature of an air-fuel mixture (Table 9.6.17). See CRC Report on Project CF-37-53.

Compression ignition engines, such as diesel engines, rely on autoignition for initiation of combustion. However, in spark ignition engines, autoignition of the gas ahead of the flame front is undesirable as it leads to combustion knock. This abnormal combustion phenomenon is described in greater detail in the following section.

COMBUSTION KNOCK

Combustion knock in the internal combustion engine is produced by the spontaneous combustion or autoignition of an appreciable portion of the charge (Rassweiler and Withrow, *Trans, SAE,* **31,** 1936, p. 297), which results in an extremely rapid local pressure rise and sharp metallic knock. In the spark ignition engine, this occurs when the last fraction of the charge to burn is compressed appreciably above its autoignition temperature by the fraction that has burned. However, if the lag in time (ignition lag) between the attainment of this temperature and the spontaneous local appearance of the flame is increased by the use of a knock-suppressor blending agent or additive, then the flame from the spark plug will be permitted to travel through the unburned fraction before it can knock. Thus knocking tendency depends on the autoignition temperature, ignition lag, and flame speed of the air-fuel mixture.

The tendency of a spark ignition engine to knock increases almost directly with spark advance (Fig. 9.6.57). Prior to the introduction of exhaust emission control requirements, it was general practice in automobile engine design to use a spark advance a few degrees less than optimum at wide-open throttle. This materially reduces the tendency to knock with only a negligible loss of torque. At part-throttle operation, where combustion knock may not be a problem, the spark is advanced closer to optimum. However, in many cases a compromise must be made between spark advance for good torque and spark retard for emission control.

In the compression ignition engine, combustion knock occurs when the ignition lag is comparatively long, thus permitting the evaporation of a considerable portion of the injected fuel, which suddenly inflames and produces the characteristic knock at the initiation of combustion. Thus knock suppression requires long ignition lags (high octane, low cetane) in spark ignition engines and short ignition lags (high cetane, low octane) in compression ignition engines.

Knock Rating of Fuels

For detailed information regarding methods, apparatus, reference fuels, and suppliers of apparatus and reference fuels, see ASTM Manual of Engine Test Methods for Rating Fuels, current edition.

Octane Number

The octane number (ON) of a fuel is the percentage by volume of iso-octane (2,2,4 trimethylpentane) in a mixture of iso-octane and normal heptane which matches the unknown fuel in knock tendency when compared by a specific procedure in the ASTM CFR knock-testing engine. A fuel of high octane will have a low cetane number and vice versa (Fig. 9.6.58).

The **performance number** scale for aviation gasolines (Fig. 9.6.58) is designed to relate fuel rating to average knock-limited performance (imep). A gasoline of the 100/130 grade indicates that in the aviation test (lean mixture, normally aspirated) the fuel is equivalent to iso-octane in imep while in the supercharge test (rich mixture) it permits an imep of 130 percent of that of iso-octane.

There are four methods—**research, motor, aviation** (lean mixture), and **supercharge** (rich mixture) (ASTM D 908, 357, 614, and 909, respectively)—in general use in the rating of gasolines according to knocking tendency. These methods vary principally in the engine operating conditions and the means for indicating knock intensity (see ASTM manual).

Engine conditions, as indicated by the air or mixture temperature and by the coolant temperature, are less severe in the research method than in the other methods. Thus, some fuels rate lower by the motor method than by the research method. The sensitivity of a fuel is defined quanti-

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

tatively as the difference between the research and motor octane numbers. Although most gasolines rate lower by the motor method than by the research method, straight-run gasolines have about the same rating by both methods. With present fuels and engines, the average of the research and motor method numbers provides the best correlation with road ratings.

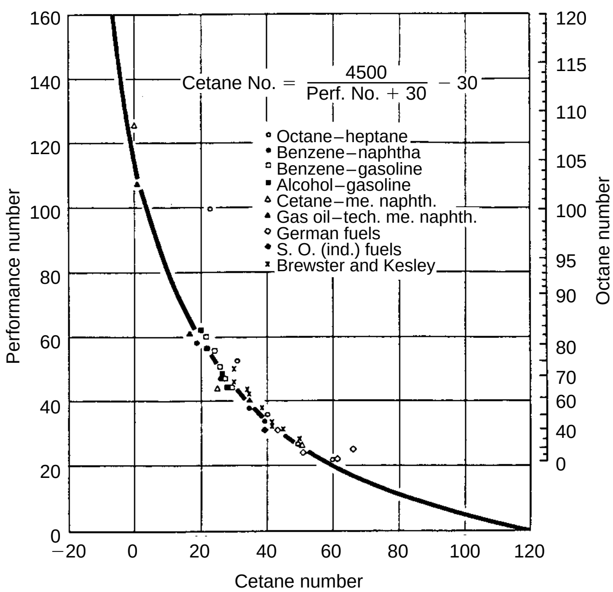


Fig. 9.6.58 Relationship between antiknock scales (octane number and performance number) and cetane number. *(Brewster and Kesley, SAE, 1963.)*

The use of the aviation and supercharge methods for aviation gasolines results in two performance numbers (such as 100/130). This grading indicates that the fuel is less sensitive than iso-octane to the difference in engine severity in the two test methods.

Road ratings of gasoline are determined by means of borderline knock curves for the test fuel and various blends of the reference fuels at various spark advances. The car is accelerated with wide-open throttle, and the speed at which steady knock ceases is recorded as the knock die-out speed (CRC procedure E-2). A plot of these data on a spark-advance vs. knock die-out speed chart (Fig. 9.6.59) makes possible the determination of the octane number rating of the test fuel over the desired speed range.

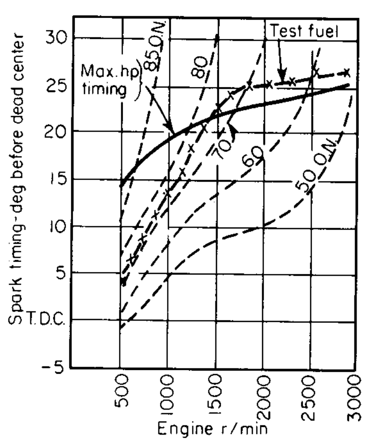


Fig. 9.6.59 Road octane rating.

Mechanical octane number is the resulting decrease in fuel octane requirements brought about by mechanical changes in engine design or control. Efficiency design variables include ignition control, combustion chamber design, cooling, valve timing, fuel system, and engine-transmission combinations.

Knock Suppression The antiknock characteristics of a fuel can be improved by blending in either another fuel of better antiknock characteristics or a knock-suppressor fuel additive (Fig. 9.6.60). Tetraethyllead (TEL) and tetramethyllead (TML) are the most effective knock suppressors (Table 9.6.18) and have been used extensively in small

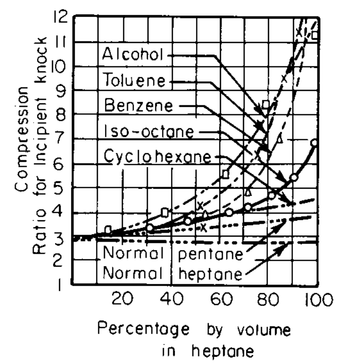


Fig. 9.6.60 Effect of fuel composition on knock-limited compression ratio.

amounts (up to 3 mL/gal of automotive fuels) in many gasolines. Their addition has been eliminated because of adverse effects on health and exhaust emissions. Other compounds can raise antiknock quality, but the much larger amount needed typically changes volatility and stoichiometric point significantly and may affect engine life, emissions, and lubrication.

Cetane Number The cetane number (CN) of a diesel fuel is determined by matching its ignition quality with that of a blend of two reference fuels, normal cetane (CN = 100) and heptamethylnonane (CN = 15). The comparison is made in an ASTM CFR diesel engine (Waukesha Motor Co.) using a specified procedure (ASTM D 613 or CRC-F-S). Cetane number for the reference blend is calculated by

$$CN = (\text{vol \% } n\text{-cetane}) + 0.15(\text{vol \% heptamethylnonane})$$

The **ignition quality** of a fuel for a compression ignition engine is indicated by the time delay between beginning of injection and the start of rapid pressure rise caused by combustion. The compression ratio in the test engine is adjusted to result in a 13° crank-angle delay for the unknown fuel when injection begins at 13° before top center. The mixture of reference fuels which has the same lag under the same conditions indicates the cetane number of the fuel.

The factors that tend to aggravate knocking in a spark ignition gaso-

Table 9.6.18 Relative Effect of Antiknock Compounds

Compound	Chemical symbol	Weight for a given effect, g
Tetraethyllead (TEL)	$Pb(C_2H_6)_4$	0.0295
Aniline	$C_6H_5NH_2$	1.0000
Ethyl iodide	C_2H_5I	1.55
Ethyl alcohol	C_2H_5OH	4.75
Xylene	$C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$	8.0
Toluene	$C_6H_5CH_3$	8.8
Benzene	C_6H_6	9.8

SOURCE: ''International Critical Tables,'' vol. 2, pp. 162–163.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.19 Antiknock Indices (ASTM D4814)

Antiknock index (RON + MON)/2	Application
Unleaded fuel* (for vehicles that can or must use unleaded fuel)	
87	Designed to meet antiknock requirements of most 1971 and later model vehicles
89	Satisfies vehicles with somewhat higher antiknock requirements
91 +	Satisfies vehicles with high antiknock requirements
Leaded fuel* (for vehicles that can or must use leaded fuel)	
88	For most vehicles that were designed to operate on leaded fuel

* Unleaded fuel having an antiknock index of at least 87 should also have a minimum motor octane number of 82 in order to adequately protect those vehicles that are sensitive to motor octane quality.

SOURCE: Abstracted from ASTM D4814, with permission.

line engine tend to suppress it in a diesel engine. Thus, octane has a low, while heptane has a high, cetane number. High-CN fuels burn more smoothly and start cold engines more readily than low-CN fuels.

Cetane number has been correlated with the mid-boiling point and the API gravity of the fuel, the relation for computing the approximate cetane number being (*Jour. Inst. Petroleum,* **30,** 1944, p. 193)

$$\text{CN} = 175.4(\log \text{mid-boiling pt, °F}) + 1.98(\text{API gr}) - 496$$

The deviation from engine test CN for 579 fuels was less than ± 5 CN for 94 percent of the fuels (see also Sec. 7.1).

Ignition accelerators increase the cetane number of diesel fuels, but the susceptibility of the fuel to the accelerator decreases with an increase in the amount of the accelerator (Fig. 9.6.61). Commercial amyl nitrate is slightly less effective than the pure isoamyl nitrate (Bogen and Wilson, *Petroleum Refiner,* July 1944).

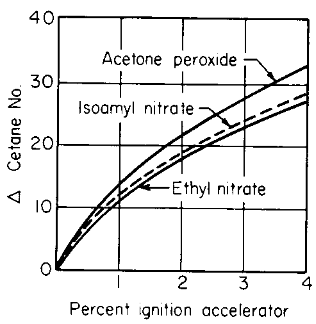


Fig. 9.6.61 Improvement in CN with ignition accelerators. *(Bogen and Wilson.)*

Permissible Compression Ratios Data obtained on single-cylinder test engines and multicylinder automotive engines show wide variations in the compression ratios producing incipient knocking of fuels of various octane numbers. High compression ratios in engines using fuels of a given octane number do not necessarily indicate excellent design and high performance, since valve timing, manifolding, and porting may act as throttling devices, or spark timing may be retarded. Average compression ratios vary considerably depending on the design and fuel used. An increase in cylinder size usually necessitates a lower compression ratio (Fig. 9.6.62), which may be due in some cases to the use of lower grades of fuels with the larger spark ignition engines. The larger diesel engines require less compression to obtain the desired temperatures since the heat transfer effect is less than in the smaller engine.

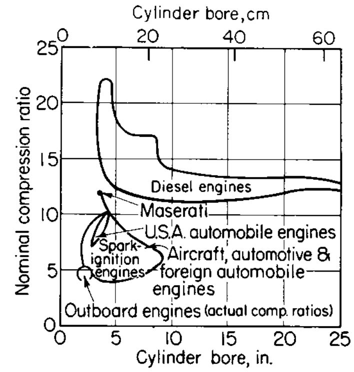


Fig. 9.6.62 Range of compression ratios as a function of cylinder bore.

OUTPUT CONTROL

Speed and **load regulation** are usually obtained in four-stroke cycle gasoline engines by throttling the charge or by quantitative governing. The air/fuel ratio may vary some with load, depending on the engine requirements. Intake throttling reduces the pressure in the cylinder at the end of the intake stroke and thereby reduces the mass of charge trapped per cycle. While throttling is the simplest means for regulation and provides a stable idling condition, it increases the pumping work and consequently decreases the efficiency of the engine. Presently, there is a trend toward using variable valve timings and variable valve lift as a means of controlling load without increasing pumping losses. In direct injection, stratified-charge engines, load control may be accomplished through control of the amount of fuel injected per cylinder.

Power control of carbureted, spark-ignited, two-stroke cycle engines is difficult because intake throttling reduces or prevents cylinder scavenging. Qualitative governing is used in some cases with constant-speed gas engines. The fuel is throttled while the air is unrestricted. Qualitative governing is limited by the lean limit of flammability. In addition, lean mixtures burn more slowly and may lower the thermal efficiency of the engine. Advancing the ignition timing, as the mixture is made leaner, reduces this loss of efficiency.

Governing by variation of ignition timing, as used on some small two-stroke cycle gasoline engines, is undesirable since this is regulation by variation of thermal efficiency and may result in overheating the engine. Variation of ignition timing is required for each change in speed and load to obtain optimum results.

Power control or regulation of diesel engines is obtained by varying the amount of fuel injected per cycle, which provides increasing richness of the fuel-air mixture as the engine load is increased. Maximum specific fuel consumption usually occurs at about 85 percent of the maximum load.

Diesel engines require a speed governor to provide a stable idle. Mechanical, hydraulic, and electronic speed-control governors are used on diesel engines. These control the fuel pump injection quantity and provide speed regulations at all operating conditions.

COOLING SYSTEMS

Engine cylinders must be cooled to maintain a lubricant film on the cylinder walls and other sliding surfaces. The cylinder heads, pistons, and exhaust valves are cooled to prevent combustion knock or destruction of these parts due to overheating. The lubricant must be cooled to maintain the desirable viscosity under operating conditions. Liquid or air cooling systems are used. Pistons, exhaust valves, and lubricants in comparatively small or low-duty engines are sufficiently cooled by contact with other engine parts or the lubricant between them and do not require separate cooling systems.

Liquid Cooling The heat removed by the cooling liquid from the

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

cylinders and cylinder heads ranges from 15 to 20 percent of the energy input for large diesel engines, 20 to 35 percent for automotive engines, and may run as high as 40 percent for automotive engines at one-third load. An increase in speed decreases the heat loss to the coolant. Heat loss can range from 40 to 50 percent of the brake output for large diesel engines and 100 to 150 percent of the brake output for automotive engines.

Pistons in small engines are cooled by heat transfer to the cylinder walls and lubricant. In some cases, an appreciable quantity of oil is directed against the piston head to maintain desirable head temperatures.

Some large engines have even used liquid-cooled pistons. Liquid is usually fed to the piston by swing joints or telescopic connections. The coolant jacket surrounding the high-temperature areas of the engine is maintained at a pressure considerably above atmospheric—10 to 15 lb/in^2 (70 to 100 kPa). This permits operation at higher coolant temperatures and/or decreases the tendency for local boiling in the region of ''hot spots,'' which could lead to component failures. The average percentage distribution of the coolant to the various jackets is approximately 60 percent to the cylinder jacket and 40 to the cylinder-head jacket with uncooled piston; 50 to the cylinder jacket, 25 to the cylinder-head jacket, and 25 to the piston and piston rod with liquid-cooled piston.

The cooling system may be noncirculating, in which case cold water is supplied, flows through the water jacket, and is wasted. With a temperature rise in large engines of 90°F (32°C), from 2 to 4 gal/(bhp · h) [7.6 to 15 L/(bhp · h)] of coolant must be supplied. In some engines, coolant outlet temperatures as low as 120°F (49°C) must be maintained, which, with high inlet temperatures, may increase the required quantity of coolant to as much as 10 gal/(bhp · h) (38 L)/(bhp · h). Coolant is circulated at a rate of 25 to 50 gal/(bhp · h) [95 to 190 L/(bhp · h)] with a temperature rise of 10 to 20°F (5.6 to 11°C) while flowing through the water jacket.

Natural circulation (**thermosiphon**), with low velocities, requiring large connections, may be used if the coolant forms a complete circuit. In this case, hot coolant rises in the engine jacket, flows to the radiator, is cooled, descends, and flows back to the engine jacket.

Small stationary engines are often **hopper-cooled**. This is an **evaporative cooling system** requiring about 4 to 6 lb/(bhp · h) [1.8 to 2.7 kg/(bhp · h)] of makeup water. The ASTM CFR knock-testing engines are cooled by evaporation, the vapor being condensed by a **reflex condenser** (copper coil with cold water flowing through) and returned to the cylinder jacket.

In high-output engines, the coolant is directed at the hottest spot, usually the exhaust valve seat, with either an external or internal inlet manifold from a common cylinder block jacket; otherwise vapor bubbles will form, cling to the surface, and cause overheating. In vertical engines, the coolant usually flows upward, around the cylinder barrel into the cylinder head jacket, and to the outlet. Higher output and reduced knocking tendency have resulted from directing the entering coolant at the hot spots in the cylinder head and then letting the coolant flow downward around the cylinders.

The **size of piping** required for the inlet to the jacket may be calculated for 3-ft/s (1-m/s) coolant velocity, and for the discharge 2 ft/s (0.6 m/s) for large engines. In engines with recirculation, these values are increased up to 10 to 15 ft/s (3 or 4.5 m/s), and the size of the inlet line to the circulating pump is usually larger than the outlet from the coolant jacket. It is desirable to have an open or visible outlet from each separately cooled part, showing the flow of coolant. To ensure totally filled systems which are as air-free as possible, overflow bottles may be used. Water is an outstanding liquid coolant. However, where freeze protection is necessary or where higher jacket temperatures are desired, other cooling media are generally used. For example, light-duty engines typically use a mixture of water and ethylene glycol. (See Sec. 6.8.)

Air Cooling Many small industrial engines and most motorcycle and aircraft engines are air-cooled. Even here, however, higher specific output engines are increasingly liquid-cooled. Air cooling eliminates the necessity for water or other liquid cooling media, coolant jackets, pumps, radiators, and coolant connections, but necessitates single-cylinder construction, finning, baffles, and, in some cases, blowers. Air-cooled engines also tend to be more noisy since the combustion chamber walls radiate sound and the engine structure is less rigid. The permissible compression ratio and output of air-cooled aircraft engines depend on the efficiency of the cooling of the cylinder head, exhaust valves, and seats. Long fins [1 to 2 in (25 to 50 mm) depending on cylinder size], closely spaced [0.10 to 0.20 in (2.5. to 5 mm)], with baffles directing the air at high velocity at the hot spots, have made high-output aircraft engines possible at the expense of considerable air resistance or drag. Properly designed cooling ducts may make use of the heat added to the cooling air to obtain a jet effect, thereby reducing drag.

Oil Cooling Shearing of various oil films by moving parts and oil contact with hot parts of an engine cause a rise in oil temperature until energy input to the oil equals the energy transferred by the oil to the cooler parts that it contacts. Oil coolers are required for high-duty engines to maintain oil temperatures of 200°F (94°C) or under. Temperatures of 250°F (120°C) are not uncommon in automobile engines on hot days: 300°F (150°C) is considered too high, particularly for oils which decompose rapidly under conditions causing the high oil temperatures. The desired oil temperature is maintained by circulating the oil through a radiator or cooler to an oil sump and then through the engine. Transmission oil cooling is also accomplished by placing plate coolers in the end tanks of radiators or with separate radiators.

LUBRICATION

(See also Secs. 6.10 and 8.4)

General A suitable liquid lubricant is vital to the satisfactory operation of an internal combustion engine. It prevents excessive wear and deposit accumulation and removes heat from the areas of relatively high temperature within the engine.

Most engine oils are composed of base oils and additives. The base oils are usually mineral oils, but some are synthetic oils. Chemical additives are incorporated in engine oil formulations to impart desirable performance characteristics which are not provided by base oils alone.

Physical Properties Both the physical and chemical properties of an engine oil affect its performance. The principal physical property involved is viscosity. It must be low enough at low temperatures to permit cranking and starting and high enough at high temperatures to provide an adequate oil film between rubbing surfaces. Sufficiently high viscosity is also required to help prevent excessive oil consumption at high temperatures. Another physical property affecting consumption is volatility. Consumption can be undesirably high with an oil of excessive volatility. Both viscosity and volatility are influenced by base oil selection. Viscosity can also be modified by means of additives.

Chemical additives perform a number of other functions in an engine oil. For example, oxidation inhibitors reduce oxidative and thermal degradation, which can lead to varnish and sludge deposition and to excessive thickening. Detergent-dispersant additives suspend insoluble products formed during engine operation, so they can be removed from the engine when the used oil is drained. Antiwear agents help protect rubbing surfaces, especially those subject to boundary lubrication. Antifoam agents prevent foam and air entrainment and their adverse effects on oil pressure and heat transfer. Rust inhibitors eliminate the formation of corrosion products on ferrous surfaces and reduce corrosive wear. Friction-reducing additives lower boundary friction.

SAE Classifications Engine oils are classified by the Society of Automotive Engineers in two general groups, viscosity (SAE J300 standard) and performance (SAE J183 standard). Viscosity is measured at both 0°F (−18°C) and 210°F (98.9°C). SAE 5W, 10W, 15W, 20W, and 25W viscosity numbers are related to 0°F (− 18°C) measurements; SAE 20, 30, 40, 50, and 60 to 210°F (98.9°C) measurements. Multigrade oils, such as SAE 5W-20, SAE 10W-30, and SAE20W-40, are those which have viscosity characteristics meeting requirements at both temperatures. Multigrade oils can be used throughout the year, reduce

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

friction and wear, and provide better lubrication and fuel economy during a cold start; e.g., the viscosity of an SAE 20W-40 oil will be less than that of an SAE 40 oil at ambient conditions.

The SAE performance classification includes engine oils ranging in performance quality from that of a straight mineral oil plus a small amount of pour-point and/or foam depressants, to those required in severe passenger car service and heavy-duty truck and off-highway operation. Letter designations such as SG apply to active test techniques for oils for gasoline engines existing since 1988; designations CD and CE apply to oils for naturally aspirated and turbocharged diesel engine service; and designation CD-II applies to oils for two-stroke cycle diesel engines. Performance of these oils is evaluated in both single- and multicylinder engine tests. Factors measured include rust, wear, deposit formation, oil consumption, oil thickening, and fuel economy.

REFERENCES: Most of the foregoing information on engine lubrication is covered in greater detail, and references are provided in the ''SAE Handbook.'' See also the list of references in Sec. 6.11.

AIR POLLUTION

(See also Sec. 18.1)

General Relationship

Air pollution from automobile engines (smog) was first detected about 1942 in Los Angeles, CA (see Haagen-Smit, *Sci. Amer.,* **210,** no. 1, 1964, p. 25). Smog arises from sunlight-induced photochemical reactions between nitrogen dioxide and the several hundred hydrocarbons in the atmosphere (see Caplan, SAE Pt. 12, p. 20). Undesirable products of the reactions include ozone, aldehydes, and peroxyacylnitrates (PAN). These are highly oxidizing in nature and cause eye and throat irritation. Visibility-decreasing nitrogen dioxide and aerosols are also formed.

According to an EPA study, transportation engine emissions comprised 42 percent by weight of all U.S. artificial air pollutants in 1980. At that time, virtually all the transportation CO, about one-half of the hydrocarbons and oxygenates, and about one-third of the nitrogen oxides came from gasoline engines. Diesel engines account for particulates. Table 9.6.20 illustrates the situation extant in 1980 and addresses the five categories of air pollutants listed which were attributed to all transportation sources and highway vehicles. Even more current statistics will show trends only, inasmuch as there is a sizable time lag between the collection and publication of data. Suffice it to say that improvements have been noted in many parts of the country and have resulted from improved engine design, universal use of catalytic converters in new automobiles, improved fuel technology, and so forth.

Locally, artificial pollutants can exceed those from natural sources and can become dominant. However, emitted mass does not reflect pollution severity. For example, 1 unit mass of oxides of sulfur may equal 30 units of carbon monoxide or more in terms of health effects.

Emissions from internal combustion engines include those from blowby, evaporation, and exhaust. These can vary considerably in amount and composition depending on engine type, design, and condition; fuel-system type; fuel volatility; and engine operating point. For an automobile without emission control it is estimated that of the organic emissions, 20 to 25 percent arise from blowby, 60 percent from the exhaust, and the balance from evaporative losses primarily from the fuel tank and to a lesser extent from the carburetor (if used). All other nonhydrocarbon emissions emanate from the exhaust.

At least 200 hydrocarbon (HC) and other organic compounds have been identified in exhaust. Some of those compounds, such as the olefins, are referred to as **reactive** since they react rapidly and to a great extent in the atmosphere to form smog products. Others such as the paraffins are virtually unreactive. Methane is deemed unreactive. Of several reactivity scales, the Carter scale (Table 9.6.21) has become most widely used. It ranks nonmethane organic gases (NMOGs) on a scale from 0 to 11 g ozone/g NMOG. The reactivity of a mixture is computed as the sum of the grams of ozone from individual species, with lower levels typical of the larger molecules. A value of 3.42 g NMOG/mi is representative of non-catalyst-equipped cars.

Table 9.6.21 Carter Scale of Reactivity

Nonmethane organic gas	g ozone/g NMOG (approx. range)
Methane	0
C_2-C_5 paraffins	0–1.5
Acetylene	0
Benzene	0.42
C_6 + C_8 paraffins	2–0.2
Toluene (and higher aromatics)	2–10
Alcohols	0.5–2.5
I-alkenes	9–1
Diolefins	11–9
Aldehydes	3–7
Internally double-bonded olefins	10–3

SOURCE: Carter and Atkinson, *Emu. Sc. Tech.* **23,** 1989, p. 864.

Atmospheric oxides of nitrogen (commonly termed NO_x) are a mixture of nitrogen oxide (NO) and nitrogen dioxide (NO_2). Oxides of sulfur (SO_z) arising from fuel sulfur are a mixture of SO_2, SO_3, and SO_4. Sulfuric acid may be a product in some oxidizing catalytic exhaust converters.

Emission quantities are most often reported as mole percent for the principal exhaust constituents (CO, H_2O, CO_2, H_2, O_2, N_2) and as moles per million moles (ppm) for trace constituents (HC, NO). Parts per million may be assumed to be equal to volume percent and ppm by volume. Hydrocarbons are reported commonly as either ppm equivalent hexane (C_6H_{14}) or as ppm carbon (C_1). One ppm C_6 is equivalent to 6 ppm C. Other reporting parameters are (1) specific emission rate, g pollutant/kWh or g pollutant/vehicle mi (km), and (2) emission index, g pollutant/1,000 g fuel.

Emission Sources

Homogenous Combustion and Spark Ignition Engines ORGANIC GAS EMISSIONS. Emissions of unburned hydrocarbon and other organic gases can be generated from several sources, as shown in Fig. 9.6.63. The largest source is thought to be flow during compression of un-

Table 9.6.20 Estimated Total Annual U.S. Emissions from Artificial Sources (1980)*

	Carbon monoxide	Hydrocarbons	Sulfur oxides	Nitrogen oxides	Particulates
Total, Tg/yr	85.4	21.8	23.7	20.7	7.8
All transportation, %	81	36	3.8	44	18
Highway vehicles, %	72	29	1.7	32	14

* Current data from the EPA and other sources will provide an updated version of these values. Rapid changes result from greater use of catalytic converters (universal in all spark ignition automotive engines), weather conditions, seasonal variations, etc.

SOURCE: EPA Rept. 450/4-82-001, 1982.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

burned fuel-air mixture into the crevice volume between the piston and liner above the top ring; the crevice mixture returns to the combustion during expansion at a time when it is too late to burn. A similar mechanism is caused by the absorption of fuel vapor into oil layers and combustion chamber deposits during compression, and subsequent desorption during expansion and exhaust.

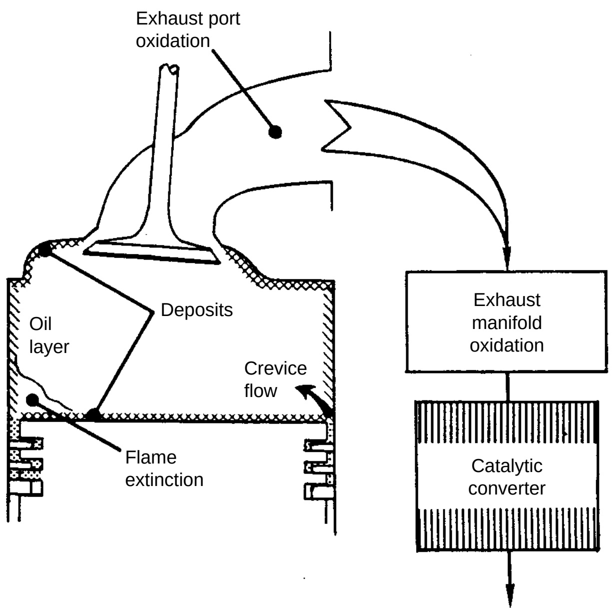


Fig. 9.6.63 Emission sources of unburned hydrocarbon and other organic gases. *(Amann, ''The Automotive Spark-Ignition Engine—An Historical Perspective,'' ASME-ICE vol. 8, 1989, pp. 33–45.)*

Emissions also are generated from flame extinction or wall quenching due to the inability of the flame to propagate totally to a surface or into a crevice. Daniel (''Sixth Symposium on Combustion,'' Reinhold, 1957, p. 886) described the result of wall quenching to be a visibly dark layer of unburned and partially burned fuel-air mixture left adjacent to all engine combustion chamber surfaces. Subsequent studies showed that the layer adjacent to single walls is largely burned prior to being exhausted. Thus the organic emission from the engine is mainly due to crevice quenching, of which the top piston land clearance is the major source.

Under engine operating conditions where cylinder exhaust residual is high, incomplete flame propagation may leave a portion of the combustion chamber contents unburned. This can produce organic emissions of several thousand ppm C_6. When residual exceeds 15 percent by weight, some incomplete combustion may occur. In some stratified-charge, direct-injection designs, bulk quenching as the flame comes in contact with cooler or leaner gases may also be present.

Wankel engine organic emissions arise from the above sources, but significant additional quantities may arise from mixture leakage through the leading rotor apex seal directly into the exhaust.

In two-stroke engines, where intake pressure exceeds exhaust during the scavenging or overlap period, raw-mixture loss to the exhaust creates very high organic emissions. Emissions from such two-cycle engines may be 10 times higher than those from four-cycle engines. Note also that most two-stroke designs utilize once-through lubrication; i.e., the oil is mixed with the fuel, typically in a fuel/oil ratio of 50 : 1. Hence, increased deposits and oil films generate organic emissions by physical and chemical storage and release of fuel components.

Any unburned hydrocarbons and other organic gases escaping the cylinder during exhaust can still oxidize in the exhaust temperature and manifold if the exhaust temperature is high enough for the available residence time and if there is sufficient oxygen present. In addition, where combustion is close to stoichiometric, oxidation of unburned gases is accomplished in catalysts (see later).

CARBON MONOXIDE EMISSIONS. The principal source of exhaust carbon monoxide (CO) is rich-mixture combustion. Figure 9.6.16 shows exhaust composition as mixture strength is varied. Cycle-to-cycle and cylinder-to-cylinder maldistribution of the fuel-air mixture, especially during transients, increases CO. Additional CO may arise from incomplete combustion of organics in an exhaust treatment device.

OXIDES OF NITROGEN EMISSIONS. The principal oxide of nitrogen produced inside the engine cylinder is nitrogen oxide (NO). However, since the residence time of gases within the reaction zone is very short, NO forms primarily in postflame combustion gases which do not attain chemical equilibrium. The formation depends primarily on peak combustion gas temperature and to a lesser extent on oxygen content. Once formed, NO tends to be frozen and persists in high, nonequilibrium concentrations during expansion and exhaust. Nitrogen oxide variation with mixture strength is shown in Fig. 9.6.16. Other important variables that affect NO emissions include the amount of exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) and spark timing. When mixtures are more than 30 percent lean or where air is injected into the exhaust, about 5 percent of NO may be oxidized to NO_2 prior to leaving the exhaust pipe. Typically NO and NO_2 emissions are measured together with a chemiluminescent analyzer, and their sum is reported as NO_x emissions.

ALDEHYDE EMISSIONS. Aldehydes are incomplete combustion products of the oxidation of organics. They arise from the same wall quenching and incomplete combustion mechanisms as the unburned organic emissions themselves, but in addition may be formed in low-temperature exhaust system oxidation reactions. Typically gasoline engine exhaust contains 100 ppm C aldehyde, less for rich and more for lean mixtures. Methanol fuel tends to produce high emission levels of formaldehyde.

PARTICULATE EMISSIONS. Solid-particle emissions from gasoline engines consist primarily of carbon, metals, and metal oxides. Metals arise from fuel and lubricant additives such as lead, phosphorus, zinc, and barium, as well as engine wear and corrosion. Sulfuric acid particles may be emitted as a result of reactions involving SO_2 over platinum metal catalysts. SO_2 is formed during combustion from fuel sulfur. Liquid aerosols of heavy hydrocarbons are emitted not only during starting, but also during running. Of these, polynuclear aromatics (PNAs) are health concerns.

Heterogeneous Combustion and Diesel Engines The hydrocarbon, carbon monoxide, and nitrogen oxide emission formation in heterogeneous combustion processes in diesel engines derives from the same basic mechanisms as in the spark ignition engine. However, the relative importance of each is different. In the diesel engine, the emission formation in combustion can be considered to arise from a broad distribution of individual fuel-air elements, some of which burn rich and others lean. Patterson and Henein (Emissions from Combustion Engines and Their Control, *Ann Arbor Sci.,* 1972, p. 260) have suggested the various emission sources in the combustion of a fuel spray injected into swirling air, as shown in Fig. 9.6.64. In addition, fuel impingement on chamber surfaces contributes to unburned hydrocarbons and carbon smoke particles. Hydrocarbon emissions from diesels contain many

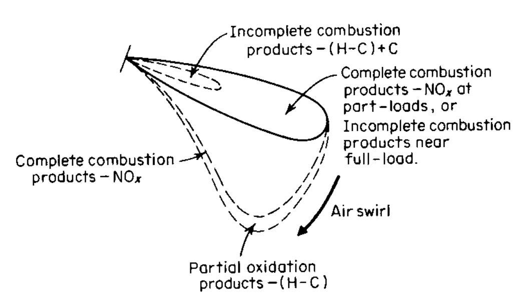


Fig. 9.6.64 Emission formation in a fuel spray injected in swirling air.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

heavy fuel types. Normally, heated sampling lines are required to avoid HC condensation during sample analysis.

The amount of carbon, carbon monoxide, hydrocarbon, and nitrogen oxide emissions from diesel engines varies considerably with engine and fuel system design as well as with the operating point. Moreover, because of the high air mass flow rate at partial load, emissions from diesel and gasoline engines cannot be compared directly except on a specific emission basis. Diesel emissions as mole percent or ppm may be corrected for dilution to an equivalence ratio of unity for comparison with spark ignition engine data. On a corrected basis, diesel engines emit in the range of 50 to 500 ppm C_6 and NO_x up to 3,000 ppm. Diesel engines which run lean tend to show higher NO_2/NO ratios (between 10 and 30 percent), especially at light loads when cooler regions quench any NO_2 formed in the reaction zone (Hiliard and Wheeler, SAE 790691, *SAE Trans.,* **88,** 1979). Carbon monoxide emission from the diesel engine is very low, typically under 1,000 ppm (0.1 percent).

Diesel engines emit considerable amounts of carbon smoke and odor constituents. Most carbon arises from pyrolysis in rich combustion regions. Spindt, Barnes, and Somers (SAE paper 710605, 1971) have identified low concentrations of many potential oxidation products and certain fuel fractions as being the odor-producing compounds. Human-panel techniques are commonly used to measure odor.

Strategies for Controlling Spark Ignition Engine Emissions: Effects of Engine Design Variables

Combustion Chamber Shape The shape of the combustion chamber affects organic emissions through a change in surface area and thus heat loss. Surface area relative to the entire clearance volume is an indicator of the volume fraction of organic emissions. This may be stated as

$$\text{Organic, ppm} \propto \frac{A_s}{V_c}$$

where A_s is the chamber surface area and V_c the clearance volume at TDC. According to Sheffler (SAE, Pt. 12, p. 60), the following change the surface/volume ratio, thereby changing hydrocarbon emissions: chamber shape, bore/stroke ratio, compression ratio, and cylinder displacement. In automotive reciprocating engines, surface/volume ratios range from 5 to 8 in^2/in^3 (2 to 3 cm^2/cm^3). Wankel rotary engines have surface/volume ratios about 50 percent higher. In well-designed engines, combustion chamber shape has little, if any, effect on CO. A fast-burning chamber increases NO because of an increase in peak temperature.

Ignition System Under most running conditions, improvements in spark energy, rise time, and spark duration produce little improvement in emissions. However, a high-energy, long-duration spark in conjunction with extended electrodes and wider spark gap has been found to minimize the increase in organic emissions due to misfire, as mixtures are leaned well beyond what is chemically correct. (See Quader, *SAE Trans.,* **85,** 1976.)

Exhaust back pressure and valve overlap affect organics and NO through changes in the exhaust residual. Increasing overlap or back pressure lowers NO_x and may lower organic emissions. At very light loads, excessive residual leads to incomplete combustion, thereby increasing organic emissions.

Induction Systems and Fuel-Air Mixture Preparation Optimum mixture preparation and distribution are a key to minimum emissions. With carburetors, high-velocity manifolds, increased manifold heating, and staged throttles have shown emission reductions (see Bartholomew, SAE Pt. 12, 1971). Port fuel injection should be well-targeted on the intake valve to minimize hydrocarbon and soot emission. (See Kosowski, SAE paper 850294, 1985.)

Effects of Operating Variables

Mixture ratio and ignition timing are the most important operating variables affecting emissions. Figure 9.6.16 shows the effect of the mixture ratio on major emission amounts. Retarding ignition timing from the best-efficiency setting reduces HC and NO_x emissions significantly. Excessive retard increases HC and CO emissions. Increasing engine speed reduces HC emissions as ppm. NO_x emissions increase as load increases. Increasing coolant temperature normally reduces HC emissions and increases NO_x emissions.

Limiting fuel enrichment during warm-up is critical to low emissions, especially without exhaust treatment devices. With exhaust treatment, emissions may be reduced to virtually zero once the system is warmed up. Thus the only significant emissions from such systems are those generated during starting and warm-up.

Exhaust Treatment Devices

Catalytic or noncatalytic exhaust treatment devices may be used to clean up remaining exhaust emissions. Thermal reactors are noncatalytic devices which rely on homogeneous bulk gas reactions to oxidize CO and HC. Commonly they appear to be enlarged exhaust manifolds, but they may have internal baffling. In thermal reactors, NO_x is unaffected. Reactions are enhanced by increased exhaust temperature (reduced compression ratio, retarded timing) or by increasing exhaust combustibles (rich mixtures). Typically, temperatures of 1,500°F (800°C) or more are required for peak efficiency. Usually the engine is run rich to give 1 percent CO, and air is injected into the exhaust. A typical thermal reactor residence time is 100 ms. Required reactor volume is commonly 1.5 times engine displacement. Maximum allowable reactor temperature is governed by materials and is typically 1,750°F (950°C). Thermal reactors are seldom used because the required engine calibration produces low fuel economy.

Catalytic systems are capable of reducing NO_x as well as oxidizing CO and HC. However, a reducing environment for NO_x treatment is required which necessitates a richer than chemically correct engine mixture ratio. A two-bed converter may be used in which air is injected into the second stage to oxidize CO and HC. It is highly efficient but results in lower fuel economy. Single-stage, three-way catalysts (TWCs) are widely used, but they require extremely precise fuel control to be effective. As illustrated in Fig. 9.6.65, only in the vicinity of stoichiometric ratio is the efficiency high for all three pollutants. Such TWC systems employ either a zirconia or a titanium oxide exhaust oxygen sensor (EGO, HEGO, or UEGO) and a feedback fuel system to maintain the required mixture strength near stoichiometric. Although a

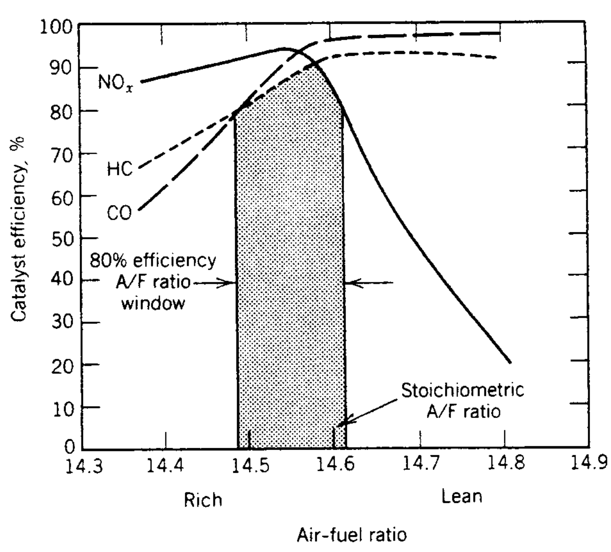


Fig. 9.6.65 Conversion efficiency of three-way catalyst (TWC) as a function of air/fuel ratio. *(Kummer, Prog. Energy Combust. Sci.,* **6,** *1981, pp. 177–199. Reprinted with permission.)*

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

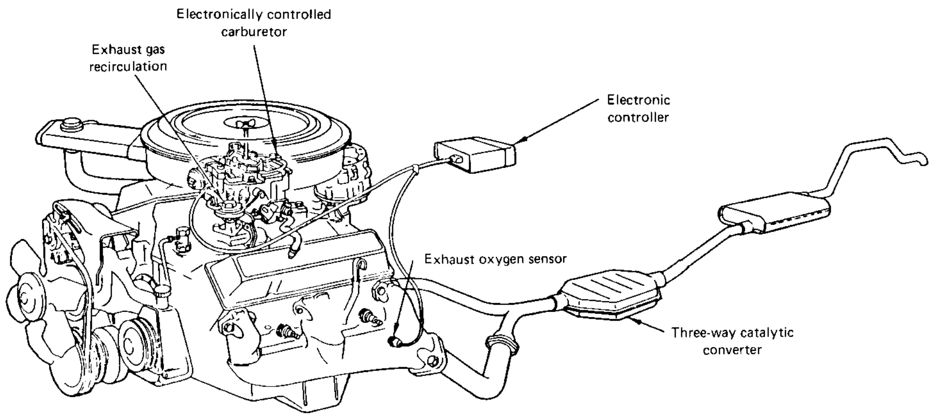


Fig. 9.6.66 Closed-loop three-way catalyst (TWC) system.

carburetor is shown in Fig. 9.6.66, the feedback concept is similar for both central port and multiport fuel injection. Table 9.6.22, which lists average hot stabilized conversion efficiencies during an FTP cycle, demonstrates that many modern vehicles achieve average conversion efficiencies of over 90 percent for all three pollutants once the catalyst has reached normal operating temperatures. Efficiencies are considerably lower on the high-speed acceleration cycle.

Catalyst support beds may be of the pellet or honeycomb (monolith) type. Materials for reducing catalysts include rhodium, Monel, and ruthenium. Materials for oxidizing catalysts include platinum and palladium. The amount of active catalyst material required may be as low as 0.05 troy oz (1.4 g) per vehicle system. In 1996, catalyst volume is about 50 to 100 percent of the engine displacement. The weight of the catalyst bed typically is about 2.2 to 5 lb (1 to 2.3 kg) excluding the metal container. Many aged catalysts can oxidize at 85 percent or higher efficiency at temperatures as low as 800 to 1,000°F (430 to 540°C). Above 1,500°F (820°C), they deteriorate rapidly. Compared with thermal reactors, catalytic converters warm up slowly because of the larger mass of material. Catalytic converters may be located farther from the engine than thermal reactors, since converters operate efficiently at lower temperatures. However, this slows warm-up. Monolithic converters, which can normally be operated hotter, can be smaller and can be placed closer to the engine. Catalysts with metal substrates (monoliths) warm up even faster and are more resistant to high-temperature deterioration. A small cold-start catalyst located near the engine, especially one with supplementary heating, is very effective. (See Laing, *Auto. Eng.*, Apr. 1994, p. 51.)

Strategies for Controlling Diesel Emissions: Engine Design and Operating Variables

Horrocks (*Proc. Inst. Mech. Engr.*, **208,** 1994, pp. 289–297) has summarized the strategies for controlling particulate and HC emissions as follows: (1) optimization of fuel injection and air motion; (2) good atomization of the fuel spray, particularly at idle, at partial load, and during transients; (3) precise control of fuel injection timing, particularly during transients; (4) minimization of parasitic losses in the combustion chamber; (5) low sac volume or valve cover orifice nozzles for direct injection; (6) minimization of contribution of lubricating oil; (7) central injector and combustion chamber for high-speed, direct injection engines; (8) modulated EGR; (9) electronic controls; (10) rapid warm-up of engine.

Control of NO_x emissions from diesels presents additional challenges since suppression of NO formation tends to cause an increase in particulates. Nevertheless, the following strategies are frequently used (Horrocks, op. cit.): (1) injection retard; (2) injection rate shaping; (3) intercooling of turbocharged engines; (4) centralized combustion for high-speed, direct injection; (5) modulated EGR; (6) electronic controls.

Exhaust Treatment Devices

Since diesel engines burn lean overall, the exhaust will always contain excess oxygen. Hence the reduction of NO_x with conventional three-way catalysts is not feasible. Currently, NO_x is removed from the diesel exhaust by either selective catalytic reduction (e.g., Feeley et al., SAE-

Table 9.6.22 Three-Way Catalyst Conversion Efficiency, Percent

			Hot, stabilized FTP			High-speed cycle		
Vehicle	Year	Disp (L)	HC	CO	NO_x	HC	CO	NO_x
Escort	1993	1.9	—	—	—	89.3	41.2	57.8
Taurus	1993	3.0	94.4	90.2	69.9	90.8	56.5	81.5
Mustang	1993	5.0	96.3	97.4	71.9	96.6	89.4	73.9
Cutlass Supreme	1994	3.1	98.3	91.5	84.7	96.0	70.8	84.1
Grand Prix	1994	3.4	97.5	95.1	88.3	88.0	60.2	76.1
Olds 98	1994	3.8	96.7	83.9	94.0	96.9	76.4	92.1
Seville	1994	4.6	97.3	87.6	76.6	93.1	60.1	74.7
Custom Cruiser	1992	5.7	97.1	87.4	90.2	92.9	47.0	62.6
Saturn	1994	1.9	—	—	—	91.6	43.2	91.1
Metro	1993	1.0	—	—	—	85.3	23.0	70.1
Grand Am	1993	2.3	98.3	92.1	93.9	93.0	63.9	98.0
Civic	1992	1.5	98.5	92.8	95.2	86.7	57.6	97.2
Mirage	1993	1.8	98.8	96.4	98.9	94.4	83.6	99.0
Camry	1993	3.0	95.7	92.8	98.4	95.1	79.5	96.3
Corolla	1993	1.8	91.8	86.3	94.9	85.3	66.9	92.3
420 SEL	1993	4.2	99.3	94.4	97.7	99.3	90.9	96.5

SOURCE: German, SAE paper 950812.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.6.23 Federal Gasoline and Diesel Engine Vehicle Emission Standards (EPA 6684200)*†

Year(s)	Test procedure	Nonmethane organic gases, g/mi	Nonmethane hydrocarbons, g/mi	Carbon monoxide, g/mi	Spark-ignited oxides of nitrogen, g/mi	Diesel oxides of nitrogen, g/mi	Particulates, g/mi	Cold carbon monoxide, g/mi	Evaporative losses, g/test
Automobiles: 50,000-mi schedule (100,000-mi); phased in; light-duty trucks up to 3,750-lb loaded vehicle weight (LVW) (*Fed Reg*, v. 56, no. 108, June 5, 1991)									
1995–2002	FTP tier I	0.257 (0.319)	0.25 (0.31)	3.4 (4.2)	0.4 (0.6)	1.0 (1.25)	0.08 (0.1)	10	2
2003 and later	FTP-tier II	(0.0128)	(0.0125)	(1.7)	(0.2)	(0.4)	(0.1)	10	Not specified
Light-duty trucks between 3,751- and 5,750-lb LVW, phased in (*Fed Reg*, **56,** no. 108, June 5, 1991)									
1995–2002	FTP-tier I		0.32 (0.40)	4.4 (5.5)	0.7 (0.976)	— (0.97)	0.08 (0.1)		2
Light-duty trucks over 5,750-lb LVW, phased in (*Fed Reg*, **56,** no. 108, June 5, 1991)									
1995–2002	FTP-tier I		0.39 (0.56)	5.0 (7.3)	1.1 (1.53)	— (1.53)	— (0.12)		2

Year(s)	Test procedure	Total hydrocarbons	Carbon monoxide	Oxides of nitrogen	Hydrocarbons + oxides of nitrogen	Particulates	Accel/Lug Pea %
Heavy-duty diesel, emission in g/(bhp · h)							
1994	EPA Trans.	1.3	15.5	5.0		0.10 (0.05 buses 1996)	20/15/50
1998	EPA Trans.	1.3	15.5	4.0		0.10 (0.05 buses)	20/15/50
Off-highway diesels 37 kW and greater, emission in g/kWh (*Fed. Reg.* **59,** no. 116, June 17, 1994); phase-in 1996 to 2000							
1996–2000							
I. 130 kW or more		1.3	11.4	9.2		0.54	20/15/50
II. 75–130 kW; 8 mode				9.2			20/15/50
III. 37–75 kW				9.2			20/15/50
Motorcycles (50 cm^3 and over), emission in g/km (*Fed. Reg.* **42,** no. 3, June 28, 1979)							
1980 and later	FTP	5	12				0.6
Small utility engines, emisssion in g/kWh (*Fed. Reg.*, **60,** no. 127, July 3, 1995)							
1997 and later (SAE cycle J-1088)							
I. Nonhandheld under 225 cm^3			469		16.1		
II. Nonhandheld 225 cm^3 and over			469		13.4		
III. Handheld under 20 cm^3		295	805	5.36			
IV. Handheld 20–50 cm^3		241	805	5.36			
V. Handheld 50 cm^3 and over		1,661	603	5.36			
SI outboard and personal watercraft. (*Fed. Reg.* **59,** No. 216, Nov. 9, 1994)							
Standard calls for average 75% reduction in HC emission from 1990 baseline levels							
Baseline HC, g/kWh = $151 + 557/\text{Power}^{0.9}$							
Final = 0.25 (baseline HC)							
1998–2006	ICOMIA	Phase in	400	6			

* Numbers in parentheses refer to 100,000 mi standard.
† Refer to the standard, which is periodically updated, for further details of terms, etc.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

paper 950747) or catalyzed thermal decomposition of NO into O_2 and N_2. In addition, lean NO_x catalysts are under development.

Diesel particulate traps have been developed which employ ceramic or metal filters (see Wade et al., SAE 830083, 1983). Thermal and catalytic regeneration can burn out the material stored. Particulate standards of 0.2 g/mi may necessitate such traps. Both fuel sulfur and aromatic content contribute strongly to particulates. Catalysts have been developed for diesels which are very effective in oxidizing the organic portion of the particulate (see Ball and Stack, SAE paper 902110, 1990).

Emission Regulations

Light-Duty Passenger Cars and Trucks Emissions are measured on a light-duty driving cycle termed the **Federal Test Procedure (FTP)**. This involves various accelerations, decelerations, and cruise models on a chassis dynamometer. The vehicle is started after a 12-h soak in a 60 to 86°F (16 to 30°C) ambient temperature. Top cycle speed is 56.7 mi/h (91.3 km/h). Test procedures, fuel, and instrumentation are detailed in the Code of Federal Regulations (70, parts 85 and 86, 1986) for cars, trucks, and diesel engines.

In the FTP, the exhaust is introduced into a constant-volume sampler (CVS) in which ambient air is mixed with raw exhaust. Emissions are calculated in grams per mile from average concentrations and total sampler volume flow. In theory, the constant-volume sampler yields true mass emission results. Three sample bags have been used to segregate emissions during the key cycle portions of cold start, hot restart, and cruise. The emission concentrations from each bag are weighed, and the sums are used for certification purposes. Particulate emissions from diesels are measured by weighing filters. Summaries of light-duty, passenger car, and truck standards can be found in Table 9.6.23 (Federal) and Table 9.6.24 (California).

In order to meet the **ultra-low emission vehicle (ULEV)** standards in the cold phase of the FTP-75 test cycle, the time period where the standard three-way catalyst has low efficiency (light-off time) needs to be reduced drastically. Exhaust gas ignition (run rich, pump air into the exhaust, and use ignition device such as glow plug to ignite mixture in exhaust), electric-heated catalysts, burner-heated catalysts (Achleitner et al., SAE paper 950479), stainless-steel or double-wall exhaust pipes for insulation, and insulated catalysts are some of the enabling technologies currently being explored. In addition, more sophisticated transient fuel strategies and closed-loop control are employed.

Table 9.6.24 California Air Resources Board Exhaust Emission (CARB) Standards for Passenger Cars (Phased in), 50,000-mi (100,000-mi) Standards

CARB	Effective date	Nonmethane organic gases, g/mi	Carbon monoxide, g/mi	Oxides nitrogen, g/mi
1993 base	1993	0.25 (0.31)	3.4 (4.2)	0.4
TLEV	1995	0.125 (0.156)	3.4 (4.2)	0.4 (0.6)
LEV	1995	0.075 (0.090)	3.4 (4.2)	0.2 (0.3)
ULEV	1995	0.040 (0.055)	1.7 (2.1)	0.2 (0.3)
ZEV	1998	0.000 (0.000)	0.0 (0.0)	0.0 (0.0)

TLEV = transitional low-emission vehicle; LEV = low-emission vehicle; ULEV = ultra-low-emission vehicle; ZEV = zero-emission vehicle.

Heavy-Duty Engines Emissions from heavy-duty diesel engines are determined in transient engine dynamometer tests. This involves starts, stops, and speed/load changes. Gaseous and particulate emissions are determined in g/(bhp · h). These standards are shown in Table 9.6.23.

Additional Emission Control The California Air Resources Board (CARB) and the EPA have set standards for a variety of off-highway and marine engines. Some of these are given in Table 9.6.24. Future standards may include a wider group of off-highway engines, locomotives, and light aircraft.

9.7 GAS TURBINES

by John H. Lewis and Albert H. Reinhardt

REFERENCES: Kerrebrock, ''Aircraft Engines and Gas Turbines,'' MIT Press. Koff, Spanning the Globe with Jet Propulsion, 1991, AIAA paper 2987. ''Turbine Engine Directory,'' Flight Int., June 8–14, 1994. Hill and Peterson, ''Mechanics and Thermodynamics of Propulsion,'' Addison-Wesley. Bejan, ''Advanced Engineering Thermodynamics,'' Wiley. Horlock, ''Combined Cycle Powerplants,'' Pergamon. ''Gas Turbine World Handbook,'' published annually, Pequot Publishing, Inc.

INTRODUCTION

The **gas turbine** is a turbine-type engine which operates with gas (usually air) as distinguished from steam or water as the working substance. In its most basic configuration, the gas-turbine engine consists of a compressor to draw in and compress the gas, a combustor or heat source to add energy to the compressed gas, and a turbine to extract power from the heated gas flow. Practical applications of gas turbines first occurred from 1939 to 1941. In 1939, the firm of Brown Boveri of Switzerland used a gas turbine to generate electricity. Also in 1939, the first flight of an aircraft powered by a gas turbine developed by Hans von Ohain took place in Germany. Another aircraft gas turbine was developed by Frank Whittle, who powered an aircraft in 1941 in England. From these early applications, the gas turbine has been developed to the point where today it is the most important aircraft power plant in use. In addition to its aviation applications, the gas turbine is a significant power plant for electric power generation, pipeline pumping power, and marine propulsion. It is a key component of combined-cycle power plants and cogeneration plants (see Fig. 9.7.18 and Sec. 9.4).

Depending upon its development roots and applications, the gas turbine is referred to by many names. In aviation, it is called a jet engine, a turbojet, a jet turbine, a turboprop, a turbofan, and a fanjet. In land and marine applications it is called a gas turbine, a turboshaft, a combustion turbine, and an industrial turbine. In the industrial world, engines generally fall into two categories. **Heavy-duty** or **frame machines** refer to gas turbines designed and built strictly for ground applications. **Aeroderivative machines,** as the name implies, are gas turbines originally designed for aircraft use and adapted for industrial applications. A typical aeroderivative is shown in Fig. 9.7.1. Future trends to marry heavy industrial and aerospace technologies will blur this distinction between the two types.

Gas turbines offer significant advantages compared with other types of engines because they are compact, lightweight, reliable, and efficient. They are capable of rapid start-up, follow transient loading well, and can be operated remotely or left unattended. They have a long service life, long service intervals, and low maintenance costs. Cooling fluids are usually not required. Their compact size high power-to-weight ratio, and high reliability make gas turbines the ideal power plant for aircraft and for portable power plants. In industrial applications, the engine's small footprint allows relatively small foundations and enclosure buildings.

FUELS

Gas turbines use a wide variety of **gaseous and liquid fuels**. For ground and marine applications, natural gas and light distillate oils are most commonly used, but gasified coal and heavy residual oils can also be

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

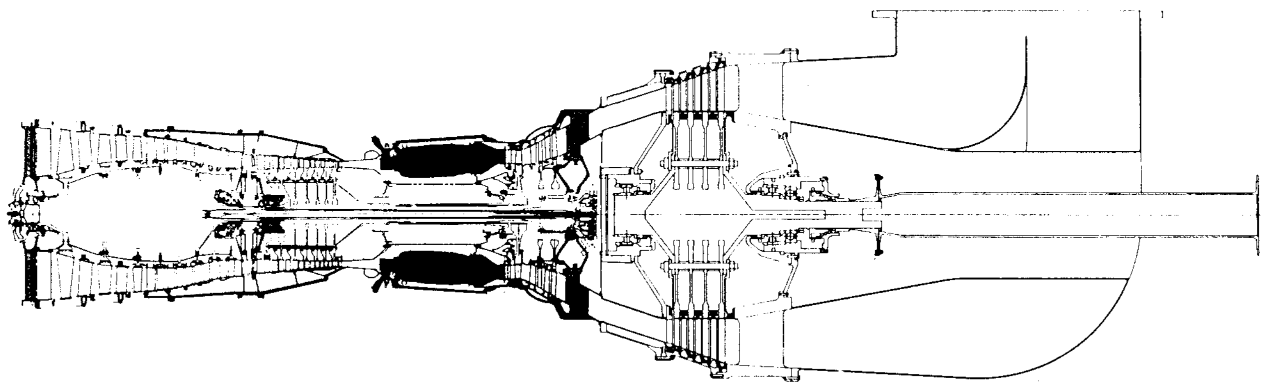


Fig. 9.7.1 Cross section of Pratt and Whitney FT8 gas turbine derived from the JT8D commercial aircraft engine.

used. When fuels that contain significant amounts of sulfur, salt, vanadium, and other metals are used, the hot-section components such as the combustor and turbine must be designed to withstand the corrosive effects of these impurities. For aircraft applications, specific kerosine-type fuels have been developed that control important qualities of the fuel, to obtain maximum performance.

THERMODYNAMIC CYCLE BASIS

The gas turbine operates on the principle of the **Brayton** (or **Joule**) **cycle**. The working substance, usually ambient air, is compressed adiabatically to high pressure where heat is added at constant pressure to elevate the temperature, at which point it is expanded, also adiabatically, back to the original pressure. Because of the expansion from a higher temperature, the work extracted in the expansion process exceeds the work required for compression by an amount that equals the net output work of the cycle. The cycle is completed at the original pressure with heat rejection in the exhaust. See Fig. 9.7.2. At the end of the expansion process, the working substance temperature is higher than its initial temperature by an amount that corresponds to the waste energy to be dissipated at constant pressure to the surroundings. Unique to the Brayton cycle are the heat addition and heat rejection processes at (ideally) constant pressure. The constant-pressure process lends itself to continuous flow of the working substance. When coupled with compressors and turbines which operate on the rotating turbomachinery principle (see Sec. 14), the entire gas turbine acts as a **continuous flow engine**. The continuously flowing working substance (air) results in very high power density. The gas turbine's intrinsic compactness favors its use over other engine types in many power generation applications.

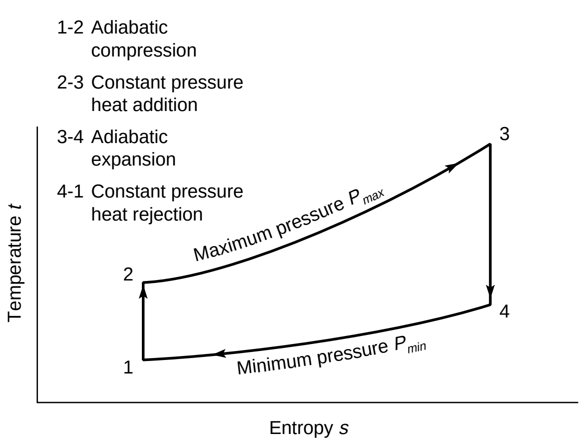


Fig. 9.7.2 Brayton cycle temperature vs. entropy diagram. Ideal cycle.

Temperature-entropy diagrams describe the Brayton cycle. Figure 9.7.2 shows the ideal case where all component efficiencies are 100 percent. Figure 9.7.3 shows the real cycle with nonideal components, including friction losses in the ducting between the compressor and turbine.

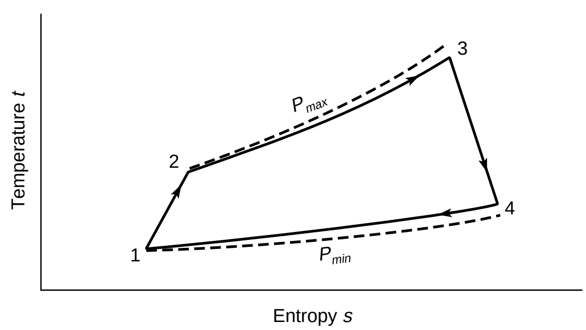


Fig. 9.7.3 Brayton cycle temperature vs. entropy diagram. Real cycle reflects component inefficiencies and pressure losses.

The **ideal Brayton cycle efficiency** η is related to the cycle pressure ratio by the following expression, where $P_{\max}/P_{\min}$ = pressure ratio, R = gas constant, and c_p (the latter being specific heat at constant pressure properties of the working substance):

$$\eta \text{ Brayton, ideal} = 1 - 1/(P_{\max}/P_{\min})^{R/C_p} \tag{9.7.1}$$

Thus with ideal components, the gas-turbine efficiency will be increasingly high as its characteristics maximum/minimum pressure ratio continues to increase approaching 100 percent when the pressure ratio becomes infinitely large. With real components, however, when the pressure ratio increases, the component inefficiencies become larger contributors to exhaust waste heat. The net result is that efficiency reaches a peak at some level and then falls off. The point where this peaking occurs is directly related to the quantity of cycle heat addition, which, in turn, is related to the maximum cycle temperature. As illustrated in Fig. 9.7.4, the peak shifts to a higher efficiency level at high pressure ratio as the turbine temperature increases. At the same time, the specific power output has a similar trend of increasing up to a peak and then falling off as the pressure ratio increases, while the amount of

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

specific output power increases continuously with heat addition as determined by the maximum cycle temperature. These trends are illustrated in Fig. 9.7.5.

Among manufacturers and users, the **maximum cycle temperature** is variously referred to as turbine inlet temperature, combustor exit temperature, turbine rotor inlet temperature, or firing temperature. Precise definition depends on the design details for a specific engine.

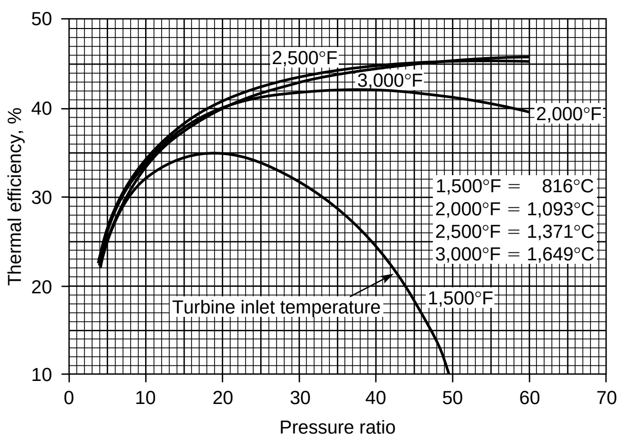


Fig. 9.7.4 Representative Brayton cycle variation of thermal efficiency with pressure ratio at different turbine inlet temperatures.

Specific power refers to output per unit mass flow of the working substance, expressed in hp/(lb · s) or its electrical equivalent kW/(kg · s). As shown in Fig. 9.7.5, a given cycle fixes specific power. When specific power is constant, absolute power then varies directly with the mass flow rate of the working substance. The mass flow quantity, in turn, sets the overall size of the machine

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Power} &= \text{specific power} \times \text{mass flow rate}\\ &= \text{hp/(lb}\cdot\text{s)} \times \text{(lb/s)}\\ &= \text{kW/(kg}\cdot\text{s)} \times \text{(kg/s)}\end{aligned}$$

Generally, the gas turbine's working substance is atmospheric air which is continuously drawn into the front of the compressor through inlet ducting and is expelled back to atmosphere through exhaust ducting. In this case, the minimum cycle pressure is identical to the surrounding ambient pressure while the initial working substance temperature is the ambient temperature of the surrounding atmosphere. The schematic in Fig. 9.7.6 shows the typical component arrangement of a continuous flow simple-cycle gas turbine. In this typical arrangement, the heat addition section consists of an internal combustor where fuel is added directly into the through-flowing air and is continuously burned. The rotating compressor is attached to the turbine by a shaft which transmits the power needed for compression. The excess power available from expansion through the turbine at high temperature is fed by a rotating power output shaft to an external load.

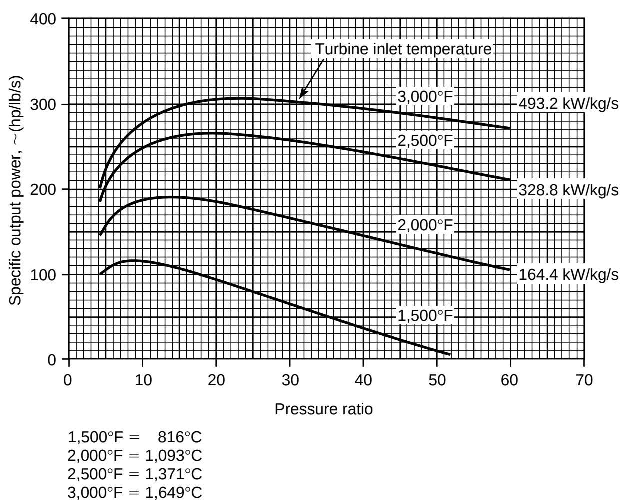


Fig. 9.7.5 Representative Brayton cycle variation of specific output power with different pressure ratios and turbine inlet temperatures.

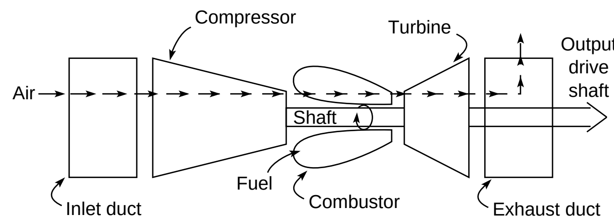


Fig. 9.7.6 Simple Brayton cycle gas-turbine component arrangement.

BRAYTON CYCLE VARIATIONS

Regenerative Cycle (Fig. 9.7.7) In this cycle, air exiting the compressor is directed through a heat exchanger, or **regenerator** before being introduced to the combustion section. Then the heated air exhausting from the turbine passes through the other side of the regenerator. By this

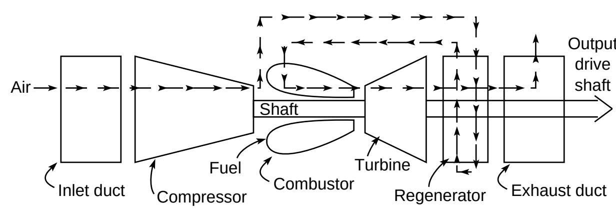


Fig. 9.7.7 Regenerative Brayton cycle gas-turbine component arrangement.

means, some of the exhaust heat is recovered and used as an additional source of energy to heat the high-pressure air, instead of being dissipated as waste heat in the low-pressure exhaust. The effect of regeneration is to increase cycle efficiency, but it is only effective at low levels of pressure ratio. This is because as the pressure ratio increases, the compressor exit air temperature increases and the turbine exhaust temperature is lowered, thereby reducing the regenerator temperature difference necessary for heat transfer. At some point, depending on the maximum cycle temperature, the compressor exit and exhaust temperatures become equal and there can be no further regenerative heat recovery. Figure 9.7.8 compares regenerative cycle trends with those of the simple cycle.

Intercooled Cycle (Fig. 9.7.9) In this cycle, the compression process is split between two compressors. An **intercooling heat exchanger** is placed between the front and rear compressors to reduce the temperature of the working substance. This cycle takes advantage of the thermodynamic principle that the work of compression is directly proportional to the level of the entering temperature. With a lowered inlet temperature, the work input needed to drive the rear compressor is reduced for the same pressure ratio. The reduced compressor work is directly available as increased net cycle output. This is true for both ideal and real cycles. In the ideal cycle, because the intercooler is a source of added heat rejection, the intercooling cycle efficiency is always lower than that of a simple cycle having the same pressure ratio. However, in real cycles, the intercooling effect can help offset the effect of real component efficiencies. In some circumstances, intercooling improves both specific power output and efficiency over simple cycle levels. Theoretically, the maximum power output occurs when the total

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

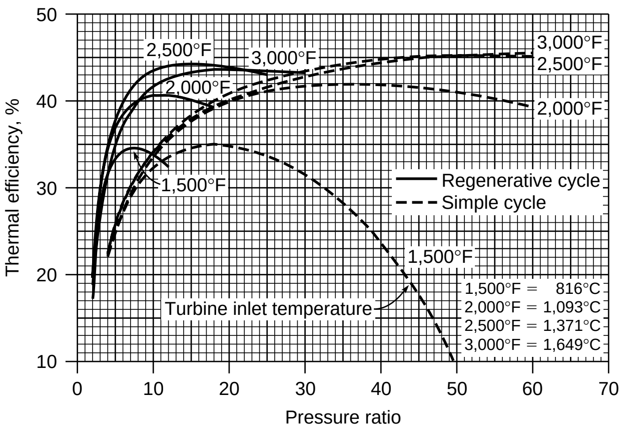


Fig. 9.7.8 Regenerative Brayton cycle variation of thermal efficiency with pressure ratio at different turbine inlet temperatures.

pressure ratio is split evenly between front and rear compressors. However, maximum cycle efficiency occurs at a split which depends on the turbine inlet temperature as well as the efficiency levels of compressors and turbines. Typically, peak efficiency occurs when intercooling takes

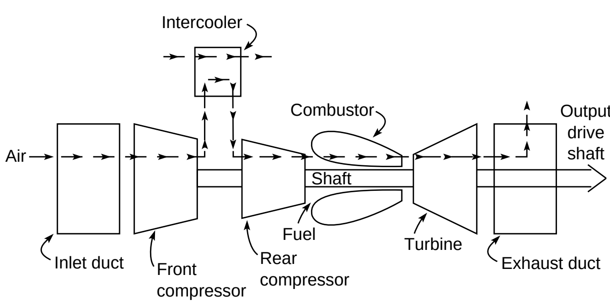


Fig. 9.7.9 Intercooled Brayton cycle gas-turbine component arrangement.

place well in front of the midpoint of the compression process. Figures 9.7.10 and 9.7.11 compare intercooled thermal efficiency and specific power output trends for pressure-ratio splits optimized for power output and for pressure-ratio splits optimized for efficiency.

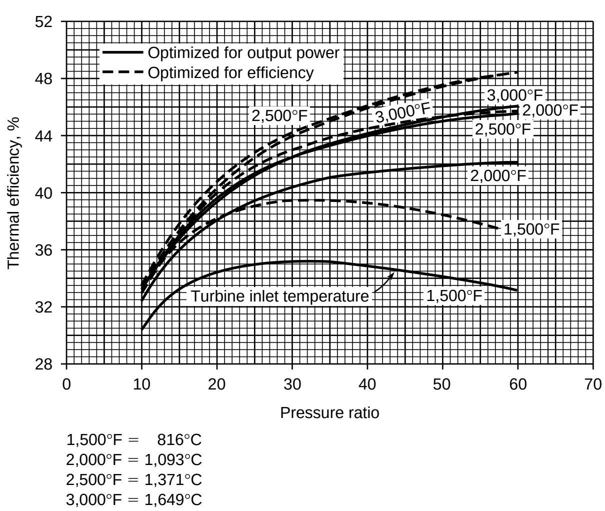


Fig. 9.7.10 Intercooled Brayton cycle variation of thermal efficiency with pressure ratios at different turbine inlet temperatures, optimized for output power and for efficiency.

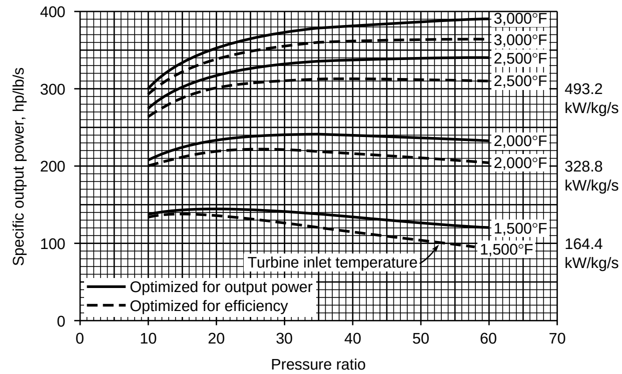


Fig. 9.7.11 Intercooled Brayton cycle variation of specific output power with pressure ratio at different turbine inlet temperatures, optimized for output power and for efficiency.

Reheat Cycle (Fig. 9.7.12) In this cycle, the turbine expansion process is interrupted at some intermediate point before it reaches minimum (or ambient) pressure in the exhaust. At this point, additional heat is added to the working substance by combustion at constant pressure in a second combustor. This takes advantage of the basic thermodynamic principle that the work of any expansion process increases in direct

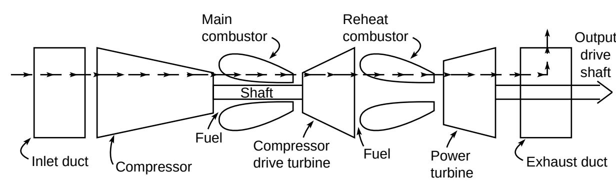


Fig. 9.7.12 Reheat Brayton cycle gas-turbine component arrangement.

proportion to the temperature entering the turbine. (This is the converse of the principle that applies to compression, as cited above for the intercooled process.) The elevated temperature entering the second turbine increases its work output; this additional work appears directly as greater power on the output shaft. Since the extra work is more than offset by the added heat energy of the second combustor, the result is also reduced cycle efficiency.

Associated with the **reheat cycle** is an increase in exhaust temperature which ordinarily represents higher exhaust waste heat. However, in the case of a **combined cycle,** the higher exhaust temperature is a source of waste heat recovery that can be used to generate steam. The higher exhaust temperature can improve cycle efficiency of the steam system to the extent that the **overall system efficiency** can be improved. Reheat thus lends itself to use with exhaust waste heat recovery systems.

Intercooled and Regenerative Cycle This cycle (Fig. 9.7.13) has both an intercooler in the middle of the compression process and a regenerator to capture exhaust waste heat. The intercooling results in a

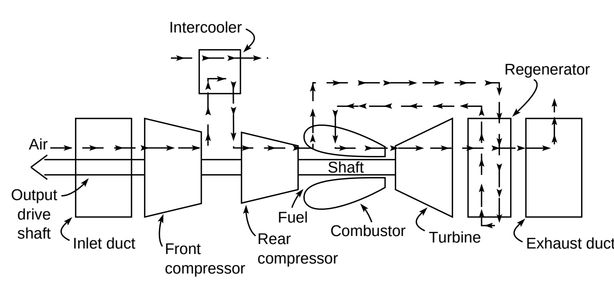


Fig. 9.7.13 Intercooled regenerative Brayton cycle gas-turbine component arrangement.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

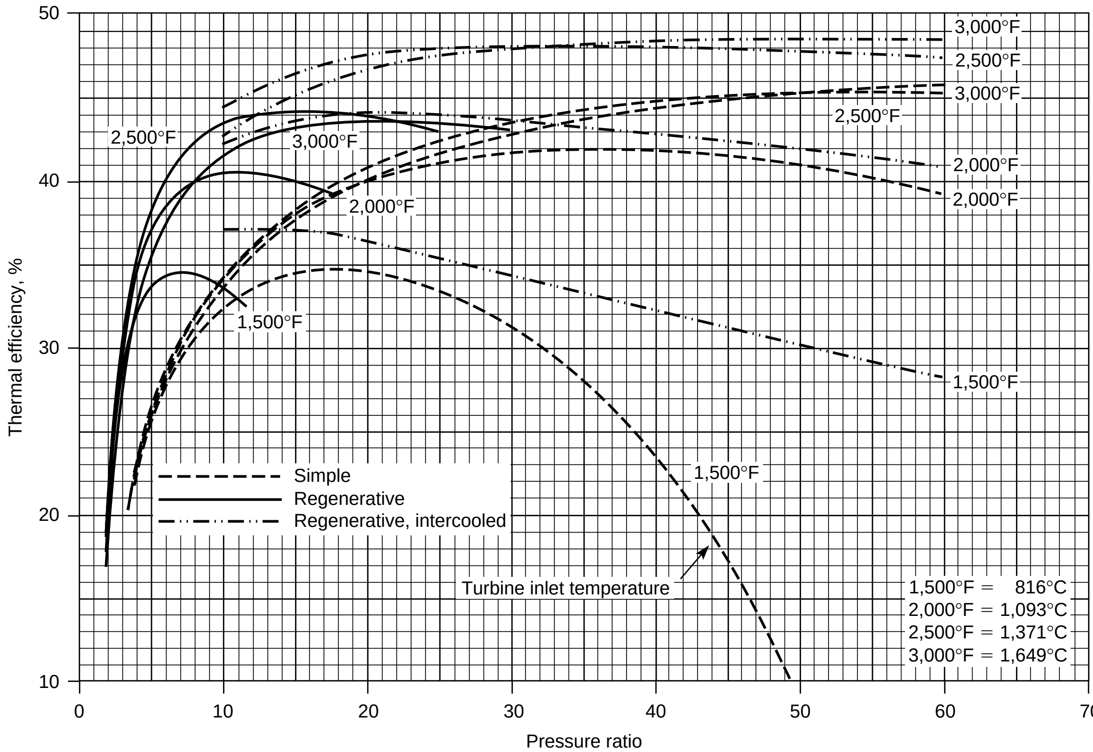


Fig. 9.7.14 Variation of Brayton cycle thermal efficiency with pressure ratio and at different turbine inlet temperatures, for regenerative cycle and for simple cycle.

lower temperature leaving the rear compressor. This circumvents the temperature difference limitation reached in regeneration. That is, at increasingly high pressure-ratio levels, the turbine exhaust temperature remains sufficiently higher than the compressor exit temperature to sustain heat exchange and thus waste heat recovery. Overall, the cycle efficiency of the intercooled regenerative cycle is superior to that of the simple Brayton cycle and all its common variants over a wide range of cycle pressure-ratio levels. Figure 9.7.14 shows variation of efficiency for an intercooled regenerative cycle compared to simple and pure regenerative cycles.

In actual practice, the choice of a simple cycle or one of its variants depends on overall economics applied to a specific use. The extra cycle benefits must trade favorably against the additional cost and complexity of the added heat exchangers or combustors and the penalties of the added ducting in between.

CONFIGURATION VARIATIONS

Since the gas turbine is made up of rotating compressors and turbines connected by driveshafts, there are various ways to arrange these elements. The simplest, Fig. 9.7.15, is the single shaft or ''spool'' arrangement. In this case, the compressor, turbine, and output driveshaft all turn at the same rotational speed.

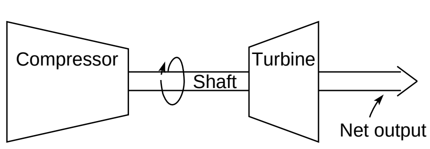


Fig. 9.7.15 Single-spool gas-turbine component arrangement.

Free Turbine (Fig. 9.7.16) To provide more flexibility by allowing the load to turn independently at a speed different from that of the compressor and its drive turbine, a **free turbine** configuration connects the compressor and its turbine on one driveshaft, while hot air continues to expand through a separate turbine which delivers net output power. The free turbine finds use either in electric generator power

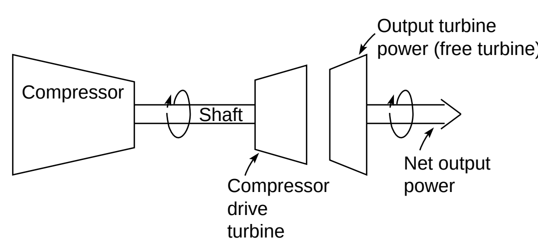


Fig. 9.7.16 Free turbine gas-turbine component arrangement.

applications, where the generator must operate at a fixed speed (either 3,600 r/min or 3,000 r/min for 60- or 50-Hz installations, respectively), or in pumping applications, where speed can vary. In either case, the compressor or partial load can operate at its most favorable speed independent of the driveshaft load.

Dual Spool (Fig. 9.7.17) At very high compressor pressure ratios, the part load operation of a compressor on a single spool tends to become unstable. When a compressor designed for high pressure ratio is forced to operate at low pressure ratio (as load is reduced), the front and rear portions of the single-spool compressor become aerodynamically unbalanced. This is alleviated by dividing the compression process into two or more spools on separate shafts driven by separate turbines. With this arrangement, the front compressor can slow down more rapidly

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

than the one behind, thus maintaining a more stable overall aerodynamic balance. Conventionally, to avoid unnecessary turning and ducting of the air, the spools are arranged in a straight-through alignment. This is made possible by **concentric shafting**. The shaft connecting the second compressor and its drive turbine (commonly known as the *high-pressure spool*) is made hollow to accommodate the driveshaft which connects the first or front compressor with its drive turbine at the rear (commonly known as the *low-pressure spool*).

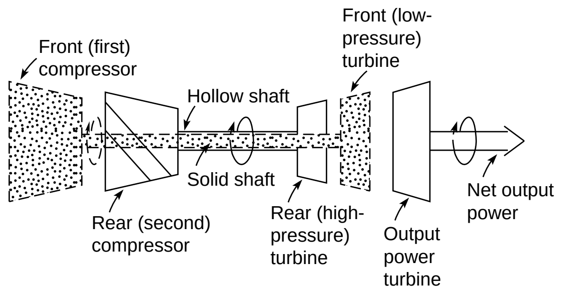


Fig. 9.7.17 Dual-spool gas-turbine component arrangement.

Closed vs. Open System In circumstances where heat addition by internal combustion is not practical, the open cycle using atmospheric air as the working substance may be replaced by another working substance continuously flowing in a **closed circuit**. An example of such a power plant would be the helium-cooled nuclear reactor. As the name implies, helium under high pressure replaces air. With the working substance completely contained, the minimum cycle pressure can be made much higher than ambient. Even such a low-molecular-weight gas as helium can be compressed into a low volume and thus keep the overall power plant relatively compact. Helium lends itself to the nuclear reactor application by virtue of its being almost completely chemically inert, which prevents radioactive transport.

External Combustion The gas turbine can maintain its continuous flow feature without internal combustion; such is the case with the direct use of coal as a fuel. Early attempts to use coal directly in internally fired gas turbines always resulted in severe and rapid damage to the turbine materials. Associated with the coal burning are not only the erosive particulates but also highly corrosive impurities such as sulfur. As an alternative, gas-turbine power plants using indirect firing of coal are being considered. Coal, on a Btu/lb basis, is much cheaper than any other available fossil fuel. Conversely, indirect heat addition through a heat exchanger not only adds expense to the power plant but also wastes energy because of heat exchanger effectiveness limitations. The overall economics of a specific application will dictate power plant choice.

WASTE HEAT RECOVERY SYSTEMS

A characteristic of gas-turbine engines is the incentive to operate at as high a ''firing'' (turbine inlet) temperature as the prevailing technology will allow. This incentive comes from the direct benefit to both specific output power and cycle efficiency, as illustrated in Figs. 9.7.4 and 9.7.5. Associated with the high maximum temperature is a high exhaust temperature which, if not utilized, represents waste heat dissipated to the atmosphere. Schemes to capture this high-temperature waste heat are prevalent in industrial applications of the gas turbine.

Combined Cycle This term commonly refers to the scheme that places a boiler and superheater directly behind the gas turbine to generate steam and produce additional power in a steam turbine (Rankine cycle). A simplified version of a combined cycle is shown in Fig. 9.7.18. Figure 9.7.19 illustrates the combined-cycle process on a temperature vs. entropy diagram. The steam portion is sometimes called the **bottoming** cycle. Early combined cycles had **fired** as well as **unfired** versions. The supplementary firing was required because of the high sensitivity of the Rankine cycle to maximum superheat temperature, as

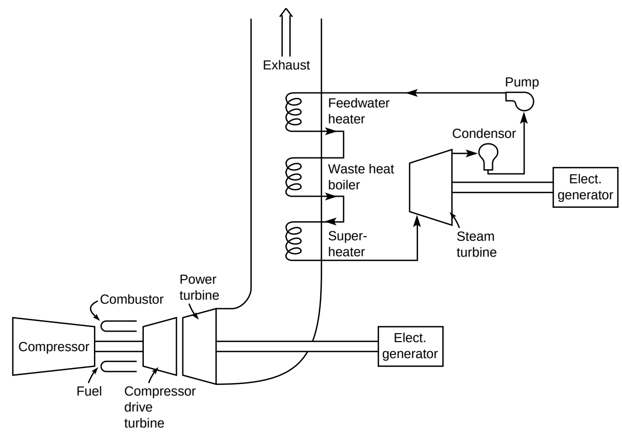


Fig. 9.7.18 Schematic of combined-cycle heat recovery system.

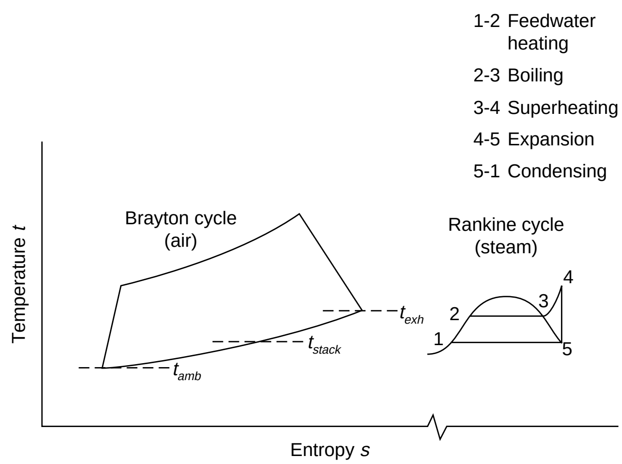


Fig. 9.7.19 Combined-cycle temperature vs. entropy diagram.

shown in Fig. 9.7.20. When the gas-turbine exhaust temperature is too low to sustain a good steam cycle efficiency, the extra combustion in the gas-turbine exhaust could result in an overall system efficiency improvement. Modern gas turbines, with their increasingly high turbine inlet and exhaust temperatures, can approach or exceed 60 percent in **overall combined-cycle plant efficiency** without supplementary firing.

If η_{gt} is the gas-turbine (Brayton) cycle efficiency and η_{st} is the steam

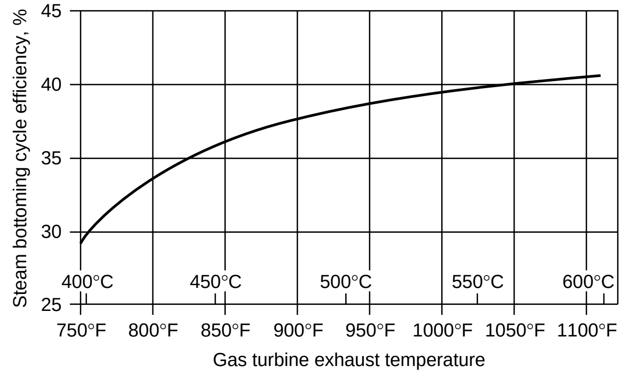


Fig. 9.7.20 Variation of typical steam system heat recovery with turbine exhaust temperature.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

bottoming cycle (Rankine) efficiency, then the overall combined-cycle plant efficiency η_{cc} is:

$$\eta_{cc} = \eta_{gt} + (1 - \eta_{gt})\,\eta_{st}\left(\frac{t_{exh} - t_{stack}}{t_{exh} - t_{amb}}\right) \tag{9.7.2}$$

where t_{stack} is the minimum practical exhaust temperature to be released into the atmosphere after heat recovery, t_{exh} is the temperature of the gas turbine exhaust gases leaving the turbine, and t_{amb} is the outside ambient temperature. (Typically, stack exhaust temperatures are limited to 200 to 300°F (93 to 150°C) to avoid condensation of the potentially corrosive combustion products.)

Steam Injection (Fig. 9.7.21) As a variation of the conventional combined cycle described above, some gas-turbine installations generate steam by exhaust waste heat recovery and, instead of using that steam in a separate steam turbine, inject the steam directly back into the turbine section of the gas turbine. In this system, the turbine acts not just on air (plus combustion products) as the working substance, but instead on a mixture of air products and steam. Such a scheme eliminates the need for additional equipment and is thus less expensive than the normal combined cycle. This system has a drawback in that direct steam injection consumes water at the plant site and thus raises environmental concerns.

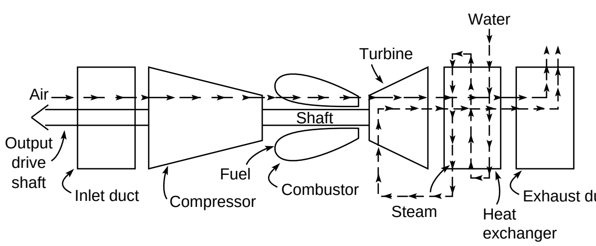


Fig. 9.7.21 Arrangement of components for gas turbine with steam injection.

Cogeneration There are many power plants used to provide the total energy needs of industries which use process heat. In these instances the exhaust heat of the gas turbine provides a source of high energy that can be used directly in the plant process rather than for producing more power. This is particularly true in the chemical industry, where many operational **total energy plants** can be found. In addition, some of or all the exhaust waste heat can be used for **district heating** where, especially in colder climates, steam or warm water generated from the gas-turbine exhaust waste heat can be circulated around the community to heat homes and buildings. Use of gas-turbine exhaust for heating is especially suited to provide the total energy needs of moderate-size to large institutions such as schools, hospitals, or commercial complexes like shopping malls.

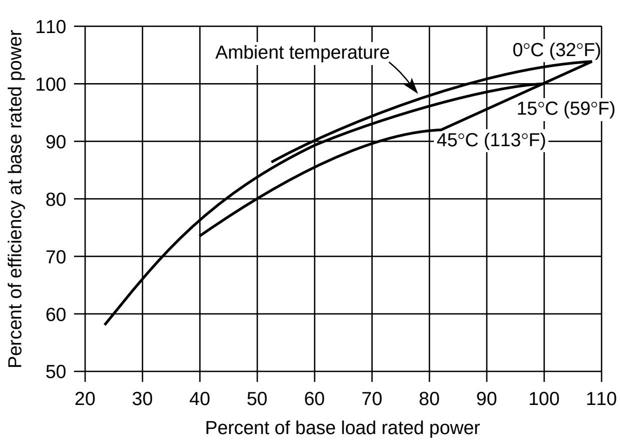


Fig. 9.7.22 Typical partial-load performance characteristics for fixed output speed.

OPERATING CHARACTERISTICS

Partial Load Gas turbines respond rapidly to throttle variations. They are capable of accelerating from idle to full power in minutes or, in the case of the lightweight flight engine designs, seconds. They can be started in a matter of minutes and, via automatic controls, can operate for long periods of time unattended. Partial-load fuel efficiency remains high. Typical partial-load performance characteristics are shown in Fig. 9.7.22 for fixed output rotating speed (r/min) and in Fig. 9.7.23 for a variable-speed (free-turbine) drive.

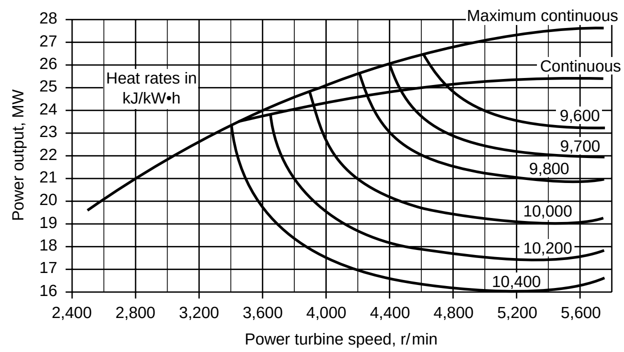


Fig. 9.7.23 Typical partial-load performance characteristics for variable output speed in a free-turbine drive.

Ambient Conditions Gas-turbine operation is sensitive to ambient conditions. Being directly dependent on mass flow for a fixed cycle, power output varies directly with air density and thus ambient pressure. Variations in ambient temperature affect the thermodynamic cycle and engine operating characteristics. Normally, any particular gas-turbine model will have an associated **power rating curve** which varies as shown in Fig. 9.7.24.

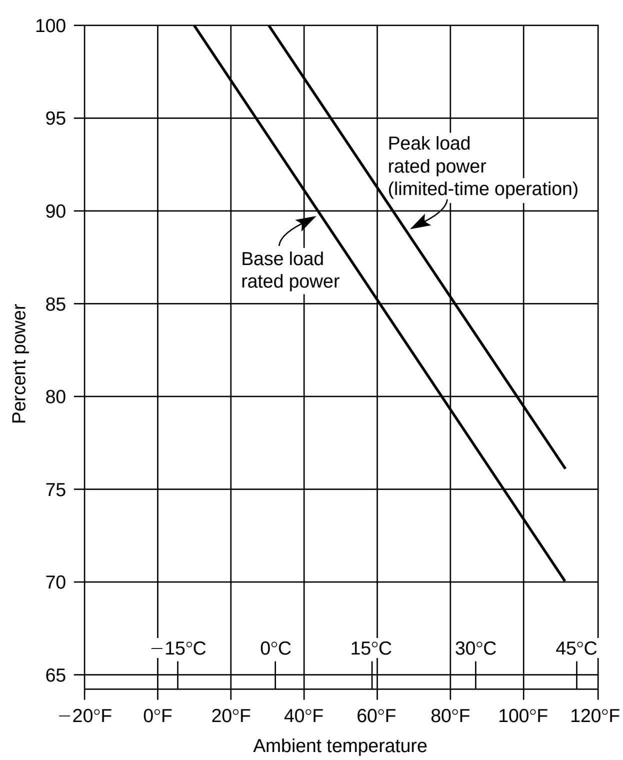


Fig. 9.7.24 Typical variation of output power with ambient temperature.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

GAS-TURBINE COMPONENTS

The primary components of a gas turbine consist of a **compressor,** a **combustor** and a **turbine**. Other elements of a gas turbine, depending on the installation, are the electronic control, inlet to the compressor, exhaust nozzle, power turbine, regenerators, and intercoolers. The component that poses the greatest aerodynamic and thermodynamic design challenge, as well as having the greatest influence on engine performance, is the compressor.

Compressors Compressors can be centrifugal flow, axial flow, or a combination centrifugal and axial flow. In a **centrifugal flow compressor,** the airflow enters at the hub and is then turned from axial to radial by the compressor rotor. Early gas turbines and some modern small engines employ centrifugal compressors. In an **axial flow compressor,** air flows in an axial direction through a series of rotating blades and stationary vanes which are concentric with the axis of rotation. All large gas turbines employ multistage axial flow compressors because of their higher efficiency and capacity. Figure 9.7.25 illustrates the rotor, stators, and assembly of a multistage axial flow compressor. To achieve high pressure ratios and maintain stability at all operating conditions, **dual-spool** or three-spool arrangements are employed, which permit each spool to operate at optimum speed. Interstage bleeds, discharge bleeds, and variable-angle vanes are also employed to avoid surge. Compression ratios in any one spool can exceed 20 : 1 with spools of 10 or more stages, and polytropic efficiency can be as high as 92 percent.

Combustors A number of arrangements are used for the **combustion chamber** including side-by-side can annular combustors or a single annular combustion chamber (Fig. 9.7.26). Fuel is introduced through a manifold and an arrangement of multiple fuel nozzles. The **combustor** must maintain high combustion efficiency, and low levels of pollutant emissions and smoke, have a minimum pressure loss, maintain stable combustion over a wide range of operating conditions, and produce a uniform temperature in the hot gases distributed to the turbine. The combustor must be designed to utilize some of the airflow to atomize the fuel to achieve efficient combustion, generate turbulent mixing needed to produce a uniform exit temperature, and cool the metal parts of the combustor for durability at high operating temperature. Burner efficiency usually exceeds 99 percent except at low power in the idle region.

Turbines The **turbine** consists of one or more stages of blades and interstage guide vanes located immediately to the rear of the combustor section. Figure 9.7.27 illustrates the rotors or wheels, sets of stationary

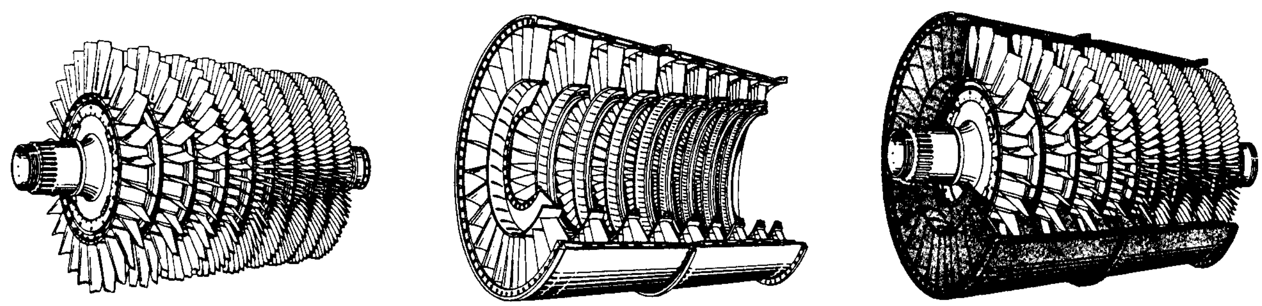
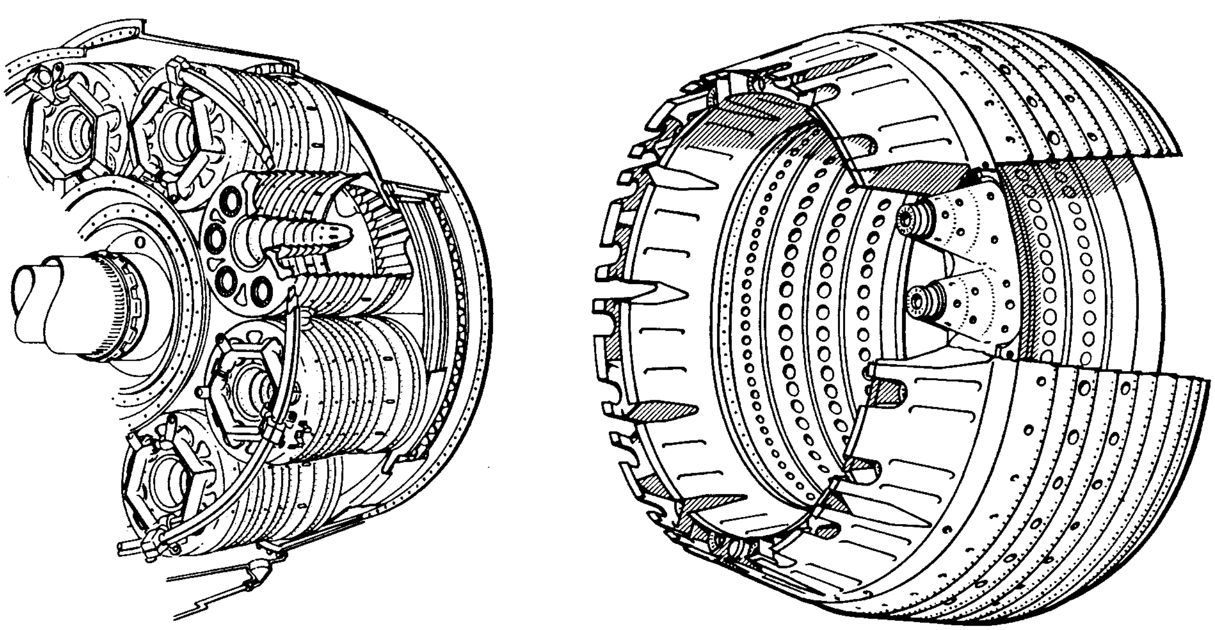


Fig. 9.7.25 Components and assembly of axial flow compressor.



Can annular combustion chamber

Annular combustion chamber

Fig. 9.7.26 Combustion chamber (combustor) configurations.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

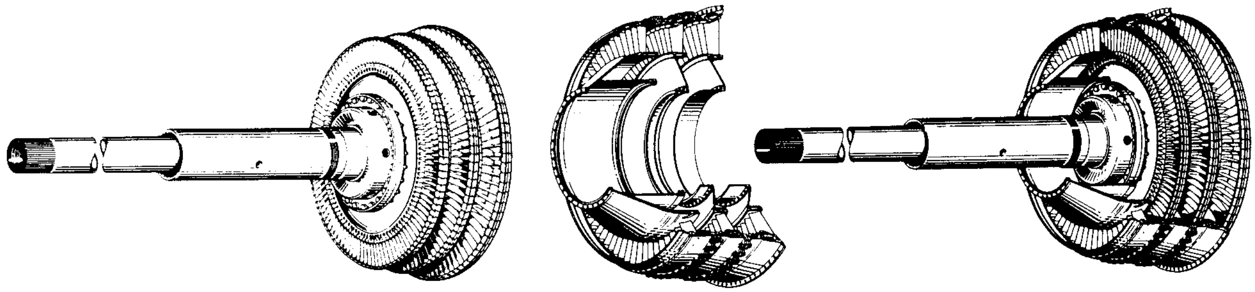


Fig. 9.7.27 Turbine elements and assembly.

vanes or nozzles, and their assembly. The turbine extracts kinetic energy from the heated gas stream and converts it to shaft power to drive the compressors and accessories. In the case of a turboprop, turbofan, or turboshaft, power is also extracted to drive a propeller, a fan, or an output shaft (see Sec. 11.5). The arrangement of the turbine is similar to that of the compressor with two major differences. First, since the expansion process is aerodynamically easier than the compression process, turbines have fewer stages than compressors. Second, the gases are much hotter and, therefore, require materials and cooling schemes to maintain the life of the turbine parts. High-temperature alloys, internal cooling passages (for air usually supplied from the compressor), and ceramic thermal barrier coatings are used in the turbine. The normal range of turbine efficiency is 90 to 95 percent.

APPLICATIONS

A worldwide directory of currently available **gas-turbine aircraft engines** published in *Flight International* (June 8–14, 1994) lists 37 manufacturers and 166 models. A much larger number of companies are manufacturers or suppliers of parts or components to the original equipment manufacturers. More than 700 model designations are now or have been in service.

For **industrial gas turbines** above 15,000 hp (11,185 kW), there are 28 gas-turbine models designed, manufactured, and currently being marketed by nine original equipment manufacturers (OEMs). In addition, there are many other companies that, under license from these OEMs, either manufacture and package or only package these gas-turbine engines. For industrial gas turbines under 15,000 hp (11,185 kW), there are 73 gas-turbine models designed and made by 17 companies; again, there are many other licensee associates. Aeroderivative gas turbines account for almost two-thirds of the gas turbines installed worldwide to date. There are 4 manufacturers of 10 aeroderivative engine models over 15,000 hp (11,185 kW) currently available in the marketplace.

Military Aviation **Military aircraft,** including fixed-wing combat and transport as well as helicopters, are almost exclusively gas-turbine-powered. Fighter aircraft are powered with afterburning turbofan engines. Modern heavy-lift cargo and troop transports are powered by high-bypass-ratio turbofans often derived from commercial engines. Many older cargo, troop, tanker, and utility aircraft still in service are powered by turboprop engines. Most helicopters are powered by turboshaft engines. New developments in military engine technology aim at increasing overall performance by increasing the power of the core engine components through use of higher-temperature materials and turbine technology. The military strives to achieve a balanced tradeoff of performance, weight, and stealth against reliability, maintainability, and cost.

Commercial Aviation **Commercial aircraft** are primarily powered by turbofan and turboprop engines. Design of large commercial wide-body transports tends toward long-range twin-engine turbofan power, but three-and four-engine aircraft are still being manufactured. With twin-engine aircraft approaching the size and range of four-engine aircraft, thrust requirements are ever increasing. Turbofan engines in the 60,000- to 90,000-lb (267- to 400-kN) thrust range have been certified, and versions to 100,000 lb (444.8 kN) are planned. Medium-size commercial transports are also turbofan-powered, with engines in the 20,000- to 40,000-lb (89- to 178-kN) thrust range. Small regional or commuter aircraft are primarily powered by turboprop engines from 500 to 3,000 hp (372 to 2,237 kW). Commercial engine technology is aimed at higher bypass ratios for increased thrust and reduced emissions and noise; higher component efficiency for better fuel consumption; and increased reliability. Future developments include advanced ducted propulsors (ADPs) which couple a gear-driven prop fan to the gas turbine, geared fan engines, and engines for the second generation of supersonic aircraft.

Electric Power Of the three generic industrial gas-turbine application markets, i.e., electric, mechanical, and marine (ship and boat), electric power generation comprises roughly 90 percent of the total power added to generating capacity. Gas turbines, including the combined-cycle steam turbine, account for about 40 percent of the world's new installations for electric power generation of all types. Provided appropriate fuels are economically available, this level is expected to increase to over 50 percent. Historically, gas turbines were used primarily for peak duty. Because of marked increases in ease of operation, reliability, thermal efficiency (approaching 60+ percent) as well as the availability of relatively inexpensive natural gas, gas turbines are largely utilized in the combined-cycle configuration for base-load duty. As their fossil fuel steam boiler counterparts historically did in growing to over 1 GW in size, gas turbines are likewise pursuing economy-of-scale cost ($/kW) advantages by growing to very large sizes. In the 1970s, a 75-MW combined-cycle system was a fairly large unit; by the early 1990s, systems of over 400 MW are common.

Marine **Aeroderivative gas turbines,** in sizes up to 35,000 hp (26,100 kW), provide power for the bulk of the surface warships (e.g., cruisers, destroyers, frigates, corvettes) recently added to the world's fleets. Two new market opportunities for marine aeroderivative gas turbines are emerging. The first is the growing market for commercial lightweight, very fast (40+ kn), novel-type (catamaran, surface effect ship, slim monohull, etc.) ferries and cargo ships. The second will be created when the rigid air quality standards that exist for aircraft and land-based installations in developed countries are extended to the marine industry. The world's cargo and cruise ships are primarily diesel-powered due to their ability to utilize poor-quality, less expensive fuels. However, resulting effluent levels are high, especially regarding sulfur dioxide and nitrogen oxides (NO_x). Although sulfur in the fuel can be eliminated at the refinery, NO_x is primarily engine-related. From a diesel NO_x emissions are 600 to 1,700 ppmv (parts per million of exhaust volume), while a gas turbine emits 200 to 220 ppmv. Even lower emissions, down to 42 ppmv, utilizing distillate fuel can be achieved with gas turbines equipped with lean-burn, dry-low NO_x burners.

Mechanical Drive The increased popularity of low-polluting natural gas as a preferred fuel stimulates the market for gas turbines in mechanical drive applications. Mechanical drive gas turbines, up to 40,000 hp

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

(29,800 kW), are largely aeroderivative and are found in such applications as powering natural gas pipeline compressors, providing gas-lift compressor power for enhanced oil well recovery in offshore platforms and land-based installations, and powering compressors for natural gas gathering, liquefied natural gas production, and various processing plants.

Small Engines Gas turbines in smaller sizes [less than 1,000 hp (746 kW)] are used in several fields of application. Such engines usually feature centrifugal compressors and are all manufactured by specialized companies. In the ground transportation field, automobile and truck manufacturers have experimented since 1950 with gas turbines, primarily of the low-pressure-ratio (less than 10 : 1) regenerative type. While several prototypes have been tried over the years, displacement of the widespread, well entrenched automobile piston engine has not taken place, with one exception: The U.S. Army has found the gas turbine to be well suited as a tank engine. As with the automobile engine, gas turbines have been experimentally tried in railroad trains, but have yet to make inroads to replace the diesel engine.

Small gas turbines are used as a compact, simple, and reliable power source on board aircraft for start-ups and auxiliary power. They are known as auxiliary power units or APUs. Similar engines find use as quick-start standby units to drive generators for emergency power. Finally, very small jet engines provide propulsion for remotely controlled aircraft with surveillance or cruise missile military missions.

9.8 NUCLEAR POWER

by Louis H. Roddis, Jr., Daniel J. Garner, John E. Gray, Edwin E. Kintner, Nunzio J. Palladino, supplemented by George Sege and Paul E. Norian of the NRC

REFERENCES: Etherington, ''Nuclear Engineering Handbook,'' McGraw-Hill. Hogerton, ''The Atomic Energy Deskbook,'' Reinhold. Kramer, ''Nuclear Energy—What It Is and How It Acts,'' Technical Publishing Co. Blatz, ''Radiation Hygiene Handbook,'' McGraw-Hill. Ellis, ''Nuclear Technology for Engineers,'' McGraw-Hill. Glasstone, ''Source Book on Atomic Engineering,'' Van Nostrand. Murray, ''Nuclear Reactor Physics,'' Prentice-Hall. Annual reports of the International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna. ''Nuclear News,'' LaGrange Park, IL. Cole, ''Understanding Nuclear Power,'' Gower. Glasstone and Sesonake, ''Nuclear Reactor Engineering,'' 3d ed.; Murray and Powell, ''Understanding Radioactive Waste,'' 3d ed.; Nero, ''Guidebook to Nuclear Reactors,'' 1979; Rahn et al., ''A Guide to Nuclear Power Technology,'' 1984.

NOTE: The material related to nuclear power plant safety and licensing was revised and amended by personnel of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission (NRC) on official time. That material, therefore, is in the public domain and not covered by copyright.

FISSION AND FUSION ENERGY

Nuclear power is the energy derived from the fission (or splitting) of the nuclei of heavy elements, such as uranium or thorium, or from the fusion (or combining) of the nuclei of light elements, such as deuterium or tritium. Particles set in motion by these processes yield heat energy virtually instantaneously. The amount of energy released per atom exceeds by a factor of several million the amount of energy obtainable per atom in a chemical reaction, such as the burning of fossil fuels. While control of the fusion process is still surrounded by tremendous technical problems, considerable success has been achieved in utilizing heat energy produced by fission for power generation, propulsion, industrial production, and scientific experiments.

NUCLEAR PHYSICS

A nuclear reaction occurs when the particles making up the nucleus of an atom are rearranged—as distinct from a chemical reaction, which is caused by changes in the electron structure surrounding the nucleus.

Fundamental (elementary) particles are, theoretically, the irreducible constituents of the material world. More than 20 particles were regarded as elementary in 1972, the exact number being dependent on how they are classified. New experimental techniques lead to discovery of more particles; advances in theory indicate that some are compounds of particles. For example, atoms and atomic nuclei were at one time believed to be noncomposite. Except for the electron and proton, all the fundamental particles are unstable.

An **electron** carries one unit of negatively charged electricity [defined as 1.6×10^{-19} coulomb (C)] and has a mass at rest equal to 1/1,836 times the mass of the hydrogen atom. Electrons emitted by radioactive atoms are called **beta** (β) **rays** and have energies up to several MeV (million electron volts).

A **proton** carries one unit of positively charged electricity equal in magnitude to that of the electron and has a mass, at rest, of 1.0072764 atomic mass units [u when 1 u (1.66057×10^{-27} kg) is defined as $\frac{1}{12}$ the mass of a neutral atom of the most abundant isotope of carbon]. It is identical to the nucleus of the hydrogen atom. Protons are not emitted spontaneously from atomic nuclei.

A **neutron** has a mass approximately equal to that of the proton but lacks an electric charge. It cannot be detected by subjecting it to electric or magnetic fields, nor can its presence be shown by its passage through cloud chambers. The presence of neutrons can be shown only by their interaction with other particles.

An **atom,** which is the basic unit of any chemical element, consists of a central nucleus surrounded by planetary electrons. The number of its electrons determines its chemical characteristics and in electrically neutral atoms equals the positive charge on its nucleus. The nuclei of all atoms except the hydrogen atom are composed of protons and neutrons. The nucleus of the hydrogen atom consists of a single proton, which gives it an atomic number of 1. This number is designated by the letter Z. The number of neutrons in the nucleus is represented by the letter N. From this it follows that the mass number A, which represents the atomic weight, is equal to $N + Z$. In 1977, 105 elements were known. All with atomic numbers above 92 (uranium) must be produced artificially and have a short half-life.

Isotopes are elements which have identical chemical characteristics but different atomic weights, i.e., certain atoms of the same element have different numbers of neutrons in their nuclei. There are considerably more than a thousand isotopes of the known elements. Only 320 of these exist in nature, of which approximately 40 are unstable and radioactive.

For example, hydrogen has three isotopes. One is ordinary hydrogen with a proton nucleus. Another is deuterium, whose nucleus consists of a proton and a neutron. The third is tritium, which consists of one proton and two neutrons. At the heavy end of the natural periodic table is uranium, with 92 protons. When it has 146 neutrons, it is ${}_{92}U^{238}$, which comprises 99.28 percent of natural uranium. The remainder of natural uranium consists of 0.006 percent U^{234} and 0.71 percent U^{235}. The latter isotope, with 92 protons and 143 neutrons, is the only one of the three which is readily fissionable and is the one utilized in most of the nuclear power reactors operating in the United States. It is separated from the natural element in the enrichment desired by a gaseous diffusion process in government facilities.

Energy and mass are used interchangeably in nuclear physics, and the total energy of a nucleus can be determined by measurement of its exact

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

mass m, which is related to its energy E by the Einstein equation $E = mc^2$, where c is the velocity of light, 3×10^{10} cm/s. This law of equivalence of mass and energy unifies two long-accepted laws: the conservation of energy and the conservation of matter. Singly, the two older laws must be regarded as high-order approximations, adequate in all engineering fields except atomic energy. The exact mass m of a nucleus differs by only a few hundredths of a percent from an integral number A of proton masses, but this small deviation is of significance in nuclear theory, since it measures the difference in energy between the nucleus and its separate components, i.e., its binding energy. The energies of nuclides are recorded in the tables in terms of their masses.

Physical atomic weights do not quite equal chemical atomic weights because the oxygen used in the chemical determinations is a mixture of isotopes, whereas in mass spectrographic measurements the single isotope C^{12} is used for reference. The relationship is: Physical atomic weight $= 1.000280 \times$ chemical atomic weight.

Planck's Constant Since radiation has the properties of both waves and particles, it is theorized that in the emission or absorption of energy by atoms or molecules, the process takes place by steps, each step being the emission or absorption of an **individual quantity of electromagnetic energy,** which is considered the elementary quantum of action. It is known as **Planck's constant** and has the value $h = 6.624 \times 10^{-27}$ erg · s. It is used in virtually all quantum relationships, including Schrödinger's equation and Heisenberg's uncertainty principle, and in the formula for the energy levels of atomic hydrogen. The standard notion is $\hbar = h/2\pi$, where $\hbar$ signifies the angular momentum of an orbiting electron.

Relativistic Mass When moving particles approach the speed of light, the approximation of kinetic energy, $\Sigma \frac{1}{2} m_0 v^2$, fails; it then becomes necessary to use the equation $E = mc^2$ and to use the relativistic mass, a function that increases with velocity according to the law $m - m_0/\sqrt{1-(v/c)^2}$, where m_0 is the rest mass (i.e., the mass of newtonian mechanics) and v is the coordinate velocity of the particle.

Binding energy is the work required to disintegrate an atom completely into Z protons and $A - Z$ neutrons. It is a measure of the total kinetic and potential energy of the nucleons in the nucleus and may be calculated from the equations

$$B = C^2\Delta \qquad \text{and} \qquad \Delta = Zm_H + (A - Z)\, m_n - m$$

where m is the mass of the nuclide, m_H the mass of the hydrogen atom, and m_n the mass of the neutron, all on the physical atomic-mass scale (u). The quantity of Δ is known as the **mass defect**. The energy involved is usually stated in MeV.

Fusion Figure 9.8.1 shows that if two deuterium (H^2) nuclei react to produce one He^3 nucleus plus one neutron, the total binding energy of the four particles (two neutrons plus two protons) involved in the reaction is increased from approximately 4.4 to 7.6 MeV, releasing 3.2 MeV for the reaction. Such a process is called **fusion**. The deuterium-deuterium fusion reaction may also produce an H^3 plus an H^1 nucleus, with a release of 4.0 MeV.

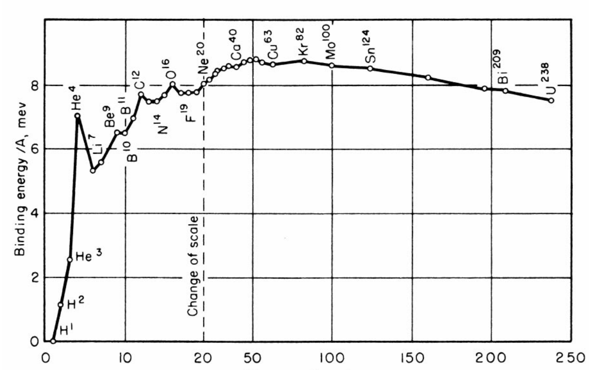


Fig. 9.8.1 Binding energy per nuclear particle for stable nuclei.

For fusion to occur, the two nuclei must approach each other with exceptionally high kinetic energy in order to overcome their electrostatic repulsion; and since kinetic energy is proportional to absolute temperature, effective fusion can occur only at extremely high temperatures. For fusion to continue as a chain reaction, it is further necessary that nuclear collisions be sufficiently frequent to maintain the high temperature in spite of heat radiation. The condition necessary for frequent collisions is high pressure.

A light-element chain reaction is the principal source of heat in the sun, hydrogen being converted to helium as the net result of a multistage process. The temperature and pressure at which this reaction is sustained at the center of the sun are 35 million °F and 1.5×10^{11} lb/in^2 respectively.

A deuterium-deuterium reaction can be sustained at temperatures and pressures which are considerably lower than those in the solar reactions but still fantastically high by terrestrial standards. Achievement of a controlled light-element chain reaction for power generation by fusion depends on producing high particle velocity and high density locally by electromagnetic means, without development of correspondingly high temperatures and pressures at the container walls.

Fission is the division of an atomic nucleus into parts of comparable mass, either naturally (spontaneously) or under bombardment (induced) with neutrons, α particles, γ rays, deuterons, or protons. In elements with $Z > 90$, fission can be produced by neutrons of low or moderate energy.

Fission is important because in the process neutrons are emitted that may, under certain conditions, be utilized to produce further fissions, thus leading to a self-sustaining, or "chain," reaction. It is thus possible to "burn" uranium to obtain an energy release per atom approximately 10^8 greater than from a chemical fuel. The energy release in the fission of U^{235} is

	MeV
Kinetic energy of fission products	168
Kinetic energy of fission neutrons	5
Energy of γ rays	10
Energy of β rays	5
Energy of neutrons	11
	199

The total of 199 MeV is equivalent to 3.2×10^{-11} W · s, which indicates that it requires the fissioning of 1.12×10^{17} atoms to release a kilowatthour of energy. This number of atoms forms only a speck of matter six thousands of an inch in diameter.

Radioactivity occurs when an unstable nucleus undergoes atomic disintegration by emitting α, β, or $\beta+$ particles, γ or X-ray electromagnetic radiation.

The **alpha (α) particle** is identical with the nucleus of a helium atom. The emission of an α particle creates a new nucleus, with Z reduced by 2 and A decreased by 4 mass units.

Beta (β) decay involves emission of an electron from the nucleus of an atom, thereby increasing Z by unity.

The **gamma (γ) ray** is electromagnetic radiation originating in the nucleus—as differentiated from X-rays, which usually are less energetic and arise from energy adjustments as electrons move between orbital shells outside the nucleus. Gamma rays are emitted instantaneously when a neutron is captured in a nucleus and are frequently emitted following ejection of a particle from a radioactive nucleus.

The **positron ($\beta+$)** is a particle whose mass is the same as that of an electron and whose charge is equal in magnitude but opposite in sign. Positron emission decreases Z by unity.

Electron capture (EC) results when an unstable atom decays by capturing an orbital electron in the nucleus, resulting also in a decrease of Z by unity. This capture produces a vacancy in the orbital shell which is filled by an electron moving from an outer shell, giving the rise to X-ray characteristics.

Half-life is the time required for half the original nuclei in a sample of an isotope to decay; it is given as $0.693/\lambda$ s. Half-lives of the radioactive nuclides vary from 10^{-7} s to 10^{10} years.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

UTILIZATION OF FISSION ENERGY

Nonpower Types

Nuclear reactors having a purpose other than the generation of usable power may be classified into two general types: research and test reactors and weapons material production reactors.

The latter category of **production reactors** includes both light- and heavy-water and gas-cooled reactors of high thermal power (comparable in thermal output to large power reactors). Their fuel cycle is adjusted to produce plutonium and tritium of weapons quality for nuclear weapons programs. Most production reactors operate with outlet temperatures near or below the boiling point of water, so the thermal heat is wasted to the environment. A few **''dual-purpose''** production reactors operate at temperatures which allow the coupling of useful electric power output facilities.

Teaching reactors have the characteristics of very little excess reactivity, very low power capability (a few to a few thousand watts of heat energy), and relatively easy access to the core. Teaching reactors are used mainly for the purpose of instruction in the behavior of a nuclear reactor. With a teaching reactor novice reactor operators may experience the response of reactor instrumentation as reactivity is inserted and criticality is approached, ''just critical'' behavior, and power increases or decreases.

Teaching reactors are generally owned and operated by universities. In addition to being used for operator training, they are used in a variety of nuclear-engineering instructional experiments. Typical experiments include measurements of neutron-flux distribution; measurement of neutronic characteristics such as generation time, leakage fraction, thermal-utilization factor, resonance escape probability, and other characteristics affecting criticality and kinetics; and measurement of parameters affecting control such as control-rod worth and reactivity feedback coefficients. Although the neutron flux available from a teaching reactor is relatively small, it is nevertheless significant and can be used for limited production of radioactive isotopes.

Research reactors generally have a power capability of 10 thermal MW approximately. They are for the purpose of providing an intense radiation source, both neutrons and gamma rays. A research reactor is usually designed to have a high leakage flux in order to facilitate its use as a radiation source.

The neutrons from a research reactor have a variety of uses including neutron activation analysis, neutron radiography, neutron diffractometry, and production of radioactive isotopes. The gamma rays are applied in materials testing and in studies using the interaction of gamma rays with the nuclei of various elements.

In **neutron activation analysis,** an unknown sample is irradiated in a calibrated neutron flux, and the constituents of the sample become radioactive through neutron absorption. The radiation from the sample is then analyzed. Since the radiation from a specific radioactive isotope is unique to that isotope, a qualitative and quantitative determination of the constituents of the sample is possible. Extremely small quantities of radioactivity can be detected; therefore, neutron activation analysis is a very sensitive analytical tool.

Neutron radiography is a technique similar to X-radiography. The perturbation of a collimated beam of neutrons that has passed through the radiographed item is determined by film exposure or other means. Unlike x-rays that serve to outline dense, highly absorptive materials, neutron radiography serves to outline light materials that preferentially scatter neutrons from the incident beam.

Neutron diffractometry is a technique used to determine the molecular and crystalline structure of materials. The analysis is accomplished through a precise determination of the diffraction pattern from a collimated monoenergetic beam of neutrons that has interacted with the sample.

Certain radioactive isotopes are useful and effective in the **treatment of some diseases**. Isotopes that do not occur naturally can be produced in large quantities by exposure of the precursor element to the neutron fluxes available from research or test reactors.

Test reactors generally have a power capability ranging from 25 to 100 thermal MW. They are used largely for the purpose of providing an experimental radiation environment similar to that which exists in the core of a power reactor. They are also used for large scale radioactive isotope production.

Power Cycles

Although the energy of fission appears as kinetic energy (85 percent) and photon energy of γ rays, there is no practical method of converting this energy directly into useful work on a large scale. Therefore, a nuclear reactor must be treated as a heat source which differs from a chemical heat source in that no oxygen is required and the heat does not have to be removed from gaseous combustion products which possess poor heat-transfer properties.

In the large power capacities associated with nuclear power plants, the **Rankine vapor cycle** is the one in use. The Rankine cycle appears to be best suited for nuclear power because (1) the maximum practicable operating temperature for a reactor corresponds to or is lower than the temperature used in the conventional Rankine vapor cycle; (2) the problem of containment of radioactivity is better solved by this cycle than by other cycles; (3) reactors are most economical in large sizes, as are Rankine engines.

Three variations of the Rankine cycle (Fig. 9.8.2) are being used. The **direct cycle** is the least complicated and thermodynamically the most desirable. Its disadvantages are the facts that the boiling process does not permit the high power densities which are attainable with liquid cooling and that radioactive steam is carried into the turbine and condenser. The **indirect cycle** gives greater power density and eliminates radioactivity in the turbine, although it too produces steam at lower

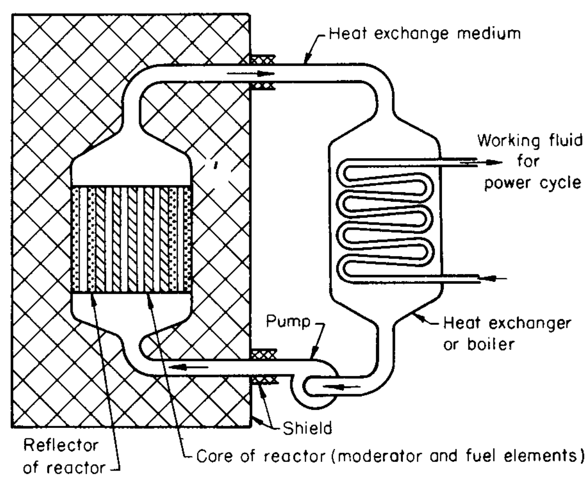


Fig. 9.8.2 Plant cycles—coupling with a working fluid. *(Amorosi, Selection of Reactors, ''Nuclear Engineering Handbook,'' McGraw-Hill, 1957.)*

pressures and temperatures than those considered most efficient for modern turbines. Both concepts are highly developed and commercially available. Plants utilizing sodium or other liquid metal as the heat-exchange medium use an intermediate-link system to isolate the water system from radioactive sodium, but the ability to operate at high temperature with liquid-metal coolants permits the generation of high-temperature steam to utilize the present state of steam turbine technology.

The only other cycle which has been given consideration is the **Brayton cycle**. This cycle is being examined with renewed interest because of the rapid advances in gas-cooled reactor technology and the availability of large gas turbines suitable for reliable utility industry service. The use of an open cycle using air has been discarded because of the spread of activation products from the turbine exhaust and the corrosion problems in the reactor core and fuel elements. The use of a closed Brayton cycle with the latest high-temperature gas-cooled reactors (HTGR) has potential advantages in that the gas temperatures can match the latest gas-turbine designs and a very compact plant can be built.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

The ability of a nuclear reactor to produce high temperatures not limited by chemical reaction equilibrium has generated interest in advanced concepts such as magnetohydrodynamics and thermionic generators. These systems are limited by the availability of suitable materials of construction and appear destined to remain in the research phase until suitable materials are developed.

Power Reactor Types

During the early years in the development of power reactors, a large number of possible reactor designs were investigated. In the present state of the industry, the designs which have gained the greatest acceptance all are solid fuel in the form of uranium dioxide. The moderator may be either graphite or water and the coolant may be water, gas, or liquid sodium. Experimental power reactors using a solution of uranium compounds in water or molten salt have been built but have not assumed industrial importance because of many unsolved corrosion problems. Light-water (moderated and cooled) reactors (LWRs), comprised of the boiling water reactor (BWR) and pressurized water reactor (PWR), represent about 99 percent of the operating reactors in the United States. A high-temperature gas-cooled reactor (HTGR) is in operation in a small plant. The liquid-metal-cooled fast breeder reactor (LMFBR) concept is employed in two operating test reactors in the United States, but has been successfully implemented in full-scale operating plants in France and Russia. For the efficient utilization of the energy represented by the world's uranium reserves, a successful breeder reactor is desirable since the present generation of reactors are all consumers of only the naturally occurring fissionable isotope of uranium, U^{235}.

For utilization of natural uranium as a fuel, D_2O is substituted for H_2O as the coolant moderator. The reactor must be refueled more frequently than enriched reactors to maintain an adequate operating reactivity margin. However, D_2O reactors such as the Canadian designs (CANDU) utilize on-line refueling to minimize shutdown time. The success of this type of reactor depends on the availability and cost of D_2O.

Boiling water reactors have a simpler design and can utilize relatively thin-walled vessels and pipes because they operate at moderate pressures compared with pressurized-water reactors. Fuel cladding temperatures are only slightly higher than steam temperatures, and there is an inherent safety factor because the steam-void volume increases on a transient power increase. Some of the problems caused by radioactivity carryover, such as maintenance on the turbine and condenser and the prevention of radioactive leakage, are offset by the cost of the boiler in pressurized water reactors. However, boiling water reactor vessels, despite their lower design pressure, are larger and heavier than pressurized water vessels of similar rating and extensive water purification equipment is required to remove corrosion products and other impurities from the feedwater before introduction into the reactor.

Limitations on the **power density** imposed by exit voids (i.e., the vapor volume of the exiting steam-water mixture from the reactor core) are a disadvantage in that low-power density contributes to high fuel inventory charges. Load changes are accomplished by steam bypass control or rods since adjustment of the turbine throttle and consequent reduction in steam flow will cause an increase in pressure in the reactor, which in turn will collapse the steam bubbles and increase reactivity. The control system functions to maintain constant reactor pressure, and reactivity control is achieved in part by varying the recirculation rate in the reactor. The net decomposition of the water into O and H is much greater than in a pressurized water reactor.

Pressurized Water Reactors Properties of water and steam which led to their predominance as general-purpose heat-transfer media have also caused their widespread application as a reactor coolant. A major disadvantage of water results from its relatively high vapor pressure. However, this can be partially overcome by allowing boiling in the reactor. Thermal efficiencies up to 36 percent are possible.

The use of H_2O as a coolant and moderator is based on well-developed technology which indicates that the ultimate size (or capacity) will be dictated primarily by heat transfer requirements. The average heat flux q/A is around 200,000 Btu/(h · ft²) (630,000 W/m²), with a maximum of 600,000 Btu/(h · ft²) approximately (1,890,000 W/m²).

The **light-water** (H_2O) **reactors** require slightly enriched fuel. However, the cost of enrichment is economically justified because the increased power density reduces inventory charges. To provide sufficient neutron moderation, the H_2O/U volume ratio is kept slightly above 2 : 1.

The use of oxide fuel minimizes corrosion. Design problems are reasonably well understood, although costly structural provisions must be made to load and unload fuel because of the high pressures. Fuel enrichment usually runs between 1.5 and 4.5 percent, depending on the alloy used for corrosion resistance.

Control rods, burnable neutron absorbers, and soluble boron in the coolant are used to control excess reactivity, achieve high fuel burnup, and maintain power distribution within the design limits.

Gas-cooled reactors offer low fuel and operating costs because of their ability to utilize natural uranium as fuel. This advantage is offset by higher capital costs caused by the large system size, in turn resulting from the lower power density usually used. More advanced designs such as the high-temperature gas-cooled reactor and its variants can use low enriched uranium and are able to use higher temperatures and the required structural material for such temperatures. These newer gas-cooled designs are much more compact than the natural-uranium reactors which they are beginning to supplant.

Carbon dioxide is the coolant usually used in natural uranium reactors, as it is nontoxic, only mildly radioactive, nonflammable, noncontaminating in case of leakage, and relatively inexpensive. Helium gives indication of being an ideal coolant, but its limited availability and high cost make it attractive in a power reactor only where the inventory can be kept small and its superior performance at high temperatures can be utilized. Helium, being inert, does not chemically react with graphite and the reactor structure at high temperatures as does carbon dioxide.

The latest gas-cooled reactor designs are prestressed-concrete vessels which contain the core, gas circulators, and steam generators. The inclusion of as much equipment and piping as possible inside the vessel structure greatly simplifies the control of gas leakage.

Fast breeder reactors operate at extremely high power densities (as they are unmoderated) and are liquid-metal-cooled. Their attractiveness stems from an ability to ''breed,'' i.e., produce more fuel than they consume. Aside from savings in fuel cost, this characteristic is believed necessary to conserve the world's supply of energy.

Two conflicting definitions of a breeder reactor are in common use: (1) a nuclear reactor that produces more fissionable material than it consumes, regardless of type of fuel used; (2) a nuclear reactor that produces the same species of material as it consumes, regardless of the net gain or loss. The first definition has wider acceptance in the United States.

The selection of a coolant for a breeder reactor is restricted by the requirement that it not act as a moderator. This requirement rules out the use of water, although the attainment of some breeding in a water-cooled reactor has been investigated. The choice of coolant is limited to helium or liquid metal.

Choice of a liquid-metal coolant is based mainly on nuclear properties and on the engineering difficulties associated with melting temperatures and corrosion effects. Those of prime interest are sodium, sodium-potassium alloy, bismuth, lead, and lead-bismuth alloy. Separated Li^7 would be very attractive were it not for its high cost. Sodium has been selected as the preferred coolant because of its availability, good nuclear properties, and the short half-life of its induced radioactivity. However, in the presence of oxygen, it burns and can react violently with water.

Advantages of operating in the fast neutron spectrum include (1) structural material for the reactor core can be selected without consideration of neutron absorption; (2) very little excess reactivity is needed to compensate for fission product buildup; and (3) reprocessed fuel in which fission product removal may not be complete can be used.

The disadvantages are the increased damage to structural materials by the high fast flux and the control problems resulting from the short neutron lifetime.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Fuel and Waste Cycle

The steps and processes in a typical fuel cycle for light-water reactors are described below. Figure 9.8.3 illustrates the relationship of these steps and processes.

Natural Uranium Uranium occurs naturally in ores in very low concentrations, less than ½ percent by weight. In certain very unusual cases, the uranium content in the ore, called ore grade, may be as high as 10 percent, but these occurrences are extremely rare.

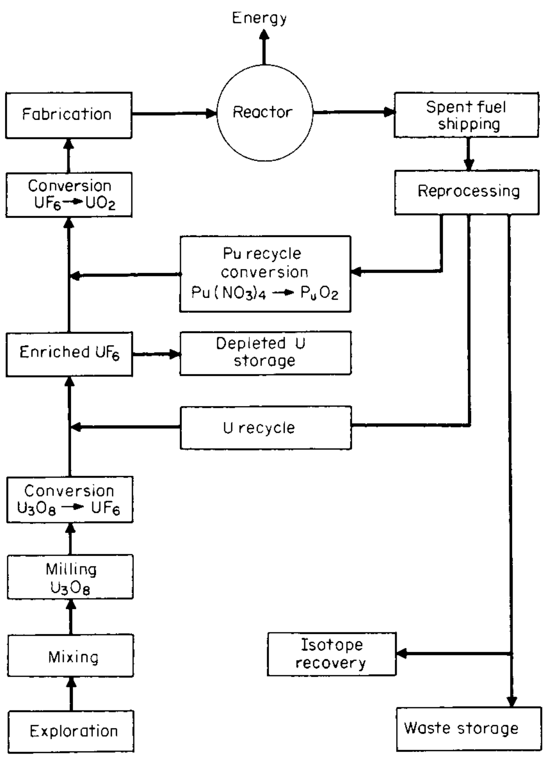


Fig. 9.8.3 Nuclear fuel cycle.

Uranium ores are mined by conventional techniques and then crushed and ground in a mill, which has special equipment for the recovery and purification of the ore into uranium concentrates. The product is in the form of a powder called yellow cake, which has the chemical form of either ammonium or sodium diuranate, both of which are yellow, hence the name.

Conversion of U_3O_8 to UF_6 The process of enriching the U^{235} isotope (from 0.711 percent to the 2 or 3 percent required by water reactors) requires that the uranium be in gaseous form. The gas UF_6 is used; so the natural U_3O_8 must be converted to natural UF_6.

Enrichment alters the relative amounts of U^{235} and U^{238} in uranium, raising the U^{235} concentration from 0.711 percent to the percentage required for use in a reactor. By so doing, the input (feed) stream of natural UF_6 is broken into two output (product plus tails) streams, one enriched and one depleted.

The process of enrichment makes use of the mass difference between U^{235} and U^{238} isotopes. In a gaseous form, the average energies of all UF_6 molecules are equal whether the U atom is U^{235} or U^{238}. Since the energies are equal, the average velocity of the lighter $U^{235}F_6$ molecule is greater than that of the $U^{238}F_6$. Because of this greater velocity and, hence, a greater momentum, the $U^{235}F_6$ molecules can diffuse through a barrier more easily. Gas diffusion plants work on this principle.

In the **gas centrifuge** process, gaseous UF_6 is fed into centrifuges which rotate at very high speed. The heavier U^{238}-bearing molecules drift to the outside wall, while those containing the U^{235} atoms accumulate close to the axis of the machine. The separation process is enhanced by longitudinal gas circulation along the wall and near the axis, in currents counter to each other. This also allows end scoops to collect the enriched and depleted streams. Centrifuges are connected in cascade to obtain specific enrichment assay levels and the cascades are operated in parallel to obtain adequate amounts of enriched product. A plant will contain several thousand stages. Electric power demands for the centrifuge enrichment process are typically 5 to 10 percent those of the diffusion process for similar enrichment and amount. The term **separative work unit (SWU)** is used to express the quantity. Centrifuge plants are in use in European countries, but the United States continues to use the more energy-intensive diffusion process, after abandoning a major centrifuge plant half-built.

There are a number of other possible separation processes for uranium (or for that matter, other isotopes of any material). These include various thermal separation processes and plasma processes, activated either by electronic or laser energy, which work on atomic or molecular ions with separation by magnetic field. The lighter isotope will have a slightly smaller radius of curvature and can be caught in a pocket separate from the heavier. Several of these processes have been proven at the experimental level, and some have been used to produce significant amounts of material in the past. The United States, when it abandoned the centrifuge plant, authorized further work on the **atomic vapor laser isotope separation (AVLIS)** process to carry it to full-scale development. This process utilizes vaporized uranium metal, the U^{235} and U^{238} atoms of which are selectively energized to different ionized states by laser energy, and then separated in a magnetic field, all at high temperature. This is potentially even more energy-efficient than the centrifuge process.

Fabrication The gaseous enriched UF_6 that comes out of the enrichment plant is delivered in standard cylindrical gas bottles. The UF_6 is then converted to UO_2, the fuel form is which it is used. The UO_2 is in the form of a powder which is then milled to provide suitable sintering properties. The powder is formed into pellets by cold pressing, sintered, and ground to final dimensions. The pellets are loaded into a zirconium alloy tube (cladding) which is backfilled with helium and sealed at each end with a welded-end plug. The fuel rods are assembled into complete fuel assemblies. The number of fuel rods in an assembly varies from 50 to 200 or more, depending on the reactor type and specific design.

Spent Fuel Storage and Transportation Several options are available for managing spent fuel after its discharge from the reactor. It may be stored at the reactor site for a minimum time of 3 months or longer and then shipped in a shielded cask to a reprocessing plant for recovery of residual fuel valves. This procedure is used in most power reactors, except in the United States. Alternatively, it may be stored at reactor water pools, or in an away-from-reactor storage facility for an extended period of time, and then shipped to an interim dry storage site, possibly after fuel mechanical compaction, or sent to a geological repository for long-term disposal. This latter procedure is mandated by current U.S. law.

Reprocessing and Reconversion Spent nuclear fuel has substantial residual value in its uranium and plutonium, and possibly in other fission products or transuranic elements. The plutonium and other transuranics are the longer-lived radioactive components. The spent fuel is mechanically chopped and dissolved in acid, and the solution processed through subsequent steps to purify the plutonium, uranium, and any other desired product. The remaining fission wastes remain in the high-level waste streams. The plutonium product is usually in the form of a nitrate, and the uranium, either directly or in a subsequent process as UF_6.

Uranium and Plutonium Recycle As described above, the components of value in the spent fuel are the remaining uranium, now of lower enrichment, and the plutonium generated through neutron capture in U^{238}. The uranium can either be reenriched or blended with new enriched uranium and used to make new fuel elements. The plutonium can also be used either alone or mixed with uranium in making new fuel elements. A breeder reactor, by definition, will reuse the plutonium as fuel. Water reactors are nearly all designed to reuse fuel, but this is

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

being done only outside the United States. By law the United States has mandated the use of a once-through cycle, without reprocessing the spent fuel. The economics of the two approaches depend on the relative cost of newly mined uranium.

Waste Disposal Disposal of **low-level radioactive wastes,** from power plants or other radioactive material uses, such as medical is usually done by dry burial in a dedicated site.

High-level waste in the form of solid spent fuel containing transuranics as well as high-level fission products, or reprocessing plant high-level waste converted to a solid form as a glass or ceramic, can be disposed of in a mined geologic repository to ensure long-term isolation of the waste from the environment. Current U.S. policy calls for acceptance of commercial high-level waste by the Department of Energy for disposal in mined repositories beginning in 1998, in accord with the Nuclear Waste Policy Act of 1982. At this time (1996), it seems likely that this goal will remain unmet; rather, it is expected that such repositories will not be ready to accommodate these wastes until sometime in the early twenty-first century. The electric power producing utilities pay a fee on the basis of kilowatthours generated for this service. Isolation will be by the use of both engineered (waste package and container) and geologic (geologic media, such as salt, basalt, or granite) barriers. Other countries, after separating the uranium and plutonium, generally plan to store the waste for extended periods of time before final disposal. Key technical areas in implementation include the development of highly stable materials for encapsulating the waste (e.g., glass, ceramic, corrosion-resistant metals), methodologies for predicting repository performance over extended time periods, and repository closure techniques. Demonstration of the ability to safely dispose of waste has become critical to public acceptance of nuclear power in many countries.

PROPERTIES OF MATERIALS

(See also Table 9.8.1.)

Materials used in nuclear reactors can be divided into six basic categories: fuel, radiation, control, coolant, structural, and shielding. While the nature of the materials may be different, they must be physically and chemically stable and compatible with their environment for a sufficient period to enable the reactor to operate predictably, stably, and economically under the particular set of parameters imposed by the design. (See also Sec. 6.)

In addition to the environmental conditions to which materials may ordinarily be exposed, reactor materials must also sustain the extraordinary bombardment of X-rays (photons) and other atomic particles which are products of nuclear fission. In their passage through matter, these photons and atomic particles may inflict severe damage, since the energy of these particles is spent mainly in ejecting or pulling electrons from their orbits, i.e., producing **ionization**. Gamma photons and neutrons are highly penetrating, whereas fission fragments have a path under 0.001 in the solids and liquids (but cause intense ionization over that path).

The **behavior of materials** following breakage of a bond by ionization may differ markedly. The fragments of simple, highly stable molecules such as water (H_2O) or carbon dioxide (CO_2) will most probably recombine. However, it is highly probable that the parts of complex **organic compounds** such as lubricants and electrical insulation will suffer permanent fragmentation and/or recombination in a different manner to produce new molecules.

Metals, on the other hand, are essentially unaffected by ionization since the probability of displacement of excited atoms in a metal lattice is small and the atoms will merely revert to their original status on ridding themselves of their excess energy. The atoms of **nonconducting crystals** and glasses are similarly immobile, and most of their properties are insensitive to the ionization. However, since these crystals are nonconducting, some of the electrons displaced by ionization become trapped in lattice vacancies, producing changes of optical properties (such as darkening of glass by gamma irradiation) and change of electrical resistivity.

On direct collision, **fast neutrons** may displace atoms from a chemical compound without affording opportunity for immediate recombination. Similarly, **energetic neutrons** may displace atoms from their normal lattice positions in a metal or other crystalline material and push them into abnormal interstitial positions in the lattice, generally producing an effect on metals similar to work hardening. The hardness and tensile strength of the metal will increase, but the metal becomes more brittle. **Thermal neutrons** affect the properties of metals only in those cases where the probability of absorption is high enough to cause significant transmutation to other elements.

Most severe damage occurs when the atoms of a fuel material fission and produce two or more new atoms from each of the original fissioned atoms. Volumetric changes occur by the substitution of these additional atoms in the lattice for the original atom, and the lattice is further damaged by the intrusion of the high-velocity fission fragments.

Fuel Materials

Fuel materials are generally divided into two categories: fissionable and fertile. The **fissionable materials** are those isotopes of uranium and plutonium which fission upon interaction with thermal neutrons. These are the isotopes U^{233} U^{235}, Pu^{239}, and Pu^{241}, which have odd atomic weights. The **fertile materials** are those isotopes of uranium and plutonium which have even atomic weights. These absorb neutrons under proper conditions and undergo a series of nuclear reactions, with the eventual formation of fissionable isotopes. Thus U^{238} forms Pu^{239}, and Pu^{240} forms Pu^{241}. In addition, thorium^{232} forms the fissionable isotope U^{233}.

Both fissionable and fertile materials fall short of possessing the **properties considered ideal** for a nuclear fuel, namely, corrosion resistance, good thermal conductivity, strength, and ductility. To overcome these problems as well as to prevent fission products from entering the coolant, various techniques are used, including plating, cladding, and alloying.

Materials for this use must be corrosion-resistant, be compatible with the fuel materials, be physically stable under irradiation, have good heat transfer characteristics, have good nuclear properties, and be reasonably fabricable. From a consideration of cross section alone, only aluminum, beryllium, magnesium, and zirconium are attractive for use in thermal reactors. Magnesium usually is ruled out on the basis of strength and corrosion resistance but has been widely used in some gas-cooled systems. In fast reactors, a number of other materials become attractive, the most important being stainless steel, which also is used under special conditions in thermal reactors. Consideration also is being given to ceramic materials, BeO, Be_2C, SiC, and $MoSi_2$, which are very attractive in all phases except resistance to thermal shock.

Moderating material must be capable of reducing neutron energy very rapidly and should have good strength at high temperatures, corrosion resistance, thermal and radiation stability, and reasonable cost. Such properties are not available in a single material. Graphite is the most widely used solid moderator. Attention also is being given to beryllium and its compounds, deuterium, oxygen, and hydrogen.

The nuclear and physical properties considered desirable for **fuel diluents and cladding** are, in general, desirable for structural materials. For the latter, however, more emphasis is placed on strength and corrosion resistance than on nuclear properties. Stainless steel, aluminum, zirconium, molybdenum, titanium, niobium, and their alloys are used. As operating temperatures continue to rise, ceramics and cermets will have to be developed for this purpose.

Materials used for **control purposes** must have a high cross section for absorption of neutrons, adequate strength, low mass to permit movement, good corrosion resistance, chemical and dimensional stability under heat and irradiation, and low cost. Boron, cadmium, and hafnium are given the most consideration in various metallic and ceramic forms and as compounds dissolved in the coolant.

Coolant Properties

The choice of a coolant also is a compromise, since no known material possesses all the **desirable characteristics.** These are good heat transfer coefficient and good heat capacity on a volume basis, low absorption

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.8.1 General Properties of Reactor Materials before Irradiation*†

Materials	Density, g/cm^3	Melting point, °C	Specific heat cal/(mol·°C)	Thermal conductivity† cal/(s·cm·°C)	Coefficient of thermal expansion, 10^{-6} per °C	Ultimate tensile strength† 10^3 lb/in^2	Modulus of elasticity† 10^4 lb/in^2	Capture cross sections, 0.025 eV (σ_e barns)
				Fuels and fertile materials				
Uranium, normal	19.3	1,133 ± 1	6.649	100°C, 0.063	25–125°C, 45.8	56	24	7.68
Thorium, normal	11.71	1,690 ± 10	100°C, 6.59	100°C, 0.090	30–100°C, 11.5	30.6	10.6	7.56
Plutonium^{239}	19.60	623 ± 7		100°C, 0.061		125	13–16	1.026
Uranium oxide (UO_2)	10.96	2,500–2,600	15.38	100°C, 0.022	22–363°C, 9.3–10.8		21	24.3
Al-16 weight % U alloy		~650		200°C, 0.42	20–100°C, 20	17.7	10.6	
Zr-4 weight % U alloy	6.72	1,840 ± 25		100°C, 0.033	190–300°C, 6.66	63	14.4	
				Diluents and cladding materials				
Zirconium	6.50	1,845 ± 25	6.31	50°C, 0.05	5.82	30–38	13.8	0.18
Zircaloy 2	6.55	1,820 ± 25		< 0.04	20–100°C, 5.2 ± 0.6	65	14	
Aluminum (28)	2.694	600.2	100 C, 6.07	0.53	20–100°C, 23.8	13	10.3	0.26
Magnesium	1.74	650	25 C, 6.08	18°C, 0.376	49°C, 26	Annealed, 27	Annealed, 6.5	0.069
$MoSi_2$	6.24	1,870		370°C, 0.088	0–1,500°C, 5.1	27°C, 22		
				Solid Moderators				
Graphite	2.27	Sublimes at 3,650 ± 25°C	2.066	100°C, 0.37–0.48	20–250°C, 1.9–4.0	0.500–2.4	0.5–1.2	0.0032
Be_2C	6.24	1,870		30°C, 0.02	25–200°C, 7.7		400°C, 23	
Beryllium	1.847	1,315	100°C, 13.69	100°C, 0.34	25–100°C, 11.54	29	44	0.01
Sintered BeO†	2.2–2.8	2,550 ± 25	100°C, 7.7	200°C, 0.19	25–100°C, 5.5	400°C, 15	400°C, 39	0.00072
SiC	3.21	Decomposes at at 2,500°C	327°C, 10.06	400°C, 0.060	0–1,700°C, 4.4	1,700°C, 50		
				Structural materials				
Stainless steel (347)	8.027	1,427	100°C, 0.12‡	100°C, 0.037	20–100°C, 16.5	85	29	3
Inconel X	8.51	1,395–1,425	25–100°C, 0.109‡	0–100°C, 0.036	20–100°C, 11.5	Annealed, 100–120		4.1
Molybdenum	10.2	2,622 ± 10	100°C, 6.24	0°C, 0.32	5.1	67	48	2.7
Titanium (commercial purity)	4.507	1,690	0–500°C, 6.61	25°C, 0.41	25°C, 8.5	85–100	15.5	5.8
Niobium	8.57	2,415	0°C, 6.01			1,200°C, 14.7		1.1
				Control materials				
Cadmium	8.694	321	25–32°C, 6.19	0.22	20–100°C, 31.8	10.3	7.1–10	2.450
Hafnium	13.36	2,130 ± 15	25–2,227°C, 6.16		0–100°C, 5.9	67.5	14	105

* All properties change with irradiation at room temperature except when specified.
† Thermal conductivity, strength, and the modulus of elasticity vary directly with the density; however, the coefficient of thermal expansion appears unaffected.
‡ Cal/(g · °C).
SOURCES: H. A. Seller, Properties of Reactor Materials, ''Nuclear Engineering Handbook,'' McGraw-Hill, 1958; ''Reactor Physics Constants,'' ANL 5800, 1963.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.8.2 Properties of Nuclear Coolants*†

Aqueous and organic liquids

	Water	Heavy water	Diphenyl	Dowtherm-A	Santowax R
Density, lb/ft^3	42.4 (600°F)	46.2 (600°F)	46.4 (675°F)	46.6 (675°F)	52.29 (675°F)
Viscosity, lb/(h · ft)	0.20 (600°F)	0.220 (600°F)	0.353 (675°F)	0.7986 (675°F)	0.630 (675°F)
Melting point, °F	32	39	156	53.2	293
Boiling point, °F	212	214	49	496	687–784
Heat capacity, Btu/(lb · °F)	1.54 (600°F)	1.68 (600°F)	0.637 (675°F)	0.675 (675°F)	0.539 (675°F)
Thermal conductivity,	0.294 (600°F)	0.294 (600°F)	0.0763 (675°F)	0.098 (675°F)	0.064 (675°F)
Capture cross section σ_a, 0.025 eV (barns)	0.66	0.0011	3.3	3.3	4.6

Gases

	Hydrogen	Helium	CO_2	Air	Nitrogen	Steam	Neon
Density, lb/ft^3	0.00185	0.00375	0.041	0.0275	0.026	0.0167	0.0190
Viscosity, lb/(h · ft)	0.042	0.094	0.081	0.089	0.086	0.069	0.1445
Heat capacity, Btu/(lb · °F)	3.625	1.245	0.283	0.263	0.268	0.518	0.246
Thermal conductivity, Btu/(h · ft · °F)	0.224	0.159	0.0328	0.0337	0.0327	0.0341	0.0536
Prandtl no.	0.660	0.735	0.6988	0.6898	0.7097	1.048	0.6632

Liquid metals

	Gallium	Lithium	Potassium	Rubidium	Sodium	Tin	Na (56%) K (44%)	Pb (44.5%) Bi (55.5%)
Density, lb/ft^3	359	29.9	44.6	84.4	51.2	421	48.8	625.5
Viscosity, lb/(h · ft)	1.836	1.188	0.3816	0.415	0.5040	2.736	0.435	2.88
Melting point, °F	85.86	354	147	102	208	449	66.2	257
Boiling point, °F	3,601	2,403	1,400	1,270	1,621	4,118	1,518	3,038
Heat capacity, Btu/(lb·ft·°F)	0.082	1.0	0.180	0.0877	0.3005	0.0639	0.2484	0.035
Thermal conductivity, Btu/(h · ft · °F)	18.0	18.0	21.15	13.2	37.7	19.0	16.35	8.05
Capture cross section σ_a, 0.025 eV (barns)	2.77	71.0†	1.97	0.70	0.505	0.60		0.094

* At 1,000°F unless otherwise specified. Adapted from L. Green, Reactor Coolant Properties, *Nucleonics*, **19,** no. 11, which contains a detailed bibliography.
† Thermodynamic properties of a variety of other specific materials are listed also in Secs. 4.1, 4.2, and 6.1.

cross section, low vapor pressure at the operating temperature, minimum of chemical reaction with the material contacted by the coolant, good resistance to forming γ emitters with long half-lives, stability under irradiation and high temperatures, and workable melting points.

Coolants are divided into three broad **classes:** aqueous and organic liquids, liquid metals, and gases. **Water** has found the widest application, largely because it is readily available and economical, has fairly good heat transfer properties, and offers no corrosion problems which cannot be handled. Its most serious drawback is its high vapor pressure. **Heavy water** has superior qualifications except for cost, which is high. Diphenyl and other **organic liquids** have demonstrated an ability to stand up under irradiation but are handicapped by a tendency to deposit decomposition products on the fuel element plates. See Table 9.8.2.

Liquid metals are attractive because they provide high heat-transfer rates and do not require pressurizing to operate at high temperatures. Sodium is most attractive because of its high boiling point and high heat conductivity, but it reacts violently with water and has poor lubricating qualities. Lithium 7 better meets qualifications but is harder to obtain and is costly.

Gas coolants offset their advantage of being inert at elevated temperatures with poor heat transfer qualities. They must be operated at high pressures to be useful in power reactors. Sodium hydroxide and yellow phosphorus are among other materials considered as coolants, but their acceptability has not been demonstrated.

FISSION REACTOR DESIGN

Neutron Balance The main objective of reactor design is to achieve neutron balance during reactor operation. At steady state, the number of neutrons produced during fission is equal to the neutrons lost by absorption and leakage processes. The net rate of change of neutron density n (neutrons per cubic centimeter) is given by the neutron conservation equation:

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = \text{production} - \text{absorption} - \text{leakage}$$

If $\partial n/\partial t$ is positive, the reactor is said to be supercritical; if it is zero, the reactor is at steady state and is said to be critical; if it is negative, the reactor is subcritical.

Cross Section The microscopic cross section σ for a particular nuclear process is the effective target area of the nucleus with which a neutron must interact to produce the given reaction. The unit of σ is barn (1 barn $= 10^{-24}$ cm^2). Neutron cross sections (absorption, scattering, and fission) constitute the basic nuclear data for reactor design. Absorption cross sections for thermal neutrons range from 0.00046 barn for deuterium to 3.3×10^6 barns for xenon^{135}. Moderating atoms for the slowing down of fast neutrons have low atomic mass, small absorption, and large scattering cross sections. Examples are hydrogen, deuterium beryllium, and carbon. Table 9.8.3 gives thermal neutron cross sections in barns for selected elements (based upon the naturally occurring combinations of isotopes).

Multiplication Factor The number of neutrons produced in any one generation in a reactor for each neutron produced in a previous generation is called the multiplication factor k. If $k = 1$, the reactor is critical; if $k < 1$, it is subcritical; and if $k > 1$, it is supercritical. For an infinite thermal reactor, multiplication factor $k_\infty = \eta f p \varepsilon$. η is the number of fission neutrons produced per neutron absorption in fuel, f is the thermal utilization factor (neutron absorption rate in fuel/total absorption rate), ε is the fast-fission factor, and p is the resonance capture escape probability. The leakage of neutrons from the reactor core is accounted for by multiplying k_∞ by the factor $1/(1 + M^2B^2)$, where M^2 is the migration area (sum of the squares of the diffusion length L and the slowing-down

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.8.3 Absorption (σ_α) and Scattering (σ_s) Cross Section for Thermal Neutrons, in barns

Element	σ_α	σ_s	Element	σ_α	σ_s	Element	σ_α	σ_s
Aluminum	0.23	1.4	Helium	0.007	0.8	Potassium	1.97	1.5
Beryllium	0.01	7	Hydrogen	0.33	38	Plutonium^{239}	1.026	9.6
Bismuth	0.032	9	Iron	2.53	11	Sodium	0.505	4.0
Boron	755	4	Lead	0.17	11	Thorium	7.56	12.6
Cadmium	2,450	7	Magnesium	0.063	3.6	Tin	0.6	4
Carbon	0.0032	4.8	Molybdenum	2.7	7	Titanium	5.6	4
Chromium	2.9	3.0	Nickel	4.6	17.5	Uranium	7.68	8.3
Copper	3.7	7.2	Niobium	1.1	5	Zirconium	0.18	8
Hafnium	105	8	Oxygen	< 0.0002	4.2			

NOTE: Individual isotopes have markedly different cross section. For example, U^{235} has total $\sigma_a = 682$ barns and fission cross section $\sigma_f = 580$ barns.

length τ) and B^2 is the geometric buckling ($B^2 = 0$ for an infinite reactor).

Breeding Ratio If the ratio of a number of fissile nuclides produced by the capture of neutrons by the fertile nuclides to the number of fissile nuclides consumed is greater than unity, it is called the **breeding ratio;** if it is less than unity, it is called the conversion ratio. For breeding, the value of η (defined above) must be greater than 2, as one neutron is required to maintain the chain reaction by fission, another neutron maintains breeding by its capture by the fertile nuclide, and the remaining to compensate for the loss of neutrons due to absorption and leakage. Neutron economy favors the breeding of Pu^{239} fissile nuclides from fast neutron capture by U^{238} fertile nuclides. This breeding process is the basis of LMFBR (liquid-metal fast breeder reactor). On the other hand, thermal breeders are based upon the breeding of uranium 233 fissile nuclides from thorium 232 fertile nuclides by the capture of a thermal neutron.

Diffusion Theory Multienergy group diffusion theory is presently the basis of reactor design. For a critical reactor the neutron balance equation reduces to

$$D_g \nabla^2 \phi_g - \sum R_g \phi_g + S_g = 0$$

where ϕ_g and S_g are the gth energy group flux and the slowing-down neutron source; D_g and R_g are the diffusion coefficient and removal cross section. The latter are called group constants, which are obtained by the analysis of the $\Sigma R_g \phi_g$ basic fuel lattice. The solution of the above equations provides the reactor multiplication factor, reactor critical size, neutron fluxes, power distributions, isotopics of elements, and fuel-cycle length.

Control Extra fuel is required for depletion to compensate fuel lost in producing energy, to account for the loss of reactivity due to the buildup of fission products, and to account for the change in reactivity due to changes in fuel and moderator temperatures. The control of excess reactivity is undertaken by the control rods of strongly absorbing materials having large absorption cross sections (such as boron, hafnium, or silver-indium-cadmium) and the burnable poison rods containing boron or gadolinium. In PWR, soluble boron is also employed. Control rods are inserted to shut down the reactor and are withdrawn to make the reactor critical.

A fraction of prompt neutrons (0.0065) are delayed neutrons. The presence of the delayed neutrons makes control of the reactor easier.

Thermal

Sources of Heat The energy produced by fissioning appears in several forms, each of which eventually degrades to heat. To provide for removal of this heat, the core, or active portion of the reactor, usually consists of uranium bearing fuel elements with passages around these elements for flow of coolant. The rate of coolant flow and the temperature of the coolant must be such as to permit removal of all the heat generated in the elements without exceeding allowable materials properties.

Hot Spot and Hot Channel Factors The problem of heat removal is complicated by the fact that heat is not generated uniformly throughout the core. The geometric configuration of most power reactors is approximately represented by a finite cylinder of height H and radius R. Diffusion theory predicts the following thermal neutron flux pattern for an unreflected, unrodded, and homogenized cylindrical reactor as a function of axial Z and radial r variables:

$$\phi(z, r) = \phi_0 \left(\cos \frac{\pi Z}{H} \right) J_0 \frac{2.405r}{R}$$

where ϕ_0 is peak flux and J_0 is the Bessel function.

In addition, the power generation is influenced by mechanical factors such as variables in fuel element dimensions, fuel concentrations, and flow. These nuclear and mechanical factors are generally called hot spot factors. Thus the peak power density of heat flux in the core is greater than the average by an amount indicated by the hot spot factor. In addition, hot channel factors are identified which indicate how much greater the temperature rise of coolant is in the hot channel than in the average channel. As an example of how such factors are used, consider a reactor in which the axial heat generation pattern is a cosine and the total flow passes uniformly once through all channels of the core; the maximum fuel element surface temperature T_{sm} depends on the hot channel and hot spot factors $F_{\Delta T}$ and F_θ and on the three temperatures—the coolant temperature at the core inlet T_1, the coolant temperature rise in the core ΔT, and the average film temperature drop in the core θ_a. (F_θ includes the axial peak-to-average of $\pi/2$.)

$$T_{sm} = T_1 + \tfrac{1}{2} F_{\Delta T}\, \Delta T + \tfrac{1}{2} \sqrt{F_{\Delta T}^2\, \Delta T^2 + 4F_\theta^2 \theta_a^2}$$

Design Criteria The maximum fuel element surface temperature T_{sm} is of interest because it may be limited by corrosion effects or by a desire to avoid film boiling, a condition which lowers the heat transfer from the fuel to the coolant. However, other limiting conditions also exist. In addition the internal fuel element temperature during all anticipated reactor transients is generally limited to a maximum value (generally below the melting point of the fuel) or to a maximum average value.

Coolant temperature rise generally is limited indirectly by fuel temperature limits. Occasionally, however, thermal stresses within the fuel element may impose a direct limit. In pressurized water reactors, the coolant temperature is limited not to exceed the saturation temperature of the fluid; thus it is more significant to speak of the maximum enthalpy rise, which is related directly to the steam quality of the fluid leaving the hot channel.

Density changes within the coolant may be limited to provide control stability in reactors that use boiling heat transfer.

Coolant velocity usually is limited to a maximum value by erosion or by vibration resonances, and sometimes is required to exceed a minimum value because of crud deposition. The burnout condition is determined in a given fuel element geometry for a particular combination of fuel element heat flux, primary coolant flow, and primary coolant enthalpy. Steady-state, local, or bulk boiling may have to be limited, even when burnout is not a danger, because of pitting of fuel element surfaces or crud deposition on the fuel surfaces. The burnout problem is most acute during reactor transients; hence steady state burnout generally is not limiting.

Mechanical

The mechanical design of nuclear reactors is influenced by three factors not encountered with other apparatus: the need to control criticality, the

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

effects of irradiation, and the high power density produced in the core.

Control of Criticality The following requirements are introduced by the need to control criticality:

1. Not only must components perform reliably, but also if they fail to function as designed, the reactor will shut down. Small parts located elsewhere in the core should be so designed that if they fail they do not interfere with the action of control rods in shutting down the reactor.

2. Emergency shutdown mechanisms must be fast-acting devices to reduce the time delay in initiating shutdown.

3. During normal operation, components of the core must be rigid enough so that deflections due to mechanical or thermal stresses do not introduce unpredicted criticality variations.

Effects of Irradiation Neutron and gamma irradiations cause the following effects, which must be considered in the design of reactor systems and reactor components:

1. Radiation effects on properties of materials—particularly on the brittle fracture characteristics of the reactor vessel, on the relaxation characteristics of bolts, and on crevice corrosion.

2. Heat generation brought about by attenuation of radiation within components materials—probably insofar as such heat influences heat removal requirements, thermal stresses, and thermal distortions of parts.

3. Induced radioactivity in corrosion and wear products that could be carried by the coolant and deposited in such regions as pumps and valves.

High Power Density A nuclear reactor requires a large amount of heat transfer surface for removal of the high power per unit volume which can be produced. Thus the reactor consists of many small, closely packed fuel elements. Mechanical tolerances are often appreciable fractions of the dimensions and spacing of these elements and therefore influence thermal performance. The influence of such tolerances on performance must be evaluated. Parts also must be rigid and vibration-free in the face of the high fluid flow rates required for power removal. The high power density may also lead to large thermal stresses in fuel elements.

Furthermore, moving parts may have to operate without benefit of organic lubricants because such lubricants tend to sludge under irradiation, and if deposited on heat surfaces could interfere with removal of heat from the core.

Residual radioactivity also influences programs and facilities for refueling of the core and for periodic maintenance of components in the reactor system. In addition, personnel exposure by the above radiation requires adequate shielding.

Shielding To protect reactor operating personnel against damaging biological effects of neutrons and gamma rays, shielding is required around a nuclear reactor. Neutron and gamma ray fluxes in the range of 10^{13} to 10^{14} must be attenuated to 10^3 particles/(cm$^2 \cdot$s) to meet the tolerance radiation level.

To attenuate gamma rays, which interact primarily with the orbital electrons of atoms, a material with a high atomic number containing a high density of these electrons is required. Examples are lead, tungsten, depleted uranium, or concrete containing high-Z elements in the form of scrap or heavy ore.

To attenuate neutrons, they must be slowed down and then absorbed. Hydrogenous materials such as water, concrete, or polyethylene are excellent moderators. The slowed neutrons must be absorbed without producing high-energy-capture gamma rays by using boron 10. Therefore, some gamma shielding outside the neutron shield is generally required.

Electrical

Neutron level instruments, located adjacent to but outside the core or core vessel, are used for the basic control of nuclear reactors. Thermocouples, flowmeters, pressure taps, and fission chambers are used inside the core for power calibration of nuclear instruments and for determining the distribution of power and/or temperature within the core; in turn, the power distribution is used to compute heat fluxes and fuel temperatures for comparison with limiting values.

Neutron level instruments utilize the fact that neutrons can produce ionizing particles to indicate their presence. The two most common processes used for this purpose are the (n,α) reaction with boron and the fission reaction. The resulting ion pair is used to produce ionization of a gas in a tube containing a central anode and outer electrode. The electric discharge produced by the ionization is used for measurement purposes. The detailed design features vary widely with the range of the instrument and the type of reactor in which it is to be used.

Different neutron level instruments are employed during the reactor operation at various power levels, because of the wide range of sensitivity required to monitor neutron fluxes from start-up to full-power condition. In power reactors at least three instrument ranges are used with the overlap between the adjacent ranges. These are (1) source range, (2) intermediate range, and (3) power range. During the reactor start-up (source range) the BF_3 proportional counters are used to measure neutron flux in the range of 10^{-1} to 5×10^4 neutrons/(cm$^2 \cdot$s). The compensated ionization chambers are employed to monitor neutron flux in the intermediate power range of 2.5×10^2 to 2.5×10^{10} neutrons/(cm$^2 \cdot$s). In the power range, where neutron flux ranges from 2.5×10^7 to 2.5×10^{10} neutrons/(cm$^2 \cdot$s), uncompensated ionization chambers are employed.

Compensated ionization chambers are designed to count neutrons against a background of gamma radiation. Uncompensated chambers are useful for providing axial power distribution.

All the above instruments are located outside the core and monitor neutron flux, hence reactor power. The latter is also obtained from the measure of ΔT (change in temperature) across the reactor core from the temperature measuring instruments located in the primary loop of the reactor. However, these instruments do not provide local flux peaking and local anomalous coolant temperature situations. In-core instrumentation must be used for this purpose.

In-core instrumentation is employed to provide information on neutron flux and fuel-assembly-coolant outlet temperature at a few selected locations in the reactor core. Thermocouples measure the coolant outlet temperature and thus provide the rise in local coolant temperature, a measure of the increase in local reactor power. Miniature, fixed, and movable fission chambers containing U_3O_8 which is 90 to 95 percent enriched U^{235} constitute neutron flux detectors. The experimental data obtained during the reactor operation from the in-core instrumentation provide the check against the reactor design parameters such as the assembly distributions and hot channel factors.

In addition to thermocouples and fission chambers, other in-core instruments such as pressure, displacement, and strain transducers are also desirable. None of these instruments except thermocouples have operated satisfactorily over a long period. The installation of in-core instrumentation is vital to the safe and economic operation of the reactor.

NUCLEAR POWER PLANT ECONOMICS

Decisions by electric utilities as to what type of generating plants to order to meet future base load requirements are based largely, though by no means wholly, on a comparison of the costs for which the alternative types can produce electricity over their lifetimes. Other factors, which have become relatively more important in recent years, include adequacy and reliability of fuel supply, including dependence on foreign sources; environmental and safety considerations; availability of suitable sites; public acceptance as influenced particularly by environmental opposition; the costs, uncertainties, and delays involved in government regulation; lead times required from initial decision to get plants on line; and plant reliability and availability.

As a practical matter in the United States, utilities seeking to add to their base load capacity have the choice only of plants utilizing nuclear fuel or one of the fossil fuels; coal, gas, or oil. Most usable hydrosites have already been developed.

The discussion of nuclear generating costs here is directed to light water reactors of either the pressurized water reactor (PWR) or boiling water reactor (BWR) types. Although other types are in use (e.g., high-temperature gas-cooled) or under development (e.g., fast breeder), the

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

overwhelming preponderance of reactors in commercial use are, and will for some time continue to be, light-water types.

It is customary to compare generating costs for nuclear and fossil fueled plants in three broad categories: (1) fixed costs on capital investment, (2) fuel costs, and (3) operating, maintenance, and insurance costs.

Fixed Costs on Capital Investment

In standard accounting practice, the capital investment in a nuclear power plant is considered to be the total cost of building the plant and placing it in commercial operation. Accounting classification systems employed by both NRC and FPC provide separately for ''direct'' and ''indirect'' costs. Direct costs are associated on an item-by-item basis with land and land rights, the equipment and structures which comprise the complete power plant, and coolant and moderator materials. Equipment and structures are customarily subdivided into reactor plant and equipment, turbine plant and equipment, other electrical equipment, equipment and facilities of a general nature, and transmission plant. Indirect costs consist mainly of expenses which apply to all portions of the physical plant, including engineering and design costs, construction facilities, taxes, interest during construction, and the owner's administrative and overhead costs.

The total of these items tends to be higher for nuclear than for fossil fueled plants largely because of (1) the need for containment shells, shielding, instrumentation, and other measures to contain radioactivity and ensure safety; (2) the greater complexity, hence greater costs, of reactor equipment compared to conventional boiler equipment; and (3) the lower turbine steam temperatures and pressures, and the lower thermal efficiencies of nuclear plants compared to conventional plants, requiring the use of larger, hence costlier, turbines. The discrepancy is wider in warm climates, which permit fossil fuel plants to utilize outdoor (unenclosed) construction.

Mitigating factors which prevent the construction cost discrepancy between nuclear and coal plants, in particular, from being still larger are (1) the lower cost of fuel handling equipment in nuclear plants and (2) the need in coal plants but not in nuclear plants, for smoke control and ash removal equipment.

Unit construction costs (expressed in dollars per kilowatt) for both nuclear and fossil fueled plants are lower at any given time as plants increase in size because of various economies of scale. The decreases are sharper in the case of nuclear plants, largely because of the prominence of certain minimum and relatively fixed costs to ensure safety. The existence of these inescapable costs places small nuclear plants at a particularly great economic disadvantage.

Adding a nuclear unit to a generating station which already has one or more nuclear units is less costly than constructing a first nuclear unit of otherwise identical characteristics. The principal savings in multiple-unit plants result from use of a developed site; reduced engineering and design efforts; and use of joint facilities and equipment such as cooling water intake and discharge facilities, control rooms, warehouses, shops, offices, roads, fuel handling and storage facilities, and temporary construction facilities.

The unit capital costs of nuclear plants often can be reduced substantially over their lifetimes by using improved fuel cores to achieve outputs higher than the original rating, which is usually conservative. To take advantage of this opportunity, allowance for higher output must be made at the outset in the capacity of turbine generators. Conversely, should it be necessary to derate plants to take account of safety uncertainties such as the effectiveness of emergency core-cooling systems, the effect would be to increase unit capital costs.

Total construction costs of nuclear plants have risen rapidly since about 1963, when it was believed that a large light-water plant could be built for $125 per kilowatt or less. Plants now are being estimated to cost in excess of $2,000 per kilowatt. The principal factors making for such increases in cost have been inflation, stretch-outs of plant schedules (adding to interest during construction), lower labor productivity, increases in the scope of projects to add safety and environmental features, and more stringent quality control.

Some of these factors may continue to push unit construction costs upward in the future. Counterbalancing factors tending toward a moderation in unit costs include continued increases in plant size, the likelihood of greater standardization of systems and components, a larger sales volume over which to spread manufacturing overhead costs, and improved field assembly and construction methods. One should take note of the fact that the historical tendency in the industry has been to underestimate construction costs by a wide margin.

The fixed cost component of generating costs (mills per kilowatthour) can be obtained from construction costs (dollars per kilowatt) by applying an annual fixed charge rate and an annual plant capacity factor.

Annual fixed charges cover all costs that are in direct proportion to the initial capital investment and are independent of the extent to which the facilities represented by this investment are used. A simple procedure for evaluation of a plant, which approximates the levelized annual charges obtained through utility accounting procedures, is to use constant annual fixed charges, i.e., to apply a constant fixed charge rate each year to the initial investment.

The fixed charge rate for a utility will vary because of a number of factors including amount of state and local taxes, plant life and accounting method for depreciation purposes, and debt-equity composition of the utility's financial structure. A representative range of fixed charge rates for depreciating capital of an investor-owned utility illustrate the components and relative importance of these items, it being understood that the actual components and range will vary, depending on the time of implementation and the then-current financial climate.

Component	*Fixed charge range, %*
Return on investment	7.0–9.0
Depreciation	1.0–1.3
Interim replacements of short-lived assets	0.3–0.5
Property insurance	0.3–0.4
Federal income taxes	2.0–2.8
State and local taxes	2.9–3.5
	13.5–17.5

A lower fixed charge rate would be applied to the nondepreciating capital (land and land rights and working capital) because depreciation, interim replacements, and property insurance are eliminated and associated adjustments are made in taxes. Not included in annual fixed charges are relatively constant fixed costs, such as nuclear liability insurance or plant staffing expense, which are only indirectly related to plant investment.

The annual capacity factor is calculated by dividing the kilowatthours generated by the plant in a year by the kilowatthours that would have been generated had the plant operated at full capacity throughout all the hours in the year (8.760 except in leap years).

The conversion from capital to generating costs may be illustrated as follows: Assume a plant of 1,000,000-kW capacity costing $2 billion, with annual fixed charges of 14 percent and operating at 80 percent capacity factor. The construction-cost contribution to generating costs would then be 40 mills/kWh, calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\$2{,}000{,}000{,}000 \times 14\%}{1{,}000{,}000 \text{ kW} \times 8{,}760 \text{ h} \times 80\%} = 40 \text{ mills/kWh}$$

Fuel Costs

The economic advantage of nuclear power plants lies essentially in fuel costs which are substantially lower than those of fossil fueled plants.

The fuel cost advantage is implicit in the compactness of nuclear fuel: 685 lb of uranium, if fully consumed, contains the energy equivalent of 1.7 million tons of coal, 7.2 million bbl of oil, or 32 billion ft^3 of natural gas. It has not yet proved possible in any water cooled reactor to consume more than a small fraction of the uranium used in nuclear fuel; yet this fraction is high enough to yield the cost advantage noted above.

Determining nuclear fuel costs is a far more complicated matter than determining fossil fuel costs because of the need to take account of a complex sequence of events which begins long before the uranium fuel

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

is inserted in the reactor and ends long after the spent fuel has been removed from the reactor. The entire sequence, which is called the nuclear fuel cycle, includes mining and milling of uranium, refining of uranium and conversion to uranium hexafluoride, enrichment of the uranium in the isotope uranium 235, conversion of enriched uranium to fuel material, fabrication of reactor fuel elements, use of fuel elements in nuclear power plants, recovery and marketing of by-product plutonium (not in the United States), chemical reprocessing of spent fuel to obtain reusable fuel material (not in the United States), and disposal of radioactive wastes.

Some principal items of nuclear fuel cost and possibilities of change include the following:

Fabrication The cost of fuel element fabrication is taken to include all the steps necessary to change a starting material (UF_6 in the case of enriched uranium elements) into a usable element. These steps involve chemical conversion to a powder or metal, metallurgical and mechanical processing to form and clad the elements, inspection, testing, and scrap recovery. Fabrication costs are expected to continue declining as greater quantities are handled, processing becomes more efficient, and fuel design is improved.

Recycling of Bred Plutonium Uranium-fueled light-water reactors in normal operation produce a certain amount of fissionable plutonium 239 through capture of neutrons in the nonfissionable isotope uranium 238. The separation is done by well-established chemical processes, the end products being uranium dioxide and plutonium dioxide. The plan to recycle spent nuclear fuel resulted in several reprocessing plants being built in the United States, but only one was ever operated. Widespread public concern over proliferation of nuclear weapons and the possible use of plutonium by terrorists and others resulted in a ban on reprocessing in the late 1970s. The ban was lifted in 1980, but since that time there has been no economic incentive to embark on an extended program of industrial reprocessing of nuclear fuel. This situation is entirely different elsewhere; reprocessing is currently a going operation in France, Russia, Great Britain, and elsewhere. The confluence of many factors will foster increased reprocessing of spent nuclear fuels, among which will be the matter of depletion of fossil fuels, accumulated pollution products from the combustion thereof, growth of power requirements worldwide, and so on. Certainly, at such future time as breeder reactors may become viable, they will provide an ideal place to utilize plutonium derived from reprocessed spent nuclear fuel produced in light-water reactors.

Shipping Charge The costs of transporting irradiated fuel elements from a reactor site to a chemical processing plant include charges for freight, shipping casks, handling, and insurance. The shape of the fuel element (having an effect on the size of cask required), the irradiation level, the cooling time required, the shipping distance, the route and type of transport, and the regulatory requirements are all factors which affect the cost.

Enrichment Enrichment in the fissionable isotope uranium 235 is accomplished at present (in the United States) only in three DOE-owned plants. This is the only part of the nuclear power industry not yet in private hands.

Burnup The amount of heat that can be obtained from a given weight of nuclear fuel before it is discharged from the reactor is known as the fuel's burnup. Higher burnups are expected as a result of technological improvements. This would have the consequences of reducing the amount of fuel that must be fabricated, reprocessed, and shipped per unit of electrical output. Cost reductions should be achieved as a result, but they may be limited by the fact that fuel elements capable of achieving the higher burnups may be more expensive to fabricate and process and may require higher enrichment.

Chemical Reprocessing and Waste Disposal The cost of chemical reprocessing, less any income from the plutonium or uranium recovered, is usually a net credit for foreign reactors. For U.S. and foreign reactors, the cost of waste disposal is an appreciable cost factor. Under U.S. law, that cost is assessed against the user utility as the power is generated, even though the disposal will take place decades later.

Decommissioning The cost of decommissioning the nuclear power plant when it is eventually closed down is treated differently in different countries. In the United States, these costs are required to be guaranteed by various accounting practices, which in effect accumulate a reserve for costs to be accrued in the future. Reactors decommissioned and dismantled are utilized as case studies to accumulate data on the costs incurred thereby. Other reactors that have been shut down have been defueled, and either stored under guard, or entombed in concrete, with ultimate decommissioning postponed to the future.

Operating and Maintenance Costs

The main cost items included in this category are station labor, training of replacement personnel, expendable materials, and supplies other than fuel, maintenance operations, and insurance.

The novelty and complexity of nuclear plants, a conservative approach to health and safety problems, and the need for specialized knowledge are all factors requiring a more skilled staff in nuclear plants and a longer period of training. Problems of coal and ash handling and maintenance of tubes and related boiler components require a larger working force in coal plants. While insurance costs have been higher for nuclear plants, it is expected that a continuance of safe operating experience will eventually equalize this item.

Numbers of operating personnel per generating unit are less for a plant having two or more nuclear units than for a single-unit plant. Increasing the size of a nuclear unit does not materially affect the number of people required to operate it. For these two reasons, one can expect declining personnel requirements per kilowatt of capacity at such time as the nuclear power industry expands present plant capacity and/or adds new plants to the overall inventory.

Total Generating Costs

Although many uncertainties becloud cost estimates for both nuclear and fossil fuel plants, in the 1970s, comparisons tended to favor nuclear power in many parts of the United States on either economic or noneconomic bases, or both. The continued and expanded use of fossil fuels in power plants is driven by several considerations, not the least of which is the current (1995) apparant plentiful supply at reasonable prices. In looking to the future, however, there are certain problems which are recognized and which must be addressed in the matter of fossil fuels. Domestic supplies of low-sulfur oil are diminishing, and dependence on imports makes for uncertain supply and is always subject to sharp price increases. Domestic coal is plentiful, but most of it, especially in the eastern United States, has a relatively high sulfur content which requires extensive and expensive steps to be taken to desulfurize it or to treat the effluent gases to meet local air pollution standards. Vast quantities of natural gas have come on the market in the last decade, but it is recognized that this source, too, is finite. Oil and natural gas have required deeper and deeper wells, in locations which add to the difficulties of extraction (i.e., offshore platforms in deep waters) and shipment.

The large-scale plans for expansion of the nuclear power plant base in the United States were dramatically scaled back in the 1980s, for a number of reasons. Nationwide, actual and forecasted growth of demand was markedly lower; the regulatory climate and length of time required from inception to the plant's going on-line were such that construction financing presented onerous economic problems which largely offset the erstwhile advantages to be gained from the use of nuclear fuel; and there was denial of retraction of plant certification by local authorities.

In the past several years, efforts have been made to reduce the time required from planning to final operation of nuclear plants. To that end, the industry has designed a number of standard size and type nuclear reactors which, once approved by the NRC, will not have to undergo the long-time, one-of-a-kind review for each proposed installation. Although no plants are on order in the United States, the major U.S. fabricators and suppliers of nuclear reactors are engaged, either solely or in partnership, with the growing nuclear energy programs in many other countries. It is expected that the store of expertise gained thereby will be available for application in the United States at such future time

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

when, as expected, nuclear power plants once more will serve to meet growing demands. At this time (1995), approximately 20 percent of the electric power generated in the United States originates in nuclear reactors. Outside the United States, there is great activity in the emplacement and operation of an expanded nuclear power base in the electric power generating industries.

Effect on Fuel Resources

The emergence of nuclear power as a viable energy source comes at a time when additional environmentally acceptable sources of energy are sorely needed, both in the United States and in other countries, to meet continued rapid increases in demand. As indicated above, domestic production of both natural gas and oil appears to be approaching its peak and may decline in the future. Dependence on foreign sources entails risks with regard to dependability of supply and the U.S. balance of payments. New technology is needed in order to be able to mine and use this country's extensive coal reserves in an environmentally and economically acceptable manner.

Uranium supplies are limited and, if utilized only in light-water receptors, would rapidly diminish. Breeder reactors, now under active development outside the United States, can utilize most (60 percent or more) of our uranium (and/or thorium) resources rather than just a minute percentage.

A practically unlimited source of energy is available from the deuterium in the world's oceans should development work now underway in several countries lead to production of useful power from controlled fusion reactions. The technical problems are formidable, however, and the harnessing of fusion as an energy source in large power generating plants is not expected until the latter half of the twenty-first century.

NUCLEAR POWER PLANT SAFETY

Revised and amended by George Sege

Through the end of 1993, over 1800 reactor-years of operation had been accumulated by commercial nuclear power plants in the United States, and about 6,900 worldwide, not including military or shipboard reactors (International Atomic Energy Agency, ''Nuclear Power Reactors of the World,'' 1994). This operational history has been accompanied by an impressive safety record with respect to health and safety impacts on the public, yet accidents have occurred. The most disastrous occurred in 1986 at the Chernobyl nuclear power plant complex located in the then U.S.S.R., resulting in loss of life and long-term radioactive contamination over a large area in the vicinity of the plant as well as transport of short-lived radioactive contamination dictated by the prevailing local weather patterns. Ultimate disposition of the destroyed reactor, now encased in an added containment structure (''sarcophagus''), remains a concern. In the United States, two of the worst commercial accidents occurred at the Brown's Ferry facility in 1975 and the Three Mile Island (TMI) facility in 1979. In the Brown's Ferry accident, a fire burned through hundreds of electrical power and control cables, threatening the plant's capability to be shut down and maintained in a safe condition. There was ultimately no damage to the reactor and no off-site radioactive releases occurred. At Three Mile Island significant reactor damage occurred through a sequence of events that began with a stuck-open primary system relief valve. Radioactivity was released to the environment, mostly in the form of noble gas fission products. However, estimated exposures to members of the public were found by a Federal interagency working group to be exceedingly small, even for the maximally exposed individual. The TMI reactor vessel did not fail despite relocation of approximately 19 tons of molten core materials. Although these accidents had minimal public impact, safety systems and plant operators were severely challenged during the events.

Commercial reactors have inherent safety features that prevent them from exploding like bombs. In a fission bomb, the fissioning of the fuel is caused by neutrons whose energy is about the same as the level at which they are produced by fission of the material in the previous generations. As a result, the average neutron lifetime is very small, and this allows the supercritical chain reaction to increase the power level to incredibly high levels before the device explosively destructs itself. In a power reactor, light-water or gas-cooled, enrichments of the fuel is very small (a few percent). As a result, essentially all fissioning of the fuel is caused by neutrons that have been reduced greatly in energy by the moderator (water or carbon). This results in a long average neutron lifetime compared to that in a bomb. If the chain reaction is allowed to increase in an uncontrolled fashion, this long lifetime will prevent the power of the reactor from rising to very high levels before the inherent design characteristics of negative temperature and void coefficients cause the reaction to shut down. While the Chernobyl reactor had design deficiencies in this regard, the violence of the accident was very far removed from what would result from detonation of a nuclear bomb.

There are two fundamental inherent safety features that contribute to the controllability of commercial power reactors. The first of these is the **Doppler effect.** As the power level of a reactor increases rapidly, the temperature of the fuel increases very rapidly. This rise in temperature causes the low-energy resonant peaks in the microscopic cross section to broaden, effectively creating a larger probability that neutrons will suffer nonfission captures by the U^{238} in the fuel. The second inherent safety feature is caused by the physical densities of materials, particularly the moderator, that decrease as the temperature increases. This results in higher probabilities that neutrons will escape from the reactor rather than cause fission in the fuel. Both of these inherent safety features feed back to the chain reaction in a negative way such that an uncontrolled increase in power level tends to shut the reactor down. This is called a **negative temperature coefficient.** Steam voids in a water moderator have a similar effect.

In spite of the inherent safety features, a reactor still provides a potential hazard to plant workers and members of the public in the vicinity of the plant. This is because of the generation of highly radioactive fission products within the fuel. The essential safety challenge is to assure that these fission products are kept confined at all times.

Nuclear power plant safety is based on a defense-in-depth philosophy. The defense-in-depth relies not only upon the inherent safety features, but also on high quality standards that provide a high degree of assurance that accidents are not likely to occur, and that if they do occur, the radioactivity will be contained locally.

High quality begins with the selection of highly qualified personnel to design, construct, and operate a plant. Each applicant for a license to build a nuclear plant must institute a quality assurance program to be applied to design, fabrication, construction, and testing of the structures, systems, and components of the facility. An applicant for a license to operate a plant must also provide for appropriate managerial and administrative controls to be used to assure safe operation. The function of the quality assurance program is to provide a high degree of confidence that the structures, systems, and components in the plant will perform as intended during the service life of the plant.

Nevertheless, accidents can occur, and other safety features are designed to keep fission products confined in the event of a broad range of accidents that could conceivably occur. Two categories of anticipated accidents are undercooling events and positive reactivity addition events. An undercooling event can be caused by such things as ruptures in the reactor cooling system, loss of flow through the reactor core, or loss of feedwater flow. Positive reactivity addition events are the result of such things as inadvertent control-rod withdrawals or dissolved boron dilution, main steam line breaks (pressurized water reactor), or overfeeding of a steam generator.

There are various types of engineered safety features found in today's commercial reactors. They can be grouped into four major areas: (1) reactor protection system, (2) emergency core-cooling systems, (3) containment, and (4) emergency power supplies. The following discussion of these features is generally applicable to light-water-cooled reactors, pressurized water and boiling water reactors, but the same general features are applicable to other types.

The purpose of the **reactor protection system** is to rapidly insert the control rods into the reactor upon receipt of a signal indicative of a malfunction that potentially threatens the integrity of the core. For ex-

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

ample, a low reactor coolant system pressure is indicative of a loss-of-coolant accident. High temperatures in the reactor coolant system or the core indicate the possibility of a loss of coolant or loss of flow through the core. The reactor protection system processes the various input signals and compares them to predetermined set points. If a set point is reached or exceeded, the system is designed to automatically insert the control rods into the reactor. The control rods absorb neutrons and quickly reduce the fission rate in the core. This rapidly drops the power level in the reactor and aids in prevention of damage to the fuel.

In the event of a loss-of-coolant accident, it is not sufficient to shut the reactor down in order to prevent damage to the fuel. Decay heat produced from the radioactive decay of fission products (initially some 4 percent of the previous operating power, but decreasing rapidly with time after stopping the chain reaction) would cause damage to the fuel if the coolant inventory losses were not made up by an injection system. **Emergency core-cooling systems** are designed to permit injection of coolant at high reactor coolant system pressures that exist during small ruptures as well as at low reactor coolant system pressures resulting from large breaks. Redundancy is provided to assure that equipment failures do not result in the loss of capability to keep the core covered with water. Large sources of water are stored to meet the long-term cooling requirements to remove the decay heat. In the event that a pipe rupture results in the depletion of the stored injection water, provisions are made to allow recirculation of water from the emergency sumps in the containment building back through the injection pumps. In time the rate of heat generation drops to the point where forced-circulation cooling is no longer required. After the Three Mile Island core damage event the system was cooling by natural convection to the surroundings at atmospheric pressure after about 3 years.

Containment features provide an important function essential to the defense-in-depth philosophy. There are actually three levels in the containment scheme. The first level is the fuel cladding, which not only mechanically holds the fuel pellets in the core, but also provides a boundary to prevent migration of fission products to the coolant. The second level is the reactor cooling system pressure boundary. This consists of the reactor vessel system piping, and other components designed to withstand pressures in the order of hundreds of atmospheres without failure. Parts of these systems that are outside containment in normal operation, as in a boiling water reactor, are isolated at the containment building boundary in case of an accident. Thus even if the fuel cladding should fail, the pressure boundary is likely to keep the fission products contained. In the event that the accident would cause both of these boundaries to fail, a third level is provided in the form of a containment building. The typical containment building consists of a steel shell surrounded by a concrete structure subjected to precompression by steel cables. Thick steel only, reinforced concrete, and combinations have all been used in containment schemes, most of which are designed to withstand 5- to 10-atm pressure, based on containing the total energy available during an accident. The destroyed Chernobyl reactor did not have a containment building; it had only confinement provisions for small local pipe breaks.

Emergency power supplies also exhibit redundancy and defense-in-depth features. The power requirements for auxiliary systems within a power plant are normally supplied from the reactor output itself through the main electrical generator and auxiliary station transformer. In the event of an accident, the reactor would not be available to produce useful power; thus the preferred power source for supplying emergency electrical loads is from the transmission lines from other power plants. At least two off-site power supplies are required. In case of loss of these sources, redundant on-site sources are also required, usually powered by quick-start diesel generators. Battery systems are also needed to provide certain direct-current loads and some alternating-current loads through inverters. Control, computer, and instrument supplies are typically so served.

Protection is provided not only for events originating in the plant but also for external events. Plants are designed to withstand safely the worst anticipated earthquakes, floods, and winds. Containment and other safety features of nuclear power plants generally offer significant protection against consequences of accidents exceeding the severity of design-basis accidents. In recent years, experimental work and probabilistic studies have been carried out to determine the extent of such margins and discover residual vulnerabilities that would then become the basis for possible further safety improvements, generally on a plant-specific basis.

As the operating years of plants have accumulated, there has been increasing attention to detecting and counteracting age-related degradation of plant materials and equipment. A notable example is the varying degrees of radiation-induced embrittlement of reactor vessel materials, which if unchecked should increase vulnerability to overcooling accidents (pressurized thermal shock).

Another development in recent years has been the increasing use of probabilistic safety assessments as a partial guide to plant safety actions as well as safety regulation. In such assessments, **fault trees** are used to trace malfunctions through all antecedent events to the initiating causes and **event trees** to trace undesired events through all their consequences to ultimate outcomes. Known or estimated probabilities are assigned at each step in the chain of causation, to derive probabilities of sequences of safety (or risk) interest.

The various inherent and engineered safety features, along with the high quality standards which are required in the design, construction, and operation of a nuclear power plant, make accidental releases of radioactivity to the environment extremely unlikely. Nonetheless, additional defense-in-depth is provided in the form of trained operators and procedural adherence. As a final feature of the defense-in-depth philosophy, emergency planning is required that establishes the protective measures that would be taken to protect workers and members of the public against possible radioactive releases. Such emergency measures are required to be practiced at least annually in the United States.

Further assurance of nuclear plant safety is provided by the regulatory requirements summarized in the next section.

NUCLEAR POWER PLANT LICENSING
Revised and amended by Paul E. Norian

NOTE. The following describes the process in the United States. Nearly all countries have similar processes, but the degree of public participation and appeal opportunities may differ in significant degree, generally resulting in less complex and time-consuming processes in other countries, especially those with nationally owned industries and utilities.

Licensing of commercial power reactors is conducted in accordance with the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended. The applicable regulations appear in Title 10 of the Code of Federal Regulations (10 CFR). Licensing is currently conducted by the NRC in a two-step process involving the issuance of a construction permit (CP) and then an operating license (OL) when the plant is completed. The process begins with the filing by a utility of an application for the construction permit and is followed by safety, environmental, security, and antitrust reviews by the NRC staff. These reviews are conducted in parallel. Following the staff reviews, and report to the NRC, another review is conducted by the Advisory Committee on Reactor Safeguards (ACRS), a body independent of the NRC, which gives a formal opinion letter to the NRC. Finally a mandatory public hearing is held by a three-member Atomic Safety and Licensing Board (ASLB), which reports to the NRC. If all issues are resolved satisfactorily, the staff is allowed by the NRC to issue the construction permit. The applicant may then begin construction, provided other local, state, and federal requirements are met for a variety of nonnuclear matters such as water discharge, building construction, worker safety, etc. The total number of permits required may exceed one hundred.

Several years before the plant construction is completed the applicant files an application to the NRC for an operating license. The process that follows is similar to that for the construction permit except that the public hearing is not mandatory during this step. However, a hearing may be requested by affected members of the public or by the commission (NRC). In practice this usually occurs on request from some member of the public.

Major features of the licensing process, are summarized below.

Preliminary Safety Analysis Report (PSAR) The PSAR is the pri-

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

mary component of the application for a CP. It generally comprises 10 or more volumes of information concerning site characteristics, plant design features, operating features, and documentation of compliance with NRC regulations.

Final Safety Analysis Report (FSAR) The FSAR accompanies the application for an operating license. This document provides more detailed information than the PSAR about changes in design, requests for information from the NRC staff during the CP phase, changes in regulations since the issuance of the CP, and conformance with the additional regulations that are only applicable at the OL stage.

NRC Staff and ACRS Safety Reviews The applicant's safety analysis reports provide the basis for the safety reviews. The staff reviews the reports against standard NRC acceptance criteria derived from the regulations and documents the results of these reviews in **Safety Evaluation Reports (SERs)** at both steps in the licensing process. Clarifications are usually required from the applicant both in writing and in meetings. Following completion of the SERs, the ACRS independently completes its reviews. These ACRS reviews typically include many meetings with the NRC staff and applicant. At the conclusion of the ACRS review, a letter is sent to the chairman of the NRC providing the ACRS recommendation as to whether the CP or OL should be issued. Supplements to the SERs are issued by the staff that incorporate appropriate changes as a result of the ACRS recommendations.

Environmental Review (ER) This review is held at both the CP and OL steps pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969. The staff review is based on a Safety Evaluation Report (SER) prepared by the applicant. Upon completion of the staff's analysis, a draft Environmental Statement is prepared and distributed for comment to the various federal, state, and local agencies and to members of the public. Comments are taken into account in the preparation of a final Environmental Statement.

Antitrust Reviews This review is conducted by the NRC and the attorney general (Department of Justice) to ensure that operation of the facility will not be in violation of the antitrust laws.

Public Hearings Separate hearings may be held on safety and environmental matters, or the issues may be consolidated into a single hearing. If an antitrust hearing is required, it is always held separately. Hearings are normally held close to the reactor site to allow local public participation.

License Issuance and Commission Reviews Since 1981 it has been NRC practice for the staff to initially issue an operating license restricting operations of the plant to power levels not exceeding 5 percent of the full power rating. This low power license is issued after the completion of the safety, environmental, and antitrust reviews, and after completion of the public hearings, and resolution of any appeals. The exception to this is that public hearings on off-site emergency planning need not be completed prior to the issuance of a low-power license. The low-power license permits plant heat-up and reactor system testing, which typically takes 2 or 3 months. After the major remaining safety issues are resolved and the staff has confidence that the applicant can operate the plant safely, the staff brings the matter before the five-member commission (NRC) for review. Following this review and a favorable finding by the commission, the staff is allowed to issue a license amendment authorizing full-power operation of the plant. Federal courts may review the commission decision on appeal from interested parties, with or without a stay of execution of the license as the court may decide. Following the term of the full-power license, the license can be renewed for a period up to 20 years in accordance with the requirements established by the NRC.

The NRC has issued a safety goal policy statement that established goals that broadly define an acceptable level of radiological risk that might be imposed on the public as a result of nuclear power plant operation. To implement the goals, numerical objectives on core damage frequency and containment performance have been established. The safety goals are among the considerations underlying NRC's generic regulatory actions, but do not supplant NRC regulations and are not applied to individual plants.

Continuing Review A licensed reactor is subject to continual oversight by the NRC throughout its operating life to assure that regulations and license conditions are observed. The NRC maintains an active program for evaluating and resolving generic safety issues, i.e., issues relevant to all plants or to a class of plants. Plant or procedural modifications are required if needed for adequate safety or justified on a safety-cost tradeoff basis. Licensees are required to monitor the performance or condition of certain structures, systems, and components, and the effectiveness of maintenance, to provide reasonable assurance that capability to perform their intended safety functions will be retained.

Reactor licensees are also required to perform a probabilistic risk assessment, called an **individual plant examination,** for their facilities. These risk assessment analyses are a result of the NRC policy regarding assessment of beyond-design-basis accidents (severe accidents) and are intended to identify any plant vulnerabilities needing attention.

On-site resident inspectors carry out a continuous inspection program and are augmented by specialized inspectors based in the NRC regional offices or headquarters. Significant events are subjected to thorough investigations to determine causes and to assure corrective actions. Should a safety hazard ever be presented at a facility, the NRC is empowered to take any necessary enforcement action, including the shutdown of the plant.

Standardized Design Standard plant designs can lead to greater assurance of safety, reduced costs through quality production, and less licensing review time by NRC. Under NRC's procedures, a standard design is reviewed using bounding site conditions for the range of sites at which the plant might be located. For safety considerations which do not involve site-specific issues, the licensing review is therefore conducted only once, even though many applicants may reference the design. The NRC is in the process of certifying several standard nuclear power plant designs, and it strongly encourages future applicants for licenses to reference them in their applications. The operation of multiple plants having essentially the same design features will provide a substantial safety benefit because experience gained at one facility may be applied to other like facilities. This should lead to more effective maintenance of key safety components and improved reliability of plant operations. Standardization would also stimulate programs of quality control and lead to better and faster training of operators and workers. It appears likely that when U.S. utilities do begin ordering nuclear plants again, the standard plant concept will be used, as has successfully been done in other countries.

Operator Licenses In addition to issuing operating licenses to the owners of nuclear power plants, the NRC also licenses persons who actually manipulate the controls of a reactor, at two responsibility levels, reactor operator and senior reactor operator. The licensing process involves training, experience requirements, and examinations, both written and practical, to verify an acceptable degree of knowledge on the part of the candidate before the license is granted or renewed. Because of the high cost of using an operating reactor for training and demonstration of practical facility in operation, many utilities use elaborate replica simulators of the control-room panels and systems of the power plant for operator training.

Decommissioning Five years before an operating license is to expire, licensees are required to inform the NRC for approval of their program for funding the management of spent fuel until disposal in a permanent repository. No later than 1 year before the license is to expire, the licensee must file an application to terminate its operating license, together with a detailed plan for decommissioning. With license renewal, decommissioning follows the period of extended operation.

Radioactive Waste The nuclear waste generated at nuclear power plants is generally classified as low-level waste, mixed waste, and spent fuel, although these plants are not significant generators of mixed waste. The low-level and mixed wastes can be shipped off-site to regional storage facilitates, if available. If not available, the low-level and mixed waste can be safely stored on-site until a facility is available. There is currently no permanent repository for storage of spent fuel, although the Department of Energy is working to establish one. Spent fuel is stored in spent fuel storage pools at each facility, and when they are filled, additional storage can be provided on-site by dry storage in independent spent fuel storage installations (ISFSIs). The spent fuel has normally

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

been allowed to cool for at least 5 years before it is placed in an ISFSI; these facilities are certified for 20 years, can be recertified, if needed, and have a design life of 50 years.

OTHER POWER APPLICATIONS

Nuclear Ships The earliest and most successful of the efforts to develop nuclear power for ship propulsion were those by the U.S. AEC and U.S. Navy. These initial efforts toward this end predated and contributed to the development of large electric power generators. The U.S. Navy launched the *USS Nautilus* in 1954 and followed it with about 125 other operational nuclear submarines and 13 operational surface vessels. Additional submarines and surface vessels have been committed by the U.S. Navy. Nuclear submarines and ships are also being operated by the British, Russian, and French and Chinese navies.

Although a ship can be propelled by diesel engines, steam engines, gas turbines, and other devices, the steam turbine has emerged as the principal modern marine propulsion unit. When a nuclear reactor of a type developed for generating stations is used to produce steam, the combustion process is eliminated. Such a propulsion plant is especially advantageous for a submarine, since it is then completely independent of the earth's atmosphere. The U.S. Navy's nuclear ships and submarines all employ the pressurized water type of nuclear reactor.

On commercial ships, the advantages of nuclear power are related to higher-speed operation over long run routes. Experience indicates that an increase in speed usually produces substantial increases in cargoes, thereby increasing a ship's load factor. In conventional ships, the power required for higher speed is increased by the third power of the speed ratio. This means larger engines and greater fuel storage capacity. On the other hand, a nuclear ship can operate continuously at the maximum level of its hull form without penalty in payload. Such advantages are especially desirable for icebreakers, large bulk cargo vessels, and high-speed long-distance passenger service. Efforts in the 1960s and 1970s to build commercial nuclear-powered ships resulted in the N.S. *Savannah* in the United States, the N.S. *Otto Hahn* in West Germany, the N.S. *Mutsu* in Japan, and the icebreaker *Lenin* in the Soviet Union. All proved to be failures. The first two were technical successes, but economic failures. The *Savannah* is a museum, and the *Otto Hahn* had her power plant removed and replaced by diesel propulsion units. The *Mutsu* had a radiation shield leak, never operated, and was eventually broken up. The *Lenin* had her nuclear power plant replaced by a more modern one, and with three larger nuclear-powered icebreakers and a large supply ship, also nuclear-powered, operates in the Russian Arctic. Economics of a state-owned ship are difficult to assess, but these are the only unarmed nuclear-powered surface ships in operation.

Other Vehicles The use of nuclear power in airplanes, automobiles, and railroad trains has been deterred by the requirements for heavy shielding to protect against radioactivity and collisions.

Remote Power Sources Small nuclear power plants have been built and operated by the U.S. Corps of Engineers in such remote regions as the Greenland ice cap and the Antarctic ice sheet. A barge-mounted plant was also built and operated in the Panama Canal Zone, but was scrapped.

Isotopic Power Generators Isotopic power generators are direct conversion devices that convert the energy of decaying radioisotopes to electricity, using direct thermoelectric or thermionic devices, or thermal conversion systems. (See Sec. 9.1.) The first isotopic power generator, completed in 1959, produced 2.5 W of power and used polonium 210 as fuel. The first commercial isotopic power generator, fueled by strontium 90, became available in 1966, and produced 25 W of power. There are now eight radioisotopes available in this area (see Table 9.8.4). Plutonium 238 was used in the long-range space probes Voyager 1 and 2.

Space Power Sources Most satellites and space vehicles use solar and battery power sources. However for very high powers, into the multikilowatt region, and for very deep space probes where solar energy is not available, nuclear sources (either radioisotopes or reactor heat systems) are required. Several dozen such systems have been deployed since 1970. Most are isotopic, but the United States orbited one reactor system in 1965. The Soviet Union has put several reactor-powered systems into orbit. On at least two occasions such U.S.S.R. systems have decayed back into the earth's atmosphere, and in one instance radioactive parts landed in Canada. In 1984, the United States reactivated development programs for high-energy reactor-powered systems for space use.

NUCLEAR FUSION

Development of nuclear fusion reactors for the production of useful energy will require significant advances from the present state of the art in both plasma physics and engineering. A large fusion effort, especially in physics research, has been carried on since 1956 in many industrial nations, notably the Soviet Union, Japan, the United States, and several in western Europe; considerable progress has been made.

There are a number of possible **fuel cycles** involving the fusion of light ions into heavier atoms, the most promising of which are shown in Table 9.8.5. The most accessible of these is the deuterium-tritium (DT) reaction, which involves fusion of two hydrogen isotopes. Even this lowest-temperature reaction of the possible fusion cycles has a thresh-

Table 9.8.5 Possible Fusion Fuel Cycles

Reactor equation	Approx threshold plasma temp*	Approx avg energy gain per fusion
$D + T \rightarrow {}^4He\ (3.5\ MeV) + n(14.1\ MeV)$	10 keV	1,800
$D + D \rightarrow {}^3He\ (0.82\ MeV) + n(2.45\ MeV)$; $D + D \rightarrow T\ (1.01\ MeV) + p(3.02\ MeV)$	50 keV	70
$D + {}^3He \rightarrow {}^4He\ (3.6\ MeV) + p(14.7\ MeV)$	100 keV	180

* 1 keV = 11,000,000 K approximately.

Table 9.8.4 Radioisotopic Materials

Radioisotope	Half-life, yr	Typical power density,* W/cm^3	Radiation present†	Shielding required
Strontium^{90}	28	1.4	Beta and bremsstrahlung	Heavy
Cesium^{137}	30	0.21	Beta and gamma	Heavy
Cerium^{144}	0.78	24.5	Beta and gamma	Heavy
Promethium^{147}	2.7	1.8	Beta	Minor
Polonium^{210}	0.38	1,210	Alpha	Minor
Plutonium^{238}	89	3.5	Alpha	Minor
Curium^{242}	0.45	1,150	Alpha	Minor
Curium^{244}	18	26.4	Alpha and neutron	Moderate

* Reduced below theoretical maxima in order to account for expected isotopic impurities.
† Of dominant importance in heat generation and for consideration of radiation shielding.
SOURCE: AEC TID-20079.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

old temperature of about 50 million K, and a practical reactor would require operating temperatures of about 100 million K. At these temperatures the ionized gas or plasma cannot be contained in vessels of conventional materials.

Fortunately, ionized plasmas can be contained by magnetic or inertial forces on earth. (The level of gravitation forces which produce fusion in the sun and stars cannot be achieved on earth.) Research seeking how this can be done at high enough combinations of temperatures, pressures, and densities to obtain practical net energy output is the main effort of fusion programs worldwide. This research is concentrated in three major approaches:

1. **Toroidal sytems,** especially of the tokamak variety, in which very high currents are circulated through an endless plasma confined by toroidal (doughnut-shaped) magnetic systems of various physical cross sections and magnetic shaped fields.
2. **Magnetic mirror systems,** in which the ends of a solenoidal (linear) magnetic field are ''plugged'' by a combination of electrostatic and magnetic forces to make the plasma reflect back and forth.
3. **Inertial systems,** in which small pellets of fusionable material are rapidly compressed by beams of laser-produced light, electrons, heavy ions, or other compressive forces. This is the principle employed in nuclear fusion weapons.

For practical energy production, a DT plasma should have a temperature of about 100 million K. This is usually expressed as equivalent ion temperature in electron volts (1 eV = 11,000 K approx.). Coincidentally with this temperature the product of density (in ions per cubic centimeter) and confinement time (in seconds) should reach 10^{14}. These conditions have been achieved experimentally.

Three large tokamak installations (TFTR in the United States, JET in Europe, and JT-60 in Japan) have begun experimental operations. Each of these machines is expected to create plasma conditions approximating those required in practical power producing reactors, although they are not in themselves net power producing devices. Likewise, a large magnetic mirror experiment is under construction at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory in the United States to determine if similar plasma conditions can be achieved in a mirror configuration. Also at Livermore a very large laser device is being used to attempt to establish similar conditions by inertial means, using very tiny pellets filled with DT mixtures. All these devices are experimental.

After practical reactor conditions have been achieved in a confined plasma, much engineering development associated with removing the energy and converting it into useful form will be required. Developmental work on fusion engineering continues, but formidable obstacles lie ahead, especially in the requirements for materials capable of surviving the environment of burning plasmas for long periods of time.

Although scientific feasibility seems ensured and is expected to be demonstrated in the late 1990s, the very considerable engineering problems yet unresolved put the operation of a demonstration fusion power reactor well into the twenty-first century, with any significant effect on world energy supplies occurring at some future time. Since uranium resources appear adequate for many decades, the essentially unlimited fuel supplies for fusion (from the oceans) may not be needed until then.

9.9 HYDRAULIC TURBINES

by Robert D. Steele

REFERENCES: ''Water Power Engineering,'' McGraw-Hill. Creager and Justin, ''Hydroelectric Handbook,'' Wiley. Daugherty and Ingersoll, ''Fluid Mechanics,'' McGraw-Hill. Hammitt, ''Cavitation and Multiphase Flow Phenomena,'' McGraw-Hill. Kovalev, ''Hydroturbines, Design and Construction,'' Russian translated by U.S. Department of the Interior and National Science Foundation. Mosonyi, ''Water Power Development,'' Hungarian Academy of Science.

GENERAL

Notation

B = width of distributor or height of wicket gates, in (mm)
D = diameter of runner, in (mm)
D_l = diameter of runner, at centerline of guide case, in (mm)
D_{th} = throat diameter of runner, in (mm)
D_r = relative diameter of runner, in (mm) (= entrance diameter for low-speed Francis turbines; throat diameter for high-speed Francis turbines; bore of throat ring at centerline of blade for propeller turbines)
D_d = diameter top of draft tube, in (mm)
D_p = pitch diameter of impulse-turbine runner, in (mm)
d = jet diameter of impulse turbine, in (mm)
e = overall efficiency of turbine = $e_h e_m$
e_h = hydraulic efficiency (including draft tube)
e_m = mechanical efficiency
g = acceleration of gravity, ft/s² (m/s²)
H = net effective head, ft (m)
b = head change due to load change, ft (m)
n = r/min
n_l = r/min at 1 ft (m) head = $n/\sqrt{H}$
n_s = specific speed = $n\sqrt{P}/H^{5/4}$
P = horsepower = 0.746 kW
P_1 = horsepower (kW) at 1 ft (m) head = $P/H^{3/2}$
Q = discharge, ft³/s (m³/s)
Q_1 = discharge at 1 ft (m) head = $Q/\sqrt{H}$, ft³/s (m³/s)
t = thickness, in (mm), or time, s
u = circumferential velocity of a point on runner, ft/s (m/s)
V = absolute velocity of water, ft/s (m/s)
V_u = tangential components of absolute velocity = $V\cos\alpha$
V_r = component of V in radial plane
v = velocity of water relative to runner, ft/s (m/s)
w = weight of water lb/ft³ (kg/m³)
z = number of runner buckets (blades for propeller turbines)
α = angle between V and u (measured between positive directions)
β = angle between v and u (measured between positive directions)
θ = angle of water deflection relative to bucket
ϕ = peripheral coefficient = $[\pi Dn/(720\sqrt{2gH})][\pi Dn/(60{,}000\sqrt{2gH})]$
σ = cavitation coefficient

Fundamental Formulas The actual power of a hydraulic turbine is the theoretical power P_t multiplied by the turbine efficiency e.

Power in U.S. Customary System (USCS) Units

$$P = eP_t = \frac{eHQw}{550}$$

In the power equation above, **power** is calculated in horsepower. In the following text, when power P is used in stated equations, it is in horsepower.

Power in Metric Units

$$P = eP_t = \frac{eHQw \times .746}{76.04} = \frac{eHQw}{101.93}$$

The metric equation stated above for power calculates power in kilowatts. In the following text, where power P is used in metric equations (shown in parentheses), the power stated in the equations is in kilowatts. [The customary unit of horsepower in the United States should not be

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

confused with the term *metric horsepower* (see the conversion and equivalency tables of this handbook).]

The laws of proportionality for homologous turbines are:

For constant runner diam	For constant head	For variable diam and head
$P \propto H^{3/2}$	$P \propto D^2$	$P \propto D^2H^{3/2}$
$n \propto H^{1/2}$	$n \propto 1/D$	$n \propto H^{1/2}/D$
$Q \propto H^{1/2}$	$Q \propto D^2$	$Q \propto D^2H^{1/2}$

Nomenclature The nomenclature used throughout this section is based on NEMA's standards publication HT1-1957, ''Hydraulic Turbines, Governors and Accessory Equipment,'' which also contains definitions.

Types of Turbines Three characteristic types of hydraulic turbines are now in general use: the **Francis reaction** type (Figs. 9.9.1 and 9.9.2);

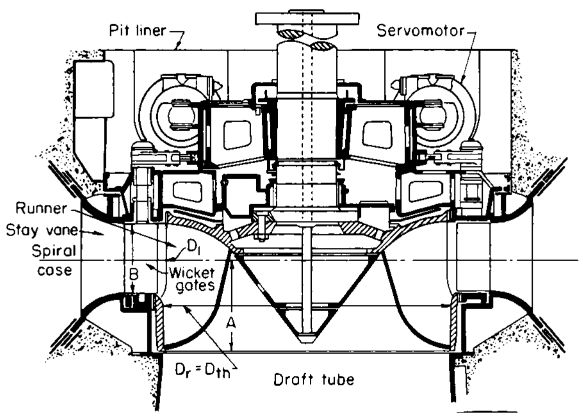


Fig. 9.9.1 Medium-head Francis turbine.

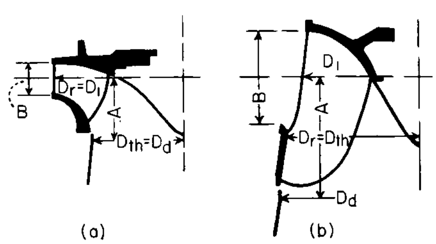


Fig. 9.9.2 Typical profile of Francis runners. (*a*) Low specific speed; (*b*) high specific speed.

the **propeller reaction** type (Fig. 9.9.3) and the **impulse** type (Fig. 9.9.12). The propeller type may be further divided into fixed and adjustable blade types. All three types have in common a stationary guide case (or nozzle in the case of the impulse type) in which the static head is transformed partly, or wholly, into velocity, and a revolving part, the runner.

In the guide case of the impulse turbine, the static head is completely transformed into velocity, so that air surrounds both the jet issuing from the nozzle and the runner.

In the guide case of the reaction types, the static head is only partly transformed into velocity, leaving an overpressure between the guide case and the runner. This overpressure causes an acceleration of the relative velocity of the water passing through the runner, the discharge area of which is smaller than the entrance area. Except when operating vented at low loads, the water passages are completely filled with water from the intake to the end of the draft tube.

Selection of Turbine Type and Casing Impulse turbines receive

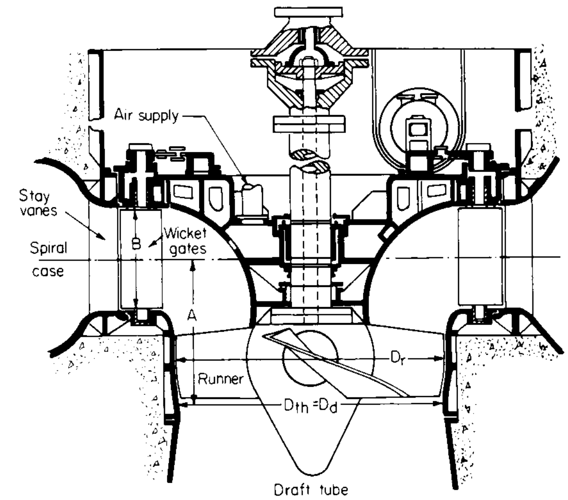


Fig. 9.9.3 Adjustable-blade Kaplan turbine.

their water supply directly from a pipeline. Francis and propeller reaction types are set in a case of concrete or metal. While the limits of head to which the impulse and reaction types are adopted may be fairly well defined in practice, as roughly outlined in Table 9.9.1, there is no definite line where the application of one type ends and the other begins. The choice between impulse and reaction types depends upon the size of the unit as well as upon the head and other considerations.

Specific Speed The common basis of comparison between turbine runners of different types and between runners of the same type but different design and characteristics is termed *specific speed* n_s. This is the relationship between the speed of a runner at the point of highest efficiency and the maximum power output at this speed regardless of size. However, since both power and speed vary with head, specific speed is defined as the relationship between the speed n_1 and power P_1 at 1 ft (m) head. Subscript 1 denotes that the value is reduced by the similarity law to a 1 ft (m) head basis. Since $n \propto 1/D$ and $P \propto D^2$, the product $n_1\sqrt{P_1}$ remains a constant regardless of the size of the runner and is designated the specific speed of the runner. The term *specific speed* for this relationship stems from the fact that $n_1\sqrt{P_1}$ also is the value of the speed in r/min at best efficiency which the runner would have if operated under 1 ft (m) head, the runner being of such size as to develop 1 hp (kW) ($P_1 = 1$).

Since $n \propto \sqrt{H}$ and $P \propto H^{3/2}$, the specific speed of any runner operating under head H will be $n_s = n\sqrt{P}/H^{5/4}$, where n is the best efficiency speed and P the maximum power output at this speed, all at head H.

Selecting the Speed Hydraulic turbines are usually connected to ac generators. The turbine speed must agree with one of the synchronous speeds required for the system frequency. The prevailing frequency for most systems in the United States is 60 Hz. Synchronous speeds are determined by the formula $n = 120 \times$ frequency/number of poles in generator. The number of poles must be even.

The speed should be as high as practicable, as the higher the speed the less expensive will be the turbine and generator and the more efficient will be the generator.

A convenient way of determining the highest practicable speed is by the relation of the specific speed to the head. For Francis turbines this may be taken as $n_s = 900/\sqrt{H}$ ($1{,}900/\sqrt{H}$); for propeller-type turbines as $n_s = 1{,}000/\sqrt{H}$ ($2{,}100/\sqrt{H}$). The adoption of these values of specific speed is predicated on the use of a reasonable setting of the unit with reference to tailwater level, i.e., selection of proper cavitation coefficient.

Number of Units From the standpoint of reducing the number of auxiliaries and the amount of associated equipment and also reducing initial and maintenance costs for the entire plant, the number of units should be kept to a minimum. Also the larger the unit, the higher the

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.9.1 General Arrangements of Turbine Installations and Usual Head Limits Employed

Type	Setting	Construction	No. of runners	Usual head limits for direct-connected units, ft	Usual head limits for direct-connected units, m
Reaction turbines, 5 to 1,000 ft (1.5 to 300 m) head	Axial flow	Vertical or horizontal or slanted	1	5–60	1.5–20
	Encased	Concrete vertical	1	15–130	5–40
		Cast or welded plate steel. Stainless steel. Vertical or horizontal	1 or 2	30–1,600	10–500
Impulse turbines, 500 to 6,000 ft (150 to 1,800 m) head	Encased	Horizontal (1–2 nozzles)	2	500–6,000	150–1,800
		Vertical (1–6 nozzles)	1	500–6,000	150–1,800

efficiency and generally the lower the cost per unit power output. However, other considerations, such as flexibility of operation, higher efficiency operation during low-load demands, and minimum loss of capacity during shutdown for repair or maintenance, might dictate the use of multiple units where one unit would be feasible in terms of physical size. For some projects, the physical size of the unit has been limited to the maximum size runner that could be shipped in one piece; this is largely due to the extra manufacturing costs involved in furnishing split runners. However, since split runners present no serious mechanical difficulties, the tendency in recent years has been to disregard this limitation.

REACTION TURBINES

Francis Figure 9.9.1 shows a Francis-type reaction turbine for medium head. The runner consists of a relatively large number of shrouded buckets. Movable wicket gates with axes parallel to the turbine shaft control the flow. This type of turbine is normally used for heads ranging from 75 to 1,600 ft (25 to 500 m). Specific speeds vary from 15 to 100 (50 to 400).

Propeller Turbines, Fixed and Adjustable Blade The propeller turbine has a runner which is normally provided with from 3 to 10 unshrouded blades, either fixed or adjustable. This type of turbine usually is used for heads from 5 ft (1.5 m) up to 120 ft (40 m), although in a few cases they have been used for heads up to 200 ft (60 m). The higher the head, the greater the number of blades used. Specific speeds vary from 80 to 250 (300 to 1,000). Propellers have very steep efficiency vs. power curves (4 and 5, Fig. 9.9.5). Adjustable-blade propeller runners are used to produce a flat efficiency curve over a wide range of power (6, Fig. 9.9.5) and to produce considerably more power beyond the maximum efficiency point than can be obtained with a fixed-blade runner of equal diameter. For fixed-blade runners, the blade angle is usually set between 16 and 28°, where maximum efficiency occurs. For adjustable blade runners, the blade angle may vary from $-10°$ min to $+45°$ max. Normally, automatic oil-pressure-operated blades are used in a **Kaplan turbine** (Fig. 9.9.3). The blades are adjusted by means of an oil-operated piston located either within the main shaft or in the runner hub. The oil is admitted to and discharged from the piston by means of a distributor head either on top of the generator shaft or surrounding the main shaft. The oil pressure is supplied from the governor oil pressure system. The controls are so arranged that the blade tilt varies automatically with the wicket gate opening to produce a maximum efficiency envelope curve (Fig. 9.9.9). A large operating-cylinder capacity is required. The capacity S, ft · lb (J) may be approximated from the formula $S = 20Pn_s^{1/4}/\sqrt{H}$ $(14Pn_s^{1/4}/\sqrt{H})$. If antifriction bearings are used in the hub instead of bronze bearings for the blade trunnions, this formula becomes $S = 10Pn_s^{1/4}/\sqrt{H}$ $(7Pn_s^{1/4}/\sqrt{H})$. However, since the hydraulic unbalance on the blades varies with speed, gate opening, and the location of the blade pivot axis, the oil-operated cylinder size should be calculated from model test data.

Axial-Flow Turbines Axial-flow turbines use the propeller type runner with either fixed or adjustable blades. Their characteristic feature is the straight-through, or nearly straight-through, water passageway from intake to discharge. The shaft is, therefore, either horizontal, vertical, or inclined (Fig. 9.9.4). The spiral or semispiral case and elbow draft tube, which require substantial widths and depth of excavation, are eliminated. Therefore, with a reduction in height and area of the powerhouse and the turbine's suitability for location directly within the dam, an overall construction-cost savings may be obtained for the power plant part of the project compared with conventional vertical units. This may make it possible to build or redevelop power plants for low heads or in small sizes that have previously been considered uneconomical.

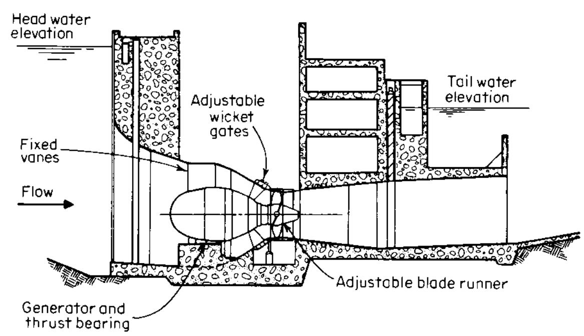


Fig. 9.9.4 Axial-flow bulb turbine.

In recent years, axial-flow turbines have been installed for use with tidal power since they can be arranged to operate with water flowing in either direction and, when required, to pump with water flowing in either direction.

There are four general types of axial-flow turbines. The first type has the generator rotor mounted around the periphery of the turbine runner. This type of turbine and generator arrangement has been called a **rim** turbine. The second type is the **bulb** turbine, where the generator is directly connected to the turbine at a submerged elevation. The bulb turbine has the generator enclosed in a streamlined, watertight housing located in the water passageway on either the upstream or downstream side of the runner (Fig. 9.9.4). The third type of axial-flow turbine is the **pit** turbine. In the pit turbine arrangement, a high-speed generator is driven from the high-speed output shaft of a speed increaser, and the low-speed input torque to the speed increaser is supplied from the low-speed shaft of the turbine. The generator of an axial-flow pit turbine can be mounted in line with the turbine, or in smaller units the generator may be mounted inclined or vertical.

The fourth type of axial-flow turbine is the **tube** type, which has the generator located outside the water passages. The construction characteristic of this turbine is the slight bend of the water passageway that permits the extension of the turbine shaft to the outside of the water passageway. The tube turbine is typically arranged so that the generator is on the downstream side of the turbine, but it could be constructed to have the generator on the upstream side. The shaft from the turbine to

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of
this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

the generator of a tube turbine can be inclined to reduce excavation, thereby raising the generator higher above tailwater elevations. In some cases, a gear-type speed increaser is used to reduce the combined equipment cost and generator size and weight.

Axial-flow turbines are suitable for heads up to at least 90 ft (30 m) with basically the same limitations that apply to the conventional Kaplan or other propeller-type turbines. Maximum unit capacity is limited, however, by maximum practical speed increaser torques and maximum practical horizontal generator capacities. This appears to be approximately 100 MW at present. Either fixed-position or movable wicket gates can be used. Power and efficiency performance is comparable to conventional vertical shaft propeller turbines.

Design The water entering the runner is given a whirl or tangential component by the guide vanes. This whirl is taken out by the runner so that, at the design point (point of best efficiency), the water leaves the runner without appreciable whirl. According to Euler's theorem, the power of a turbine in steady motion equals the angular velocity multiplied by the change in angular momentum experienced by the mass of water flowing in a unit time in its passage through the turbine. This is expressed in the following equations:

$$P = 62.4Q(u_1V_{u1} - u_2V_{u2})/(550g) = QHe_n/8.81 \tag{9.9.1}$$

and

$$u_1V_{u1} - u_2V_{u2} = e_hgH$$

$$P = 1{,}000Q(u_1v_{u1} - u_2v_{u2})/(101.93g) = QHe_hw/101.93 \tag{9.9.2}$$

(See notation at beginning of this section.) Subscript 1 refers to the inlet edge of the bucket and 2 to the discharge edge.

In practice, e_h may be taken as 0.92 to 0.94, and the term u_2V_{u2} may be omitted as it becomes zero for discharge in a radial plane, $\alpha_2 = 90°$.

The right hand member of Eq. (9.9.2) may be regarded as a fixed value for a given head. Consequently, in order to have a high-speed-type runner (u_1, large) the whirl V_{u1} placed in the water by the guide case must be small. This means that for the best load, low-speed low-capacity (small n_s) runners will have relatively small gate openings and short wicket gates, whereas high-speed high-capacity (large n_s) runners will have relatively large gate openings and long wicket gates.

Equations (9.9.1) and (9.9.2) are used in designing the runner and guide case. The P and Q used in Eq. (9.9.1) are for the point of best efficiency and not for the rated values. For specific speeds up to about 60 (250) the power at best efficiency may be taken as 85 percent of the rated power. Above that specific speed the point of best efficiency occurs at higher loads as indicated in Fig. 9.9.5. Adjustable-blade propeller turbine-runner blades are laid out for an intermediate load of 75 to 80 percent of the rated load. The actual design of a runner should be worked out by an experienced designer on the basis of coordinated test data.

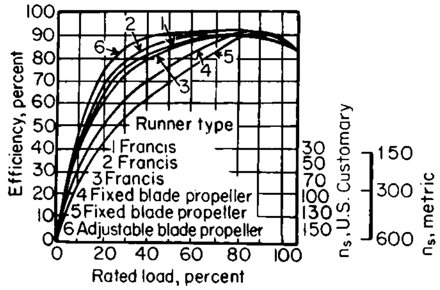


Fig. 9.9.5 Variation of efficiency vs. load for reaction turbines.

The general proportions of a normal line of turbine runners may be determined as follows for any combination of net head H and rated power P. (Rated power is usually considered to be 95 percent of full gate power.)

First select the specific speed appropriate to the head (see ''Specific Speed'' above). Next calculate n from the formula $n_s = n\sqrt{P}/H^{5/4}$. If $n/H^{5/4}$ is not a synchronous speed, select the nearest synchronous speed and calculate the corresponding n_s. This value of n_s may be used in Fig. 9.9.6 to determine the peripheral coefficient ϕ for D_r and D_1. Then the diameter may be determined from the formula

$$\phi = \pi Dn/720\sqrt{2gH} \; [= \pi Dn/(60{,}000\sqrt{2gH})]$$

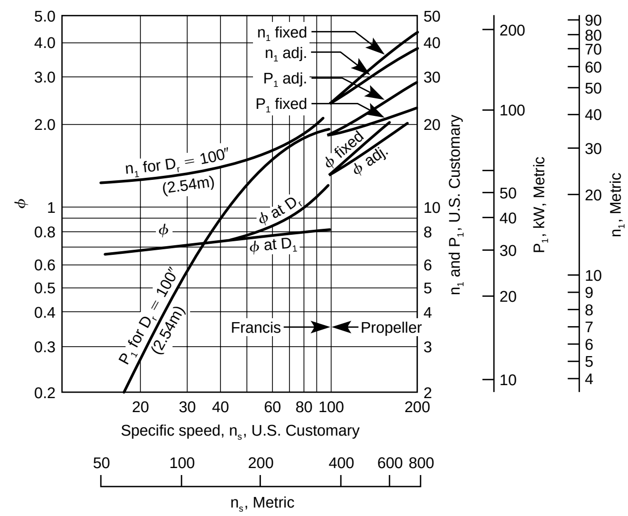


Fig. 9.9.6 Turbine characteristics and specific speed.

Other proportions of the runner may be determined from Fig. 9.9.7, which shows the ratio to D_r of width of distributor B; diameter at top of draft tube D_d; and centerline of distributor to top of draft tube A. See Fig. 9.9.1 for D_r, B, and A.

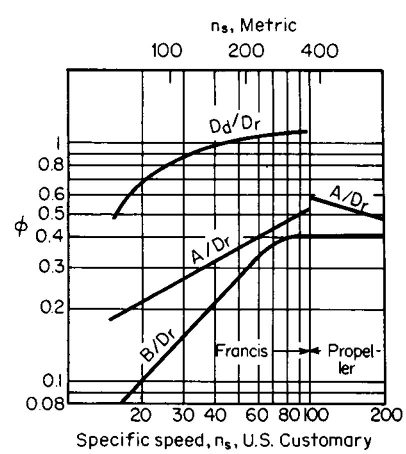


Fig. 9.9.7 Turbine characteristics and specific speed.

The values of unit power P_1, and unit speed n_1, for $D_r = 100$ in (2,540 mm), which correspond to the specific speed of the runner may be determined from Fig. 9.9.6. The following formulas may then be used: $P = P_1H^{3/2}(D_r/100)^2$ [$= P_1H^{3/2}(D_r/(2{,}540)^2$] and $n = n_1\sqrt{H}$ $(100/D_r)$ [$n_1\sqrt{H}$ $(2{,}540/D_r)$]. These formulas may be used to verify the diameter calculated from the peripheral coefficient, and will prove useful in selecting runner sizes for units which must meet power requirements other than rated power at design head. In such cases the values of n_1 and P_1 from Fig. 9.9.6 should be used in conjunction with Fig. 9.9.8.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

For preliminary powerhouse layouts these ratios of diameter to D_r may be used for all specific speeds: gate circle, 1.20; stay ring, 1.65; pit liner, 1.50; unit spacing, 3.5 to 4.5.

The clearance space between the discharge tips of the wicket gates and the entrance edge of the runner buckets is treated as a free vortex space in which the tangential component of the absolute velocity of

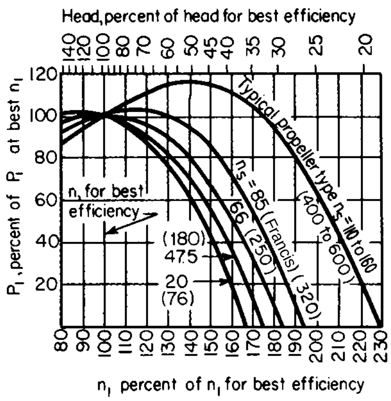


Fig. 9.9.8 Variation of unit power with unit speed and specific speed.

discharge from the gates (V_u) increases in inverse proportion to the radius while the component in a radial plane (V_r) increases in inverse proportion to the area.

To obtain the best efficiency, the water must enter the runner without shock and leave it with as little velocity as possible; i.e., the entrance angles of the buckets must be approximately in line with the relative direction of the entering flow and the direction of the absolute discharge velocity should be approximately in a radial plane (axial in the case of propeller runners). This condition prevails only at the most efficient load. Above that load the water enters the draft tube with reverse whirl and below that load with a forward whirl.

The shape of the buckets should be kept as simple as possible, consistent with meeting the proper angles. The curvature of the bucket along a flow line is made greatest near the entrance and reduces as the discharge edge is approached, somewhat the shape of a portion of a parabola.

Turbine Characteristics Speed, power, and efficiency characteristics vary widely with specific speed as shown in Figs. 9.9.5 and 9.9.6. The variation of unit power P_1 with the unit speed (as a percent of normal basis) is shown in Fig. 9.9.8 for typical specific speeds ranging from 20 to 160 (70 to 600). For low specific speed Francis-type turbines, P_1 decreases as n_1 increases, as when operating at heads below normal. This is due to the centrifugal effect, which tends to decrease the flow as n_1 increases. This characteristic of low specific speed Francis runners makes them less suitable for operation under extreme variations in head. With the higher specific speeds and particularly with the propeller type, P_1 increases as n_1 increases above normal. This makes the higher specific speeds particularly suitable for operation at widely varying heads.

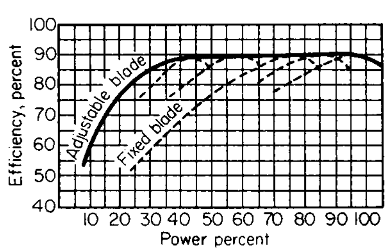


Fig. 9.9.9 Variation of efficiency vs. power for fixed- and adjustable-blade propeller turbines.

Figure 9.9.9 shows the advantage of blade adjustment for propeller-type turbines. By angular adjustment of the blades as the load changes, the peaked power-efficiency curve of the fixed blade propeller is transformed into a flat power-efficiency curve, and the maximum power output is considerably increased.

Runaway Speed If a turbine runner is allowed to revolve freely without load and with the wicket gates wide open, it will overspeed to a value called the *runaway speed.* The runaway speed, at normal head, varies with the specific speed and for Francis turbines ranges from 170 percent (normal speed = 100 percent) at low specific speed [$n_s = 20$ (76)] to some 195 percent at high specific speed [$n_s = 100$ (383)]. For propeller turbines, the runaway speed varies with blade angle—the steeper the blade angle, the lower the runaway speed. For fixed-blade propellers with the blades set from 16 to 28°, where maximum efficiency is usually obtained, the runaway speed ranges approx from 255 to 180 percent, respectively. For adjustable blade turbines, where the minimum blade angle is sometimes as low as 6 to 16° in order to obtain high efficiency at part load, the maximum possible runaway speed will be about 290 to 270 percent, respectively. However, with adjustable-blade propeller turbines, there is from the standpoint of efficiency an optimum relationship between runner-blade angle and wicket gate opening, usually controlled by a cam in the operating mechanism; the higher the gate opening, the steeper the blade angle. Thus the combination of wide-open gate and minimum design blade angle can only occur in the so-called ''off-cam'' position, which is an extremely rare possibility. In some units, this maximum possible off-cam runaway speed is reduced by limiting the minimum design blade angle to 16°. Another method is the use of a runaway speed limiter. There are several designs in use. One of the most frequently used is a valve designed to open by centrifugal force at speeds of 120 percent (approximately). The open valve bypasses the runner blade servomotor piston, thus equalizing the oil pressure on both sides of this piston. If the runner blades are designed to open because of hydraulic unbalance at overspeeds, they will then go to a higher blade angle under off-cam overspeed conditions. The off-cam runaway speed thus can be limited to some 185 percent if the runner is designed for a maximum blade angle of 28 to 40°.

For all turbines, if the maximum head is higher than the normal head, the runaway speed will be increased in proportion to the square root of the head. Therefore, runaway speeds should be based on the maximum operating head rather than on the normal head. Any runaway speed above 180 percent can increase appreciably the cost of the generator.

Turbine Thrust The water passing through the turbine creates a thrust load, that is carried by a thrust bearing, typically supplied with the generator. For vertical units, the thrust T consists of the hydraulic thrust T_h plus the weight of the turbine runner and shaft T_w, lb (kg). Units have been constructed with the thrust bearing supporting the total weight of rotating components of the turbine and generator, plus the hydraulic thrust, located on the turbine head cover.

For horizontal or inclined units, the thrust T consists of the hydraulic thrust T_h and a component of the weight T_w of the rotating components, if the unit is inclined. The thrust bearing can be located in the generator, in a speed increaser, in the hydraulic turbine, or in a separate thrust bearing housing.

The hydraulic thrust may be obtained by using a **thrust coefficient K_t** multiplied by the weight, lb (kg), of a circular column of water whose diameter is the diameter of the runner D_r, in (mm), and whose height is equal to the maximum head H_m, ft (m), under which the turbine must operate, or

$$T_h = \frac{K_t D_r^2 H_m}{2.94} \quad \text{lb} \qquad \left(T_h = \frac{K_t D_r^2 H_m}{1{,}273} \quad \text{kg} \right)$$

The thrust coefficient for Francis turbines varies with the specific speed and may be taken as approximately $K_t = n_s/250$ ($K_t = n_s/954$). In using this value of K_t, it is assumed that the runner seals are properly arranged and that the crown of the runner inside the seals is properly drained; otherwise, the thrust may be much higher.

For propeller turbines, with either fixed or adjustable blades, the thrust coefficient K_t may be taken as 0.90 for all specific speeds.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Reaction Turbine Elements

Runner and Wearing Rings The number of buckets z for Francis runners ranges from about 21 for low specific speed to 12 for high specific speed. The approximate number may be taken as $z = 55/n_s^{1/3}$ $(86/n_s^{1/3})$.

Materials that can readily be repaired by welding with either carbon-steel or stainless-steel electrodes are selected for the construction of runners. Most runners are made of cast carbon steel, cast stainless steel, formed carbon steel plate, formed stainless-steel plates, or a combination of carbon steel and stainless steel. The majority of new equipment is supplied manufactured of stainless steel, using a combination of martensitic and austenitic stainless-steel casting, forgings, and plates. The use of high-strength stainless steel for runners is increasing for high heads and for conditions where cavitation pitting may be a design consideration.

The number of blades for propeller-type turbines ranges from 10 for low specific speeds to 3 for high specific speeds. Propeller runner blades are usually made of cast carbon steel, formed carbon steel, formed stainless steel, or cast stainless steel. If they are made of cast steel or formed carbon plate steel, the surfaces over which pitting may be expected are overlay-welded with stainless steel before finishing to final contour. In place of overlay welding, solid stainless-steel inserts are sometimes welded into propeller blades, and stainless trim is added to the periphery of the blades.

The functions of the runner seals for Francis turbines are to prevent excessive leakage loss and thus improve the efficiency and control the hydraulic thrust.

Rolled, forged, and cast steels make excellent wearing rings for low- and medium-head units. To prevent seizure in case of contact the rotating ring material should differ from that of the stationary rings. Stainless steel, bronze, or steel with bronze inserts make excellent wearing rings. For extremely high heads, stainless steel should be used to prevent undue wear and erosion.

Seal clearances are made as small as practicable to reduce leakage, particularly on high-head units. Larger clearances are required with water-lubricated main bearings, subject to considerable wear before being readjusted.

Main Shaft and Bearings The main shaft, for a typical vertical hydraulic turbine unit, must be rigid and should be made of a medium-grade carbon-steel forging. The size of the shaft is determined by limiting the torsional stress from 3,000 to 6,000 lb/in^2 (20 to 41 N/mm^2).

The shafting system of a horizontal or an inclined hydraulic turbine unit is subject to the torsional stress produced by the torque transmitted and the bending stress produced by the weight of the runner, the shaft, and the components that are attached to the shafting system. The design of a shaft for a horizontal unit must be subjected to review by experienced mechanical engineering designers to ensure acceptable stress levels, to account for points of stress concentration, and to determine the overall safety margin of a design. The allowable stress levels in a horizontal shaft must be evaluated after the fatigue properties of the shafting material and the points of stress concentration are taken into consideration. Should the bearing be designed to be water-lubricated, a stainless-steel sleeve is installed on the shaft to provide a bearing surface for the guide bearing. A stainless-steel sleeve is typically placed on the shaft in the area of a packing box or stuffing box.

Vertical hydraulic turbines are usually provided with one main bearing located in the head cover, as near the runner as practicable. The main turbine bearing is generally a babbitted oil bearing, supplied in halves, or as independently adjustable segmented babbitted shoes. The oil is supplied to the bearing by an independent low-pressure oiling system. Self-lubricated babbitted shell or shoe bearings, containing an oil reservoir, and pumping grooves in the babbitt are sometimes used.

Water-lubricated bearings of wood, lignum vitae, rubber, or special composition are sometimes preferred, particularly for small and medium-size propeller-type turbines where the bearing is located at the bottom of the head cover cone, where the packing box and the oil-lubricated bearing would be inaccessible, and where it would be difficult to avoid water contamination. With the water-lubricated bearing, the packing box is placed above the bearing.

Spiral Case The spiral case must be proportioned so as to cause relatively low friction losses, as well as to prevent eddying which would travel into the runner and affect its efficiency. The cases generally are made of (1) metal: cast steel, cast iron, or steel plate, and (2) concrete. Metal cases are made as complete spirals, customarily with uniform or slightly increasing velocity from the throat to the small end. When a valve is used at the case entrance, the net area at the centerline of the valve should be at least equal to the case entrance area.

Concrete cases may be complete spirals or semispirals, rectangular or oval in cross section. There should be no piers close to the turbine.

Rated load velocities for general practice for cases of various types are shown in Fig. 9.9.10. Higher velocities are sometimes used with the larger units to reduce size and cost.

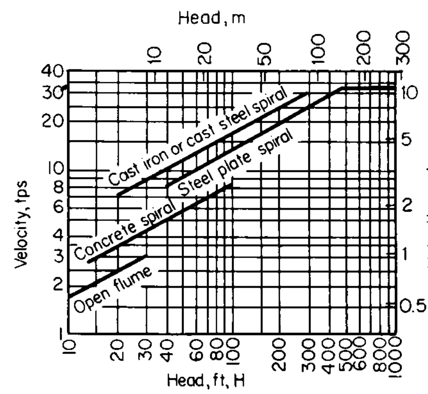


Fig. 9.9.10 Case velocities.

Stay Ring That part of the guide apparatus between the spiral case and the wicket gates, containing stationary stay vanes, is called the stay ring. The water is accelerated within this space as it approaches the gates. The number of stay vanes employed is usually made equal to or one-half the number of gates. They are placed at the angle which will cause the least obstruction to the flow.

The stay ring is cast integral with cast cases and is made separately of welded or cast steel for concrete or steel plate spiral cases. It should be a continuous ring to facilitate erection, and very rigid, because it serves as a foundation for the rest of the turbine and generator.

Wicket Gates and Operating Mechanism Wicket gates control the power and speed of the turbine. The number of gates m ranges from 12 for small units to 28 for large units. The overall dimensions of the turbine decrease as the number of gates increases.

To prevent interference between the gates and the runner buckets, which may cause noise and vibration, the discharge tips of the fully open gates should be kept well away from the inlet edges of the runner buckets of Francis turbines, the radial clearance being large enough to prevent the gate tips from overhanging the curved part of the discharge ring. Gate tip diameter = 1.1 (maximum inlet diameter D_r).

The height and angular movement of the gates increase with the specific speed. The angular movement varies from 15° for low specific speed to 80° for high specific speed.

Most wicket gates are made of cast steel; a few, for higher heads, are made of stainless steel; some, for lower heads, are weldments built from rolled materials and castings.

Each gate connection to the operating ring should be provided with a breaking element to protect the gate and other mechanism in case of an obstruction. Because of the inherent instability of a free gate and its tendency to flutter, it is advisable to install gate-restraining devices to hold the gate if a breaking element fails. This device also avoids potential resonant flutter with the natural frequencies in the system. Each gate

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

should also be provided with stops to prevent it from striking the runner or reversing after the breaking element fails.

The capacity G, ft · lb (J), of the oil pressure cylinder or cylinders (sometimes known as governor capacity) may be computed from the formula

$$G = 18Pn_s^{1/4}/\sqrt{H} \qquad (13Pn_s^{1/4}/\sqrt{H})$$

Some units now provide individual servomotors on each wicket gate. This synchronized system allows the hydraulic control system to dampen a tendency to gate flutter.

One or more vacuum breakers or air valves are installed in the head cover to admit air to the runner or draft tube, to improve efficiency at low gate openings or to alleviate draft tube vortex cavitation. An air valve is also necessary on propeller-type units to break the vacuum under the head cover and to help prevent the runner from ''screwing up'' in the water when the gates are suddenly closed. The air valve is piped to the outside of the powerhouse above the floodwater level.

Draft Tubes The draft tube may serve the double purpose of (1) allowing the turbine to be set above tailwater level, without loss of head, to facilitate inspection and maintenance, and (2) regaining, by diffuser action, the major portion of the kinetic energy delivered to it from the runner.

At rated load the velocity at the upstream end of the tube for modern units ranges from 24 to 40 ft/s (7 to 12 m/s), representing from 9 to 25 ft (3 to 8 m) head. As the specific speed is increased and the head reduced, it becomes increasingly more important to have an efficient draft tube. Good practice limits the velocity at the discharge end of the tube to 5 to 10 ft/s (2 to 3 m/s), representing less than 1 ft (0.3 m) velocity head loss.

The elbow type of tube is now used with most vertical turbine installations. With this type the vertical portion begins with a conical section which gradually flattens in the elbow section and then discharges horizontally through substantially rectangular sections to the tailrace. Most of the regain of energy takes place in the vertical portion, very little in the elbow section which is shaped to deliver the water to the horizontal portion so that the regain may be efficiently completed. Figure 9.9.11 shows proportions of a good elbow tube. One or two vertical piers are placed in the horizontal portion of the tube for structural reasons.

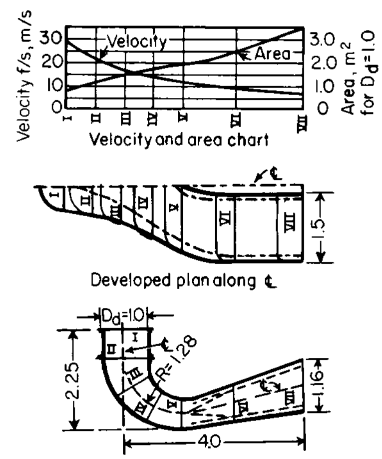


Fig. 9.9.11 Elbow draft tube layout.

Most tubes are made of concrete with a steel plate lining extending from the upper end to a point where the velocity has been sufficiently reduced [say 20 ft/s (7 m/s)] to prevent erosion of the concrete. Pier noses are also lined where necessary to prevent erosion and for structural reasons.

IMPULSE TURBINES

Impulse turbines are utilized when the head is too high for the practical use of Francis turbines, which is normally a head exceeding 1,600 ft (500 m). Impulse turbines are also sometimes used for heads below 1,600 ft (500 m) where excessive erosion due to foreign materials in the water presents a problem. The main disadvantage of impulse turbines, especially for low heads, is their low specific speed. In the past, this was overcome on conventional horizontal shaft units by the use of two runners or two jets per runner. In recent years, the vertical shaft multijet impulse turbine (Fig. 9.9.12) has become popular.

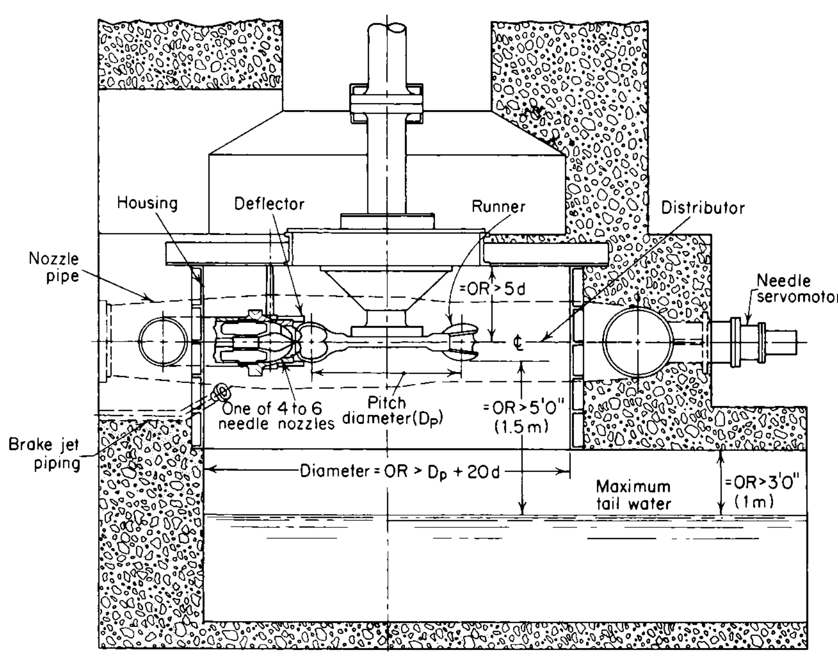


Fig. 9.9.12 Vertical-shaft multijet impulse turbine installation.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

The efficiency obtainable from a horizontal shaft impulse turbine is about 90 percent. Field tests on multijet vertical units have shown efficiencies as high as 91.5 percent. The use of multiple jets on the vertical units reduces the percentage loss due to windage of the runner. The unit can be operated with a reduced number of jets at part load, thus increasing part load efficiency. Six jets are about the maximum number that can be used on one runner without jet interference.

Selection of Speed The first consideration is the selection of suitable n_s. As with reaction turbines, there is a relation which determines approximately the limiting value of specific speed n_s (per jet) for any head. For heads around 1,000 ft (300 m), $n_s = 5.0$ to 5.5 (19 to 21) gives high efficiency. For heads around 2,000 ft (600 m), maximum efficiency is attained near $n_s = 4.0$ to 5.0 (15 to 19). Care has to be exercised in selecting an n_s (per jet), especially for the higher heads, so that the proper number of buckets can be used on the wheel disk. The higher the n_s, the fewer the number of buckets required (Fig. 9.9.13) but the smaller the pitch circle. The latter can create stress problems in the attachment of the buckets to the disk. If the resulting speed n is quite low for the power to be developed, the n_s of the unit and consequently the speed n can be increased by increasing the number of runners or the number of jets per runner. The n_s of the unit will then be n_s (per jet) times the square root of the number of jets.

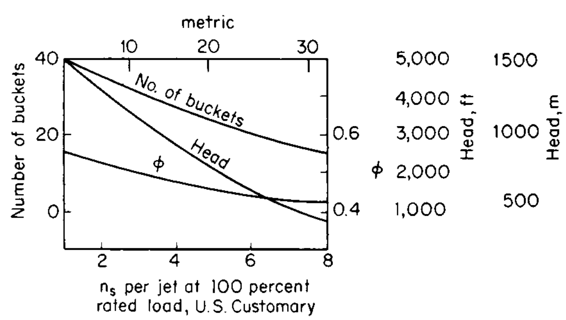


Fig. 9.9.13 Impulse turbine characteristics and proportions.

Basic Dimensions The pitch diameter D_p of the runner is twice the distance from the center of the runner to the axial centerline of the jet and is determined by the value of the coefficient ϕ selected, $D_p = 1{,}840\phi\sqrt{H}/n$ ($84{,}578\phi\sqrt{H}/n$). The variation of ϕ with n_s is established by experience and model tests (Fig. 9.9.13).

The quantity of water Q discharged per jet is $550P/(wHe)$ [$101.93P/(wHe)$], where P is the horsepower (kilowatts) developed by each jet.

The diameter of the jet is $4.85\sqrt{Q}/H^{1/4}$ in ($0.55\sqrt{Q}/H^{1/4}$ m), using a velocity coefficient of 0.97 for the jet.

The **velocity** in the inlet should not exceed $0.12\sqrt{2gH}$ (approximately), and it is considered good practice not to exceed an absolute value of 40 ft/s (12 m/s).

The **valve** employed in the inlet pipe should be of a type which, when open, permits a smooth, uninterrupted flow, free of eddies or obstructions. Modern preference is for rotary sphere valves for this purpose.

The **housing** serves primarily to carry off the discharged water to the tail pit below. On horizontal shaft units, at the place where the runner receives the discharge from the jet, the housing should be about 10 to 12 times the jet diameter. At the place where the runner has been cleared of the discharge, the housing should be as narrow as possible to decrease windage. Suitable baffling should be used to carry the discharge away from the buckets. The housing should be vented adequately near the center of the runner.

For vertical-shaft units, the housing should be of ample size to prevent discharge water from interfering with the buckets. The housing should also be vented adequately near the center of the runner.

The **setting** of the horizontal-shaft unit should be such that the lower edges of the buckets are at least 3 ft (1 m) above maximum tailwater elevation. For vertical shaft units, this distance should be at least 5 ft (1.5 m). Impulse turbine discharge entrains large amounts of air, and unless this is completely replaced, a vacuum will be produced in the housing which will draw the tailwater up and drown out the runner. Thus the roof of the discharge tunnel or passageway, for both horizontal- and vertical-shaft units, should be at least 3 ft (1 m) above the maximum operating tailwater elevation to permit the free circulation of air to the runner (Fig. 9.9.12).

In cases where extremely high tailwater occurs for a short period, compressed air can be used to depress the tailwater.

Experience has shown that the ft^3/s (m^3/s) of air (at the discharge pressure of the compressor) required to maintain the depressed tailwater is about 15 percent of the ft/3/s (m^3/s) of water (Q) discharged by the turbine.

Runner The force F exerted by a stream upon a stationary bucket (Fig. 9.9.14) is

$$F = MV(1 - \cos\theta) = wQV(1 - \cos\theta)/g$$

where M = mass per s and θ = angle in deg through which the water is turned relative to the bucket (see section *Y-Y*, Fig. 9.9.14). If the bucket is moving in the direction of the stream with a velocity u, $F = wQ(V - u)(1 - \cos\theta)/g$. The work done by the stream $= Fu = wQn(V - u)(1 - \cos\theta)/g$. When θ is greater than 90°, the cosine becomes negative. Thus the closer the angle θ is to 180°, the greater the amount of work done with the same Q and V. However, in order to prevent the water from striking the succeeding bucket, θ should never be 180° (see section *Y-Y*, Fig. 9.9.14). Also, since the water discharged from the bucket must have some velocity, the value of u is made somewhat less than $V/2$.

The angle β_1 at the centerline of the bucket should be calculated from the velocity triangle (Fig. 9.9.14). The value of β_1 is greatest as the entrance lip E enters the jet. The angle of the underside of the bucket should be greater than β_1 to avoid pitting.

In terms of the jet diameter which will give maximum guaranteed or rated capacity, the approximate proportions of the buckets are $B = 3d$, $L = 2.6d$, $D = 0.85d$ (Fig. 9.9.14). The contour of the entrance lip E is important, since the manner in which this lip comes in contact with the jet affects the path of the water passing to the preceding bucket. The size of the bucket with relation to the jet diameter also determines the percentage of full load at which maximum efficiency occurs. The larger the bucket, the higher this percentage of load.

The number of buckets on a runner should be such that no water can pass through the buckets without being deflected by the buckets. Figure 9.9.13 indicated approximately the most efficient number.

The **needle nozzle** should be placed as close to the buckets as possible, as the jet tends to lose its compactness of form shortly after emerging from the nozzle. The needle and the seat of the nozzle should be designed for easy replacement and should be of a material highly resistant to erosion. The needle should terminate in a cone of 30 to 45°. The nozzle tip should have a subtended angle of 45 to 60° and a diameter at discharge about 20 percent greater than the calculated diameter of the jet. The maximum diameter of the needle should be about 15 percent greater than the discharge diameter of the nozzle tip. The diameter of the upstream portion of the nozzle should be such that the velocity does not exceed $0.10\sqrt{2gH}$. (See Lowy, Efficiency Analysis of Pelton Wheels, *Trans. ASME*, Aug. 1944, for additional information on the design of impulse turbines.)

Regulation The inertia of the water flowing through the long penstocks usually employed with impulse turbines prohibits rapid reduction in velocity because of the pressure rise which would occur. Therefore, to minimize the speed rise following a sudden load rejection, it is necessary to reduce the hydraulic power delivered to the runner without changing the flow in the penstock too rapidly. This is usually accomplished by placing a governor controlled jet deflector between the needle nozzle and the runner. The governor moves this deflector rapidly into the jet, cutting off the load. It is not unusual for the deflector to cut off the entire jet in 1½ s. Since the deflector acts on the jet after it leaves the nozzle, there is no change of flow in the penstock; hence, there is no pressure rise. The governor then moves the needle at a permissible rate (in terms of pressure rise), with simultaneous automatic withdrawal of the deflector. The jet is finally reduced the necessary amount to correspond to the reduced load. The needle must also move slowly in the

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

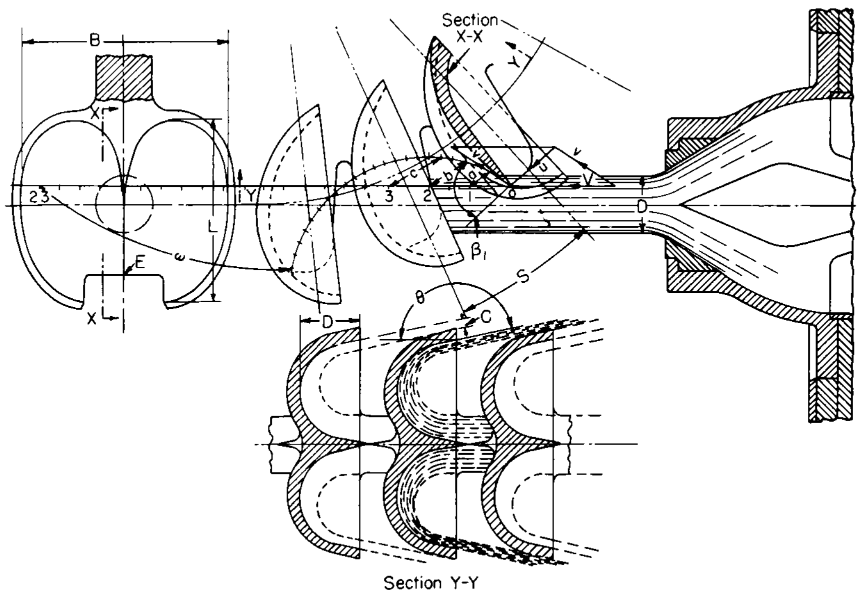


Fig. 9.9.14 Impulse turbine bucket design.

opening direction for oncoming loads to avoid penstock collapse because of large pressure drops.

Runaway Speed The runaway speed for impulse turbines ranges from 160 to 190 percent of normal speed, depending upon the specific speed of the runner; the higher the specific speed, the higher the runaway speed.

REVERSIBLE PUMP/TURBINES

In this type of project, surplus low-value energy from either hydro or thermal plants is used to pump water during off-peak periods to an elevated reservoir, where it becomes available for generating high-value peaking energy. While separate pumps and hydraulic turbines of conventional design can and have been used for this purpose, the development of single reversible pump/turbines has made many pumped storage projects economically feasible.

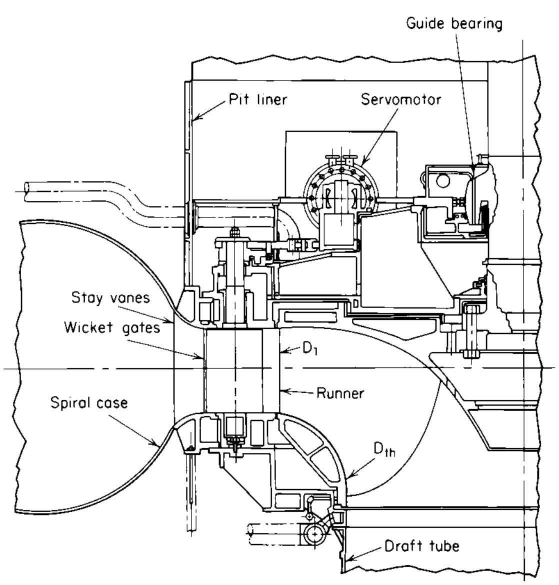


Fig. 9.9.15 Reversible pump turbine.

Figure 9.9.15 is a cross section of a reversible pump/turbine, showing that, with the exception of the runner, it is essentially a conventional turbine. The wicket gates must be designed for flow in both directions. A few units have been built without movable wicket gates. The runner is

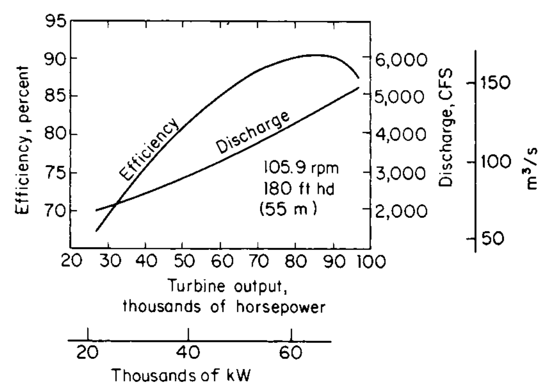


Fig. 9.9.16 Generating.

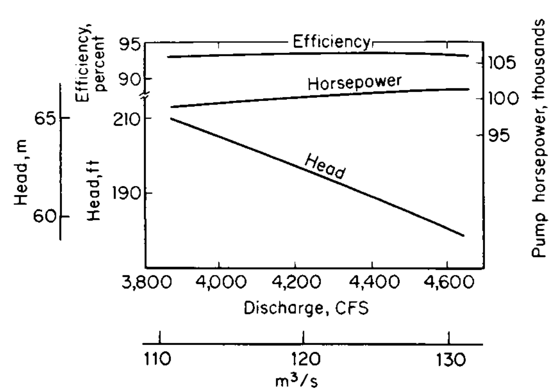


Fig. 9.9.17 Pumping.

Figs. 9.9.16 and 9.9.17 Typical performance curves for a pump turbine.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

Table 9.9.2 Reversible Pump/Turbine Installations

	Generating				Pumping				
	Power		Head		Capacity		Head		
Plant	1,000 hp	MW	ft	m	ft³/s	m³/s	ft	m	Year in operation
Pedreira ''A''	5.2	3.9	49	15	690	19.5	49	15	1939
Hiwassee	62	46	190	58	3,900	111	205	62.5	1956
Taum Sauk	220	165	790	241	2,650	75.0	765	233	1963
Cruachan	100	74.6	1,130	343	1,010	28.6	1,175	358	1966
Cabin Creek	166	125	1,190	363	1,375	39.0	1,060	323	1967
Villarino	135	100	1,250	382	1,020	29	1,325	404	1969
Kisenyami	240	180	755	220	3,880	110	645	197	1969
Drakensburg	360	269	1,380	422	1,685	42	1,443	440	1977
Dinorwic	405	302	1,682	513	1,647	46.7	1,771	540	1975
Bajina Basta	422	385	1,968	600	1,520	43	2,132	650	1976
Raccoon Mt.	465	350	940	287	3,850	110	1,000	305	1974
Bath Co.	510	380	1,080	329	4,100	116	1,100	335	1983
Palmiet	335	250	988	301	2,012	57	1,000	305	1988
La Muela	284	212	1,725	525	1,165	33	1,637	499	1990
Bad Creek	482	360	1,200	367	3,531	100	1,240	378	1991
Mingtan	368	275	1,322	403	2,896	82	1,345	410	1992

essentially a pump runner modified for optimum performance while generating power. (See Sec. 14 for the design of centrifugal pumps and their characteristics.) Conventional turbine runners, because of their short blades, are not suited for the pumping cavitation requirements.

The reversible pump/turbines have certain fundamental performance characteristics which are inherent in the design. The relationship between pumping and generating performance for a given specific speed is more or less fixed and can be modified only to a minor degree by alterations in the design. Figure 9.9.16 shows the expected generating performance, and Fig. 9.9.17 shows the expected pumping performance based on model tests of a reversible pump/turbine with a specific speed $n_s = 47.3$ (180) generating and $n_s = 2{,}600$ (50) pumping (see ''Centrifugal and Axial Pumps'' for definition of pump specific speed).

The best efficiency, with reversible pump/turbines, occurs at a lower speed when generating than when pumping. This can be compensated for by using a generator/motor capable of operating at two speeds with a constant frequency. Several units of this type have been built, but since two-speed generator/motors cost considerably more than those built for single speed, a careful study should be made of the advantages to be obtained in operating at two speeds.

Single reversible pump/turbines can be built for any heads up to 2,000 ft (600 m). Beyond this, either multiple-stage reversible units or separate pumps and turbines should be used. Some of the more notable reversible pump/turbine installations are shown in Table 9.9.2.

Runaway Speed The runaway speed for pump/turbines is considerably lower than that for conventional turbines. It ranges from 150 percent of normal for low specific speed runners to 175 percent for high specific speed runners.

MODEL TESTS

Model tests serve several purposes. They are primarily used to check turbine runner, wicket gate, draft tube, casing, and (sometimes) inlet works designs for optimum performance. Correctly interpreted, they may also be used as a reliable indication of the performance of the units in the field. In many cases, purchasers specify the performance of a homologous model test, which is used as an acceptance test of the unit in lieu of field tests. In such cases, the field conditions, particularly the casing and draft tube, must be reproduced faithfully. Model tests should be run in accordance with the International Code for Model Acceptance Tests of Hydraulic Turbines, Publication 193; International Code for Model Acceptance Tests of Storage Pumps, Publication 497 of the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC); and International Standard Publication, IEC 995, that supplements IEC 193 and 497.

Figure 9.9.18 shows typical model test results of a reaction-type turbine, in which the power P at 1 ft (0.3 m) head and the efficiency are each plotted against the speed n at 1 ft (0.3 m) head, for each of several gate openings.

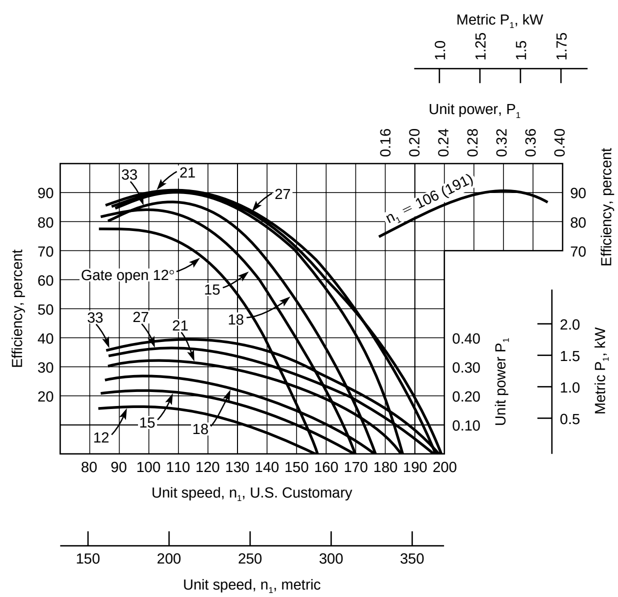


Fig. 9.9.18 Model test curves for a Francis runner ($D_r = D_{th} = 16.2$ in (0.41 m) and n_s = about 65 (250).

Laws of Proportionality for Homologous Turbines The laws of proportionality shown previously are used to calculate from model tests the power, speed, and discharges of a homologous turbine of different diameter under a different head. The field unit will have a somewhat higher efficiency and power owing to proportionally smaller frictional and bearing losses. Expected field efficiency is customarily computed from the model efficiency by the Moody formula

$$c' = 1 - \frac{2}{3}\left[(1-e)\left(\frac{D}{D'}\right)^{1/5}\right]$$

in which the prime letters refer to the field installation. The step-up efficiency is usually computed for the point of best efficiency only, and the corresponding differential is applied as a constant value from, say, half load to full load.

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

CAVITATION

Cavitation occurs when the pressure at any point in the flowing water drops below the vapor pressure of the water.

The relationship which produces cavitation is between vapor pressure, barometric pressure, setting of the runner with respect to tailwater, and net effective head on the turbine and is expressed by the **Thoma cavitation coefficient** $\sigma = (H_b - H_v - H_s)/H$, where H_b = barometric head, ft (m) of water; H_v = vapor pressure of water, abs; H_s = elevation, ft (m) of the runner above tailwater, measured at the centerline of the distributor of a Francis runner and at the centerline of the blades of a propeller runner (if the runner is submerged, H_s becomes negative); and H = total or net effective head, ft (m), on the turbine. The setting of the runner depends upon the value of σ, which varies with specific speed n_s of the runner and the individual characteristics of a particular runner design. In practice, the model of the proposed runner is first tested with relatively high back pressure (H_s small or negative). Then the back pressure is reduced in increments until the breaking point, as indicated by a drop in power, efficiency, and discharge, is reached. This breaking point is designated as the critical σ and will vary with gate opening and speed and, on propeller turbines, with blade angle. Consequently, σ must be determined for a range of limiting conditions.

In the absence of cavitation tests, the value of σ should not be lower than $\sigma = n_s^{3/2}/2{,}000$ ($n_s^{3/2}/15{,}000$) for Francis and propeller runners and $\sigma = n_s^2/25{,}000$ ($n_s^2/350{,}000$) for adjustable-blade propeller runners.

The value of σ at which a plant operates, depending largely upon the setting of the runner with respect to tailwater, is called the **plant** σ. To avoid excessive cavitation, the plant σ should exceed the critical σ. The greater this margin, the less possibility of cavitation during operation. For a general discussion of cavitation phenomena, see Knapp, Recent Investigations of the Mechanics of Cavitation and Cavitation Damage, *Trans. ASME*, Oct. 1955. Laboratory tests and experience have shown that materials having a high resistance to cavitation erosion (pitting) and suitable for use in hydraulic turbines are the stainless steels and aluminum bronzes, especially when used as welding overlays. (See Rheingans, ''Resistance of Various Materials to Cavitation Damage,'' ASME Report of 1956 Cavitation Symposium.)

SPEED REGULATION

(See also Sec. 16.)

Regulation is accomplished by changing the flow of water to the turbine. The flow is controlled by the wicket gates of reaction turbines and by the needle valve or jet deflector of impulse turbines. The governor moves the gates or needle in response to speed changes resulting from load or head changes.

A schematic diagram of a classic governor is shown in Fig. 9.9.19. The parts consist of a speed-responsive device, a power element that changes the gates or needle position, and a follow-up or compensating device that prevents hunting.

The **speed-responsive device** originally was a pair of spring-loaded flyballs mounted directly on the turbine shaft, or driven from the shaft by belt or gears, or driven by an electric motor that receives its power either from the bus line or from an independent generator driven from the main turbine generator shaft.

The **power element** consists of oil-operated power cylinders or servomotors which operate the turbine gates or needle. Oil pumps and a pressure tank or accumulator maintain a supply of oil. A valve operated by the speed sensor controls the flow of oil to the servomotors or acts as a pilot valve controlling a larger relay valve, which in turn controls the oil to the servomotors. The pump capacity is usually 3 servomotor volumes per minute. The capacity of the pressure tank is generally made 20 times the servomotor volume, allowing for 8 volumes of oil and 12 volumes of air. The velocity of oil in the pipelines is kept below 15 ft/s (5 m/s). When using individual servomotors on each gate, these values are usually increased 50 percent to balance the usual damping effect of the common massive two-servomotor system.

The **follow-up** or **compensating device** connects the power piston of the servomotor to the control valve, usually through a dashpot, and causes the motion of gates or needle to stop when they have moved sufficiently to compensate for the load change.

The time for a full stroke or traverse of the governor is controlled by the rate of flow of oil to the servomotors; most governors have provisions for varying this time. The gate opening changes at a uniform rate

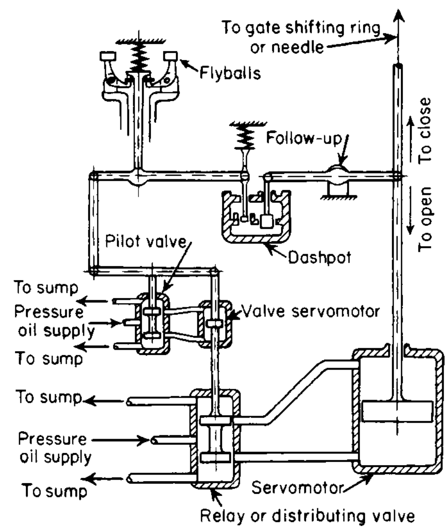


Fig. 9.9.19 Schematic diagram of governor.

over the major portion of the stroke and at a somewhat slower rate at the ends of the stroke. The governor *dead time,* or the elapsed time from the initial speed change to the first movement of the gates, is usually less than 0.2 s.

Electric Governor In recent years, the functional requirements placed upon the hydraulic-turbine governor have increased to the point where electrical control of the hydraulic turbine is attractive in view of the simplicity with which electrical signals can be manipulated. The basic elements of an electric-hydraulic governing system are (1) permanent magnet generator (PMG) or equivalent for measurement of turbine speed and the means for transmittal of such speed signals to the electrical portion of the governor; (2) an electric circuit sensitive to speed variations about some adjustable reference point; (3) amplifying circuits to convert speed reference changes, speed error signals, and auxiliary signals into a useful electric current; (4) an electrohydraulic transducer to transform the electric current into a hydraulic output signal; (5) hydraulic amplifying equipment to deliver suitable power and the desired signal to the gate servomotors as a function of the output of the electrohydraulic transducer; (6) power supplies for the electric and hydraulic portions of the control. For further particulars of the electric governor, see Leum, Electric Governors for Hydro Turbines, ASME Paper 62-WA165.

Electronic Governors With the advent of minicomputers, microprocessors, and programmable controllers, many of the traditional mechanical functions in the hydraulic turbine governor have been replaced electronically. While the basic elements of the governor remain the same, the use of electronics in the feedback sensing and control circuits has greatly reduced the size and mechanical complexity of these units. The basic elements of the modern electronic governoring system are: (1) Inductive pickups or permanent magnetic generators or equivalent to measure the turbine speed and to transmit the information to the processor. (2) Electronic circuitry to establish the speed-control function of the governor (integrated circuits or digital programming). Basically the circuitry consists of a proportional, an integrator, and a derivative function. (3) A servo valve or equivalent to translate the electronic signal from the processor to a hydraulic signal. (4) Where required, a means to

Copyright (C) 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Use of this product is subject to the terms of its License Agreement. Click here to view.

hydraulically amplify the output from the servo valve so that a suitable power level can be delivered to the gate and blade servomotors. (5) Auxiliary equipment as required in the form of power supplies, etc. to support the system.

Speed Regulation Requirements Usually, a sufficient measure of the regulation provided is the maximum speed rise resulting from sudden rejection of full load, as from the breaker tripping. A maximum speed rise of 30 percent of normal speed for this condition is a common limitation.

Speed Rise Following Load Reduction For sudden load reductions, the approximate speed rise is

$$
\begin{aligned}
n_t/n &= [1 + 1{,}620{,}000 T_t P_t (1 + h/H)^{3/2}/WR^2 n^2]^{1/2} \quad \text{(USCS)} \\
&= [1 + 365{,}000 T_t P_t (1 + h/H)^{3/2}/GD^2 n^2]^{1/2} \quad \text{(SI)}
\end{aligned}
$$

where n_t is the speed, rpm, at the end of time T_t; n is the speed, rpm, before the load decrease; T_t is the time interval, seconds, for the governor to adjust the flow to the new load; P_t is the reduction in load, hp (kW); h is the head rise caused by the retardation of the flow, ft (m); H is the net effective head before the load change, ft (m); WR^2 is the product of the revolving parts weight, lb, and the square of their radius of gyration, ft; GD^2 is the product of the revolving parts weight, kg, and the square of their diameter of gyration, m. For approximate values of h, see below. Very rapid gate closure produces a reduction of pressure in the draft tube and the possibility of breaking the water column, with subsequent violent resurge which may damage the turbines.

Speed Drop Following Load Increase For sudden load increases, the approximate speed drop is

$$
\begin{aligned}
n_t/n &= [1 - 1{,}620{,}000 T_t P_t/WR^2 n^2 (1 - h/H)^{3/2}]^{1/2} \quad \text{(USCS)} \\
&= [1 - 365{,}000 T_t P_t/GD^2 n^2 (1 - h/H)^{3/2}]^{1/2} \quad \text{(SI)}
\end{aligned}
$$

where P_t is the actual load increase and h is the head drop caused by the increase of the flow. If the speed drop is to be determined for a given increase in gate opening, the governor time T_t for making this increase and the normal change in load for the change in gate opening, under constant head H, can be used in the following formula:

$$
\begin{aligned}
n_t/n &= [1 - 1{,}620{,}000 T_t P_t (1 - h/H)^{3/2}/WR^2 n^2]^{1/2} \quad \text{(USCS)} \\
&= [1 - 365{,}000 T_t P_t (1 - h/H)^{3/2}/GD^2 n^2]^{1/2} \quad \text{(SI)}
\end{aligned}
$$

The actual change in load, however, will be $P_t(1 - h/H)^{3/2}$.

For derivation of the above speed variation formulas and for a more accurate determination, see Strowger and Kerr, Speed Changes of Hydraulic Turbines for Sudden Changes of Load, *Trans. ASME*, 1926; and Rich, ''Hydraulic Transients,'' McGraw-Hill.

Water Hammer in Penstocks If a gate movement is considered as a series of instantaneous movements with a very small interval between each movement, the pressure variation in the penstock following the gate movement will be the effect of a series of pressure waves, each caused by one of the instantaneous small gate movements. For a steel penstock, the velocity of the pressure wave $a = 4{,}660/\sqrt{1 + d/100t}$ $(1{,}420/\sqrt{1 + d/100t})$, where d is the penstock diameter, in (m), and t is the penstock wall thickness, in (m). The pressure change at any point along the penstock at any time after the start of the gate movement may be calculated by summing up the effect of the individual pressure waves. See ''Symposium on Water Hammer,'' ASME, 1933; and Parmakian, ''Water Hammer Analysis,'' Dover.

Approximate formulas (De Sparre) for the increase in pressure h, ft (m), following gate closure, are given below. They are quite accurate for pressure rises not exceeding 50 percent of the initial pressure, which includes most practical cases.

$$
\begin{aligned}
h &= aV/g && \text{for } K < 1,\ N < 1 \\
h &= aV/\{g[N + K(N - 1)]\} && \text{for } K < 1,\ N > 1 \\
h &= aV/[g(2N - K)] && \text{for } K > 1,\ N > 1
\end{aligned}
$$

where $K = aV/(2gH)$; $N = aT/(2L)$. V and H are the penstock velocity, ft/s (m/s), and head, ft (m), prior to closure; L is the penstock length, ft (m), and T is the time of gate closure. For full load rejection, T may be taken as 85 percent of the total gate traversing time to allow for nonuniform gate motion.

For pressure drop following a complete gate opening, the following formula (S. Logan Kerr) may be used with T not less than $2L/a$:

$$h = \frac{aV}{g}\left(\frac{-K + \sqrt{K^2 + N^2}}{N^2}\right) = \text{pressure drop, ft (m)}$$

Pressure variations exceeding 40 percent rise and about 25 percent drop should be avoided. When the control, directly by the governor, causes undesirable pressure variations, a surge tank, a pressure regulator, or a jet deflector may be used. A **surge tank** is a standpipe with an atmospheric tank, attached to the penstock as close as possible to the casing inlet. The tank provides a reservoir and expansion chamber for the water demand or the water rejection following sudden gate movements, so that sudden accelerations or decelerations of the flow in the penstock are avoided.

Pressure regulators may be of either the water-wasting or water-saving type. The **water-wasting type** is a synchronous bypass, generally attached to the turbine casing. It is operated directly from the governor, or the gate mechanism of the turbine, and wastes such an amount as to keep the total water discharge equal at all times to the full-load discharge of the turbine. The bypass is a needle nozzle or a mushroom-shaped disk valve or a cone valve which opens and is partly balanced hydraulically by a piston under pipeline pressure. The **water-saving type** permits the regulator to open upon rapid closure of the turbine gates, and then close slowly, so that the total water discharge is gradually reduced and finally limited to that through the turbine, adjusted for the new load.

AUXILIARIES

Valves and head gates are provided for shutting off the water to each turbine for safety, for ease of maintenance, and to reduce water leakage losses. Motor-operated steel head gates are generally used for low- and medium-head plants with concrete scroll cases, although a few still use stop logs. The butterfly type of valve placed close to the turbine casing is suitable for medium- and high-head units with metal casings of circular inlet diameter. Butterfly valves of 8-ft (2.5 m) diameter for 1,000-ft (305 m) head and 27-ft (8.2 m) diameter for 100-ft (30 m) head have been built. The new flow through valve or biplane valve is becoming more popular for this application. In recent years, rotary sphere valves have replaced gate valves for high heads and where the loss through the butterfly valve is excessive because of the obstruction to flow by the valve disk.

COMPUTER-AIDED DESIGN

The continued development, refinement, and use of proven high-technology computer-aided design and analysis tools help create new generations of designs. Design objectives today are to produce equipment which has characteristics of reliability, easy servicing, operational flexibility, and high performance. The success of this approach is made possible by integrating design history and field experience into hydraulic, mechanical, and operational computer design and analysis systems.

TURBINE TESTS

Field testing of hydraulic turbines to determine the absolute efficiency and output involves careful and accurate measurement of the power available in the water supplied to the turbine [water hp (kW)] and the turbine output [developed hp (kW)] e = developed hp (kW)/water hp (kW) = $550P/(wQH)$ [$101.93P/(QHw)$]. The tests should be conducted in accordance with the International Code for Field Acceptance Tests of Hydraulic Turbines and/or Storage Pumps, IEC Publications 41 and 198.

Because of the difficulties and costs involved in making accurate measurements of horsepower, net head, and discharge in the field, there has been a trend in recent years to dispense with the field test, especially where a laboratory test on a homologous model turbine is available. Instead, an index test is made on the unit in the field, which measures the turbine output and relative discharge under various conditions. Index tests should be conducted in accordance with the International Code for Field Acceptance Tests of Hydraulic Turbines, IEC Publication 41.